Fractional- & Subfractional-Horsepower Electric Motors

What Kinds Are Available — How They Work and What They Will Do — How to Select, Apply, Connect, and Service Them

C. G. Veinott

THIRD EDITION

Fractional- & Subfractional-Horsepower Electric Motors

C. G. Veinott

**Machinery Consultant and Chief Engineering Analyst,
Reliance Electric Company**

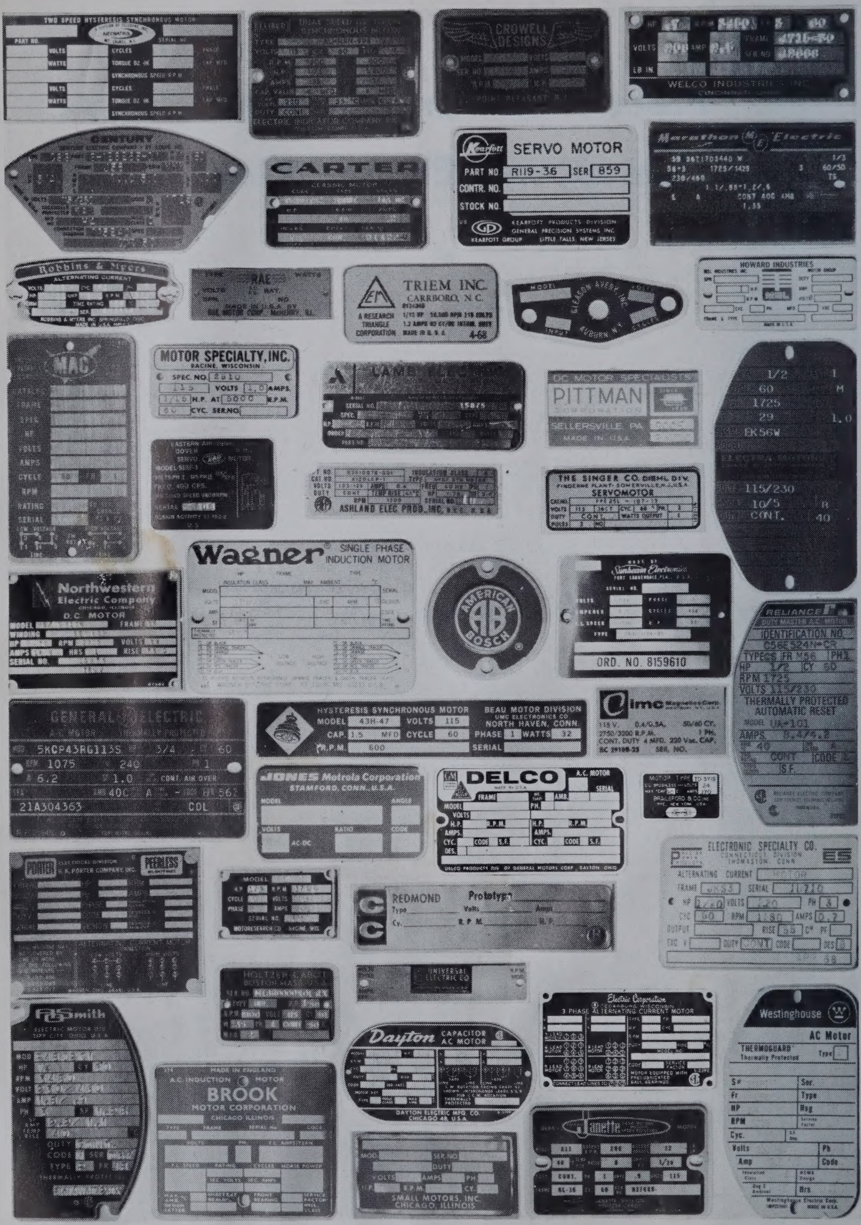
Because fractional- and subfractional-horsepower electric motors now comprise a billion dollar industry, the need for this updated and fully illustrated instruction manual has long been felt by practical electricians. It tells you what types of small electric motors are available today and what they will do. It explains—and shows—how to select and apply them, and how to connect them, service them, rewind them. Thus you can ask this book practically any question on today's small electric motors and find the completely detailed answer you need.

Just glance at the Table of Contents. You'll be amazed at the number and variety of motors covered in this handy manual . . . all treated in how-to-do-it terms that makes it easy to use on the job.

Here, for example, are all the basic fundamentals needed by the motor user . . . essential principles of induction motors, both polyphase and single-phase . . . arrangements of windings for single-phase induction motors. Here are the most-needed instructions you need when working with split-phase motors . . . capacitor-start motors . . . two-value capaci-

continued on back flap

Fractional— and Subfractional— Horsepower Electric Motors


TWO SPEED HYSTERESIS SYNCHRONOUS MOTOR
CROWELL DESIGNS
POINT PLEASANT, N.J.
WELCO INDUSTRIES, INC.
CENTURY
CARTER
SERVO MOTOR
PART NO. R119-36
SER 859
CONTR. NO.
STOCK NO.
KEARFOTT PRODUCTS DIVISION
GENERAL PRECISION SYSTEMS INC.
KEARFOTT GROUP LITTLE FALLS, NEW JERSEY
Marathon Electric
Robbins & Myers
ALTERNATING CURRENT
TRIEM INC.
CARRBORO, N.C.
A RESEARCH TRIANGLE CORPORATION
4-68
GLEASON AVERY INC.
AUBURN N.Y.
HOWARD INDUSTRIES
MAC
MOTOR SPECIALTY, INC.
RACINE, WISCONSIN
LAMB ELECTRIC
DC MOTOR SPECIALISTS
PITTMAN CORPORATION
SELLERSVILLE, PA.
MADE IN U.S.A.
1/2
60
1725
29
EK56W
115/230
10/5
CONT.
EASTERN AIR DEVICES
DOVER
ASHLAND ELEC. PROD., INC.
THE SINGER CO. DIEHL DIV.
FINDERNE PLANT SOMERVILLE, N.J. U.S.A.
SERVOMOTOR
Wagner
SINGLE PHASE INDUCTION MOTOR
Northwestern Electric Company
D.C. MOTOR
AMERICAN BOSCH
Simmons Electronics
ORD. NO. 8159610
RELIANCE
IDENTIFICATION NO.
C56E524N-CR
TYPE CS FR 56 PH 1
HP 1/2 CY 60
RPM 1725
VOLTS 115/230
THERMALLY PROTECTED AUTOMATIC RESET
MODEL UA-101
AMPS. 8.4/4.2
CONT CODE L
S.F.
GENERAL ELECTRIC
5KCP43RG113S
3/4
60
1075
240
6.2
1.0
CONT. AIR OVER
21A304363
HYSTERESIS SYNCHRONOUS MOTOR
MODEL 43H-47
VOLTS 115
CAP. 1.5 MFD
CYCLE 60
R.P.M. 600
BEAU MOTOR DIVISION
UMC ELECTRONICS CO.
NORTH HAVEN, CONN.
PHASE 1
WATTS 32
SERIAL
imc Magnetics Corp.
JONES Motrola Corporation
STAMFORD, CONN., U.S.A.
DELCO
A.C. MOTOR
DELCO PRODUCTS DIV. OF GENERAL MOTORS CORP. DAYTON OHIO
BRAILSFORD & CO. INC.
PORTER
H. K. PORTER COMPANY, INC.
PEERLESS
MOTORESEARCH CO. RACINE, WIS.
REDMOND
Prototype
ELECTRONIC SPECIALTY CO.
CONNECTICUT DIVISION
THOMASTON, CONN.
ES
HOLTZER-CABOT
BOSTON, MASS.
UNIVERSAL ELECTRIC CO.
Electric Corporation
3 PHASE ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTOR
Westinghouse
AC Motor
THERMOGUARD
Thermally Protected
Westinghouse Electric Corp.
MADE IN U.S.A.
AO Smith
ELECTRIC MOTOR DIV.
TIPP CITY, OHIO
THERMALLY PROTECTED
Dayton
CAPACITOR AC MOTOR
DAYTON ELECTRIC MFG. CO.
CHICAGO 48, U.S.A.
MADE IN ENGLAND
A.C. INDUCTION MOTOR
BROOK MOTOR CORPORATION
CHICAGO ILLINOIS
SMALL MOTORS, INC.
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS
Janette

Fractional—and Subfractional—Horsepower Electric Motors

What Kinds Are Available—How They Work and What They Will Do—How to Select, Apply, Connect, and Service Them

CYRIL G. VEINOTT, D.ENG.

Machinery Consultant and Chief Engineering Analyst
The Reliance Electric Company
Fellow IEEE
Registered Professional Engineer (Ohio)

THIRD EDITION

McGraw-Hill Book Company

New York · St. Louis · San Francisco · London
Sydney · Toronto · Mexico · Panama

FRACTIONAL- AND SUBFRACTIONAL-HORSEPOWER ELECTRIC MOTORS

Copyright © 1970 by McGraw-Hill, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Copyright 1948, 1939 by McGraw-Hill, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher. *Library of Congress Catalog Card Number* 79-85117

ISBN 07-067390-x

34567890 MAMM 7543

WARNING

Many of the connections and constructions described and illustrated in this book are covered by letters patent or an application for letters patent. No attempt is made in this book to indicate whether any construction or connection is patented or is common property. Servicemen, of course, can repair a patented device or apparatus that was purchased from a duly authorized seller. Manufacturers, however, are warned to check the patent situation before incorporating into their own designs any of the types of construction or connections given in this book. Publication in this book does not imply that a device or system described herein is public property available to all who care to use it. Neither the publishers nor the author will assume any responsibility for damages arising out of patent litigation or suits involving any apparatus described in this book.

to DEE
whose active and passive cooperation,
also her uxorial understanding
of my writing efforts,
for more than thirty years,
have made this volume possible,
this book is
lovingly dedicated

Preface

Small electric motors are produced by so many manufacturers in so many varieties and sizes, and have so woven themselves into the very warp and woof of our almost servantless domestic society and highly automated world of commerce and industry, that the huge size of the small electric motor industry itself is not commonly known. According to figures released by the U.S. Census Bureau, in the single year of 1966, there were produced in the United States alone more than 138 million fractional-horsepower electric motors (excluding hermetic motors), representing a total value of over $820 million. If one adds hermetic motors, synchros, and related control devices, the total value for the year exceeds 1 billion dollars.

This book was written to tell as simply and completely as possible the story of the products of this billion-dollar industry. It tells what kinds of small electric machines are available and what they will do. It tells how to select and apply them; also how to connect, service and rewind them. It is written in simple language, completely free of mathematics and mathematical discussions of the theory, though it does give many bibliographic references to such discussions which are found elsewhere in the literature.

The material in this book is so arranged and presented that it can be read and studied consecutively like a textbook, or used as a reference work. These ends are accomplished by generous use of cross references and a minimum of repetition. It was written with the needs and interests of many persons in mind.

Students and instructors in trade schools and technical institutes should find it most helpful in enhancing their practical knowledge. Professors and students, graduate and undergraduate, in universities and colleges, who are doing advanced study and research involving dynamoelectric machines or subjects involving use of such devices, should find considerable help in this broad-brush story of small electric machines; many may find herein an inspiration and a springboard for an advanced research project of their own. Practicing engineers who select small motors for whatever function in apparatus and systems for which they themselves are responsible should find much information herein to help them. In companies engaged in producing these small electric machines there is much to be learned by many persons: salesmen, student trainees, winding-department and other factory foremen, quality-control and test personnel, for example. Service and repair shops need a whole lot of the kind of information given herein; a great deal of the material presented here is slanted particularly for their special benefit.

Both the author and the publisher were greatly encouraged to produce this book by the overwhelming and widespread acceptance of the author's earlier work "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," which has been used literally all over the world. In fact, this book started out to be a revision of the earlier book, last published twenty years ago. It soon developed, though, that there had been so many changes in the industry that a whole new book had to be written. However, much material that is still relevant was lifted and placed, after suitable updating, in this work. In general, more attention has been paid to subfractional-horsepower motors. In addition, two new chapters were added on motors used in control systems: stepper motors and servomotors. In the interest of conserving space, many rewinding possibilities were omitted from this volume; most of such rewind jobs are not economically justifiable in this day and age anyway.

In recognition of the worldwide use of my earlier book, aided by G. Soulier's translation of it into French, considerable attention has been paid in this volume to metric units.

Grateful acknowledgment and thanks are hereby paid to many companies and individuals who contributed literally a whole shelfful of information from which material for this book was extracted. Specifically, of the companies who participated, 70 are listed in Table 1-1, and an additional 18 in Table 15-1. Other companies who helped are: General Radio Company, Lebow Associates, P. R. Mallory and Company, Permawick Company, Siemens-America Company, Sprague Electric Company, Texas Instruments Incorporated, and Torq Engineered Products Company. The Underwriters' Laboratories also contributed helpful comments. A great deal of material was taken from NEMA and from the IEEE as well as from the magazines *Machine Design* and *Product Engineering*. Just a few individuals who also helped were: J. S. Ewing, J. Fries, W. G. Stiffler, S. C. Swanson, and R. L. Wolfe.

How can I really thank my wife for her part in typing the voluminous correspondence involved in gathering the material for the book, and for typing various versions of the manuscript itself, and for calling to my attention numerous and sundry editorial details?

Cyril G. Veinott
Shaker Heights, Ohio

Contents

Preface vii

List of Tables xxvii

CHAPTER 1. THE STORY BEHIND THE NAMEPLATE 1

1– 1. Fractional- and Subfractional-horsepower motors 2
1– 2. Manufacturer 3
1– 3. AC 3
1– 4. Identification Number 4
1– 5. Type 4
1– 6. Frame 4
1– 7. Phases 5
1– 8. HP (Horsepower) 23
1– 9. Frequency (CY, CYC, HZ) 24
1–10. RPM 24
1–11. Volts 28
1–12. Thermally Protected 29
1–13. Amperes 30
1–14. °C—Temperature Rating 31
1–15. Time Rating 33
1–16. Code 33
1–17. NEMA Design 34
1–18. Service Factor (S.F.) 34
1–19. “CSA” 34
1–20. Other Information on the Nameplate 34

CHAPTER 2. WHAT MAKES AN INDUCTION MOTOR RUN? 36

2– 1. Single-phase and Polyphase Motors 36
2– 2. Rotation of a Copper Disk Produced by a Rotating Magnet 38
2– 3. Rotation of a Squirrel-cage Rotor Produced by a Rotating Field Magnet 39

PRODUCTION OF A ROTATING FIELD IN A TWO-PHASE STATOR

2– 4. A Simple Two-phase Motor-and-generator System 40
2– 5. Windings of a Two-phase Motor 41

2– 6. How the Rotating Field Is Set Up 42
2– 7. Conditions Necessary to Set Up a Rotating Field in a Two-phase Motor 44

PRODUCTION OF A ROTATING FIELD IN A SINGLE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTOR

2– 8. The Single-phase Motor a Special Case of the Two-phase Motor . . 44
2– 9. Field Set Up by Stator Winding Alone 45
2–10. Field Set Up by the Rotor 45
2–11. Rotating Field 47

COMPARISONS BETWEEN SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

2–12. Differences in the Rotating Field 47
2–13. Losses, Breakdown Torque, and Torque Pulsations 48
2–14. Necessity for Starting Arrangement for Single-phase Induction Motors 49

MISCELLANEOUS

2–15. Numbers of Poles 49
2–16. Electrical Degrees 49
2–17. Synchronous Speed 50
2–18. References for Futher Study of Induction-motor Theory 50

CHAPTER 3. SINGLE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTOR WINDINGS AND CONNECTIONS 53

3– 1. Concentric Winding 53
3– 2. Necessity for Different Types of Connection Diagrams 55
3– 3. Distribution Chart 56
3– 4. A Stator (or Rotor) Connection Diagram 56
3– 5. Wiring Diagram 57
3– 6. Line Connection Diagrams 57
3– 7. Magnetic Polarity 57
3– 8. Gun Windings 58
3– 9. Machine Windings 59
3–10. Mold Windings 60
3–11. Skein Windings 61
3–12. Windings with Dissimilar Coils and Consequent-pole Windings . . 62
3–13. Some Practical Hints on Winding 63
3–14. Varnish Impregnation 64
3–15. Repetitive Surge Tests 64

CHAPTER 4. SPLIT-PHASE INDUCTION MOTORS 66

4– 1. Split-phase Motor Defined 66
4– 2. Essential Parts of a Split-phase Motor 66
4– 3. Split-phase Starting Principle 67
4– 4. Purpose of the Starting Switch 69

4– 5. Standard and Special-service Motors 70
4– 6. Torque Characteristics of Split-phase Motors 71

CONNECTION DIAGRAMS FOR SPLIT-PHASE MOTOR WINDINGS

4– 7. Motor Connections and Terminal Markings 71
4– 8. How to Tell the Windings Apart and How to Identify the Leads . . 73

COMMON WINDING CONNECTIONS

4– 9. Both Windings Series-connected 74
4–10. Parallel-connected Main Winding, Series-Connected Auxiliary Winding 75
4–11. Both Windings Parallel, Cross-connected 76
4–12. "Short-throw" and "Long-throw" Connections 76
4–13. Switch in Center of Auxiliary Winding 77
4–14. Motors with Direction-connection Plug 77
4–15. Connecting Motor Windings for a Definite Direction of Rotation . . 77
4–16. Predetermining Direction of Rotation 78
4–17. Nonreversible Motor with One Line Lead on the Starting Switch . . 80
4–18. Motor with Cord and Plug and Built-in Line Switch 80

THERMALLY PROTECTED MOTORS

4–19. Reversible—Five or Six Line Leads 81
4–20. Nonreversible—Two Line Leads 81
4–21. Motors with Terminal Board 81
4–22. Heating Coil of Thermal Protector in Auxiliary Phase Only . . . 81

TWO-SPEED MOTORS

4–23. Two-speed Pole-changing Motors 82
4–24. Consequent-pole Windings 82
4–25. Two-speed Pole-changing Four-winding Motors 83
4–26. Two-speed Pole-changing Three-winding Motors 85

HOME-LAUNDRY MOTORS

4–27. Single-speed Home-laundry Motors 86
4–28. Two-speed Home-laundry Motors 88
4–29. Laundry Motors with Auxiliary Terminals 89

MISCELLANEOUS ARRANGEMENTS

4–30. Resistance-start Split-phase Motor 91
4–31. Reactor-start Motor 91

MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

4–32. How to Reverse the Various Types of Motors 92
4–33. Rewinding or Reconnecting Motor for a Different Voltage and the Same Performance 92

4–34. Rewinding for Different Torques at the Same Voltage 93
4–35. Rewinding for a Different Frequency 93
4–36. Use of a Capacitor in the Auxiliary Phase to Raise Locked-rotor Torque or to Reduce Locked-rotor Current 94
4–37. Distribution Factor and Effective Conductors 95

CHAPTER 5. CAPACITOR-START MOTORS 99

5– 1. Capacitor Motor Types Defined 99
5– 2. Essential Parts of a Capacitor-start Motor 100
5– 3. Capacitor-starting Principle 102
5– 4. Capacitor-starting Compared with Split-phase Starting 102
5– 5. Purpose of the Starting Switch 103
5– 6. Torque Characteristics of Capacitor-start Motors 104

AC ELECTROLYTIC CAPACITORS

5– 7. Construction 104
5– 8. Characteristics of Motor-starting Capacitors 106
5– 9. When Replacing Electrolytic Capacitors 108
5–10. Testing Electrolytic Capacitors 108

GENERAL-PURPOSE SINGLE-VOLTAGE MOTORS

5–11. Terminal Boards and Integral Conduit Boxes 109
5–12. Single-voltage Motors—Without Thermal Protection. 110
5–13. Single-voltage Motors—Thermally Protected 111
5–14. Stator Connection Diagrams 112

DUAL-VOLTAGE MOTORS

5–15. Reasons for Dual-voltage Windings 113
5–16. Elementary Principles Involved 113
5–17. Winding Dual-voltage Motors 114
5–18. Dual-voltage Motors—Without Thermal Protection 115
5–19. Thermal Protection of Dual-voltage Motors 115
5–20. Dual-voltage Motors—Thermally Protected 122
5–21. Stator Connection Diagrams for Dual-voltage Motors 122

MISCELLANEOUS ARRANGEMENTS

5–22. "Swing" Connection (Half-voltage Starting Winding) 123
5–23. Terminal Board in the Mounted Capacitor 123
5–24. Two-speed Pole-changing Motors 124
5–25. Motors with Magnetically Operated Switch 124
5–26. Reversing Motors 125

MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

5–27. Rewinding or Reconnecting Motor for a Different Voltage and Same Performance 126

5–28. Rewinding for Different Torques 127
5–29. Rewinding for a Different Frequency 128
5–30. Changing a Capacitor-start to a Split-phase Motor 128
5–31. Regeneration in Capacitor-start Motors 129

CHAPTER 6. TWO-VALUE CAPACITOR MOTORS 133

6– 1. Two-value Capacitor Motor Defined 133
6– 2. Essential Parts of the Two-value Motor 133
6– 3. Effect of the Running Capacitor 135
6– 4. Purpose of the Starting Switch 136
6– 5. Torques of Two-value Capacitor Motors 137

SINGLE-VOLTAGE MOTORS

6– 6. Standard Connections for Reversible Motors 137
6– 7. Motor with Dual-section Auxiliary Winding 137

DUAL-VOLTAGE MOTORS

6– 8. Dual-voltage Motors with Single-section Auxiliary Winding 140
6– 9. Dual-voltage Motors with Two-section Auxiliary Winding 140

MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

6–10. Rewinding or Reconnecting Motor for a Different Voltage but for Same Performance 141
6–11. Rewinding for Different Torques, Speed, or Frequency 141
6–12. Changing a Two-Value Motor to a Capacitor-start Motor 142

CHAPTER 7. PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS 145

7– 1. Permanent-split Capacitor Motor Defined 145
7– 2. Essential Parts of a Permanent-split Capacitor Motor 146
7– 3. Principles of Operation 146

SINGLE-SPEED MOTORS

7– 4. Performance Characteristics of Permanent-split Capacitor Motors . . 147
7– 5. Connections and Diagrams—Single-voltage Motors 147
7– 6. Connections and Diagrams—Dual-voltage Motors 150

SPEED-CONTROL METHODS FOR PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS

7– 7. Basic Methods of Speed Control 152
7– 8. Systems of Voltage Control 152
7– 9. Fundamental Relationship between Slip, Voltage, and Torque . . . 153
7–10. Speed Control by Means of Voltage Control 154
7–11. Limitations of Flux-control Systems of Speed Control 155

MULTISPEED MOTORS

7–12. Motors for Unit-heater Service 155
7–13. External Impedance Control 157
7–14. Three Kinds of Tapped-winding Arrangements 157
7–15. Connection Diagrams for Tapped-winding Motors 162

MISCELLANEOUS

7–16. Special Mechanical Features of Fan Motors 165
7–17. Reversing, High-torque, Intermittent-rated Motors 165
7–18. Rewinding or Reconnecting 165

CHAPTER 8. REPULSION-START INDUCTION MOTORS 166

8– 1. Repulsion-start Induction Motor Defined 166
8– 2. Application and Torque Characteristics 166
8– 3. Essential Parts of the Repulsion-start Induction Motor 167

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

8– 4. Repulsion Motor Similar to a Series Motor 168
8– 5. The Simple Repulsion Motor 170
8– 6. Hard Neutral and Soft Neutral 170
8– 7. Function of the Short-circuiter 172

STATOR WINDINGS

8– 8. Dual-voltage Four-lead Motors 172
8– 9. Rewinding for a Different Voltage 173
8–10. Rewinding for Different Torques 173
8–11. Rewinding for a Different Frequency or Number of Poles 173

ARMATURE WINDINGS

8–12. Lap Windings 175
8–13. Wave Windings 176
8–14. Testing an Armature 176

CONSTRUCTIONAL FEATURES AND CARE

8–15. Mark Position of End Shield 177
8–16. Commutators 178
8–17. Short-circuiters 179
8–18. Brush-lifting Mechanism 180
8–19. Brush-holder Mechanisms 180
8–20. How to Reverse a Motor Using a Rocker Ring 181
8–21. Checking or Setting Neutral 181

8–22. Replacement of Brushes 182
8–23. Care and Maintenance—General 183

CHAPTER 9. REPULSION AND REPULSION-INDUCTION MOTORS 185

9– 1. Repulsion Motor Defined 185
9– 2. Repulsion-Induction Motor Defined 185

DUAL-VOLTAGE MOTORS

9– 3. Dual-voltage Repulsion Motor 186
9– 4. Dual-voltage Repulsion-induction Motor 187

REVERSING MOTORS FOR PLUGGING SERVICE

9– 5. Reversing Repulsion-type Motors Electrically 188
9– 6. Reversing Motor with Single-phase Type of Winding 189
9– 7. Reversing Motor with Polyphase Type of Winding 190
9– 8. Checking or Setting Neutral 191

CHAPTER 10. SHADED-POLE INDUCTION MOTORS 192

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

10– 1. Shaded-pole Motor Defined 193
10– 2. Essential Parts of a Shaded-pole Motor 193
10– 3. Principle of the Shaded-pole Motor 193
10– 4. Action of a Simple Shading Coil Explained 196
10– 5. Use of Magnetic Wedges or Bridges 196
10– 6. Triple Shading Coils 197
10– 7. Use of a Reluctance Effect in the Leading Pole Tip 198
10– 8. Ratings, Performance, and Torque Characteristics 199
10– 9. Variations in the Operating Speed 201

UNIDIRECTIONAL (FIXED-ROTATION) MOTORS

10–10. Single-speed Motors 202
10–11. Multispeed Motors 202

REVERSIBLE MOTORS

10–12. Use of Two Motors in Tandem 207
10–13. Use of Two Wound Shading Coils per Pole 207
10–14. Production of a Space-quadrature Field with Wound Shading Coils . 208
10–15. Versatility of the Motor with Four Shading Coils 210

MISCELLANEOUS

10–16. Geared Motors 212
10–17. Battery-operated Shaded-pole Motor System 214

CHAPTER 11. SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS **215**

11- 1. General 215
11- 2. Types of Synchronous Motors 216

RELUCTANCE MOTORS

11- 3. Reluctance Motor Definitions 216
11- 4. Construction and Principles of Operation 217
11- 5. Polyphase Reluctance Motors 220
11- 6. Split-phase Reluctance Motors 221
11- 7. Capacitor-type Reluctance Motors 221
11- 8. Shaded-pole Reluctance Motors 222
11- 9. Making a Synchronous Motor in the Repair Shop 223

HYSTERESIS MOTORS

11–10. Hysteresis Motor Defined 224
11–11. Construction 224
11–12. Polyphase Hysteresis Motors 225
11–13. Capacitor-type Hysteresis Motors 226
11–14. Multispeed Hysteresis Motors 227

INDUCTOR MOTORS

11–15. Construction—"50-frame" Motors 229
11–16. Principles of Operation 231
11–17. Characteristics and Applications 233
11–18. A Small Synchronous Inductor Motor 233

TIMING MOTORS

11–19. Multipolar Shaded-pole Hysteresis Motor with a Single Stator Coil . 235
11–20. Multipolar Capacitor Hysteresis Motor with But Two Stator Coils . 236
11–21. Inductor-type Timing Motors 236

CHAPTER 12. UNIVERSAL MOTORS **238**

12- 1. Universal Motor Defined 239
12- 2. Application and Torque Characteristics 239
12- 3. Essential Parts of the Universal Motor 242

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

12- 4. Operation on Direct Current 244
12- 5. Operation on Alternating Current 244
12- 6. Compensated Universal Motors 245

STATOR WINDINGS

12– 7. Concentrated-pole Noncompensated Motors 248
12– 8. Split-series Electrically Reversible (Reversing) Motors 249
12– 9. Tapped Field Winding 249
12–10. Two-field Compensated Windings 250
12–11. Two-field Compensated Split-series windings 250
12–12. Single-field Compensated Motor 250

ARMATURE WINDINGS

12–13. General 251
12–14. Front-lead Winding 251
12–15. Back-lead Windings 253
12–16. Notes on Rewinding and Reconnecting 253
12–17. Refinishing the Commutator 254
12–18. Checking the Rewound Armature 255

SPEED CONTROL OF UNIVERSAL MOTORS

12–19. By a Mechanical Governor 255
12–20. By Use of an External Impedance 256
12–21. By a Solid-state Electronic Controller 256

MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

12–22. Setting or Checking Neutral 258
12–23. Rewinding For Different Characteristics 259

CHAPTER 13. DC MOTORS AND VARIABLE-SPEED DRIVE SYSTEMS 261

13– 1. Types of DC Motors 261
13– 2. Essential Parts of a DC Motor 263

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

13– 3. Basic Principles Common to All Types 264
13– 4. How the Shunt Motor Works 267
13– 5. How the Compound Motor Works 267
13– 6. How the Series Motor Works 267

APPLICATION CHARACTERISTICS

13– 7. Ratings 268
13– 8. Operating Characteristics 268
13– 9. Standard Terminal Markings 269

SPECIAL-PURPOSE MOTORS

13–10. Split-series Motors 271
13–11. Military-service Motors 271

13–12. Electrically Reversible (Reversing) Motors 272
13–13. Two-speed Motor 273
13–14. Motors for Material-handling Electric Trucks 274
13–15. Motors for Marine Service 275

PERMANENT-MAGNET MOTORS

13–16. Permanent-magnet Motor Defined 276
13–17. Construction of a Permanent-magnet Motor 276
13–18. Ratings, Performance, and Torque Characteristics 277
13–19. Timing Motors 278
13–20. Transistor-commutated Motors 280

VARIABLE-SPEED DRIVE SYSTEMS

13–21. The Ward Leonard System 284
13–22. Simple Rectifiers 286
13–23. Single-phase Controlled Rectifiers 288
13–24. Form Factor 289
13–25. Operation of DC Motors on Rectified Alternating Current . . . 290
13–26. DC Motors Intended for Use on Adjustable-voltage Electronic Power Supplies 291
13–27. Variable-speed Systems, Using Electronic Power Conversion . . . 292

SERVICE PROBLEMS

13–28. Armature Windings 294
13–29. How to Change the Speed without Rewinding 294
13–30. How to Reverse a DC Motor 295
13–31. Finding the Neutral Position 295
13–32. Brushes 295

CHAPTER 14. POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS 297

14– 1. Essential Parts of a Polyphase Induction Motor 298
14– 2. Principles and Characteristics of the Polyphase Induction Motor . . 298

WINDINGS AND CONNECTIONS

14– 3. Lap Winding for Polyphase Motors 300
14– 4. Number of Groups and Number of Coils per Group 300
14– 5. “Throw-up” and “Throw-down” Windings 301
14– 6. “Short-throw”' and “Long-throw” Connections 302
14– 7. Stator (or Rotor) Connection Diagrams, Single-voltage, Three-phase . 303
14– 8. How to Check a Diagram or Winding 303
14– 9. Windings with Unequal Coil Grouping 304
14–10. Irregular Lap Windings 306
14–11. Dual-voltage Motors 306
14–12. Effective Series Conductors per Phase 307

14–13. Machine-wound Concentric Windings 308
14–14. Rewinding or Reconnecting Polyphase Motors 311

CHAPTER 15. STEPPER MOTORS 312

15– 1. Stepper Motor Defined 312
15– 2. Types of Stepper Motors 314

SHADED-POLE STEPPER MOTORS

15– 3. Unidirectional Motors 314
15– 4. Bidirectional Motors 315

PERMANENT-MAGNET STEPPER MOTORS WITH TWO PHASE WINDINGS

15– 5. SLO-SYN Stepper Motors 315
15– 6. Haydon Logic Stepper Motors 320
15– 7. Kearfott Permanent-magnet Stepper Motors 320

VARIABLE-RELUCTANCE STEPPER MOTORS

15– 8. Principle of the Variable-reluctance Stepper Motor 321
15– 9. Small Motors' Stepper Motors 322
15–10. Kearfott Variable-reluctance Stepper Motors 322

CYCLONOME STEPPER MOTORS

15–11. Principles of Operation 323
15–12. Basic Drive Circuits 325
15–13. Performance Characteristics and Sizes 325

CHAPTER 16. SERVOMOTORS 327

STANDARD LOW-INERTIA AC SERVOMOTORS

16– 1. AC Servomotor Defined 327
16– 2. Essential Parts of a Servomotor 328
16– 3. Principles of Operation 329
16– 4. Certain Performance Characteristics Explained 330
16– 5. Performance Characteristics of Standard Servomotors 331
16– 6. Wiring Diagrams and Terminal Markings 333
16– 7. Drag-cup Servomotors 333

DAMPED AC SERVOMOTORS

16– 8. Damping, and Why It is Needed 334
16– 9. Internal Damping of a Servomotor 336
16–10. Viscuous-damped Servomotors 337

16–11. Inertial-damped Servomotors 338
16–12. Tachometer Damping 339

DC SERVOMOTORS

16–13. Printed-circuit Motors 339
16–14. Motors with Surface-wound Armatures 341
16–15. Direct-drive Frameless Torque Motors (Inland) 342
16–16. Moving-coil Motors 342

CHAPTER 17. GENERAL CONSTRUCTIONAL FEATURES 345

BEARINGS

17– 1. Sleeve Bearings—Constructions 345
17– 2. Sleeve Bearings—Service and Maintenance 350
17– 3. Ball Bearings—Construction 351
17– 4. Ball Bearings—Service and Maintenance 353

STARTING SWITCHES

17– 5. Centrifugal Starting Switch—General 354
17– 6. Torq Starting Switches 355
17– 7. Other Starting Switches 356
17– 8. Service and Maintenance of Centrifugal Switches 357
17– 9. Magnetic Starting Relays 360

RIGID AND RESILIENT MOUNTINGS AND COUPLINGS

17–10. Types of Mounting 361
17–11. Torque Pulsations in Single-phase Motors 361
17–12. How Resilient Mounting Eliminates Noise due to Torque Pulsations . 363
17–13. Flexible Couplings 365

THERMAL PROTECTORS

17–14. General—Definitions 366
17–15. Underwriters' Laboratories Standards for Thermal Proctectors . . . 367
17–16. Essential Parts of a Thermal Protector 368
17–17. Elementary Principles of Operation of Thermal Protectors 370
17–18. Thermal Protectors for Single-phase Motors 373
17–19. Thermal Protectors for Three-phase Motors 376

GEARMOTORS

17–20. Fractional-horsepower Gearmotors 376
17–21. Gear Reducers for Fractional-horsepower Motors 378
17–22. Subfractional-horsepower Gearmotors 378

CHAPTER 18. TEST EQUIPMENT AND PROCEDURES 382

METERS AND EQUIPMENT

18– 1. Power Source 382
18– 2. Measurement of Voltage 384
18– 3. Measurement of Current 384
18– 4. Measurement of Power Input (Watts) 385
18– 5. Measurement of Power Factor 385
18– 6. Measurement of Frequency 385
18– 7. Measurement of Speed 386
18– 8. Measurement of Slip 386
18– 9. Measurement of Resistance 387
18–10. Measurement of Temperature 387
18–11. Meter Loss Corrections 388
18–12. Meter Connections for Single-phase Circuits 388
18–13. Meter Connections for Polyphase Circuits 389
18–14. Measurement of Mechanical Output 390

TESTS TO TAKE—SINGLE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

18–15. Routine Test 394
18–16. A Complete Engineering Test 394

TESTS TO TAKE—OTHER TYPES

18–17. Adjustable Varying-speed Fan-duty Motors 398
18–18. Polyphase Induction Motors 398
18–19. DC Motors 398
18–20. Universal Motors 399
18–21. Synchronous Motors 399
18–22. High-potential Test (Dielectric Test) 400

SEGREGATION OF LOSSES

18–23. Polyphase Induction Motors 401
18–24. Single-phase Induction Motors 401
18–25. Capacitor-run Motors 404

VIBRATION AND NOISE MEASUREMENTS

18–26. Vibration Measurement 404
18–27. Nature of Sound—Certain Terms Explained 405
18–28. Instrumentation and Noise Testing Procedures 406

APPLICATION TESTS

18–29. Determination of Power Requirements 408
18–30. Determination of Torque Requirements 409

CHAPTER 19. SELECTING THE RIGHT MOTOR FOR THE JOB 411

CLASSIFICATION OF MOTORS ACCORDING TO APPLICATION

19– 1. General-purpose Motors 412
19– 2. Definite-purpose Motors 412
19– 3. Special-purpose Motors 412
19– 4. Standard Ratings and Performance 413

ELECTRICAL CONSIDERATIONS

19– 5. Selection of the Type 415
19– 6. What Full-load Speed? 418
19– 7. Choosing the Horsepower Rating 418
19– 8. Torque Requirements of the Application 419
19– 9. Duty 419

MECHANICAL CONSIDERATIONS

19–10. Enclosure and Method of Cooling 420
19–11. Mounting Arrangements 420
19–12. Bearing Constructions 421
19–13. Shaft Extension 421
19–14. Mechanical Drives 421

DEFINITE-PURPOSE MOTORS

19–15. Permanent-split Capacitor Industrial Instrument Motors and Gearmotors 422
19–16. Low-inertia Servo Industrial Instrument Motors and Gearmotors . . 422
19–17. Universal Motor Parts 422
19–18. Motors for Hermetic Refrigeration Compressors 423
19–19. Motors for Shaft-mounted Fans and Blowers 423
19–20. Shaded-pole Motors for Shaft-mounted Fans and Blowers 424
19–21. Motors for Belted Fans and Blowers 424
19–22. Motors for Air-conditioning Condensers and Evaporator Fans . . . 425
19–23. Motors for Cellar Drainers and Sump Pumps 425
19–24. Motors for Gasoline-dispensing Pumps 426
19–25. Motors for Domestic Oil Burners 427
19–26. Motors for Home-laundry Equipment 428
19–27. Motors for Jet Pumps 428
19–28. Motors for Coolant Pumps 430
19–29. Submersible Motors for Deep Well Pumps 430
19–30. DC Motors Intended for Use on Adjustable-voltage Electronic Power Supplies 430

MISCELLANEOUS

19–31. Service Conditions 431
19–32. Effects of Variation of Voltage and Frequency upon the Performance of Induction Motors 431

19–33. Operation of 60-hz Motors on 50 Hz 432
19–34. Relationships between Power, Torque, and Speed 432
19–35. Radio Interference and Suppression Devices 433

Appendix 435

Glossary 452

Index 459

List of Tables

1–1 Type-letter Designations of Fractional-horsepower Motors 6
1–2 Basis of Rating Induction Motors, except Shaded-pole and Permanent-split Capacitor Motors 25
1–3 Basis of Rating Shaded-pole and Permanent-split Capacitor Motors . 26
1–4 Horsepower and Speed Ratings for Fractional-horsepower Induction Motors, except Permanent-split Capacitor Motors Rated ⅓-hp and Smaller and Shaded-pole Motors 27
1–5 Horsepower and Speed Ratings for Fractional-horsepower Induction Motors of the Permanent-split Capacitor Type Which Are Rated ⅓-hp and Smaller and for Shaded-pole Motors 28
1–6 Temperature Rise of Fractional-horsepower Motors 32
1–7 Locked-rotor-indicating Code Letters 33
1–8 Service Factors for General-purpose AC Motors 34
4–1 Approximate Locked-rotor Torques of Standard Split-phase Motors . . 71
4–2 Torque Characteristics of Laundry Motors 87
4–3 Distribution Factors for Single-phase Concentric Windings 96
5–1 Ratings and Test Limits for AC Electrolytic Capacitors 107
7–1 Approximate Performance Data of 60-hz Permanent-split Capacitor Motors 148
11–1 Performance Specifications of Small 60-hz Reluctance-type Motors, Single-phase, Capacitor 222
11–2 Performance Specifications of Small 60-hz Hysteresis Synchronous Permanent-split Capacitor Single-speed Motors 227
11–3 Performance Specifications of Dual-speed 60-hz Hysteresis Synchronous Permanent-split Capacitor Motors 228
12–1 Dimensions for Universal Motor Parts 241
13–1 Speed Regulation of DC Motors 269
13–2 Currents and Form Factors for Single-phase Controlled Rectifiers . . 290
14–1 Balanced Three-phase Lap Windings 304
14–2 Balanced Three-phase Lap Windings with Unequal Coil Grouping . . 305
14–3 Chord Factors for Polyphase Windings 308
14–4 Distribution Factors for Polyphase Windings 309
15–1 Rotating Machines for Control Systems 313
16–1 Characteristics of 60- and 50-hz Standard Servomotors 331
16–2 Characteristics of 400- and 60-hz Standard Servomotors 332
16–3 Characteristics of Drag-cup Servomotors 335
17–1 Construction Details for Permawick-lubricated Sleeve Bearings . . . 348
17–2 Limiting Temperatures during Locked-rotor Cycling Tests on Thermally Protected Motors 368

18–1 Dielectric Test Voltages for Fractional-horsepower Motors 400
19–1 Performance Characteristics of General-purpose 60-hz Motors 413
19–2 Frame Sizes for 60-hz General-purpose Fractional-horsepower Motors . 415
19–3 Characteristics of Fractional- and Subfractional-horsepower Motors . . 416
19–4 Characteristics of Permanent-split Capacitor Motors for Industrial Instruments 422
19–5 Breakdown Torques and Locked-rotor Currents of Single-phase Motors for Hermetic Refrigeration Compressors 423
19–6 Values of K for Power-torque-speed Calculations 433
A–1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors 435
A–2 Conversion Table for Units of Power 443
A–3 Conversion Table for Units of Torque, Energy, or Work 444
A–4 Table for Converting Degrees Fahrenheit to Degrees Centigrade . . 445
A–5 Wire Table 446
A–6 Natural Sines and Cosines 447
A–7 Fractional Inches to Millimeters and Decimal Inches 449
A–8 Whole Inches to Millimeters 450
A–9 Millimeters to Inches 451

Fractional— and Subfractional— Horsepower Electric Motors

Chapter 1

The Story behind the Nameplate

The first object of interest when any motor is examined is usually the nameplate, because it tells so much about the motor. Whether the motor is to be installed and connected, repaired, or put to a different use, or whether one is simply curious as to what he is looking at, the nameplate is the primary source of information. The nameplate contains the principal information needed to put the motor into service; it describes the motor briefly; it contains a remarkable wealth of information written in a language of its own. To some, little of the information contained thereon is intelligible; to others, most of the information is meaningful; but only to the motor manufacturer himself is all the information usually significant. The message is coded, in a sense; part of this code is common to the industry, and part is the invention of the particular manufacturer to aid in identifying the motor completely, when it becomes necessary to do so.

If it is necessary to write the manufacturer for information, or to order parts, the first and unalterable rule should always be: *Copy the entire nameplate reading.* It is essential to the manufacturer to have the complete reading of the nameplate in order that he can positively identify the motor. Even when it is known that a single number on the plate provides total identification, it is best to send the entire nameplate reading, for it often happens that an error is made in recording or transmitting the important number.[1,*]

Later, we shall examine a typical nameplate, but first let us define the terms *fractional horsepower* and *subfractional horsepower.*

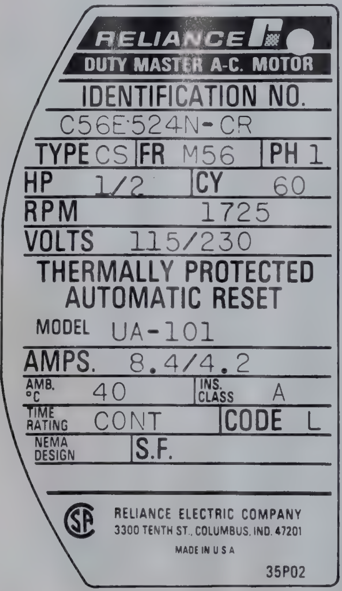
1-1. Fractional- and Subfractional-horsepower Motors. These terms are both defined in the Glossary. Curiously enough, the definition of fractional horsepower is not simple.

(1) *Fractional-horsepower Motor.* A fractional-horsepower motor is any motor built in one of the frame sizes shown in Fig. 19-1, even though the actual rating may be in excess of 1 hp. When these frame sizes were originally developed, all motors built in them having four poles or more were rated at less than 1 hp, but advancing technology has now given us ratings in excess of 1 hp in these frame sizes. The term fractional horsepower relates more to the physical size of the machine than to the actual power output rating. Common ratings are given in Table 19-1 and in the lower half of Table 1-2.

(2) *Subfractional-horsepower Motor.* This term has not been formally defined. By common consent it has come to mean any motor smaller than a fractional-horsepower motor, or any motor rated at less than $\frac{1}{20}$ hp. Common ratings, given in millihorsepower, are shown in the upper half of Table 1-2.

---

* For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.



RELIANCE
DUTY MASTER A-C. MOTOR
IDENTIFICATION NO.
C56E524N-CR
TYPE CS | FR M56 | PH 1
HP 1/2 | CY 60
RPM 1725
VOLTS 115/230
THERMALLY PROTECTED
AUTOMATIC RESET
MODEL UA-101
AMPS. 8.4/4.2
AMB. °C 40 | INS. CLASS A
TIME RATING CONT | CODE L
NEMA DESIGN | S.F.
RELIANCE ELECTRIC COMPANY
3300 TENTH ST., COLUMBUS, IND. 47201
MADE IN U S A
35P02

Fig. 1-1 A motor nameplate.

1-2. Manufacturer. Now, let us examine the typical nameplate, shown in Fig. 1-1. First, the manufacturer's name is listed in a prominent place, together with his address which, in this case, is at the bottom of the plate. Names and addresses of a number of leading manufacturers are given in Table 1-1. The table and the notes that follow it (pp. 5–21) give much information about the products made by each manufacturer and about how he identifies them. The manufacturer's name is often accompanied by a trade name for the particular line of motors; the words "DUTY MASTER" on this nameplate serve that purpose. Such trade names are usually registered or copyrighted by the manufacturer.

1-3. AC. Ac, of course, is the universal abbreviation for alternating current, as distinguished from direct current, or continuous current, as it is sometimes called. The letters AC signify that the motor is intended for use on a circuit of alternating current.

In an ac circuit, the current repeatedly changes its direction of flow through the circuit many times every second. In any dc circuit, the current flows in one direction continuously; while the *magnitude* of the current flowing into a dc motor varies with the amount of the load imposed, *the direction of flow in the circuit does not change.* For this reason, the flow of direct current in a wire is usually likened to the flow of water in a pipe.

The nature of alternating current can be seen by referring to Fig. 1-2, which is a graph of instantaneous current flowing in an ac circuit plotted against time. Points *a, c, e,* and *g* represent instants when the current is zero. From *a*, the current is seen to start at zero, increase to a maximum value at *b*, and decrease to zero at *c*; the current then becomes negative, which signifies that it reverses its direction of flow in the circuit. Flowing in this opposite direction, the current again builds up to a maximum value at *d* and decreases to zero again at *e,* and one cycle is complete.

In other words, the current is reversing its direction of flow continu-

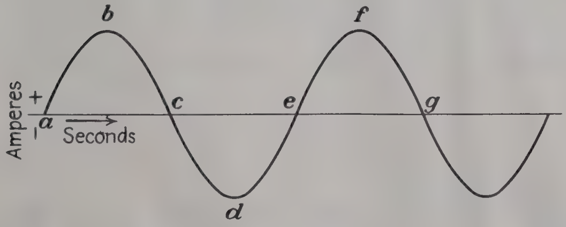


Fig. 1-2 Current flow in an ac circuit.

ally; hence the name *alternating current.* One reversal, as from *b* to *d*, is called an *alternation;* two alternations, as from *a* to *e*, make one *cycle.*

1-4. Identification Number. The identification number shown on the nameplate of Fig. 1-1 is a single number that uniquely identifies this motor to the manufacturer. Some manufacturers use a "Style No.," whereas others may use a "Model No." or other identifying number such as sales-order, instruction-sheet, or simply specification number. Many manufacturers use a coded "serial number," which should always be given when requesting service information, because it often indicates the date of manufacture.

1-5. Type. Fractional-horsepower motors fall naturally into a number of different type classifications, such as *split-phase, capacitor-start, two-value capacitor, permanent-split capacitor, repulsion-induction, repulsion-start induction-run, universal,* etc. Each of these types of motors has its own particular set of characteristics.

Manufacturers usually assign certain letters, or combinations of letters, to denote their major types. For example, on the nameplate of Fig. 1-1 the letters CS stand for "capacitor-start." Each manufacturer has his own code or system of type-letter designations. How to read and interpret the type-letter designations of many manufacturers of fractional-horsepower motors is shown in Table 1-1.

Some motors use type designations for purposes other than to identify the electrical type; such practice is common on military motors, for example.

1-6. Frame (Abbreviated "FR" in Fig. 1-1). Frame size refers principally to the physical size of the machine, as well as to certain constructional features. Standard NEMA frame sizes for fractional-horsepower motors are shown in Fig. 19-1, together with their principal mounting dimensions.

Basic frame number is the D dimension in inches, multiplied by 16. Dimensions BA, E, and H are constant for any given D dimension. (These dimensions are illustrated in Fig. 19-1.)

Suffix letters may be added to a basic frame number to denote variations, as follows:

C—Face mounting
G—Gasoline pump motors (Fig. 19-3)
H—A frame having an F dimension larger than that of the same frame diameter without the H (Fig. 19-1)

J—Jet pump motors (Fig. 19-6*b*)
K—Cellar drainer and sump pump motors (Fig. 19-2)
L—Motors for home laundry equipment
M and N—Oil burner motors (Fig. 19-4)
Y—Special mounting dimensions (dimensions must be obtained from the motor manufacturer)
Z—All mounting dimensions are standard except the shaft extension

Prefixes are added to NEMA frame numbers by some manufacturers. There is no standardization of such prefixes, and each manufacturer uses his own system. Two such examples follow:

(1) *Reliance.* Letter prefixes are used to indicate frame length. Figure 1-1 shows an M. In general, the earlier the letter occurs in the alphabet, the shorter the frame, but for exact dimensions, it is necessary to refer to the manufacturer's dimension sheets.

(2) *Westinghouse.* The following prefixes are used: A, B, D, E, F, H, K, M to indicate a motor frame longer than standard by ¼, ½, 1, 1¼, 1½, 2, 2½, and 3 in., respectively; SA, SB, SD, SF, SH to indicate a frame shorter than standard by ¼, ½, 1, 1½, and 2 in., respectively.

In addition, except for types FE and FLL motors, to any of the above prefix letters may be added the letter T to designate externally fan-cooled construction, as in T56 and TB56, for example. On 48-frame motors, K may be added to designate a motor with a ⅝-in. diameter shaft extension with keyway.

1-7. Phases. Right after "frame" is found the inscription "PH 1." Alternating-current systems may have one, two, or three phases. Single-phase and three-phase systems are the most common.

(1) *Single-phase System.* The single-phase system is the simplest form of ac system. A typical system is shown in Fig. 1-3. Residences, and most other places where fractional-horsepower motors are used, usually are wired only for single-phase alternating current. For this reason, a great majority of fractional-horsepower ac motors are designed for operation on a single-phase system.

(2) *Two-phase Systems.* A two-phase system (see Fig. 1-4, p. 21) can be thought of as two electrically distinct single-phase systems, as

(*Continued on p. 21*)

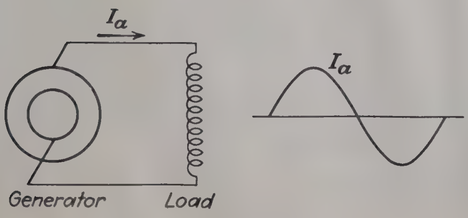


Fig. 1-3 A simple, single-phase, ac system.

TABLE 1-1 Type-letter Designations of Fractional-horsepower Motors*

Manufacturer's name and address	Scope†	Alternating-current							
		Single-phase							
			Capacitor types				Repulsion types		
		Split-phase	Capacitor-start	Permanent-split	Two-value	Adjustable varying-speed	Repulsion	Repulsion-start	Repulsion-induction
American Bosch Arma Corp. 3664 Main St. Springfield, Mass. 01107	S, F, G								
American Process Co. 968 Bradley St. Watertown, N.Y. 13601	F								
Ametek/Lamb Electric Kent, Ohio 44240	F, G	I, IW	CAS	PSC, CA, FCA					
Amphenol Controls Div. Amphenol-Borg Electronics Corp. 120 S. Main Janesville, Wis. 53545	S, G			‡					
Ashland Electric Products, Inc. 32-02 Queens Blvd. Long Is. City, N.Y. 11101	S,F,G			‡					
Baldor Electric Co. 2601 So. Zero St. Fort Smith, Ark. 72903	F	S ······ H§	L ······ CI	C	LC		R ······ RB, RS		
Barber-Colman Co. Rockford, Ill. 61101	S, G			AE,DE, KE,OE					
Bodine Electric Co. 2500 W. Bradley Pl. Chicago, Ill. 60618	S, G	NSI, KSI ······ AE, SA	NCS, KCS	NCI, KCI, KLI	NCCI, KCCI		······ NRF		
Brailsford & Co. Milton Point, Rye, N.Y. 10580	S, G								
Brevel Products Corp. Broad & 16th St. Carlstadt, N.J. 07072	S, G								
Brook Motor Corp. 7400 Croname Rd. Chicago, Ill. 60618	F	S	C	P					

* For additional information see Notes at end of this table (p. 18).

† Scope: S—subfractional horsepower; F—fractional horsepower; G—gearmotors.

‡ Type is built, but there are no specific type letters assigned.

§ Type letters below the dotted lines in the boxes represent obsolete types.

Motors					Ac or dc universal			Direct-current motors			
	1-, 2-, 3-phase synchronous		Polyphase								
Shaded-pole	Reluctance	Hysteresis	Squirrel-cage	Wound-rotor	Uncompensated	Compensated	Governor-controlled	Shunt-wound	Compound-wound	Series-wound	Permanent-magnet
								‡	‡	‡	‡
					‡					‡	‡
			P		CS	CSC		S	C		
	‡	‡	‡								
	MS		M GM, MM		U			D	D	D	D
AA, BA, KA, BB, KB, OB, AF, DF, KF	DK, KJ, OJ									DYLM (split-series)	BLYM, FYLM, HYLM
NSP CA	NSY, NYC, KYC, NYP, NCY, NCCY, KCCY	NCH, KCH, NCCH, KCCH, NPH	NPP, KPP AE, SA		FSE, NSE, VCF, V SM, C		FSEG, NSEG, VCFG CG	NSH EH, ED	NCO EB, SD	FSE, NSE, V, VCF C, D, SM	
										‡	
‡											‡
			T								

TABLE 1-1 Type-letter Designations of Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Manufacturer's name and address	Scope†	Alternating-current							
		Single-phase							
			Capacitor types				Repulsion types		
		Split-phase	Capacitor-start	Permanent-split	Two-value	Adjustable varying-speed	Repulsion	Repulsion-start	Repulsion-induction
Carter Motor Co. 2711 W. George St. Chicago, Ill. 60618	F, S, G			CA					
Century Electric Co. 1806 Pine St. St. Louis, Mo. 63166	F	SP, SPM, SPS, SPX	CS, CSX, CSS	C, CX	CP, CPX	CM, CSM			
Controls Co. of America 201 Monroe St. Owosso, Mich. 48867 (Formerly Redmond Co.)	S, F			CY, CR, CF, CQ					
Crowell Designs, Inc. 2106 Bridge Ave. Pt. Pleasant, N.J. 08742	F, G								
Dayton Electric Mfg. Co. 5959 W. Howard St. Chicago, Ill. 60648	S, F, G	4K, 5K, 6K	4K, 5K, 6K	3M	5R, 6K				
Delco Products Div. of General Motors Dayton, Ohio 45401	S, F	‡	‡	‡	‡	‡		‡	‡
Doerr Electric Corp. Cedarburg, Wis. 53012	F	S	K	C	T				
Dyna Corp. Dayton, Ohio 45401 (Formerly Brown-Brockmeyer)	F, G		CI					RM, RL	
Dyna Technology, Inc. Subsidiary of Southern Gulf Util. P.O. Box 3263 Sioux City, Iowa 51102		Formerly the Wincharger Corp.							
Eastern Air Devices 385 Central Ave. Dover, N.H. 03820	S, F			‡					
Electra Motors, Inc. 1110 N. Lemon St. Anaheim, Calif. 92803	F, G			‡					
Electric Apparatus Co. 409 N. Roosevelt St. Howell, Mich. 48843	F	SP	CI	CRL	CRH	CIM		RI	
Electric Indicator Co. 195 Danbury Rd. Wilton, Conn. 06897	S, F			BS, FS, FBS, ASP, ALLP, G, GL					

† Scope: S—subfractional horsepower; F—fractional horsepower; G—gearmotors.

‡ Type is built, but there are no specific type letters assigned.

§ Type letters below the dotted lines in the boxes represent obsolete types.

Motors					Ac or dc universal			Direct-current motors			
	1-, 2-, 3-phase synchronous		Polyphase								
Shaded-pole	Reluctance	Hysteresis	Squirrel-cage	Wound-rotor	Uncompensated	Compensated	Governor-controlled	Shunt-wound	Compound-wound	Series-wound	Permanent-magnet
					CUA, CUB, MUB, MUC			CSA, CSB, MSB, MSC	CSA, CSB, MSB, MSC	CUA, CUB, MUB, MUC	CTA, CTB, MTB, MTC
			SC, SCT					DN	DN	DN	
AY, AR, AO, AK, AF, AQ, AM	HF	SF, SQ			TW			TW	TW	TW	PV, PE
									‡	‡	
4K, 5K, 6K			2N		2M				5K	2M	
‡	‡		‡	‡					‡		
	-S (suffix)		P								
			PM								
					‡			‡	‡	‡	
‡	‡	‡	‡								‡
			‡								
			SC, SCE	SR							

TABLE 1-1 Type-letter Designations of Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Manufacturer's name and address	Scope†	Alternating-current							
		Single-phase							
			Capacitor types				Repulsion types		
		Split-phase	Capacitor-start	Permanent-split	Two-value	Adjustable varying-speed	Repulsion	Repulsion-start	Repulsion-induction
Electronic Specialty Co. 401 Watertown Rd. Thomaston, Conn. 06787 (Formerly Electric Specialty)	S, F, G	J, K, B	J, K, B, BL	J, K, B, BL	J, K, B, BL		JD, KR, BR, BSR, BLR	BR, BLR, BSR	BR, BLR, BSR
Emerson Elec. Mfg. Co. 8100 Florissant Ave. St. Louis, Mo. 63136	S, F	S	KS	K	KK				
Fasco Industries, Inc. Rochester, N.Y., 14602 (Formerly F. A. Smith Mfg. Co.)	S, F	40, 42, 44, 46, 48, 60, 65			62, 64, 74, 76, 78, 82, 86, 89				
Franklin Electric Co., Inc. 400 E. Spring St. Bluffton, Ind. 46714	F	S	C	CP	C				
General Electric Co. Ft. Wayne, Ind. 46804	S, F	KH, XB BKS, KS, KSA, SA§	KC BKS, RKS	KP, KCP KC, KSC	KP, KC BKS, RKS	KP, KC BKS, RKS		RSA	SCA, SCR
Gleason-Avery, Inc. 45 Aurelius Ave. Auburn, N.Y. 13022	S, G								
Globe Industries Div. of TRW, Inc. 1784 Stanley Ave. Dayton, Ohio 45404	S, G			‡					
Holtzer-Cabot Corp. 125 Amory St. Boston, Mass. 02119	S, F, G	RWS, RBS CBS, CWS	RWE, RBE CBE, CWE	S, H, L, M, RBC, RWC CBC, CWC	RBH, RWH CBH, CWH	RBC, RBH, RWH, RWC CWC, CWH	RBR, RWR	RBR, RWR	
Hoover Electric Co. 2100 S. Stoner Ave. Los Angeles, Calif. 90025	S, G								
Howard Industries, Inc. 2420 18th St. Racine, Wis. 53403	S, F, G	RP, W—RP, S—RP	CS, W—CS, S—CS	PC, W—PC, S—PC	CC, W—CC, S—CC				
IMC Magnetics Corp. 570 Main St. Westbury, N.Y. 11591	S, F, G	‡	‡	‡	‡				

† Scope: S—subfractional horsepower; F—fractional horsepower; G—gearmotors.

‡ Type is built, but there are no specific type letters assigned.

§ Type letters below the dotted lines in the boxes represent obsolete types.

Motors					Ac or dc universal			Direct-current motors			
	1-, 2-, 3-phase synchronous		Polyphase								
Shaded-pole	Reluctance	Hysteresis	Squirrel-cage	Wound-rotor	Uncompensated	Compensated	Governor-controlled	Shunt-wound	Compound wound	Series-wound	Permanent-magnet
	J, K, B	B	J, JK, K, B, BL, BF, BH	BR, BLR, BFR	JB, N	J, JB, BFR, BR, BLR		J, H, R, RL, L, LF, F, FB	J, H, R, RL, L, LF, F, FB	J, H, R, RL, L, LF, F	
F			P								
21, 6, 8, 51											
SP	C, CP		2P, 3P			CS		DC	DC	DC	
KSP, KSB, KSM, KSR	SC, SP, SK, SH	N, NC, NSP	K RKT, RKQ	M	BA, P, PA	PR, RSC	PG	BC, BL, BN SD, RSD	BC SD, RSD	BC, PD SDA	BBY, BL
‡	‡										
		‡	‡		‡			‡		‡	‡
	RBE, S, H, L, M RWS, RBS, RWC, RBC	S, H, L, M RWS, RBS, RWC, RBC	RST, RWT CBT, COT, CRT, CWT	RBT, RWT, CBT, COT, CRT, CWT	RBU, RWU	RBU, RWU		RBD, CWD, CBD COD, CRD	RBD, CWD, CBD COD, CRD	RBD, CWD, CBD COD, CRD	
			‡					‡	‡	‡	
SP, W—SP, S—SP	S, RPS, CSS, PCS, TS	H, RPH, CSH, PCH, SPH, TH	T, TD, TM		U, W—U, S—U	U, W—U, S—U	U, W—U, S—U	DK, W—DK, S—DK	DW, W—DW, S—DW	DV, W—DV, S—DV	PM, W—PM, S—PM
	‡	‡	‡					‡	‡	‡	‡

TABLE 1-1 Type-letter Designations of Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Manufacturer's name and address	Scope†	Alternating-current							
		Single-phase							
			Capacitor types				Repulsion types		
		Split-phase	Capacitor start	Permanent-split	Two-value	Adjustable varying-speed	Repulsion	Repulsion-start	Repulsion-induction
Insco Corp. Main St. Groton, Mass. 01450	S, G								
Janette Div., Holtzer-Cabot 125 Amory St. Boston, Mass. 02119	F, G	SS, SU, SA	KU, KA, KS, KC - - - - SAK, SSK, SCK§	KC, KS, KA, KU	KC, KS, KA, KU		- - - - RS, RC	- - - - RS, RC	
Jones Motrola Corp. 432 Fairfield Ave. Stamford, Conn. 06904	S, F, G								
Kearfott Products Division General Precision Systems, Inc. 1150 McBride Ave. Little Falls, N.J. 07424	S, G			‡	‡				
Kingston-Conley Elec. Co. Div. of Howell International 900 No. Ave. Plainfield, N.J. 07061	F	SP, SB	J, K, L, M, N, P, S, T, V, W, X, KP, KB	C	CSR				
Leland Electric Co. Div. of Howell International Dayton, Ohio 45401	F	KS, KT, KS2	KL, KK, KL2	KV, KM	KV, K	KV, KM, KM2, KM3		PA, R	RP
Mamco Corporation 532–542 Fourth St. Racine, Wis. 53404	S, F, G								
Marathon Elec. Mfg. Corp. Wausau, Wis. 54401	F	SS - - - - A, AA, N, NU	SCS	SC	B	- - - - CF, C2F		- - - - SR, MR	
Mechatrol Div., Teledyne, Inc. 235 So. Penn St. Burlington, N.J. 08016	S, G								
Molon Motor and Coil Co. 3737 Industrial Ave. Rolling Meadows, Ill. 60008	S, G			QMO					
Motor Appliance Corp. St. Louis Air Park, P.O. Box 22 Chesterfield, Mo. 63017	F	S	L	C					

† Scope: S—subfractional horsepower; F—fractional horsepower; G—gearmotors.

‡ Type is built, but there are no specific type letters assigned.

§ Type letters below the dotted lines in the boxes represent obsolete types.

Motors											
	1-, 2-, 3-phase synchronous		Polyphase		Ac or dc universal			Direct-current motors			
Shaded-pole	Reluctance	Hysteresis	Squirrel-cage	Wound-rotor	Uncompensated	Compensated	Governor-controlled	Shunt-wound	Compound-wound	Series-wound	Permanent-magnet
	‡	‡									
	KU, PU, KA, PA, KS, PS, KC, PC	KU, PU, KA, PA, KS, PS, KC, PC	PU, PA, PS, PC, PD, PE, PF	WPC, WPD, WPE, WPF	UJ, UU		UG	DU, DA, DS, DC, DD, DE, DF	DU, DA, DS, DC, DD, DE, DF	DU, DA, DS, DC, DD, DE, DF	
					‡					‡	
		‡	‡								
			A, B, C, D, AJ, AK, AL, AM, AT, AV								
			PA, P, P2, P3, P8, PC					DM, D	DM, D	DM, D	
‡					‡						
			TS, QS		U			DS	DP	DX	
		‡									
ZMO, SMO											
			‡								

TABLE 1-1 Type-letter Designations of Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Manufacturer's name and address	Scope†	Alternating-current							
		Single-phase							
			Capacitor types				Repulsion types		
		Split-phase	Capacitor-start	Permanent-split	Two-value	Adjustable varying-speed	Repulsion	Repulsion-start	Repulsion-induction
Motor Specialty, Inc. 2801-17 Lathrop Ave. Racine, Wis. 53405	F								
Motoresearch Mfg. Co. 1600 Junction Ave. Racine, Wis. 53403	S, G								
Motron Electric Div. Brevel Products, Inc. 7842 Burnett Ave. Van Nuys, Calif. 91405	S								
Northwestern Electric Co. 1750 No. Springfield Ave. Chicago, Ill. 60647	F, G						‡		
Ohio Elec. Mfg. Co. Div. of Howell International 5400 Dunham Rd. Cleveland, Ohio 44137	F	SP	CS	CP	CSR	CP			
Oster, John, Mfg. Co. 5055 No. Lydell Ave. Milwaukee, Wis. 53217	S, F								
Pittman Corporation Sellersville, Pa. 18960	S								
Porter, H. K. Co., Elect. Div. 1401 W. Market St. Warren, Ohio 44484 (Formerly Peerless Elec. Co.)	F	S	CT, CY …… CE§	C	CTC, CYC …… CEC	…… C	H	…… H, R	BH
Rae Motor Corp., P.O. Box 518 McHenry, Ill. 60050	F								
Reliance Electric Co. Master Electric Div. Columbus, Ind. 47201	F, G	SP	CS	CL	CH	CL	RR	RA	RE
Robbins and Myers, Inc. 1345 Lagonda Ave. Springfield, Ohio 45501	S, F	KS, KSB	KL, KLB, KLG	KP, KPB, KPT	KK				
Rotating Components Div. Instrument Systems Corp. 1560 5th Ave., Bay Shore Long Island, N.Y. 11706	S, G			‡					
Servo-Tek Products, Inc. 1086 Goffle Rd. Hawthorne, N.J. 07506	S								
Singer Co., The, Diehl Div. Finderne Plant Somerville, N.J. 08876	S, F	FA, ZA …… XA, GA	FT, ZT …… XT	FB, ZB, JBF …… XB	ZC	ZB		…… ZIR, ZR	

† Scope: S—subfractional horsepower; F—fractional horsepower; G—gearmotors.

‡ Type is built, but there are no specific type letters assigned.

§ Type letters below the dotted lines in the boxes represent obsolete types.

Motors					Ac or dc universal			Direct-current motors			
	1-, 2-, 3-phase synchronous		Polyphase								
Shaded-pole	Reluctance	Hysteresis	Squirrel-cage	Wound-rotor	Uncompensated	Compensated	Governor-controlled	Shunt-wound	Compound-wound	Series-wound	Permanent-magnet
					‡			‡		‡	
AC			HF								
										‡	‡
‡				‡		‡		‡	‡	‡	
SH	SN		P					D	D	D	DPM
‡					‡						‡
											‡
			P		UD	UD		D	D	D	DPM
					‡			‡		‡	‡
	SPR, CSR, PR		P PA, PB					DM, T, TR	DM, T, TR	DM, T, TR	TRP
K	SL, SKL, SKP, SKS		L		B	B		D, DW	D, DW	D, DW	
	‡	‡	‡								
											‡
FS, GS	‡	‡	FP, NP, ZP, JPF		AU, DY, BU, BR		AU, FU, FD, BU	FD, ND	FD, ND	FD, ND	

TABLE 1-1 Type-letter Designations of Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Manufacturer's name and address	Scope†	Alternating-current							
		Single-phase							
			Capacitor types				Repulsion types		
		Split-phase	Capacitor start	Permanent-split	Two-value	Adjustable varying-speed	Repulsion	Repulsion-start	Repulsion-induction
Small Motors, Inc. 2076 Elston Ave. Chicago, Ill. 60614	S, G	SP	KS	PSC					
Smith, A. O., Corp. 531 No. Fourth St. Tipp City, Ohio 45371	F	S, SP	C, CS	F, PSC	K				
Sunbeam Electronics Div. John Oster Mfg. Co. Industrial Air Park Ft. Lauderdale, Fla. 33307	S, G	‡		‡	‡				
Triem, Inc., So. Greensboro St. Carrboro, N.C. 27510	S			‡					
UMC Electronics Co. Beau Motor Div. 460 Sackett Pt. Rd. North Haven, Conn. 06473	S								
Universal Electric Co. 300 E. Main St. Owosso, Mich. 48867	S	DG, DH, AG, AH, HG, HH	AE, AF, DE, DF, HE, HF	AE, AF, DE, DF, HE, HF	AE, AF, DE, DF, HE, HF				
Uppco, Inc. 900 So. Desplaines St. Chicago, Ill. 60607	S			2CL					
Wagner Electric Corp. 6400 Plymouth Ave. St. Louis, Mo. 63133	F	HB, RB, TB	HK, RK, TK	RZ, TZ	RY, TY		RH, TH	RA, TA	HG, RG, TG
Welco Industries, Inc. 9027 Shell Rd. Cincinnati, O. 45236	F		NC, NBC§	M, W NC, NBC	NC, NBC	NC, NBC			
Westinghouse Electric Corp. P.O. Box 566 Lima, Ohio 45802	S, F	FH, FHT CAH, CA, DA	FJ, FZ CT	FL, FLL CT	FT CT	FL, FLL CT	FV, RV CV	FR, CR, AR	FU, CU, ARS

† Scope: S—subfractional horsepower; F—fractional horsepower; G—gearmotors.

‡ Type is built, but there are no specific type letters assigned.

§ Type letters below the dotted lines in the boxes represent obsolete types.

Motors					Ac or dc universal			Direct-current motors			
	1-, 2-, 3-phase synchronous		Polyphase								
Shaded-pole	Reluctance	Hysteresis	Squirrel-cage	Wound-rotor	Uncompensated	Compensated	Governor-controlled	Shunt-wound	Compound-wound	Series-wound	Permanent-magnet
‡	RS		‡		SE			SH	SHC	SE	PM
			P								
	‡	‡						‡	‡	‡	‡
‡					‡			‡			
		MS, SP									
AA, AB, BA, BB, CA, CB, DA, DB, EA			AL, AM, DL, DM, HL, HM		VZ, WY, WZ, YY, YZ, ZZ			VZ, WY, WZ, YY, YZ, ZZ	VZ, WY, WZ, YY, YZ, ZZ	VZ, WY, WZ, YY, YZ, ZZ	
P, 2A, 4A, 2CA, 4L											
RM, TM			CP, HP, RP, TP								
	RN, TN			RS, TS				RD, TD	RD, TD	RD, TD	
			DP, SP, EP								
			M, W								
			N, B	NR, NBR				H, HB	H, HB	H, HB	
FE	FBH, FBJ, FBL, FBT, FBS		FS		ADS	AD		FK	FK	FK	
CF			CS, CSA	FW, CW			ADS AD	SKL CD, CDH	SKL, CD	FI, SF, SKL, CD	
	CSS										

Notes for Table 1-1

Ametek/Lamb Electric. Motors are now identified by a model number. Formerly they were identified by an I.S. (instruction sheet) number. Either number is stamped on the nameplate, if there is one; if not, it is stamped on the rotor or stator. Ametek/Lamb also makes an inverter-driven ac ("Brushless dc") motor, identified by the trade name KOMLECTRO.

Ashland Electric Products, Inc. Makes dual- and triple-speed hysteresis synchronous motors, both 60-hz and 400-hz.

Barber-Colman. Additional shaded-pole types: OF, CF, AR, BR, CR, DR. Additional permanent-magnet types: BYQM, CYQM, DYQM, KYLM. Also make YAD-type brushless dc motors (ac motor with transistor circuit). Governor control furnished on some motors.

Bodine Electric Company. Motor type designations: First letter indicates motor frame style (N, K, V, F). Remaining letters indicate type of winding (SI, CI, SE, SH). First digit indicates stack outside diameter and second digit, the stack length.

Brailsford and Company. Specialize in brushless dc motors, of very small size and rating for instruments and timing applications.

Brevel Products Co. Motors are more broadly classified by series rather than by type, which is usually a variation within a "Series."

Series M—For two-pole shaded-pole motors
Series Q—For four-pole motors made in Scarborough, Canada
Series F, G, H, L, S, and W are gearmotors

Brook Motor Corp. The type letters are used as prefixes to the frame designation. "Gryphon" is a trade name for their motors.

Century Electric Company.
Types CSH and CPH are high-torque motors.
Types CSX and CPX are medium-torque motors.
Type CX is fan-duty.
Type SPS is for special service.
Type SPX is for furnace duty.

Controls Co. of America, Motor Div. Line includes single-bearing motors for condenser fans.

Crowell Designs, Inc. Motors are designed for marine and industrial service.

Delco Products. See Art. **1-12** for explanation of markings of thermally protected motors.

Doerr Electric Corp. Type letters given in the table refer to open or drip-proof motors. Additional letters may be added to denote other enclosures. These are:

F—Totally enclosed, fan-cooled
N—Totally enclosed, nonventilated
CO—Open, fan-duty, air-over
C—Enclosed, fan-duty, air-over
X—Open, fan-cooled
FU—TEFC explosion-proof

CU—Enclosed, fan-duty, air-over, explosion-proof
NB—Enclosed, blower-cooled, forced-ventilated
B—Open, blower-cooled, forced-ventilated
Synchronous motors are designated by adding an S to any type letter(s).

Electric Apparatus Company (formerly Howell Electric Co.). Builds principally very special motors.

Electric Indicator Company. Makes five-speed synchronous motors (see Fig. 11-9).

Electronic Specialty Company. Polarized synchronous motors are built with a permanent magnet and give only one pull-in point per pair of poles.

Franklin Electric Company. Has made a specialty of submersible motors for deep-well pumps (see Fig. 19-7).

General Electric Company. Type-letter designations are usually a part of the "Model No." Additional type-letter designations are:

AY, AZ, BY, KY, LY—Motors or generators of special design
D—Dynamotors
H—Synchronous converters
KX—Reactor split-phase motor
KY—Special motor, dual-voltage
PA—Low-speed, ac, series-wound
PE—Tapped series motors
PY—Special design, series motor
PF—Shunted-series motors
SM, SMY—Synchronous-inductor motor, slow speed
SMK—Synchronous motor, permanent-magnet rotor
SSA, SAS—Synchronous split-phase, wound rotor
SX—Synchronous reactor-start motors
YA—Induction disk and synochronous motors of similar construction

Globe Industries. A diversified line of miniature motors, mostly built to military specifications, with many civilian counterparts. Type letters usually denote physical size and mechanical construction as well as electrical type, giving rise to too many combinations to list in the table. Line includes 400- as well as 60-hz motors, and also inverter-driven ("brushless dc") ac motors.

Holtzer-Cabot Corp. In the type letters shown in the table, the first letter indicates frame construction: R is rolled-frame; C is a cast frame. The second letter indicates bearing construction: W is for wool-packed sleeve; B is for ball bearings; O or R indicates oil-ring sleeve bearings. A fourth letter, K, is added to the motor type designation when a Klixon thermal protector is incorporated into the motor.

Instrument motors are designated by an eight-digit catalog number. The first is alphabetic and denotes frame size. The second two digits denote the stack length. Next, an alphabetic character denotes the electrical type: B represents a high-slip induction motor; C a compound winding; E a series (split-field) motor; N a low-slip motor; H a hysteresis motor; P a polarized synchronous motor; R a reluctance synchronous motor; Z a 24-size with a high-impedance control winding; S a shunt winding; T a 24-size with a low-impedance control winding; V a torque motor. The last four digits indicate the gear ratio. A sample catalog number is S05R0180.

Hoover Electric Company. Company specializes in custom-built dc and 400-hz motors for aircraft service.

Howard Industries, Inc. Electrical type letters form the first part of the model number. Basic types are designated generally by two letters, except for polyphase and universal, denoted by P and U, respectively. Special types which are variations on a basic type are designated by a second or third letter, as follows:

H—Hysteresis synchronous
S—Reluctance synchronous
T—Torque motor
M—Multiple speed
D—Two-speed

Examples of the application of this last letter are seen in the table; for example, RPS—split-phase reluctance motor; CSH—capacitor-start hysteresis motor; TD—two-speed polyphase motor; TS—polyphase reluctance motor.

The second part of the model number designates frame diameter, basic line construction, and stacking length.

The third part of the model number consists of three letters, describing, respectively, mounting, type of bearings, and enclosure or mechanical protection and method of cooling.

Gear unit designations precede motor designations: S denotes spur, and W indicates worm. A typical designation is S07PC26A28DBO.

Insco Corporation. Features a six-speed gear box, adjustable while running.

Leland Electric. The complete identification of a motor consists of (1) motor type, (2) motor frame, and (3) motor form. Minor modifications are covered by the *specification number,* which is unique for each rating and mechanical design.

The nameplate serial number consists of

The *specification number* of five digits
The *date of manufacture,* coded in two letters
The *serial number* of four or five digits

The following types of motors in the table are two-speed motors: KT, KS2, P8. Type PC is three-speed.

Mamco Corporation. Specializes in custom-built applications.

Mechatrol Div., Teledyne Corp. Motors mostly built to military specifications.

Molon Motor and Coil Co. Also makes polarized synchronous motors.

Motor Specialty, Inc. All motors, armatures and fields, are stamped with a *specification number* and *date code.* If the motor has a nameplate, the specification number appears on it.

Porter, H. K. Co., Inc., Electrical Division (formerly Peerless Electric Co.), Motors are still marketed with trade name "Peerless."

Rotating Components Div., Instrument Systems Corp. Motors are built to military specifications. Servo, motor generators, drag-cup motors, PM generators, induction motors, inverter-driven ac motors (brushless dc), hysteresis synchronous and polarized synchronous motors.

Servo-Tek Products Co. Specializes in miniature dc motors and in adjustable-speed drive equipment.

Singer Co., Diehl Div.

F, used as a first letter, indicates a subfractional rating.
A, used as a first letter, indicates a flat-sided motor.
N, used as a first letter, indicates a Navy motor.
E, used as the last letter, indicates an enclosed motor.

UMC Electronics Co. Makes "inside-out" motors.

MS—Multispeed hysteresis synchronous motor
SP—Single-purpose hysteresis synchronous motor
VS, VT—Ac torque motor

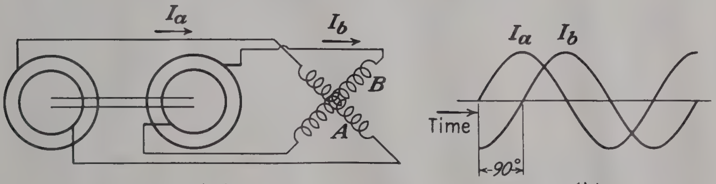
Wagner Electric Co. The following letters, used as the first of two type letters, have the following significance:

C—steel frame, enclosed, fan-cooled
D—cast-iron frame, open (obsolete)
E—cast-iron frame, enclosed (obsolete)
H—explosion-proof, UL labeled
J—explosion-proof, UL labeled (obsolete)
R—open motor
T—steel frame, enclosed, nonventilated

(Continued from p. 5)

illustrated. There, the two ac generators are shown mechanically coupled, and the loads are electrically distinct, one from another. The currents in both phases alternate through their respective cycles, as shown in Fig. 1-4*b*, but they do not reverse simultaneously. The current in phase B reaches its maximum value one-quarter cycle behind the current in phase A; in fact, the current in phase B always reaches any particular point in its own cycle 90°, or one-quarter cycle, behind the time when the current in phase A reaches the same point in its cycle; hence the two-phase system is sometimes designated as a quarter-phase system.

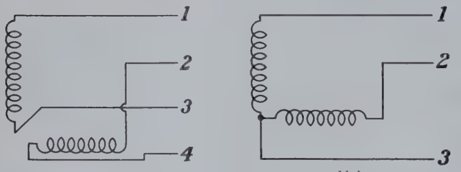
In practice, however, only a single ac generator is used, instead of the two shown in Fig. 1-4. This single machine has two electrically distinct windings, or phases, which are displaced 90 electrical degrees in space so that the voltages induced in them are 90° out of phase. A two-phase system may be four-wire or three-wire, as shown in Fig. 1-5. Two-phase systems are rarely used today.



(a) (b)

Fig. 1-4 A two-phase system with two single-phase generators.

(3) *Three-phase Systems.* For simplicity's sake, it may be well to think of a three-phase system as three electrically distinct single-phase systems with three distinct sources of voltage, and two wires for each phase, making six wires in all, as shown in Fig. 1-6*a*. In this figure, each source of voltage is represented by a single coil as A, B, or C. This system is arranged so that the currents in the respective three phases reach their maximum value in time at three different instants, differing by one-third cycle, i.e., by 120°, as shown in Fig. 1-6*b*. In practice, however, the three phases are not usually electrically distinct as they generally are in two-phase systems. The reason, of course, is the unnecessary complication and expense of using six wires, and resort is had to other systems described in the following paragraphs.



(a)
4-wire system

(b)
3-wire system

Fig. 1-5 Practical two-phase systems.

Figure 1-7*a* represents the system shown in Fig. 1-6, except that a common return wire has been used for all three phases. (The three phases are now no longer electrically distinct, for they are using a common return wire.) This type of system is often used in practice. Sometimes the common return, or neutral, is grounded; sometimes the earth itself is made to act as the common return circuit. If the load is balanced, the current in this return wire is zero at all instants; and since the wire carries no current, it can be omitted, as shown in Fig. 1-7*b*. The

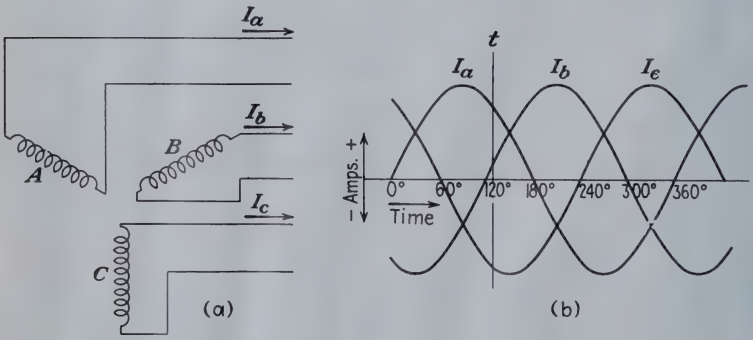
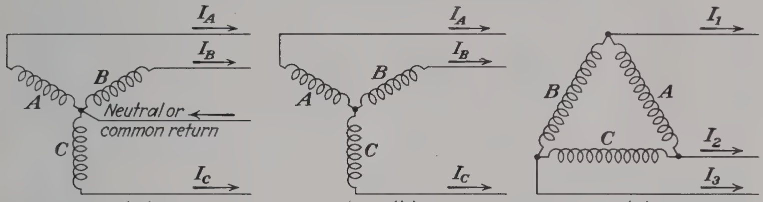


Fig. 1-6 A three-phase six-wire system.

reader may check this point by drawing any vertical line, as *t,* in Fig. 1-6*b,* and adding up the instantaneous values of the three currents; he will find that the sum of the three currents is zero. In like manner, if the line *t* is drawn at any other point, it will also be found that



(a)
Y-Connected system
With neutral
(4-wire system)

(b)
Y-Connected system
Without neutral
(3-wire system)

(c)
Delta-connected system

Fig. 1-7 Thee-phase Y- and delta-connected systems.

the sum of the three currents is zero. Therefore, the fourth wire is unnecessary in a balanced three-phase system and often is omitted. Both of these connections are *Y connections,* also called *wye connections* or *star connections.* The line-to-line voltage = $\sqrt{3}$ × line-to-neutral voltage, and line-to-neutral voltage = 0.577 × line-to-line voltage. Windings of three-phase fractional-horsepower induction motors are usually star-connected.

Another form of connection is the *delta connection,* shown in Fig. 1-7*c.* This connection undoubtedly derives its name from its similarity of appearance to the Greek capital delta. With this connection and a balanced three-phase load, the line currents are all equal to $\sqrt{3}$ multiplied by the current in the individual phases or coils.

All connections and systems described above are applicable to motors as well as to generators.

1-8. HP (Horsepower). Electric motors, like any other motors, are usually rated in *horsepower.* Originally, a motor was said to be developing 1 hp when it was doing work at the rate of 33,000 ft-lb per min. This figure is said to have been arrived at by determining the average rate at which London dray horses could do work over an 8-hr period. The watt is also a unit of power; 745.7 watts are equivalent to 33,000 ft-lb per min. In the United States, a horsepower is now defined as 746 watts exactly.

Millihorsepower (abbreviated mhp) is often used for rating subfractional-horsepower motors. A millihorsepower is 0.001 hp or 0.746 watt.

In Europe, and elsewhere where the metric system is used, rated power output is usually expressed in *chevaux-vapeur,* or simply *cheval,* abbreviated *cv.* One *cheval* is equivalent to 735.5 watts, which is close enough to the 746-watt horsepower for most practical purposes. Often the rated power output is expressed in watts by European manufacturers.

The horsepower figure stamped on the nameplate is the horsepower the motor is rated to develop when connected to a circuit of the voltage, frequency, and number of phases specified on the motor nameplate. Some motors will develop their rated horsepower continuously, and others are designed for use on intermittent service and are rated to develop their horsepower for only a limited period. This length of time is stamped on the nameplate in some fashion and signifies the time the motor will carry its rated load without exceeding the temperature rating, which is also stamped on the nameplate. This time may be indicated by "Cont." for continuous or by a definite time interval, such as "30 min." (See Art. 1-15.)

Until recently, the horsepower rating implied only the load-carrying ability of the motor, and torques were separately specified. NEMA now defines the term "horsepower" primarily on the basis of the breakdown torque of the motor; this definition eliminates the separate torque specifications. Values of breakdown torque for the purpose of defining horsepower rating are given in Tables 1-2 and 1-3, reproduced from NEMA.

1-9. Frequency (CY, CYC, HZ). "CY," on the nameplate of Fig. 1-1, is the abbreviation for cycles. As we saw in Art. 1-3, a *cycle* consists of two reversals. *Frequency* refers to the rate of these reversals. Customarily, frequency has long been expressed in *cycles per second,* or, loosely, *cycles* with the "per second" implied or understood. More recent practice is to express frequency in *hertz,* abbreviated *hz,* where a hertz is one cycle per second.

In the United States and Canada, 60 hz is standard, whereas in other parts of the world, a frequency of 50 hz generally predominates.

1-10. RPM. It hardly needs saying that RPM, also written rpm, stands for revolutions per minute. This figure represents the approximate speed at which the motor will run when properly connected and delivering its rated output. In the case of synchronous motors, this figure is exact.

The full-load speed of a normal *induction* motor is determined primarily by the frequency and number of poles.* For fractional-horsepower induction motors, except permanent-split and shaded-pole types, approximate full-load speeds are given in Table 1-4. Full-load speeds for shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors are given in Table 1-5. Conversely, these tables can be used to determine the number of poles for which the motor is wound.

* For the significance of the term "number of poles," see Art. 2-15.

TABLE 1-2 Basis of Rating Induction Motors, Except Shaded-pole and Permanent-split Capacitor Motors*

60	50	60	50–25	60	50	60	50–25	. . .	Frequencies, hz
3600	3000	1800	1500	1200	1000	900	750	. . .	Synchronous speeds, rpm
3450‡	2850‡	1725‡	1425‡	1140‡	950‡	850‡	. . . . .	. . .	Fractional-horsepower nominal speeds, rpm
								Mhp	The figures at left are for motors rated less than 1/20 hp. Breakdown torques in oz-in.
0.35–0.55	0.42–0.66	0.7–1.1	0.85–1.3	1.1–1.65	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	1	
0.55–0.7	0.66–0.85	1.1–1.45	1.3–1.75	1.65–2.2	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	1.5	
0.7–1.1	0.85–1.3	1.45–2.2	1.75–2.6	2.2–3.3	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	2	
1.1–1.8	1.3–2.2	2.2–3.6	2.6–4.3	3.3–5.4	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	3	
1.8–2.7	2.2–3.2	3.6–5.4	4.3–6.6	5.4–8.1	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	5	
2.7–3.6	3.2–4.3	5.4–7.2	6.6–8.6	8.1–11	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	7.5	
3.6–5.5	4.3–6.6	7.2–11	8.6–13	11–17	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	10	
5.5–9.5	6.6–11.4	11–19	13–23	17–29	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	15	
9.5–15	11.4–18	19–30	23–36	29–46	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	25	
15–24	18–28.8	30–48	36–57.6	46–72	. . . .	. . . .	. . .	35	
								Hp	The figures at left are for fractional-horsepower motors. Breakdown torques in oz-ft.
2.0– 3.7	2.4– 4.4	4.0– 7.1	4.8– 8.5	6.0–10.4	7.2–12.4	8.0–13.5	. . .	1/20	
3.7– 6.0	4.4– 7.2	7.1–11.5	8.5–13.8	10.4–16.5	12.4–19.8	13.5–21.5	. . .	1/12	
6.0– 8.7	7.2–10.5	11.5–16.5	13.8–19.8	16.5–24.1	19.8–28.9	21.5–31.5	. . .	1/8	
8.7–11.5	10.5–13.8	16.5–21.5	19.8–25.8	24.1–31.5	28.9–37.8	31.5–40.5	. . .	1/6	
11.5–16.5	13.8–19.8	21.5–31.5	25.8–37.8	31.5–44.0	37.8–53.0	40.5–58.0	. . .	1/4	
16.5–21.5	19.8–25.8	31.5–40.5	37.8–48.5	44.0–58.0	53.0–69.5	58.0–77.0	. . .	1/3	
21.5–31.5	25.8–37.8	40.5–58.0	48.5–69.5	58.0–82.5	69.5–99.0	†	†	1/2	
31.5–44.0	37.8–53.0	58.0–82.5	69.5–99.0	†	†	†	†	3/4	
44.0–58.0	53.0–69.5	† †	† †	†	†	†	†	1	

---

* From NEMA.

† These are not fractional horsepower ratings.

‡ These approximate full-load speeds are standard only for fractional-horsepower motor ratings.

NOTE 1: The breakdown torque range includes the higher figure down to, but not including, the lower figure.

NOTE 2: The horsepower rating of motors designed to operate on two or more frequencies shall be determined by the torque at the highest rated frequency.

TABLE 1-3 Basis of Rating Shaded-pole and Permanent-split Capacitor Motors*

60	50	60	50	60	Hp	Frequencies, hz
1800	1500	1200	1000	900		Synchronous speeds, rpm
See Tables 1-4 and 1-5						Approximate full-load speeds, rpm
					Mhp	The figures at left are breakdown torques in oz-in.
0.89–1.1	1.1–1.3	1.3–1.6	1.6–1.9	1.7–2.1	1	
1.1–1.4	1.3–1.7	1.6–2.1	1.9–2.5	2.1–2.7	1.25	
1.4–1.7	1.7–2.0	2.1–2.5	2.5–3.0	2.7–3.3	1.5	
1.7–2.1	2.0–2.5	2.5–3.1	3.0–3.7	3.3–4.1	2	
2.1–2.6	2.5–3.1	3.1–3.8	3.7–4.6	4.1–5.0	2.5	
2.6–3.2	3.1–3.8	3.8–4.7	4.6–5.7	5.0–6.2	3	
3.2–4.0	3.8–4.8	4.7–5.9	5.7–7.1	6.2–7.8	4	
4.0–4.9	4.8–5.8	5.9–7.2	7.1–8.7	7.8–9.5	5	
4.9–6.2	5.8–7.4	7.2–9.2	8.7–11.0	9.5–12.0	6	
6.2–7.7	7.4–9.2	9.2–11.4	11.0–13.6	12.0–14.9	8	
7.7–9.6	9.2–11.4	11.4–14.2	13.6–17.0	14.9–18.6	10	
9.6–12.3	11.4–14.7	14.2–18.2	17.0–21.8	18.6–23.8	12.5	
12.3–15.3	14.7–18.2	18.2–22.6	21.8–27.1	23.8–29.6	16	
15.3–19.1	18.2–22.8	22.6–28.2	27.1–33.8	29.6–37.0	20	
19.1–23.9	22.8–28.5	28.2–35.3	33.8–42.3	37.0–46.3	25	
23.9–30.4	28.5–36.3	35.3–44.9	42.3–53.9	46.3–58.9	30	
30.4–38.3	36.3–45.6	44.9–56.4	53.9–68.4	58.9–74.4	40	
					Hp	The figures at left are breakdown torques in oz-ft
3.20–4.13	3.80–4.92	4.70–6.09	5.70–7.31	6.20–8.00	1/20	
4.13–5.23	4.92–6.23	6.09–7.72	7.31–9.26	8.00–10.1	1/15	
5.23–6.39	6.23–7.61	7.72–9.42	9.26–11.3	10.1–12.4	1/12	
6.39–8.00	7.61–9.54	9.42–11.8	11.3–14.2	12.4–15.5	1/10	
8.00–10.4	9.54–12.4	11.8–15.3	14.2–18.4	15.5–20.1	⅛	
10.4–12.7	12.4–15.1	15.3–18.8	18.4–22.5	20.1–24.6	⅙	
12.7–16.0	15.1–19.1	18.8–23.6	22.5–28.3	24.6–31.0	⅕	
16.0–21.0	19.1–25.4	23.6–31.5	28.3–37.6	31.0–41.0	¼	
21.0–31.5	25.4–37.7	31.5–47.0	37.6–56.5	41.0–61.0	⅓	
31.5–47.5	37.7–57.3	47.0–70.8	56.5–84.8	3.81–5.81	½	The figures at left are breakdown torques in lb-ft
47.5–63.5	57.3–76.5	4.42–5.88	5.30–7.06	5.81–7.62	¾	
3.97–5.94	4.78–7.06	5.88–8.88	7.06–10.6	7.62–11.6	1	
5.94–7.88	7.06–9.56	8.88–11.8	10.6–14.1	11.6–15.2	1½	

* From NEMA.

NOTE 1: The breakdown torque range includes the higher figure down to, but not including, the lower figure.

NOTE 2: The horsepower rating of motors designed to operate on two or more frequencies shall be determined by the torque at the highest rated frequency.

The temperature of the motor at the start of the test for breakdown torque shall be approximately 25°C.

The minimum value of breakdown torque obtained in the manufacture of any design will determine the rating of that design. Tolerances in manufacturing will result in individual motors having breakdown torque from 100 percent to approximately 115 percent (125 percent for motors rated in millihorsepower and for all shaded-pole motors) of the value on which the rating is based, but this excess torque shall not be relied upon by the user in applying the motor to its load.

TABLE 1-4 Horsepower and Speed Ratings for Fractional-horsepower Induction Motors, Except Permanent-split Capacitor Motors Rated 1/3-hp and Smaller and Shaded-pole Motors*

Horsepower	60-hz synchronous rpm	All motors except shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor	Permanent-split capacitor motors	50-hz synchronous rpm	All motors except shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor	Permanent-split capacitor motors
		Approximate full-load rpm			Approximate full-load rpm	
1, 1.5, 2, 3, 5, 7.5, 10, 15, 25, and 35 mhp	3600	3450	....	3000	2850	
	1800	1725	....	1500	1425	
	1200	1140	....	1000	950	
	900	....	....			
1/20, 1/12, and 1/8 hp	3600	3450	....	3000	2850	
	1800	1725	....	1500	1425	
	1200	1140	....	1000	950	
	900	850	....			
1/6, 1/4, and 1/3 hp	3600	3450	....	3000	2850	
	1800	1725	....	1500	1425	
	1200	1140	....	1000	950	
	900	850	....			
1/2 hp	3600	3450	3250	3000	2850	2700
	1800	1725	1625	1500	1425	1350
	1200	1140	1075	1000	950	900
3/4 hp	3600	3450	3250	3000	2850	2700
	1800	1725	1625	1500	1425	1350
1 hp	3600	3450	3250	3000	2850	2700

* From NEMA.
hertz (hz) = cycles per second.

Occasionally, two or more speeds are stamped on the nameplate. If the speeds are close together, as in 1725/1425 rpm, the motor is probably a dual-frequency motor; but this point can be checked definitely by referring to the frequency stamping. Such a motor is, however, a single-speed motor. Dual-frequency stamping is more common in the case of polyphase motors than it is in the case of single-phase motors. If the two speeds are in the ratio of approximately 3:2 or 2:1, the motor is probably a *multispeed motor*. The change in speeds may be effected by changing the number of poles in the winding, in which case definite

TABLE 1-5 Horsepower and Speed Ratings for Fractional-horsepower Induction Motors of the Permanent-split Capacitor Type Which Are Rated $\frac{1}{3}$ hp and Smaller and for Shaded-pole Motors*

Permanent-split capacitor motors				
Horsepower	60-hz synchronous rpm	Approximate full-load rpm	50-hz synchronous rpm	Approximate full-load rpm
1, 1.25, 1.5, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12.5, 16, 20, 25, 30, and 40 mhp	3600	3000	3000	2500
	1800	1550	1500	1300
	1200	1050	1000	875
	900	800		
$\frac{1}{20}$, $\frac{1}{15}$, $\frac{1}{12}$, $\frac{1}{10}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, and $\frac{1}{3}$ hp	3600	3250	3000	2700
	1800	1625	1500	1350
	1200	1075	1000	900
	900	825		
Shaded-pole motors				
1, 1.25, 1.5, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12.5, 16, 20, 25, 30, and 40 mhp	1800	1550	1500	1300
	1200	1050	1000	875
	900	800		
$\frac{1}{20}$, $\frac{1}{15}$, $\frac{1}{12}$, $\frac{1}{10}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{5}$, and $\frac{1}{4}$ hp	1800	1550	1500	1300
	1200	1050	1000	875
	900	800		

* From NEMA.

speeds are obtained that are substantially independent of the load; or the change in speed may be effected by changing the slip of the motor, in which case the speed, particularly on the low-speed connection, depends to a large extent upon the load. Pole-changing motors are discussed in Arts. 4-23 to 4-26, 4-28, and 5-24; slip-changing motors are treated in Chap. 7.

Constant-speed shunt or compound-wound dc motors ordinarily are rated to operate at one of the 60-hz motor speeds in Table 1-4, but the speed bears no relation to the number of poles. Direct-current series motors may operate at almost any speed.

Universal motors, or motors of the straight repulsion type (Art. 9-1), may operate at almost any speed independent of the number of poles or frequency.

1-11. Volts. The *volt* is the unit of electrical pressure. Just as hydraulic pressure is necessary to force water, or any other fluid, through pipes, so is it necessary to have electrical pressure to drive current through a circuit, and this electrical pressure is measured in terms of volts. A corresponding unit of water pressure would be *pounds per square inch,* or *kilograms per square centimeter.*

The voltage figure given on the motor nameplate refers to the voltage of the supply circuit to which the motor should be connected.

Sometimes two voltage figures are given, such as "115/230." In this case, the motor is intended for use on either a 115- or a 230-volt circuit, and special instructions are furnished as to how to connect the motor for each of the different voltages. These instructions may appear on the nameplate itself (not in the instance shown in Fig. 1-1), or on a separate plate or label affixed to the outside of the motor or to the inside of the cover plate for the conduit box, or as an instruction tag.

Standard voltage ratings are given in Art. 19-4.

The discussion in Arts. 1-3 and 1-13 as to the nature of an alternating current applies equally well to an ac voltage. Thus, the relationship between *effective volts* and *peak volts* is the same as the relationship between effective amperes and peak amperes, which is explained in Art. 1-13. In practice, unless otherwise specified, "115 volts" means "115 volts effective."

1-12. Thermally Protected. A large percentage of fractional-horsepower motors are now provided with built-in thermal protection, a subject discussed more fully in Arts. 17-14 to 17-19. The use of such protection, in whole or in part, is indicated on motor nameplates in different ways. It is now required by the National Electrical Code[3] and by NEMA[4] that the words "thermally protected" (it was formerly "thermal protection") appear on the nameplate when the motor is provided with a thermal protector (see Glossary). Built-in thermal protection was incorporated into a line of fractional-horsepower motors in the early thirties by Westinghouse. In 1939 the Underwriters' Laboratories issued their requirements for such devices and began the examination and listing of such devices *applied to specific motors.* Their current requirements for such devices are given in part in Art. 17-15 and fully in UL 547.[2] Specific motor-protector combinations, approved by them, are listed in their Bulletin of Inspected Electrical Equipment, which is issued annually with bimonthly and semiannual supplements. Different manufacturers may use their own systems of marking thermally protected motors, of which the following are examples:

Delco Products uses the following type designations for thermally protected motors, for motors using its Thermotron device:

AD—Automatic reset, dual-voltage
A—Automatic reset, single-voltage

MD—Manual reset, dual-voltage
M—Manual reset, single-voltage
MO—Oil-burner Thermotron
CA—Automatic reset
CM—Manual reset

For motors using automatic-reset protectors from other manufacturers, the following are used: AK, AF (obsolete), AM (blower), AL (repulsion-start), R (shaded-pole), S (permanent-split), T (shaded-pole, obsolete), BK (locked-rotor portion only). For motors using manual-reset protectors, made by another manufacturer, ML is used for repulsion-start motors, and MK for general usage.

Reliance Electric Company uses a "Model No.," such as UA-101 in Fig. 1-1, to identify approved motor-protector combinations. Model UA-101 indicates use of an automatic-reset protector. Model UM-101 would indicate that the protector is of the manual-reset type. The nameplate illustrated also states that the protector is an *automatic-reset* device.

Westinghouse Thermoguard motors use the following type-letter designations for motors approved and listed by UL:

A—Automatic-reset
C—Locked-rotor protection only
D—Automatic-reset, time delay, for oil-burner motors (obsolete)
F—Locked-rotor only (obsolete)
M—Manual reset

For applications not submitted to UL, and which may or may not comply with all UL requirements:

S—Connected in control circuit
T, X—Automatic or manual reset

1-13. Amperes. The *ampere* is the unit of measurement of rate of current flow. The unit of quantity of electricity is the *coulomb,* which corresponds to *gallons,* or *liters.* The rate of flow of water could be expressed in *gallons per second,* or *liters per second,* and the rate of flow of electric current could be expressed in coulombs per second. Instead, the shorter term *ampere* is applied. (One dc ampere is actually one coulomb per second.)

The amperes figure given on the motor nameplate represents the approximate current drawn by the motor when developing rated horsepower on a circuit of the voltage and frequency specified on the nameplate. In Fig. 1-1, the motor is a dual-voltage motor, and two figures of amperes are given, 8.4 and 4.2; the larger figure corresponds to the lower of the two voltages and the smaller figure to the higher voltage. On *adjustable varying-speed* fan motors (Chap. 7), it is customary to give only the current at the top speed. Dual-frequency, 50/60-hz motors usually have two stampings of full-load amperes; the 50-hz current is approximately 10 to 15 percent higher than the 60-hz current.

The nature of alternating current was shown in Art. 1-3 and illustrated in Fig. 1-2. (Figure 1-2 describes the pulsating nature of an *ac voltage* equally well.) In a dc circuit, the current is flowing continuously in one direction. In an ac circuit, the direction of current flow periodically reverses many times per second, so that the total net flow, as measured in coulombs per second over any whole number of cycles, is zero. In direct current, the ampere is easy to define: it is simply a current flow of one coulomb per second. What is an ac ampere? *The ac ampere is defined as that amount of alternating current which will produce the same heating effect in an ohmic resistance that one ampere of direct current would produce if it were flowing through the same ohmic resistance.* Since the heating effect is proportional to the square of the current, the *effective value* of an alternating current is the square root of the average (mean value) of the squares of the instantaneous currents, these instantaneous currents being taken at a large number of uniform time intervals throughout one cycle. Often the effective value is referred to as the *root-mean-square* value, because of the manner in which it is found. The *maximum* or *peak* value is the current at the instant *b, d,* or *f* in Fig. 1-2. If the wave is a sine wave, as is usually the case, the following relationship holds:

$$\text{Effective value} = \text{rms value} = 0.7071 \times (\text{maximum or peak value})$$

In practice, the ac ampere is always taken as the effective or rms value, or the equivalent value of dc current necessary to produce the same heating effect. One ac volt, impressed across a noninductive resistance of one ohm, will produce a current of one ac amp.

1-14. °C—Temperature Rating. There are now two ways of showing the temperature rating of a motor on the nameplate. Figure 1-1 shows the second, but the older method will be discussed first.

(1) *Rated Rise.* The rated temperature rise of the motor is stamped on the nameplate. This figure is the maximum temperature rise of the windings to be expected, *measured by the thermometer method,* when the motor is operated at rated load, under *usual service conditions* (see Art. 19-31). When only "°C" appears on the nameplate, it usually refers to the rated rise.

(2) *Ambient and Insulation Class.* This is a newer method, developed by NEMA, which is coming into increased usage. Two figures

are given: (1) the ambient temperature for which the motor was designed, and (2) class of insulation used in the motor. In simple terms, basic reasons for the development of this method of nameplate marking are the following: Motors are actually judged in practice by temperature rises made by the resistance method, which is more accurate and reliable than the older thermometer method, and hence thermometer figures have lost a lot of their meaning; when Class B insulation is used, it may be: (1) to permit a higher temperature rise in a normal ambient; or (2) to permit operation in an elevated ambient; hence, marking the ambient temperature shows at once whether the motor was designed for a high ambient temperature.

In Fig. 1-1, the ambient temperature and insulation class are given.

TABLE 1-6 Temperature Rise of Fractional-horsepower Motors*

Types of motors	Class A insulation		Class B insulation	
	Therm.	Resist.	Therm.	Resist.
Alternating-current motors:				
Coil windings:				
General-purpose motors	40	50		
Totally enclosed motors	55	65	75	85
Any motor in frame smaller than the 42 frame	...	65	...	85
Motors other than the above	50	60	70	80
Direct-current motors:				
Coil windings, except shunt field:				
Totally enclosed motors, including variations thereof	55	65	75	85
Any motor in frame smaller than the 42 frame	...	65	...	85
Motors other than above	50	60	70	85
Shunt field windings:				
Totally enclosed motors, including variations thereof	...	70	...	90
Any motor in frame smaller than the 42 frame	...	70	...	90
Motors other than above	50	70	70	90
Commutators and collector rings:				
Totally enclosed motors, including variations thereof	65	...	85	
Motors other than above	65	...	85	

* From NEMA.

REMARKS. All temperature rises are in °C. Time rating may be continuous or any standard short-time rating (Art. 1-15). Figures are based on operation of the motor at rated load, on a circuit or rated voltage and frequency.

Rated temperature rises for fractional-horsepower motors are summarized in Table 1-6.

1-15. Time Rating. The time rating denotes the length of time the motor is expected to be able to carry rated load under usual service conditions. In the case illustrated, it is CONT, which means "continuously." Intermittently rated motors carry a time rating, generally 5, 15, 30, or 60 min; this means that the motor will carry rated load for only the time given, and the motor must be allowed to cool down, generally to within 5°C of room temperature, before being restarted.

1-16. Code. The code letter on the nameplate indicates the locked-rotor kva/hp, according to Table 1-7. By referring to the table, it can be seen that the L means that this motor has a locked-rotor kva/hp of 9.0 to 9.99. Since the motor is rated ½ hp, the locked-rotor kva is, therefore, from 4.5 to 5.0. The actual locked-rotor amperes, at 115 volts, will therefore be from 4,500/115 = 39.1 to 5,000/115 = 43.5. Even the higher figure of 43.5 amp is below the permissible value of 45 amp, shown in Table 19-1.

TABLE 1-7 Locked-rotor-indicating Code Letters*

Code letters	*Kilovolt-amperes per horsepower with locked rotor*
A	0– 3.14
B	3.15– 3.54
C	3.55– 3.99
D	4.00– 4.49
E	4.5 – 4.99
F	5.0 – 5.59
G	5.6 – 6.29
H	6.3 – 7.09
J	7.1 – 7.99
K	8.0 – 8.99
L	9.0 – 9.99
M	10.0 –11.19
N	11.2 –12.49
P	12.5 –13.99
R	14.0 –15.99
S	16.0 –17.99
T	18.0 –19.99
U	20.0 –22.39
V	22.4 and up

* From NEMA and the NEC.

TABLE 1-8 Service Factors for General-purpose AC Motors*

Hp rating	*Service factor*
1/20	1.4
1/12	1.4
1/8	1.4
1/6	1.35
1/4	1.35
1/3	1.35
1/2	1.25
3/4	1.25
1 (2-pole)	1.25

* From NEMA.

1-17. NEMA Design. This space is blank and not ordinarily used on fractional-horsepower motor nameplates. General-purpose fractional-horsepower motors conform to NEMA Design N; Design O refers to special-service motors, designed to somewhat higher locked-rotor currents. A space for the NEMA Design letter was provided on this nameplate because it is often used for integral-horsepower motors, which usually do use a Design letter.

1-18. Service Factor (S.F.). *Service factor* is a term usually applicable only to general-purpose ac motors, although it is also used for certain definite-purpose motors. It is defined by NEMA as follows:

> The service factor of a general-purpose alternating-current motor is a multiplier which, when applied to the rated horsepower, indicates a permissible horsepower loading which may be carried under the conditions specified for the service factor.

Service factors for general-purpose fractional-horsepower ac motors are given in Table 1-8.

1-19. "CSA." The CSA monogram, appearing in the lower left-hand corner of Fig. 1-1, indicates that the design and construction of this motor have been approved by the Canadian Standards Association.[5]

1-20. Other Information on the Nameplate. A variety of additional information may appear on the nameplate, and it is to be noted that there is a blank space left for such information as may be required.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Moon, Clifford G.: Interpreting Motor Nameplates, *Machine Design,* Sept. 26, 1963, p. 168.

2. UL 547: Thermal Protectors for Motors, Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., Chicago, New York, and Santa Clara, Calif.
3. NEC: National Electrical Code, 1969, NFPA No. 70, National Fire Protection Association, Boston.
4. NEMA: Motors and Generators, Pub. No. MG 1—1967, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, New York.
5. CSA: CSA Standard C22.1 No. 11—1957 Construction and Test of Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors for Other Than Hazardous Locations (a part of Part II of the Canadian Electrical Code), Canadian Standards Association, Ottawa 7, Canada.
6. CSA: CSA Standard C22.1—1966 Canadian Electrical Code, Part I. Essential Requirements and Minimum Standards Governing Electrical Installations for Buildings, Structures and Premises, Canadian Standards Association, Ottawa 7, Canada.

Chapter 2

What Makes an Induction Motor Run?

Of all the various types of ac motors, the induction type is the most popular, whether for use on single-phase or on polyphase circuits. This statement is equally true for fractional-horsepower motors, the majority of which are operated on single-phase circuits. The enormous popularity of the induction motor is principally because it is simple in construction, it is rugged and reliable, and it has constant-speed characteristics, i.e., the speed is substantially independent of the load within the normal working range. Constant-speed motors are required for the majority of applications. The polyphase induction motor is the essence of simplicity. Current is conducted into the *primary* windings (usually on the stator) but *induced* in the *secondary* windings (usually on the rotor) by electromagnetic action: hence the name *induction motor.* The secondary windings are short-circuited upon themselves, either directly or through an external resistance, and are not connected to the power supply.

2-1. Single-phase and Polyphase Motors. Because the secondary current is entirely an induced current, the secondary winding usually is put on the rotating member, for, with this arrangement, no brushes, collector rings, or commutator is required. In the *squirrel-cage* form of construction of secondary windings, the "winding" consists of aluminum conductors which are molded into rotor slots and which are integral with a short-circuiting *end ring* of the same material at each end of the bars. To obtain special characteristics (principally high rotor resistance), sometimes the conductors and end rings are cast of aluminum or magnesium alloys. In other cases, individual bars of copper or brass, bonded to end rings, may be used. End rings are often referred to as *resistance rings* (see Fig. 5-2*g*). This type of rotor is known as a squirrel-cage rotor because of the resemblance of the current-carrying conductors and end rings to the cylindrical cages originally made to exercise pet squirrels.

The squirrel cage is by far the most popular but not the only form of secondary winding used in induction motors. Polyphase induction motors may have a secondary winding generally resembling the primary winding, in which case, collector rings and brushes are necessary. Such motors are known as *wound-rotor induction motors* and may be used, with external resistors, for applications requiring adjustable varying-speed motors. Single-phase repulsion-start induction motors use a secondary winding that is similar to the armature winding of a dc motor.

Single-phase induction motors have no inherent locked-rotor torque and must be started by other means. There are a number of different methods employed for starting single-phase induction motors, giving rise to a number of different types of motors, each type being named after the starting method.

Full and complete treatment of the theory of polyphase and single-phase induction motors would fill a book in itself.[13,*] However, for those who wish a short explanation of the basic principles of induction motors, a brief discussion is given here. It is believed that this short explanation will help the reader understand and remember some of the simpler facts about induction motors such as why they run at all; why collector rings and brushes are seldom necessary; and why polyphase motors are inherently self-starting, whereas single-phase motors require some special starting arrangement. Such an understanding of the principles of what actually makes the motor run is of almost invaluable assistance in diagnosing and remedying faults in motors. To the student, it may well serve as an introduction to the study of fractional-horsepower motors, a study that may be pursued further in the references given at the end of this chapter.

In the fractional-horsepower sizes, as previously mentioned, the single-phase induction motor is far more commonly used than the polyphase induction motor. However, the principle of the operation of the polyphase induction motor is a little easier to grasp, and this understanding

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

materially helps in understanding single-phase induction motors. Therefore, we shall be concerned first with the polyphase induction motor.

2-2. Rotation of a Copper Disk Produced by a Rotating Magnet. The basic principle of induction-motor action is illustrated by the horseshoe magnet and the copper disk shown in Fig. 2-1. Here the magnet is being rotated by hand, causing the disk to rotate likewise, though at a slower speed. This disk follows the magnet, not because of any magnetic attraction between the two, for the former is of copper, a nonmagnetic material, but because of the action which is due to the eddy currents induced in the disk and to their reaction against the revolving magnetic field. As the magnet and its lines of force are caused to revolve, the lines of force cut the disk, which is a metallic conductor of low resistance. Eddy currents are, therefore, induced in the disk. The flow of these currents is in such a direction as to tend to oppose the motion of the magnetic field, i.e., to try to stop the magnet from rotating. (It is a fundamental principle of electricity and magnetism that the current flow in an electric circuit, induced by a change of magnetic flux linking the circuit, is always in a direction tending to oppose the change of flux.) The result is a retarding drag on the magnet, but, since action is always equal to reaction, there is an equal and opposite force exerted on the disk, which, if free to turn, will revolve.

The disk can never rotate as fast as the magnet (assuming that the magnet is being rotated at a uniform speed). For, if the disk were to rotate at the same speed as the magnet, there would be no cutting of lines of force by the conductor; hence no voltage induced; hence no current set up to produce torque. If no torque were produced, the

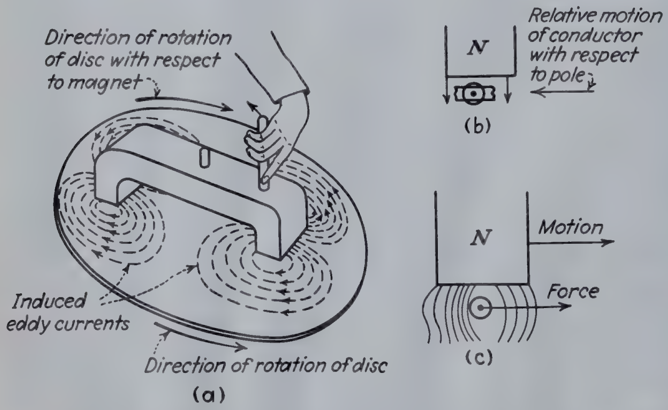

Direction of rotation of disc with respect to magnet
Induced eddy currents
Direction of rotation of disc
(a)
N
Relative motion of conductor with respect to pole
(b)
N
Motion
Force
(c)

Fig. 2-1 Rotation of a copper disk produced by the rotation of a permanent magnet. (*From Chester L. Dawes, "A Course in Electrical Engineering," vol. II, 4th ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York,* 1947.)

disk would slow down until sufficient current were induced to develop enough torque to rotate the disk. Therefore, the disk must rotate more slowly than the magnet.

Here is illustrated the principle of the induction motor. In induction motors, a rotating field is set up by the stator, and the rotor can never revolve as fast as this field. The difference between the speed of the rotating magnetic field and the speed of the disk, or the rotor, is called the *slip*. The speed of the rotating field is known as the *synchronous speed*.

But the device shown in Fig. 2-1 does not resemble a commercial induction motor very closely in actual appearance. That it does represent the *principle* is developed in the following paragraphs.

2-3. Rotation of a Squirrel-cage Rotor Produced by a Rotating Field Magnet. A dc motor has a field structure generally resembling the one shown in Fig. 2-2. Here the pole pieces and the yoke are shown as a single piece, and only the cross section of the field coils is shown. The rotating member is an ordinary cage rotor. A squirrel-cage rotor, as previously discussed in part, consists of steel punchings to carry the magnetic flux and to support the individual rotor conductors, which are perpendicular, or approximately perpendicular, to the plane of the paper; all these conductors are mutually short-circuited at each end by means of a resistance ring.

Suppose that the field coils were excited with direct current. Flux lines would be set up as shown by the dotted lines. Assume now that the field structure is arranged so that it can be rotated (collector rings, of course, would be necessary to introduce the direct current into the

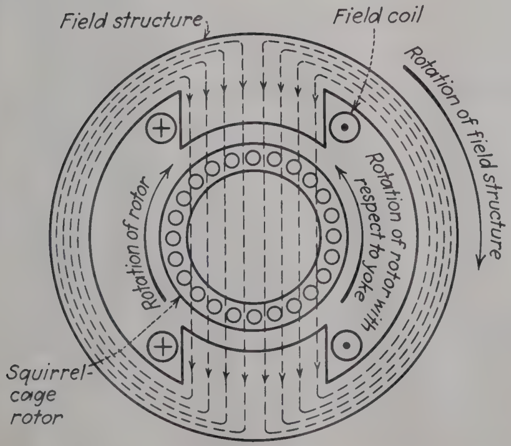

Field structure
Field coil
Rotation of field structure
Rotation of rotor
Rotation of rotor with respect to yoke
Squirrel-cage rotor

Fig. 2-2 Rotation of a squirrel-cage rotor produced by a rotating field magnet.

field coils) and that it is revolved mechanically. This rotation of the magnetic field structure causes the flux to revolve with it. As this flux revolves, it will tend to make the rotor follow its rotation for the same reasons that the magnet of Fig. 2-1 makes the metal disk follow it. To repeat, flux lines that emanate from the field structure are caused to revolve around the rotor by the mechanical rotation of the field structure, thereby cutting the conductors in the squirrel-cage rotor and inducing currents in them. These induced currents react with the revolving magnetic field, tending to make the squirrel-cage rotor follow this field, but at a speed slightly less than that of the field structure.

The structure shown in Fig. 2-2 is a rather hypothetical motor, and it is doubtful if any practical motors were ever built like this, although electric clutches are made embodying the principle. It does, however, resemble an induction motor in appearance more than does the structure of Fig. 2-1. The rotor is of the familiar squirrel-cage construction actually used in induction motors; the stator member, however, differs from the primary member of an induction motor in two respects: (1) The primary field structure revolves mechanically, whereas the stator structure of an induction motor is stationary; (2) the stator windings of an induction motor are energized with alternating current instead of with direct current.

It will be the purpose of subsequent paragraphs to show that the alternating currents flowing in the windings of the stationary member of a two-phase induction motor actually do set up a rotating field which has the same effect on the rotor that the revolving field magnet shown in Fig. 2-2 has on its rotor.

PRODUCTION OF A ROTATING FIELD IN A TWO-PHASE STATOR

2-4. A Simple Two-phase Motor-and-generator System. It is rather interesting and curious to note that, though the polyphase motor (in fractional-horsepower sizes) is used less than the single-phase motor, it is being discussed first because it is the simpler to understand. It is further curious to note that the two-phase motor is simpler to explain than the three-phase motor. For these reasons the two-phase motor has been chosen for purposes of illustration, and not because it is more important commercially. It was selected for explanation for the additional reason that a discussion of the single-phase motor follows more directly from it than from a discussion of the three-phase motor.

A two-phase generator and motor are represented in Fig. 2-3*a*. Here the generator is shown diagrammatically as having two electrically distinct circuits or phases, designated as phase A and phase B. These phases are electrically distinct circuits, and in them are generated voltages which are equal in magnitude and 90° out of phase. If a balanced two-phase load is connected to the generator, the currents in the two phases will be balanced also; these are represented in Fig. 2-3*b*. Here the instantaneous values of currents I_A and I_B are shown. In both the generator and motor diagrams of Fig. 2-3*a*, arrows are shown to indicate the directions of the currents I_A and I_B. These directions of current correspond to positive values of current, i.e., to values of current indicated above the zero axis in Fig. 2-3*b*. Negative currents in Fig. 2-3*b*, i.e., currents represented below the zero axis, flow in a direction opposite to the arrows shown in Fig. 2-3*a*.

2-5. Windings of a Two-phase Motor. The motor winding represented in Fig. 2-3 is a simple type of single-layer diamond-coil winding. In this figure, the motor is represented as though the stator had been rolled out flat. The windings in the circuit of phase A, including the active conductors (that portion of the conductors embedded in the stator iron) and end windings, are shown with a solid black line. The windings comprising the circuit of phase B are shown in dotted lines. The directions of the currents through the active conductors are represented by arrows drawn parallel to the latter. As in the case of the generator, these arrows represent the positive directions of current, i.e., the actual

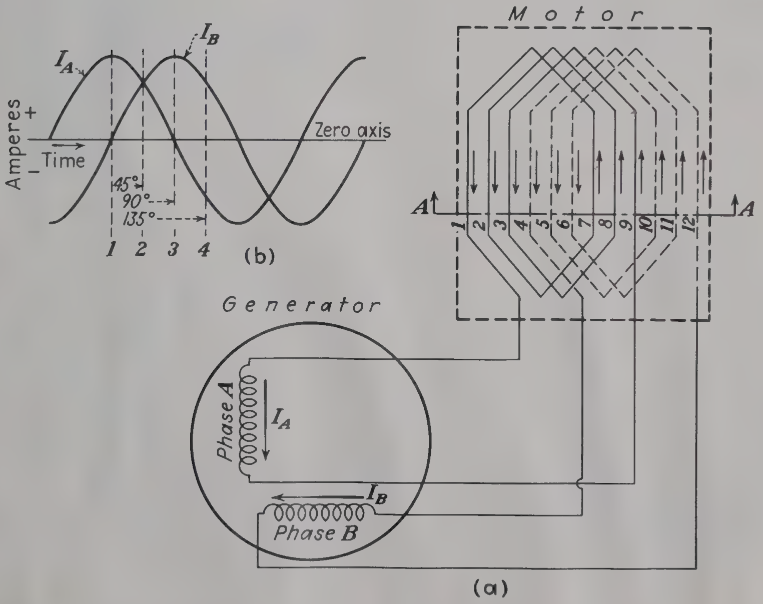


Fig. 2-3 A two-phase motor-and-generator system.

direction of flow at instants when the latter is positive in Fig. 2-3*b*; at the instants when the current is negative, the actual direction of current flow in the active conductors is opposite to that shown by the arrows.

Now, assume the motor to be rolled back into its normal cylindrical form. Further, assume an imaginary plane parallel to the punchings (i.e., perpendicular to the shaft) as shown at *A-A* in Fig. 2-3*a*. Four cross-sectional views of the motor taken at this plane are given in Fig. 2-4.

2-6. How the Rotating Field Is Set Up. The four views shown in Fig. 2-4 are drawn to represent the instantaneous currents in the various conductors and the corresponding fields set up in the motor at each of four different instants of time; the instantaneous fields are set up

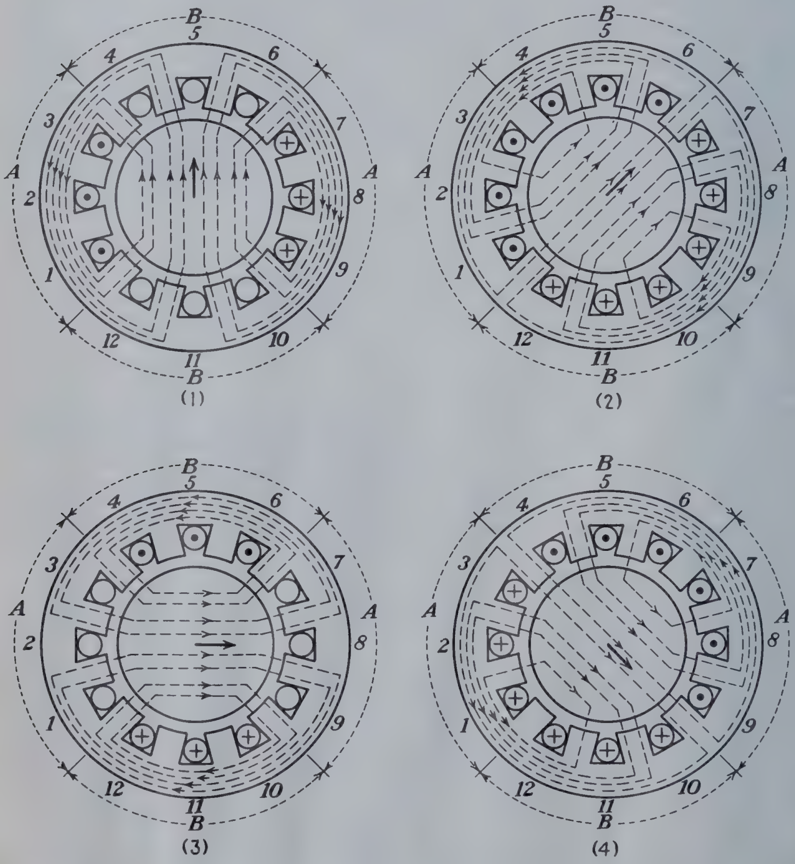


Fig. 2-4 The rotating field set up by a two-phase stator.

by the currents flowing in both windings *at that particular instant.* Each of the views (1), (2), (3), and (4) corresponds to the current and flux conditions in the motor at the instants 1, 2, 3, and 4 respectively in Fig. 2-3*b*. These instants of time will be discussed separately.

Time 1. At this instant, the current in phase A is at its maximum value *in a positive direction,* which means that the currents are flowing through the conductors of phase A in the directions shown by the arrows in Fig. 2-3*a*. In Fig. 2-4(1), a single dot, or point, represents the head of an arrow and indicates that current is flowing directly toward the observer; a cross represents the tail of an arrow and indicates that the current is flowing directly away from the observer. In this first view, the slots are numbered 1 to 12, inclusive, and these numbers correspond to the numbering of the slots in Fig. 2-3*a*. At this instant, there is no current flowing in phase B. Therefore, a field will be set up as shown by the dotted lines and in the directions indicated by the arrows. The direction of this field flux can be determined by application of the *right-hand rule.** The field flux set up, at least so far as any action on the rotor is concerned, is practically identical with the field flux as shown in Fig. 2-2.

Time 2, 45° *Later in Time.* At this time, as can be seen by reference to Fig. 2-3*b*, the currents in both phases are positive, although neither is at its maximum value; however, the currents in each of the phases are equal. The currents in the individual conductors are shown in (2). Here, it is seen that the resultant field, or flux, as shown by the dotted lines, is similar in character to that produced at position (1), *except that the field is rotated clockwise* 45° *in space.*

Time 3, 90° *in Time Later than Time* 1. The current in phase A is zero, and the current in phase B is positive and at its maximum value. The currents in the individual conductors and the field flux are as shown in (3). Note that the field has again shifted 45° in space.

Time 4, 135° *Later than Time* 1. The currents in phases A and B are again equal; but the latter current is positive, whereas the former current is negative. That is, the current in phase A is flowing in opposition to the arrows shown in Fig. 2-3*a*, and the currents in the individual conductors flow as shown in Fig. 2-4(4). These currents set up a stator field as shown in (4). Note that this field again has moved 45° in space from position (3), or 135° in space from position (1).

It seems unnecessary to prolong the discussion further to show that the field will make one complete revolution in 1 cycle of current, since the field has been shown to revolve 45° in space for each 45° of lapsed time. It will be observed that there is set up an air-gap flux, or field, that actually rotates in space, just as the field of Fig. 2-2 was caused to rotate in space by actual rotation of the field-magnet structure; in the case of Fig. 2-4, however, there was no actual rotation of the field structure itself, although the magnetic field set up by the stationary field structure did itself rotate in space.

---

* The *right-hand rule* is used to determine the direction of the magnetic flux which is produced by current flowing in a coil of wire. It is stated as follows: *If an electromagnet be taken in the right hand with the fingers coiling in the direction of the flow of current, the thumb, extending along the magnet away from the hand, will point in the direction of flow of magnetic flux, i.e., to the north pole of the magnet.*

Thus it has been shown how alternating current, flowing in the windings of a *stationary* primary member of a two-phase induction motor, can actually set up a *rotating* field that is practically the same, so far as any action on the rotor is concerned, as the rotating field that is set up by a mechanically revolving field magnet similar to the one represented in Fig. 2-2.

2-7. Conditions Necessary to Set Up a Rotating Field in a Two-phase Motor. The two conditions necessary to set up a rotating field in a motor excited from a two-phase source are, as we have seen:

1. Two separate phase windings in the motor located 90° apart in space. (The windings should be separated by 90 *electrical degrees* and not necessarily by 90 mechanical degrees. A distinction between electrical and mechanical degrees is made in Art. 2-16.)
2. Two phases, or sources of ac voltages, equal in magnitude and displaced by 90° in time phase.

In the two-phase motor, there are, in effect, two distinct magnetic fields, 90° apart in time and 90 electrical degrees apart in space. One of these fields is set up by the winding of phase A, and the second is set up by phase B. Actually, both fields do not exist simultaneously in the motor; at any particular instant, only the resultant exists. This resultant is a uniformly rotating magnetic field, practically constant in magnitude, as shown by the four pictures in Fig. 2-4.

It can be shown that, in three-phase induction motors, a rotating field is produced in a somewhat similar manner.

PRODUCTION OF A ROTATING FIELD IN A SINGLE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTOR

In the four articles that follow immediately, the single-phase motor is discussed from the point of view of the cross-field theory.

2-8. The Single-phase Motor a Special Case of the Two-phase Motor. Suppose the winding of phase B in the two-phase motor just discussed is omitted; we would then have a single-phase induction motor such as is represented in Fig. 2-5*a*. In the two-phase motor, as just learned, there are two component *stationary* fields which combine to form a single resultant field which *rotates*. One of these component fields is set up by one phase, and the other component field by the second phase, *but both components of the rotating field are set up by stator windings*. However, in the single-phase motor, there is only one winding on the stator, and this one winding can set up only one of the two components required to produce a rotating field. How a second component is actually set up by the rotor when the latter is turning is developed in Art. 2-10. But first it is necessary to examine the field set up by the stator winding.

2-9. Field Set Up by Stator Winding Alone.

Assume that the stator winding of the motor in Fig. 2-5*a* is excited with alternating current. At any particular instant when the current is positive, i.e., flowing in the directions indicated by the dots and crosses in the stator slots, a magnetic field will be set up as shown. Neglecting the effect of the rotor, this field will be stationary in space but will pulsate in magnitude; it will be at a maximum value when the current is maximum and zero when the current is zero—the significant point, however, being that the field is stationary in space and does not revolve, as in the case of the two-phase motor.

Since the field set up by the stator winding does not revolve, there is no tendency for the rotor to turn; hence, there is no inherent locked-rotor torque. Once the motor is started and running, the single-phase motor will develop torque because of the action of the cross field set up by the rotor. How this field is set up is the subject of the following article.

2-10. Field Set Up by the Rotor.

Assume that the squirrel-cage rotor is revolving, having been started by some means or other, for it was not inherently self-starting. Voltages will be induced in each of the individual conductors in the squirrel cage because they are cutting magnetic lines of force. By applying Fleming's *right-hand rule*,* it can

---

* Fleming's *right-hand rule* can be applied as follows: Extend the thumb and the first and second fingers of the right hand so that all three are mutually perpendicular and in the most natural and comfortable position; this position is with the thumb and index finger both lying in the plane of the hand with the second finger perpendicular to the plane of the hand. With the hand held in this position, the thumb points in the direction of motion of the conductor, the first finger in the direction of the field, and the second finger in the direction of induced voltage. If this rule is applied in the case at hand, it will be seen that the currents and voltages in the rotor bars will be in the directions shown in Fig. 2-5*a*. As an aid to remembering this rule, some students memorize the expression "my fine clothes" to stand for motion, field, current, as being represented by the thumb, first finger, and second finger, respectively.

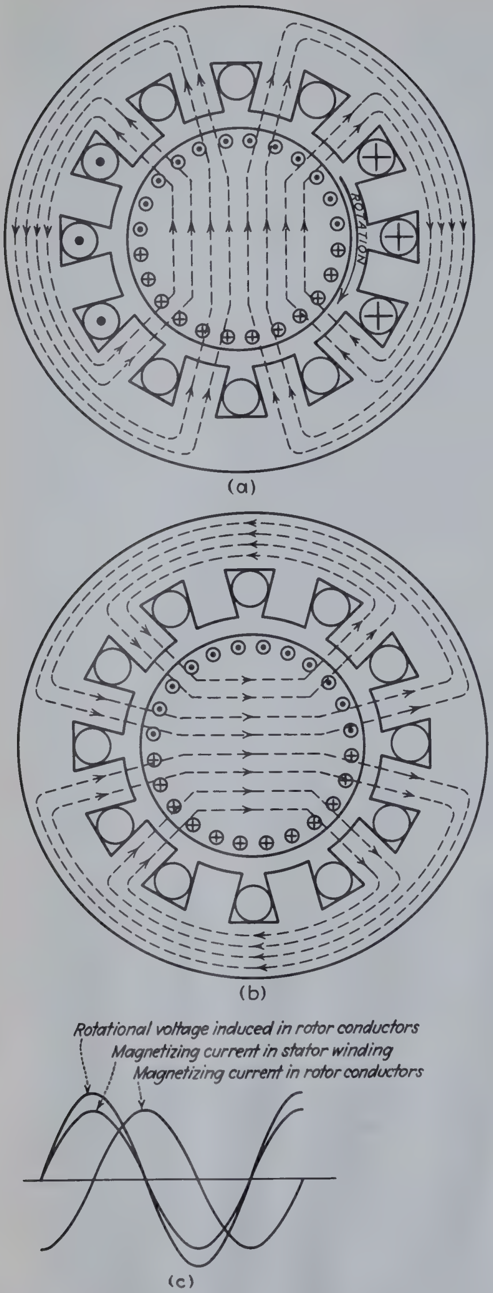

ROTATION
(a)
(b)
Rotational voltage induced in rotor conductors
Magnetizing current in stator winding
Magnetizing current in rotor conductors
(c)

Fig. 2-5 The fields of a single-phase induction motor. (*a*) The stator field and the rotational voltages induced in the rotor by it. (*b*) Magnetic field set up by the currents flowing in the rotor bars (cross field). (*c*) Instantaneous values of stator current, rotor voltage and current in the cross-field axis.

be ascertained that all the currents above the center of the rotor would tend to flow toward the observer and all the currents below the center of the rotor would tend to flow away from the observer. This fact is indicated by the use of dots and crosses in the rotor bars.

It should be noted that the *rotational voltages induced in the rotor conductors* are in phase with the stator field and stator magnetizing current, as shown in Fig. 2-5*c*. Now, since voltages are induced in the rotor conductors, currents will be caused to flow. The impedance to the currents in the rotor bars is almost entirely reactive, so that these currents will lag the voltage by nearly 90°, as shown in Fig. 2-5*c*. (For a discussion on the phase relation between the voltage and current in an ac circuit containing principally inductance, the reader is referred to any elementary text on alternating currents.)

These rotor currents will set up a magnetic field, known as the *cross field*, as shown in Fig. 2-5*b*. This field is displaced 90° in space from the field shown in Fig. 2-5*a*, i.e., 90° in space from the field set up by the stator winding. Moreover, this field set up by the rotor is not only displaced 90° in space from the stator field, but it also lags the latter by approximately 90° in time. In other words, the effect of the magnetizing current flowing in the rotor is somewhat similar to the effect of the current flowing in phase B in Fig. 2-4(3).

2-11. Rotating Field. We have just seen that the stator will set up a pulsating field and that the rotor, *if revolving*, will set up a second pulsating field 90° behind the stator field in time and in space. If the rotor is revolving at synchronous speed, this field set up by the rotor will be substantially equal in magnitude to the stator field. Therefore, a rotating field will be set up in the single-phase motor just as it was in the two-phase motor; in general, this field will be similar in character to the rotating field set up in Fig. 2-2, except as noted in the following paragraphs.

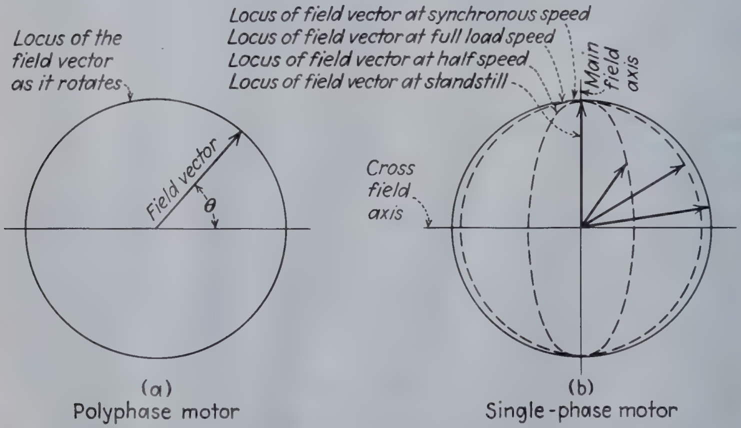
COMPARISONS BETWEEN SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

2-12. Differences in the Rotating Field. In the well-designed polyphase induction motor, the strength of the rotating magnetic field does not vary appreciably as it rotates. This condition can be described by the use of a vector, as shown in Fig. 2-6*a*; the angular position of the field is represented by the angular position θ of the vector, and the strength of the field is represented by the length of the vector. In the case of the polyphase motor, the locus (the imaginary line that is traced by the extremity of the arrow) of this field vector is a circle. In the case of the single-phase motor, the locus of this field vector is an ellipse, as shown in Fig. 2-6*b*. It is due to this method of representation of the field that one sometimes hears the statement that a polyphase motor has a circular field, whereas a single-phase motor has an elliptical field. The words *circular* and *elliptical* refer to the shape of the locus of the vector describing the field, and not to any characteristic of the field itself.

Why is the locus of the field vector of a single-phase motor an ellipse? The strength of the cross field depends upon the speed of the motor, for the rotational voltage induced in the rotor conductors must depend upon the speed. Therefore, since the strength of the field in the cross-field axis decreases with a reduction in speed, the shape of the ellipse must change with speed. At synchronous speed, the cross field is practically equal to the main field, and the field locus is a circle, as in a polyphase motor. As the speed decreases, the ellipse becomes flatter and flatter in shape, until finally, at standstill, it collapses to a straight line; i.e., when the rotor is at rest, the field pulsates in value along the stator axis but does not rotate.

2-13. Losses, Breakdown Torque, and Torque Pulsations. The rotor of a polyphase motor carries no magnetizing current, unless the supply voltages are unbalanced, and the rotor I^2R losses at no load are negligible. However, the rotor of a single-phase motor carries the magnetizing current to set up the cross field; hence, there are appreciable rotor I^2R losses even at no load.

It is quite commonly known that the breakdown torque of a polyphase induction motor is not affected by the rotor resistance. However, such


Locus of the field vector as it rotates
Field vector
θ
Locus of field vector at synchronous speed
Locus of field vector at full load speed
Locus of field vector at half speed
Locus of field vector at standstill
Main field axis
Cross field axis

(a)
Polyphase motor

(b)
Single-phase motor

Fig. 2-6 Rotating fields of single-phase and polyphase induction motors compared.

is not the case with a single-phase induction motor, because rotor resistance limits, to some extent, the amount of current that will flow in the rotor conductors to set up the cross field; hence, increasing the rotor resistance means weakening the cross field and thereby reducing the maximum torque that can be developed. Thus, if the rotor resistance rings of a single-phase motor are machined to a smaller cross section, the rotor resistance is increased and the breakdown torque decreased. Further, it is an interesting fact that the breakdown torque of a single-phase motor always occurs at some speed above two-thirds synchronous, whereas the breakdown torque of a polyphase motor can occur at any speed, even including negative speeds.

The torque of a single-phase motor pulsates between wide limits at twice power frequency. This point is discussed and explained more fully in Art. 17-11. Polyphase motors have no such torque pulsations.

2-14. Necessity for Starting Arrangement for Single-phase Induction Motors. It has been brought out in the foregoing discussion that, unlike a polyphase induction motor, a single-phase induction motor has no revolving field at standstill and no inherent locked-rotor torque. It is, therefore, necessary to employ a starting device of some sort for any single-phase induction motor. The means employed for starting are many, and the different types of single-phase induction motors are named after the method employed for starting them. For example, there are the split-phase induction motor, the capacitor-start motor, the repulsion-start motor, and the reactor-start motor. A single-phase induction motor will continue to run in the direction in which it is started.

MISCELLANEOUS

2-15. Number of Poles. In dc motors, there are definite pole pieces which can be seen and counted, so that there is no doubt as to the number of poles. In an induction motor, there are no such salient poles, but the windings are arranged so that a revolving magnetic field is set up just as though it were produced by a rotating dc field structure, as has been explained previously. A motor is said to be wound for four poles if the winding sets up a magnetic field with four poles.

2-16. Electrical Degrees. The term *electrical degrees* was used in the preceding articles and is frequently heard in connection with motors. It is defined as follows:

$$\text{Electrical degrees} = (\text{mechanical degrees}) \times (\text{number of pairs of poles})$$

Why is the term electrical degrees used? It was shown in Art. 2-6 that the magnetic field of the induction motor of Fig. 2-4 moved 45°

in space for each 45° of lapsed time. In 360° of time, the field moves a distance of two poles. If there are only two poles, as in Fig. 2-4, this distance is a complete revolution. If the machine is wound for four poles, 720° of time is necessary for a complete revolution. In other words, one pair of poles always represents 360 electrical degrees, regardless of the total number of poles. Thus it happens that one mechanical degree represents as many electrical degrees as there are pairs of poles. In dealing with electric motors, the meaning of the term *electrical degrees* should be borne in mind continuously, because this term is usually far more significant than *mechanical degrees*.

2-17. Synchronous Speed. The speed of the rotating field of an induction motor is known as the *synchronous speed*. The synchronous speed can always be figured from the line frequency and the number of poles for which the motor is wound. Since the field moves one pair of poles per cycle

$$\text{Synchronous rpm} = \frac{60 \text{ (sec per min)} \times \text{cycles (per sec)}}{\text{pairs of poles}}$$

or

$$\text{Synchronous rpm} = \frac{120 \times \text{frequency}}{\text{number of poles}} \tag{2-1}$$

The actual operating speed, under full-load conditions, is about five percent less than synchronous speed, as can be seen by referring to Table 1-4.

2-18. References for Further Study of Induction-motor Theory. It was pointed out in the first part of this chapter that full treatment of the theory of induction motors was beyond the scope of this book. For the eager student who wishes to pursue this fascinating subject further, the literature is full of help. Every elementary textbook on ac machinery carries an explanation of the theory of operation of the polyphase induction motor. A classic, nonmathematical, and comprehensive explantation of polyphase motor theory has been given by Lamme.[1] A procedure for calculating the running performance of polyphase induction motors from constants of the motor, suitable for routine design calculations, is given by the author.[2] Fortunately, polyphase motors are uniformly treated from the viewpoint of a single theory: the revolving-field theory. Not so fortunate is the single-phase motor, which is explained by two theories: the cross-field theory and the revolving-field theory, each of which has its staunch advocates.

For purposes of explanation, the cross-field theory was used in this chapter. This theory was used by Branson in his classic paper in 1912 wherein he developed a circle diagram for the single-phase motor.[3] This theory has found its way into some textbooks[4,5] and was used by H. R. West[6] to develop mathematical equations for calculating the performance of single phase induction motors; these equations form the basis of a modified calculating method developed by the author for routine design calculations on single-phase induction motors.[2] Later, Robin Beach published a comprehensive nonmathematical exposition of the cross-field theory, which presents a clear interpretation of how the stator and rotor fluxes and currents mutually interact to develop torque and maintain rotation; his treatise is recommended as an introduction to the mathematical treatments.[7]

The second point of view is quite different from the cross-field theory and is known as the revolving-field theory. This theory essentially holds that the resultant field in a single-phase induction motor is made up of two component *revolving* fields rotating in opposite directions. This point of view is explained very fully and exceptionally clearly in a nonmathematical manner by Lamme.[8] It is used by Morrill to develop a calculation procedure for single-phase motors[9] as well as for his classic paper on capacitor-motor theory.[10] It is explained in some textbooks[4,5] and has been used in a number of AIEE papers.

In another work, the single-phase motor is explained by both cross-field and revolving-field theories, both qualitatively and quantitatively.[13] Analytical methods for computing the running performance by each method were developed and illustrated by practical examples.

More recently, there has come into existence a third approach to the theory of electric machinery: the *dynamic-circuit* or *coupled-circuit* approach. This approach views the machine as having a number of circuits, dynamically coupled, and performance is determined by setting up the equations for these circuits and solving them by means of matrices, or tensors, usually by means of various tranformations of variables. While there have been many papers written using this general approach, the one by Messerle[14] is representative. The approach is exemplified in a book by Adkins,[15] and by a good many textbooks written since then. Many more references on machinery theory are given in three bibliographies prepared by AIEE and IEEE.[16–18]

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Lamme, B. G.: "Electrical Papers," pp. 5–39, Westinghouse Electric Corporation, East Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, 1919.
2. Veinott, C. G.: Performance Calculations on Induction Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 51, 1932, pp. 743–754.
3. Branson, W. J.: Single-phase Induction Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, June, 1912, p. 1749.

4. Lawrence, R. R.: "Principles of Alternating-current Machinery," 3d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1940.
5. Puchstein, A. F., and Lloyd, T. C.: "Alternating-current Machines," John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York.
6. West, H. R.: The Cross-field Theory of AC Machines, *AIEE Trans.*, February, 1926, p. 466.
7. Beach, Robin: A Physical Conception of Single-phase Motor Operation, *Elec. Eng.*, July, 1944, pp. 254–263.
8. Lamme, B. G.: A Physical Conception of the Operation of the Single-phase Induction Motor, *AIEE Trans.*, April, 1918, p. 627.
9. Morrill, W. J.: The Apparent-impedance Method of Calculating Single-phase Motor Performance, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 60, 1941, pp. 1037–1041.
10. ———: The Revolving-field Theory of the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 48, 1929, pp. 614–629.
11. Kimball, A. L., and Alger, P. L.: Single-phase Motor Torque Pulsations, *AIEE Trans.*, June, 1924, p. 730.
12. Button, C. T.: Single-phase Motor Theory—Correlation of Cross-field and Revolving-field Theory, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 60, 1941, pp. 664–665.
13. Veinott, C. G.: "Theory and Design of Small Induction Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1959, 477 pp. (Out of print, but available from University Microfilms, Inc., Div. of Xerox, Ann Arbor, Mich.)
14. Messerle, H. K.: Dynamic Circuit Theory, *AIEE Power Apparatus and Systems*, April, 1960, pp. 1–12.
15. Adkins, Bernard: "The General Theory of Electrical Machines," Chapman & Hall, Ltd., London, 1959, 236 pp.
16. Rotating Machinery Committee: Bibliography of Rotating Electric Machinery 1886–1947, *AIEE Pub. S*-32, January, 1950.
17. ———: Bibliography of Rotating Electric Machinery for 1948–1961, *IEEE Trans. Paper* No. 64-1, 1964.
18. ———: Bibliography of Rotating Electric Machinery for 1962–1965, *IEEE Trans. Paper* No. 31 TP 67-477.
19. Slemon, Gordon R.: "Magnetoelectric Devices, Transducers, Transformers and Machines," John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1966, 544 pp.

Chapter 3

Single-phase Induction Motor Windings and Connections

Before proceeding to a description and a discussion of specific types of single-phase induction motors, it seems advisable to give a general description of the more common types of windings used. To illustrate the different classifications, a simple winding is presented in four different common forms (see Figs. 3-1, 3-2, 3-8, and 3-9). Also, in this chapter the various types of diagrams that are used later in this book are described and defined, and an explanation of how to interpret these diagrams is provided. It is not intended, however, to cover all phases of repair-shop technique; information of this sort can be found, if desired, in books on the subject and in current magazines.*

3-1. Concentric Winding. Single-phase induction motors are generally wound with concentric coils. For this reason, it may be well to give a rather general description of the concentric winding, comparing it with the more familiar diamond-coil lap winding such as is used both in dc armatures and in polyphase motors. A diamond-coil lap winding was used in Fig. 2-3 to explain the production of a rotating field by polyphase alternating current. Another form of this winding, but with eight slots per pole instead of six, is shown in Fig. 3-1. An *exactly equivalent* concentric type of winding is shown in Fig. 3-2. To understand why the windings of Figs. 3-1 and 3-2 are exactly equivalent, compare the two winding arrangements: in both, slots 1, 2, 3, and 4 carry A phase current upward; slots 5, 6, 7, and 8 carry B phase current upward; slots 9, 10, 11, and 12 carry A phase current downward; and slots 13, 14, 15, and 16 carry B phase current downward. In other words, the direction of current flow through the active conductors of every slot of the winding of Fig. 3-2 is identical with the direction of current flow in every slot of the winding of Fig. 3-1; the difference between these two winding arrangements is only in the end connections. The strength, location, and distribution of the useful magnetic fields in the motor depend wholly upon the total number and arrangement of ampere-conductors in the slots; in no respect do these factors depend upon how the end connections are made between these conductors. Therefore, one winding is said to be *exactly equivalent* to a second winding if, with the same current flowing in the external leads of either winding, there are exactly the same number of *ampere-conductors* in every slot of the first winding as in every slot of the second winding. (The number

---

* See Bibliography at end of this chapter for specific references.

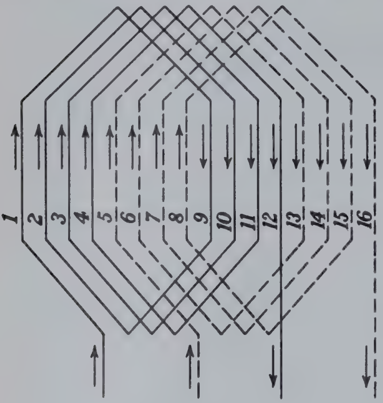


Fig. 3-1 A two-phase progressive lap winding with diamond coils, eight slots per pole. This winding is shown here merely to illustrate one of various types of windings and should not be considered as a recommended winding arrangement for two-phase motors because it is a *single-layer winding.* A *two-layer winding* is normally used for polyphase motors.

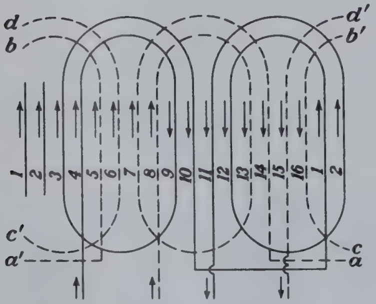


Fig. 3-2 A two-phase concentric winding. This winding is exactly equivalent to the winding of Fig. 3-1. It is often used in single-phase motors but seldom in polyphase motors.

of ampere-conductors in a slot is the product of the number of conductors multiplied by the amperes flowing in each conductor.)

It is always possible to find a concentric winding that is exactly equivalent to a progressive, or diamond-coil, winding as has just been done. The reverse of this statement, however, is not always true; for a concentric winding is the more flexible arrangement. Concentric windings are used in single-phase induction motors because of this greater flexibility. With this type of winding, it is possible and practicable to use more copper in the main winding than in the auxiliary or starting winding, and, moreover, the number of turns does not have to be the same in both windings. In most single-phase induction motors, it is desirable to use more copper in the main winding than in the auxiliary winding and to employ a different number of turns. Split-phase motors, in particular, start on the principle that the ratio of resistance to reactance of the starting winding is higher than the ratio of resistance to reactance of the main winding.

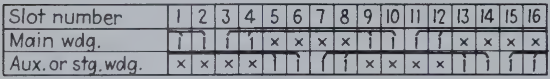
In the diamond-coil or polyphase type of winding, all the coils have the same pitch or "throw," and the center of each coil is displaced—usually by one slot—from the center of the neighboring coil. In the concentric type of winding, every coil in any given pole group has a different throw. But the centers of all the coils in a single pole group coincide; i.e., the coils are concentric with one another.

3-2. Necessity for Different Types of Connection Diagrams. The complete specification of all the details of a winding could be shown on a single drawing. Such a drawing would indicate size of wire; number of turns or conductors in each and every slot; end connections of all coils to form the groups; connections of the coil groups to one another to form both the main and auxiliary windings, respectively; and the connections of the main and auxiliary windings to the line and to the starting switch, capacitor, reactor, or any other piece of apparatus essential to the operation of the motor. All this information is absolutely necessary in order to wind and connect a motor. Yet if it were all on a single drawing, it would be necessary to have such a drawing for every type, design, and rating; the number of diagrams would be literally without limit; and fundamental principles would be lost in a hopeless multiplicity of diagrams. By breaking this information down into a few different *kinds* of diagrams, the total number necessary can be reduced to a practical number, and fundamental principles are not overlooked.

There are at least three different independent operations incident to the winding and connecting of a motor:

1. Winding and connecting the stator coils in groups

2. Connections of these groups
3. Assembly of the motor, which involves connection of the windings to the switch or capacitor, if either is used, and to the external or line leads

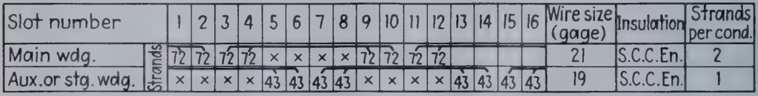


Slot number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Main wdg.	1	1	1	1	×	×	×	×	1	1	1	1	×	×	×	×
Aux. or stg. wdg.	×	×	×	×	1	1	1	1	×	×	×	×	1	1	1	1

Fig. 3-3 A winding distribution chart for Fig. 3-2.

For each of these operations, there is a specific type of diagram. For connecting the motor to the line or to auxiliary apparatus, such as a controller or capacitor, a fourth type of diagram is essential. What these diagrams are and how to interpret them is the basis of the following articles.

3-3. Distribution Chart. A distribution chart gives the number of turns or conductors in each slot for all the windings. The winding distribution chart for Fig. 3-2 is Fig. 3-3. Since Fig. 3-2 is a very simple winding, consisting of only one strand of wire throughout, the corresponding distribution chart is simple. A typical winding distribution chart may take the form of Fig. 3-4, which specifies the size of wire used in each winding, the insulation covering on the wire, the number of strands per conductor, the total number of strands in each and every slot, and the end connections of the coils in a group. In short, the distribution chart of Fig. 3-4 gives all the information necessary for *winding the stator coils* and connecting them in groups, except for the coil perimeters and the winding method. The winding method is more or less optional but can be given on this chart if desired.



Slot number		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	Wire size (gage)	Insulation	Strands per cond.
Main wdg.	Strands	72	72	72	72	×	×	×	×	72	72	72	72					21	S.C.C.En.	2
Aux. or stg. wdg.		×	×	×	×	43	43	43	43	×	×	×	×	43	43	43	43	19	S.C.C.En.	1

Fig. 3-4 A more detailed winding distribution chart.

3-4. A Stator (or Rotor) Connection Diagram. After the stator coil groups are wound, the next step is to connect the groups together. A *group* is simply the combination of all the coils in a given winding or phase under one pole. For example, in Fig. 3-4, both windings have two coils per group; each main-winding group consists of two coils of 36 turns (72 strands) each. One of these coils has a throw of 4 and 9, the other a throw of 3 and 10.

How to connect the groups together is shown in Fig. 3-5. In this diagram, each group is represented by a single, solid, black, elongated rectangle. The connections of the ends of these groups are shown. In the diagram of Fig. 3-5, it will be noted that two of the rectangles representing a group have to be drawn in two sections: in the figure,

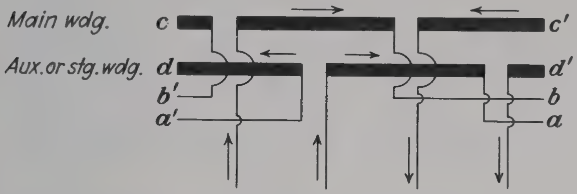


Fig. 3-5 Group connections for Fig. 3-3.

c should be joined to c' and d to d'. To avoid this difficulty, such diagrams are usually drawn in the form of a circle; a diagram of this kind is a *stator connection diagram.* A number of stator connection diagrams drawn in circular form are given throughout this book; the one that corresponds to the connection diagram just discussed is Fig. 4-8.

A diagram such as that discussed in the preceding paragraph would be a *rotor connection diagram* if it were used to connect a rotor winding.

Thus, we have shown how a winding, such as that represented in Fig. 3-2, is represented by two diagrams, such as Figs. 3-3 and 4-8. It is more convenient to use two diagrams than one, for one stator connection diagram can be used with a large number of distribution charts. Moreover, the distribution chart could be applicable to a motor having two, four, six or more poles, so long as the motor has eight slots per pole.

3-5. Wiring Diagram. A *wiring diagram* shows the internal connections of the various windings to one another and to any auxiliary devices such as a starting switch, capacitor, reactor, or thermal protective device. Examples of this type of diagram are Figs. 4-16, 4-17, and 5-7. A wiring diagram may or may not be necessary to supplement the stator connection diagram.

3-6. Line Connection Diagrams. A line connection diagram shows the permissible connections of the motor leads to the line. Representative examples are Figs. 4-16, 4-17, and 5-7. If there are but two line leads brought out of the winding, a line connection diagram is generally not necessary.

3-7. Magnetic Polarity. It would be impossible in any book of this size to give all possible connection diagrams. Some knowledge of how to check the correctness of diagrams, and also of how to make new ones, is absolutely essential to one who has to rewind or to reconnect motors.

One fundamental principle of winding is that adjacent poles must be wound to give opposite *magnetic polarity* (except in the case of consequent-pole windings); i.e., if one pole is wound in a clockwise direction, the next adjacent pole must be wound in a counterclockwise direction, as has been done in Fig. 3-2. This statement does not mean that the coils actually have to be wound in this direction before or while they are being put into the stator, but it does mean that the winding must be connected so that the current proceeds through one pole in a clockwise direction and through the next adjacent pole in a counterclockwise direction.

This principle—viz., that the magnetic polarity must alternate from pole to pole as we progress about the winding—is made use of to determine the correctness of connection diagrams. It is essential to understand this principle in order to check these diagrams, or the winding itself, particularly if it is necessary to draw up a new connection diagram. Taking a representative diagram, such as Fig. 4-9, and tracing through the main winding, we find that we go from pole to pole, but we go through one pole in one direction and through the next adjacent pole in the opposite direction; i.e., if we enter at lead T4, we proceed clockwise around the diagram through the first group, counterclockwise through the second group, and so on through the rest of the groups until we come out at T1. This tells us that all adjacent poles are of opposite magnetic polarity, as they should be.

3-8. Gun Windings. Formerly coils were often wound directly in the stator punchings by means of a hand-operated gun, one turn at a time. For example, assume that a motor is to have the winding of Fig. 3-2 put in it by the gun method. The operator starts with a single wire and winds the inner coil (4 and 9) until this coil is completed, then progresses to the next coil, which is wound in the two adjacent outside slots (3 and 10), and so on if there are more coils in the group, until all the coils in a pole group are wound, each coil being wound in the same direction. The operator then carries the wire over to slot 1 and winds, in the opposite direction, all the turns in the coil spanning slots 1 and 12 and then winds the last coil from 2 to 11, still in the same direction as the 1-to-12 coil, finally bringing out the finish lead from slot 11.

Since the sharp edges of the slot openings may cut or scrape the insulation off the wire, it is the usual factory practice to employ winding guides. These guides are arranged so as to cover the sharp corners of the teeth to protect the wire so that it can be wound into the slots more rapidly.

Of importance to service departments is the fact that gun winding gives a very short wire connecting adjacent pole groups and this wire is usually tight against the iron, so that it may be very difficult to reconnect such a winding in parallel.

3-9. Machine Windings. Most fractional-horsepower motors are now wound in the factory on machines. Generally speaking, such machines wind the coils directly in the slots in much the same manner as a human operator would do it with a gun, following the procedure of the preceding article. (There are, however, machines that first wind the coils in dummy slots and then insert them in the stator.) The machine, however, may use a number of needles (guns), winding a number of coils simultaneously. For example, the winding machine shown in Fig. 3-6 carries four needles, winding four coils simultaneously, from four different spools of wire—and at a speed in excess of 300 strokes per minute! Thus, the machine winds faster than any human could, and more uni-

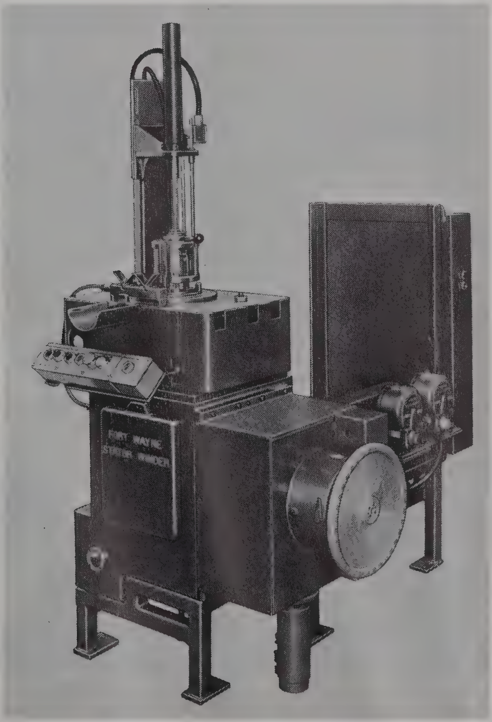


Fig. 3-6 Machine for winding concentric coils in fractional-horsepower induction motors. Four needles, moving up and down, wind four coils simultaneously at better than 300 strokes per minute. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

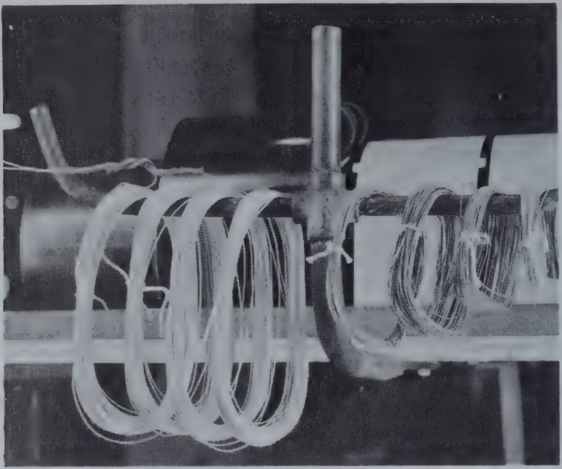


Fig. 3-7 Typical mold-wound coils. The ones at the right comprise one pole group for a concentric winding. The four coils at the left all have the same perimeter and are suitable for a polyphase winding or a single-phase progressive winding. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

formly, too. Such machines pay off only when there are a large number of motors to be wound identically. Hence, they are not suited to small repair shops.

3-10. Mold Windings. Mold windings are practical for repair shops. Coils are usually of the concentric type, though progressive-type coils could be used. Typical coils are illustrated in Fig. 3-7.

Concentric Coils. Concentric coils are wound on a stepped block, or mold, provided with as many steps as there are parts to the coil. With this method, all the coils for a single group are wound in succession with a single strand of wire, or with two strands of wire, if there are two strands per conductor.

For repair shops, a few simple adjustable molds can be made out of wood for permanent shop equipment. These molds should be arranged so that they can be padded on any or all of the sections. If only a few jobs of this type are done, wire finish nails can be driven into the bench, and the coils wound around these nails. The perimeter of the molds is best determined by a trial with a single strand of wire looped around the stator in the same position that the finished coil is to occupy.

Mold winding has a further advantage over hand or gun winding in that the insulation on the wire is less likely to become damaged during the winding process.

Progressive Coils. In the progressive type of winding, illustrated in Fig. 3-8, all the coils in a pole group have the same throw (but not necessarily the same number of turns), but the center of each coil is displaced from the center of the preceding coil. These coils are, therefore, a little simpler to wind on an external mold because all the coils have the same perimeter. The progressive winding of Fig. 3-8 is exactly equivalent to the windings of Figs. 3-1 and 3-2, and is similar to a polyphase winding.

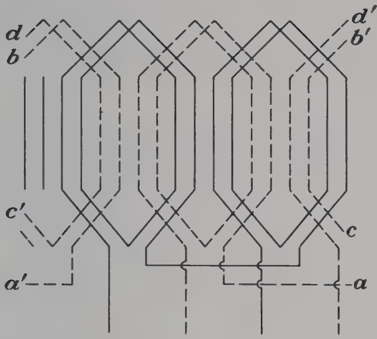


Fig. 3-8 A single-phase progressive winding, diamond coils, eight slots per pole. This winding is an exact equivalent of Fig. 3-2.

3-11. Skein Windings. Skein winding is a popular method of winding, although it is probably less popular than formerly, at least for main windings. This method is somewhat difficult to handle if the weight of the wire is more than 2 or 3 oz (60 or 85 g) per skein, or if the wire is larger than No. 20 or 21. Of the various winding methods just discussed, this one is probably the most complicated and most difficult to explain, although it is not at all difficult of execution, once it is understood and mastered. It is not particularly flexible from a design standpoint, for the choice of distributions is limited.

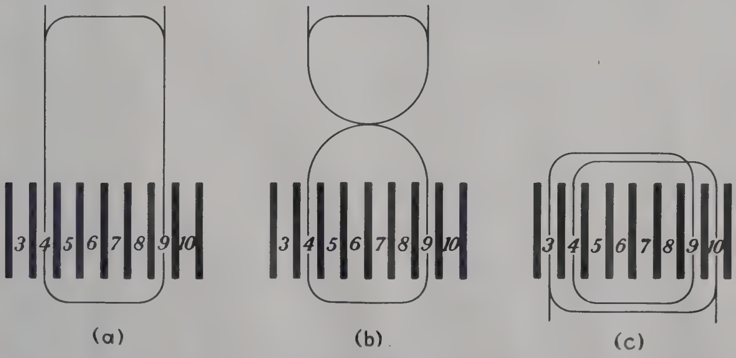


Fig. 3-9 Procedure for winding a skein winding which is an exact equivalent of the concentric winding of Fig. 3-2.

Successive steps required to produce a skein winding which is exactly equivalent to the concentric winding shown in Fig. 3-2 are given in Fig. 3-9. The operation consists of three steps as shown. Additional information on how to use skein windings is given in an earlier work.[6,*]

The best way to determine the length of the skein is to try first a single wire, looping it in the same manner that the final skein will be looped. Then a trial skein can be made up to this perimeter and tried in the stator slots.

3-12. Windings with Dissimilar Coils, and Consequent-pole Windings. Windings with dissimilar coils on adjacent poles are often used in single-phase motors to avoid the use of split coils. Figure 3-10*a* shows a conventional balanced-coil arrangement requiring two coil sides in slots 1, 7, 13, and 19. However, by the use of unequal coils, as shown in (*b*), the split coils can be avoided. A logical extension of this same idea is the arrangement in (*c*) which uses only one coil per pair of poles, and which connects all coils for the same magnetic polarity; this is a consequent-pole winding. All three arrangements are exactly equivalent, within the scope of the meaning of that term, as defined in Art. 3-1, but there are differences to be noted. Use of identical coils on all poles is the best arrangement from an engineering standpoint; end extensions are uniform around the stator; greatest flexibility is permitted in parallel connections because any pole can be paralleled with any other one. Dissimilar coils are perhaps easier to wind because there

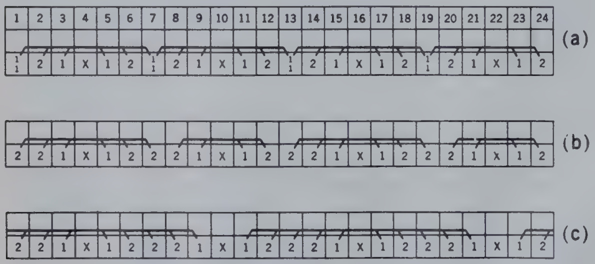

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24
(a)
1 2 1 X 1 2 1 2 1 X 1 2 1 2 1 X 1 2 1 2 1 X 1 2
(b)
2 2 1 X 1 2 2 2 1 X 1 2 2 2 1 X 1 2 2 2 1 X 1 2
(c)
2 2 1 X 1 2 2 2 1 X 1 2 2 2 1 X 1 2 2 2 1 X 1 2

Fig. 3-10 Comparison of different winding arrangements. All three arrangements are exactly equivalent—within the scope of the definition in Art. 3-1—but all three are not equally desirable. (*a*) Conventional winding, identical coils on all poles, adjacent poles connected for opposite magnetic polarities. (*b*) Dissimilar coils on adjacent poles, no split coils, adjacent poles connected for opposite magnetic polarities. (*c*) Consequent-pole winding, one coil per pair of poles, all coils connected for *same* magnetic polarity.

are no split coils, which are usually tighter in the slots owing to the additional insulation required; however, care must be taken in parallel connections that a small coil is never paralleled with a large one; for

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

example, if large and small coils alternate, the parallel diagram of Fig. 4-10 can be used, but the one of Fig. 4-11 cannot. Consequent-pole windings, such as shown in Fig. 3-10*c*, generally have little to recommend them; they result in bulky and nonuniform end extensions and may produce somewhat less torque because of the slightly higher reactance. The distribution factor is the same for all three arrangements in Fig. 3-10.

3-13. Some Practical Hints on Winding.

Detailed instructions on the technique of winding and the tools and equipment necessary for rewinding small motors are given in other books, but a few points may be noted here.

If the motor is to be rewound with Class A insulation, the slots should be insulated with a U-shaped cell of mylar, 0.0075 to 0.010 in. (0.19 to 0.25 mm) thick. For Class B insulation, cells made of dacron-mylar-dacron, having a total thickness of 0.011 in. (0.28 mm), are recommended. Some fractional-horsepower motors have the stator slots lined with a fluidized coating of an epoxy or polyester material in lieu of slots cells; if a winding is burned out of such a motor, it is recommended that slot cells, as described above, be used when the motor is rewound.

Slot cells should be about ⅜ in. (9.5 mm) longer than the width of the core, and preferably cuffed. Cuffing reduces the likelihood of the slot cells tearing, and prevents them from slipping out of place axially. When winding and shaping the coils, care should be taken not to split the slot cells, thus allowing the wire to scrape the iron core. The coils should be started in the proper place so that the finished coils will avoid any through bolts or end-shield screws. Usually the main winding has the greater amount of copper in it and is the bulkier. Therefore, it is advisable to wind the centers of the main poles halfway between the through-bolt holes. In the case of motors having a commutator and brushes, special attention must be given to the location of the stator winding, particularly if the brushes are not on an adjustable rocker ring. Barriers should be placed in the slots to insulate the starting winding from the main winding; these barriers should also insulate the end connections of one winding from the end connections of the other. The soldered or welded connections of the coils and external leads should be free from sharp points which might cut through the insulation; the connections themselves should be wrapped with insulating tape. Leads and windings should be tied or sewed down with a good grade of machine thread.

Care should be taken to wind the coils uniformly and neatly in such a manner as to require a minimum amount of pounding and shaping of the final coil. The bore of the completed winding should be larger than the bore of the stator core so that the rotor can be inserted readily.

The winding must be shaped enough that the ventilating fan or switch cannot chafe the coils.

3-14. Varnish Impregnation. Electric motors are usually varnish-impregnated for one or more of the following reasons:

1. Bonding of the windings into a rigid mass to prevent chafing and, in the case of rotating members, to prevent loss of balance
2. Removal of moisture from the insulation and addition of a permanent barrier against reentry of moisture, abrasive dirt, and dust
3. Reduction of the temperature rise
4. Lengthening the life of the insulation by reducing the rate of oxidation, thermal decomposition, and dehydration
5. Increasing the dielectric and mechanical strength of the insulation, as well as the resistance to certain chemicals

Almost invariably, moisture resistance and dielectric strength of a film of baked insulating varnish are proportional to the film thickness.

Selection of the proper insulating varnish for any particular motor in general is based upon a compromise between bond strength and heat life of the film. Air-drying varnishes, particularly those with a shellac spirit base, can be used in emergencies when time does not permit the use of a baked varnish, but baked varnishes are invariably better. Of the baking varnishes available today, the thermosetting ones are generally superior to the oleoresinous kinds. Silicone, polyester, epoxy, and polyimide varnishes are predominantly used today for Class B, F, and H insulation systems.

A new technique, referred to as "trickle coating," is being used to treat units with solventless varnishes. The unit is first heated by applying intermittent electric currents to the windings, and then solventless varnish is trickled onto the end turns and penetrates through the slots. This procedure eliminates the requirement for external heat. Curing of the resin is accomplished by the residual heat. It is recommended that the unit be rotated during the application of the resin, in order to obtain the best results.

Motors are also being treated for severe environmental conditions by encapsulating the windings in a 100 percent–solid resin. Methods used to encapsulate include: casting the resin around the end windings, using a mold; vacuum-pressure impregnation, using a thixotropic resin (a resin that, during cure, does not run out); "buttering" the coil ends with a 100 percent–solid resin.

3-15. Repetitive Surge Tests. Many motor manufacturers now use a repetitive-surge test as a part of their quality-control program in the manufacture of small motors. One instrument used for performing such tests consists of a repeating-type surge-voltage generator, cathode-ray oscilloscope, and synchronous switching equipment. The generator produces a rapid succession of voltage surges (60 per sec when used with 60-hz power) of very steep wave front and of only a few microseconds duration for each surge. These surges are alternately applied to two coils or to two windings, and the pictures of each surge appear together on the screen of the oscilloscope, simultaneously, it appears to the eye. The tester thus compares two windings, that is, an unknown one against a control-test sample. Because of the steepness of the wave front, a high turn-to-turn voltage stress can be imposed upon the windings.

In quantity production of a large number of motors of a given design, the repetitive-surge test affords a quick and convenient way to detect the existence of any of the following potential faults in a winding:

1. Grounded winding
2. Short circuits between turns
3. Short circuits between windings
4. Incorrect connections
5. Incorrect number of turns
6. Misplaced conductors or insulation

Major faults are easily detected, but only a skilled operator can distinguish between minor faults.[5]

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Weber, C. A. M.: Winding and Connecting Small Motors, *Elec. J.*, August, 1924, pp. 377–382.
2. Braymer, Daniel H., and Roe, A. C.: "Rewinding Small Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1932.
3. Smith, A. G.: "Care and Repair of Fractional Horsepower Motors," International Textbook Company, Scranton, Pa., 1936.
4. Lanoy, Henry: "Les petites machines électriques," vols. I, II, and III, Giradot et Cie, Paris, 1938–1941.
5. NEMA: Pub. No. MG 1-1967, par. MG 1-12.04, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, New York.
6. Veinott, Cyril G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.

Chapter 4

Split-phase Induction Motors

The split-phase motor is one of the oldest types of single-phase motors ever built for commercial use.[1,*] Even today, it is one of the most important and most widely used of all the types of single-phase motors. It is used for such applications as washing machines, oil burners, blowers, centrifugal pumps, woodworking tools, business machines, bottle washers, churns, automatic musical instruments, buffing machines, grinders, machine tools, and a host of other applications. It is most widely used in the ratings from $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$ hp.

4-1. Split-phase Motor Defined. A split-phase motor is a single-phase induction motor that has a main and an auxiliary (starting) winding; the two windings are mutually displaced by 90 electrical degrees. The auxiliary winding has a higher ratio of R to X than the main winding, to achieve a phase-splitting effect, and a starting switch cuts it out of the circuit, once the motor is up to speed. A more complete and precise explanation of how it works is given below.

4-2. Essential Parts of a Split-phase Motor. The essential parts of a split-phase motor are represented diagrammatically in Fig. 4-1. There

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

are two separate and distinct windings on the stator: a main, or running, winding and an auxiliary, or starting, winding. (Sometimes the auxiliary winding is referred to as the "phase winding.") Each winding is a complete circuit in itself, consisting of as many sections or pole groups as there are poles (except in consequent-pole windings). Ordinarily the two windings are spaced 90 electrical degrees apart; i.e., the center of each pole group of the auxiliary winding is spaced halfway between the centers of two pole groups of the main winding. The two windings are drawn 90° apart in Fig. 4-1 to represent the space displacement of the windings. The rotor is of squirrel-cage construction.

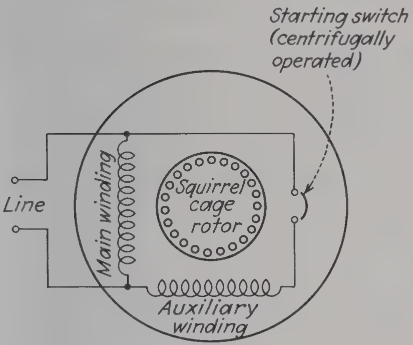


Fig. 4-1 The split-phase motor.

For starting purposes, both main and auxiliary windings are connected in parallel across the line. (The sections or pole groups of either winding may be connected in series or in any number of parallel circuits, but the windings as a whole are connected in parallel with each other.) In series with the auxiliary winding is a starting switch which opens at approximately 75 to 80 percent of synchronous speed. This switch is usually and preferably operated by centrifugal means; for detailed information on such switches, refer to Arts. 17-5 to 17-9. Constructional details of a typical split-phase motor are illustrated in the cutaway view in Fig. 5-2, except that no capacitor is used on a split-phase motor.

4-3. Split-phase Starting Principle. Like the two-phase motor, the split-phase induction motor has two primary (or stator) windings or phases displaced by 90 electrical degrees. An idea of how locked-rotor torque is developed may be gained by comparing these two types of motors. The two windings of a two-phase motor are connected to two different phases of the supply circuit which differ 90° in time phase. Therefore, the respective currents produced by these two voltages are necessarily 90° apart in *time* phase, and they flow through two windings displaced 90° apart in *space* phase. In Chap. 2 it was shown how, under such conditions, a rotating field is produced, causing the rotor to develop torque. The motor starts and runs—if the load is not too great—because the rotor tries to follow the revolving magnetic field.

If the two windings of a two-phase induction motor were both connected to the same single-phase voltage, the currents in the two stator windings would then be in phase, and no torque would be produced.* If, however, an external resistor is connected in series with one winding, *it will decrease the current in that phase, but it will bring this decreased current more nearly in phase with the voltage.* Thus, a phase displacement between the two currents will be obtained. This phase displacement is seldom large, being of the order of 20 to 30° in time. A vector diagram of the locked-rotor currents of a typical split-phase motor is given in Fig. 4-2.

Split-phase motors do not use two-phase windings because better results are obtained with a different size of wire and a different number of turns in the two windings, whereas, in a true two-phase winding, both windings are identical. Rather than use an external resistor, it is more economical to obtain the additional resistance required in the auxiliary phase by using either a small size of copper wire or wire of a material having a specific resistance higher than copper. Either arrangement, particularly the former, which is the more common, results in a starting winding of light weight, requiring *less* than half the total slot space. Thus, *more* than half the total slot space can be used for the main winding, thereby permitting use of a larger size of wire for it than use of a two-phase winding would allow; the larger wire, of course, means lower resistance, better efficiency, and somewhat more breakdown torque.

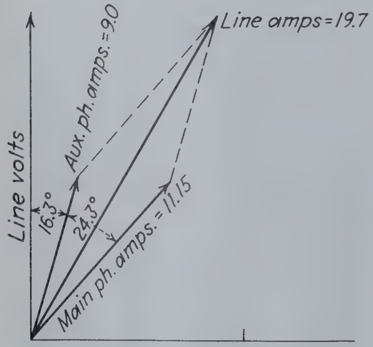


Fig. 4-2 A vector diagram of the locked-rotor currents of a standard split-phase motor, rated ⅙ hp, 115 volts, 60 hz, 1725 rpm.

---

* The truth of this point may perhaps be better understood when it is realized that, if the currents in the two windings were in time phase, the two windings would, in effect, be equivalent to a single winding and only a pulsating field could be set up, as explained in Art. 2-9.

Hence, in split-phase motors, the main winding is usually of heavier wire, is distributed in more slots, and is bulkier than the auxiliary winding. In addition, the main winding usually consists of more turns than the auxiliary winding and is wound almost invariably in the bottoms of the slots; i.e., it is wound first, and then the auxiliary winding is placed on top of it.

4-4. Purpose of the Starting Switch. At standstill, both windings must be in the circuit to develop torque, as explained previously. But after the motor has come up to approximately 75 or 80 percent of synchronous speed, the main winding alone can develop nearly as much torque as the combined windings; this point is shown in Figs. 4-3 and 4-4. At a higher speed, between 80 and 90 percent of synchronous, the combined-

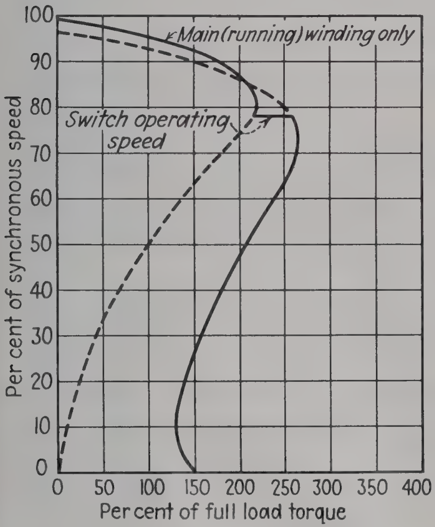


Fig. 4-3 Speed-torque curve of a standard split-phase motor.

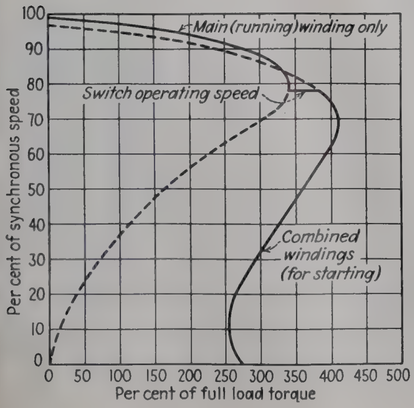


Fig. 4-4 Speed-torque curve of a special-service split-phase motor.

winding torque curve crosses the main-winding torque curve, so that, at speeds above this point, the motor develops less torque, at any given slip, with the auxiliary winding in the circuit than with it out. Consequently, it would be advantageous, purely from a torque standpoint, to cut the auxiliary winding out of circuit exactly at the "crossover" point of the speed-torque curves. However, this point does not always occur at the same speed, even in individual motors of the same design, and varies in motors of different designs; moreover, switches vary in operating speeds, so that the usual practice is to make the average switch operate at a speed slightly below the average crossover point.

There is a second reason why the starting switch is important; viz., it prevents the motor from drawing excessive watts from the line and burning up the starting winding as it would do if it were left in the circuit continuously. Split-phase motors of low horsepower ratings, however, can be built for continuous operation with the auxiliary winding in circuit; they formerly were popular for small fans but are seldom used now.

The usual starting switch is a centrifugally operated mechanical device. (For more details on such switches, see Arts. 17-5 to 17-8.) Magnetically operated switches are used with hermetically sealed refrigerators where a switch inside the refrigerant would not be permissible, and for other special applications. (See Art. 17-9.)

4-5. Standard and Special-service Motors. Applications for split-phase motors fall into two broad general classes:

1. Those which require frequent starting and a relatively large total running time per year, e.g., oil burners and domestic refrigerators.
2. Those requiring infrequent starting and a relatively small total running time, e.g., home-laundry equipment, home workshops, cellar drainers.

Standard split-phase motors are built in a wide variety of horsepower and speed ratings for the first class of applications, and usually carry service factors as given in Table 1-8. Some manufacturers refer to these as general-purpose motors because of their wide usage, but this is not strictly correct since such motors do not meet the torque requirements specified by NEMA for general-purpose motors. A typical speed-torque curve is shown in Fig. 4-3. *Special-service motors* (sometimes called *high-torque motors*) are used for the second class of applications, of which there are fewer. Figure 4-4 gives a typical speed-torque curve. Compared with standard motors, special-service motors have higher torques, lower efficiencies, higher locked-rotor currents, and a service factor of 1.0. Because they are built in high-volume production and *in few models,* they are generally lower in first cost. However, they should not generally be used on lighting circuits because of their high locked-rotor current. Moreover, the fact that they are commercially available in but a few horsepower and speed ratings further limits their range of usefulness.

4-6. Torque Characteristics of Split-phase Motors. There are no NEMA torque requirements for standard split-phase motors, but the breakdown torques that can generally be expected from commercially available motors are approximately 85 percent of the higher of the two figures for each rating in Table 1-2. Approximate locked-rotor torques are given in Table 4-1; these values were taken from Table 2-1 of another book.[10]

Maximum permissible values of locked-rotor currents for standard split-phase motors are given in Table 19-1.

CONNECTION DIAGRAMS FOR SPLIT-PHASE MOTOR WINDINGS

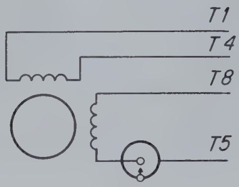
4-7. Motor Connections and Terminal Markings.

(1) *Motors with Four Tagged Leads.* Split-phase motors with four external line leads have had them identified in a wide variety of ways. They may be identified by tags, by colors, or by both. Different companies have changed their own system of marking leads from time to time. Standard terminal markings were developed and published by the American Standards Association (reorganized as The United States of America Standards Institute since September, 1966) in ASA C6 in 1944. These were used in an earlier work.[12] A revised edition of ASA C6 was published in 1956.[8] ASA C6 has since been rescinded and terminal markings and connections were added to NEMA MG1-1967.[7] In this book, the NEMA diagrams are used; they differ little from those

TABLE 4-1 Approximate Locked-rotor Torques of Standard Split-phase Motors (Torques are in oz-ft)

Hp rating	Full-load rpm (60-hz motors)			
	3450	1725	1140	850
1/20	3.0	6.8	10.0	13.0
1/12	4.4	9.4	12.7	15.0
1/8	6.5	12.7	16.2	18.0
1/6	7.5	16.0	20.0	21.0
1/4	9.0	17.8	22.5	23.5
1/3	10.8	19.8	25.0	26.0

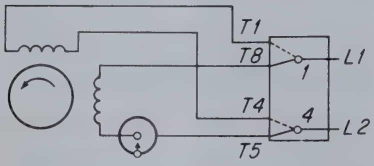
in ASA C6-1956. The diagram for a split-phase four-lead single-voltage motor is given in Fig. 4-5. In this connection diagram, the leads bear the same tags as in ASA C6-1944, but the leads are connected differently for the same direction of rotation. When there is doubt as to the correctness of the lead tagging, the leads can be identified and tagged by following the procedures of Art. 4-8.



	L1	L2
Counter-clockwise rotation	T1, T8	T4, T5
Clockwise rotation	T1, T5	T4, T8

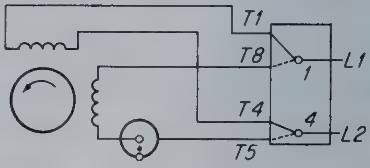
Fig. 4-5 Schematic wiring and line connection diagrams for a reversible (either-rotation) split-phase motor with four line leads. (*From NEMA.*)

(2) *Motors with Cast Conduit Box and Built-in Terminal Board.* Most split-phase motors are now supplied with the conduit box cast as an integral part of the front end shield; usually such motors are also provided with a built-in terminal board (see also Art. 5-11). Typical wiring and line connection diagrams for motors of this construction are given in Figs. 4-6 and 4-7. Basic methods of connection are essentially as shown, though many variations may be encountered. For example, it is now a fairly common practice to mount the stationary member of the starting switch directly on the terminal board itself. In Figs.



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8

Fig. 4-6 Schematic wiring and line connection diagrams for a reversible (either-rotation) split-phase motor with terminal board. Main winding is permanently connected to the back of the terminal board. (*From NEMA.*)



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4

Fig. 4-7 Schematic wiring and line connection diagrams for a reversible (either-rotation) split-phase motor with terminal board. Auxiliary winding is permanently connected to the back of the terminal board. (*From NEMA.*)

4-6 and 4-7, it will be observed that the motor can be connected for either direction of rotation simply by interchanging two leads connected to the outside of the terminal board, and it is not necessary to dismantle the motor to do this.

(3) *Motors with Untagged Colored Leads.* NEMA has developed color designations, corresponding to numbered tags, for single-phase motors, as follows:

T1—Blue
T2—White
T3—Orange
T4—Yellow
T5—Black
T8—Red
P1—No color assigned
P2—Brown

Before a serviceman dismantles a motor, he should determine how the windings are connected to each other and to the line. These connections can best be recorded in the form of a *wiring diagram* such as Fig. 4-5, for example. It is also desirable to record the line connections if they are given on an instruction tag or card; if not, the repairman may have to determine these connections for himself. In such a case, he needs to know how to tell the windings apart and how to identify the leads.

4-8. How to Tell the Windings Apart and How to Identify the Leads. If the motor is assembled and the lead markings are indistinguishable or not understood, and if there are four leads, the main winding usually can be differentiated from the auxiliary winding in one of two ways:

1. By measuring the ohmic resistance of each winding with a Wheatstone or Kelvin bridge or by the voltmeter-ammeter method. (See Art. 18-9.) For motors rated $\frac{1}{12}$ hp or more, the resistance of the auxiliary winding is almost invariably—but not necessarily—greater than the resistance of the main winding; for $\frac{1}{20}$-hp motors, the main winding is likely to have the higher resistance.
2. By measuring the locked-rotor power factors of the two windings separately, at rated voltage and frequency, with the rotor in place. The power factor of the auxiliary winding is invariably and necessarily higher than that of the main winding. Power factor is best measured with a voltmeter, ammeter, and wattmeter, though there are direct-reading power-factor meters.

If the end shields are removed, permitting an inspection of the windings, identification of the leads is simpler:

3. The auxiliary winding is usually wound on top of the main winding, i.e., nearer the stator bore.
4. The auxiliary winding has less weight of copper and, usually, fewer turns.

COMMON WINDING CONNECTIONS

The more common winding connections will be discussed first, before some special and unusual ones are considered.

4-9. Both Windings Series-connected. Split-phase motors are usually wound with two-layer concentric windings (except for two-speed motors). Stator connection diagrams for two- and four-pole windings are given in Figs. 4-8 and 4-9. In these two typical diagrams, both main and auxiliary windings are connected in series. Both of them show the lead T5, which goes to the starting switch, tied into the winding as a "dummy" lead. A motor connected by either of these diagrams will have terminals marked as in Fig. 4-5, which will then apply.

When a motor is encountered that does not use the present standard markings, it may save later confusion to re-mark them to agree with the present standard markings, using new tags if necessary. Care must be taken not to confuse T1 with T4 or T5 with T8, or rotation would be incorrect.

Direction of rotation, in this book, is specified the same way that NEMA specifies it, namely from the front end, which is the end opposite the shaft extension. Unfortunately, this practice is not followed by all motor manufacturers.

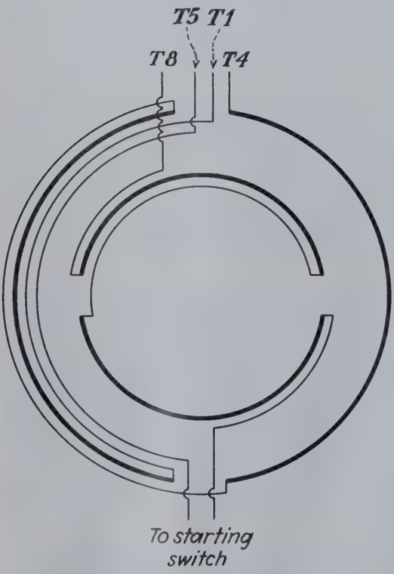


Fig. 4-8 Stator connection diagram; two poles, one phase, both windings series, four line leads, externally reversible.

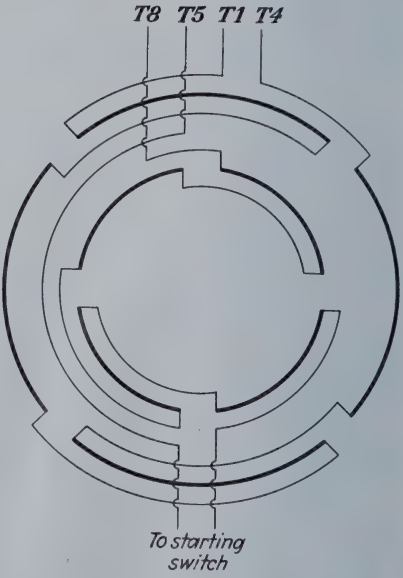


Fig. 4-9 Stator connection diagram; four poles, one phase, both windings series, four line leads, externally reversible.

4-10. Parallel-connected Main Winding, Series-connected Auxiliary Winding. The main winding of a split-phase motor is often connected in two or more parallel circuits for the sake of quietness. This practice is more common in motors having six poles or more. Since the auxiliary winding is energized only during starting, the more economical series-connected winding may be used.

Diagrams for motors with a parallel-connected main and a series-connected auxiliary winding are given in Figs. 4-10 and 4-11 for motors of four and six poles, respectively. These both use Figs. 4-5 to 4-7 for wiring and line connection diagrams. Note that these two stator connection diagrams both use equalizing connections (identified by *a* and *b*) so that each pole is connected in parallel with the pole diametrically opposite. The arrangement is best shown in the schematic diagram accompanying each figure; the numbers opposite the coils in the schematic correspond to the pole numbers shown on the main diagram.

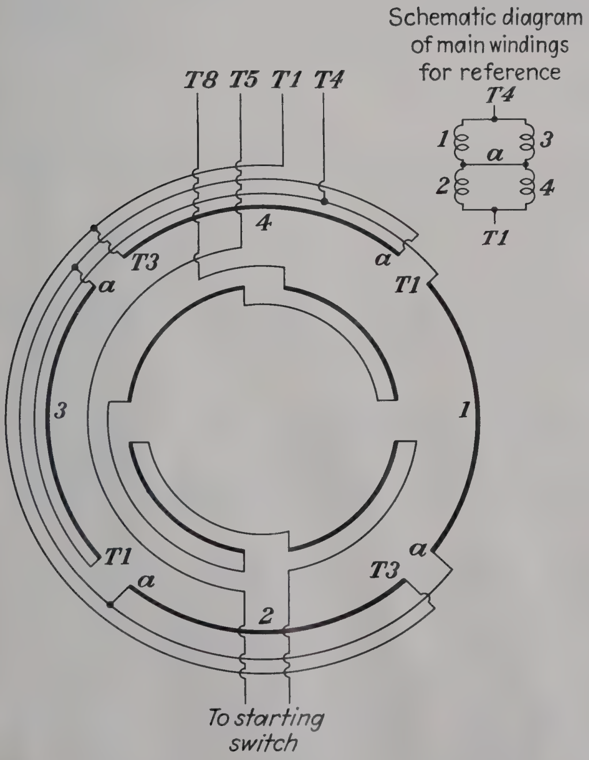


Fig. 4-10 Stator connection diagram; four poles, one phase, parallel main, series auxiliary, four line leads, externally reversible.

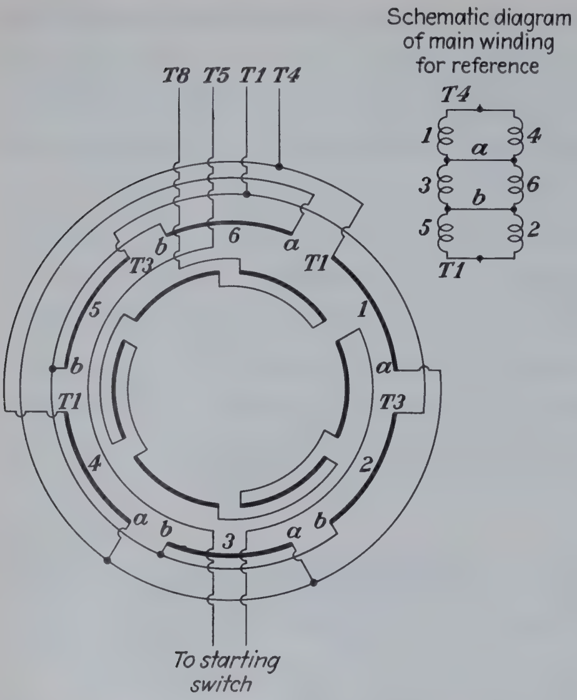


Fig. 4-11 Stator connection diagram; six poles, one phase, parallel main, series auxiliary, four line leads, externally reversible.

Diametrically opposite poles are connected in parallel to equalize the flux in the respective poles and thereby minimize any unbalanced magnetic pull with consequent noise.

4-11. Both Windings Parallel, Cross-connected. When starting noise is important, both main and auxiliary windings may be parallel-connected. Auxiliary-winding coils can be paralleled with each other, just like main-winding coils. See Figs. 7-5 and 7-6.

4-12. "Short-throw" and "Long-throw" Connections. Consider Fig. 4-9: each pole is connected directly to an adjacent one. This form of connection is usually the easiest and most logical way to connect the coils. It is called a "short-throw" connection because the throw from one coil to the next is short. In Fig. 4-12, on the other hand, connections are between alternate pole groups, necessitating a longer throw, hence the name "long-throw" connection. (Short-throw and long-throw connections for polyphase motors are discussed in Art. 14-6.)

Electrically, it is not generally important whether the long or the short throw is used, except as discussed in Art. 3-12.

4-13. Switch in Center of Auxiliary Winding. In Figs. 4-8 to 4-12, the starting switch is connected to one end of the auxiliary winding and the other starting-switch lead goes directly to the line. Sometimes, as shown in Fig. 4-13, the starting switch is connected in the center of the winding.

4-14. Motors with Direction-connection Plug. Westinghouse formerly supplied washing-machine motors which were provided with a square direction-connection plug. At the time of assembly of the motor in the washing machine, the plug was pushed into the front end shield in either one of two positions to give either CCW or CW rotation, as needed by the machine in which it was being installed. More details of this arrangement were covered in an earlier work.[12]

4-15. Connecting Motor Windings for a Definite Direction of Rotation. Split-phase motors with four line leads, as shown in Fig. 4-5, can be connected to the power source for either direction of rotation. If the

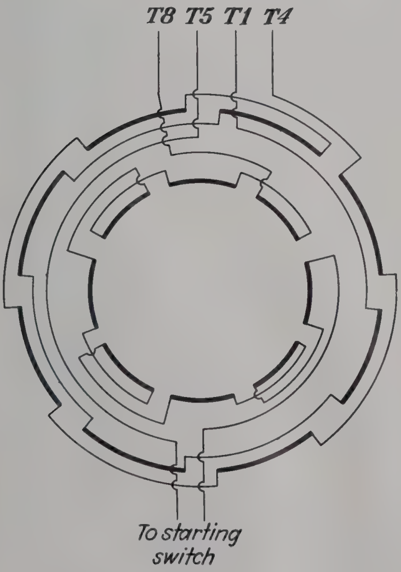


Fig. 4-12 Stator connection diagram; eight poles, one phase, main winding long throw, auxiliary winding short throw, both windings series, four line leads, externally reversible.

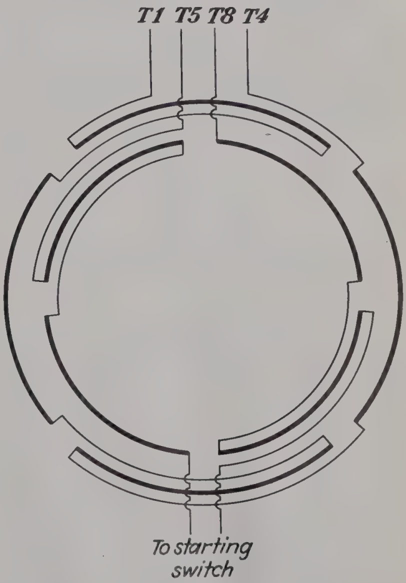


Fig. 4-13 Stator connection diagram; four poles, one phase, both windings series, switch in center of auxiliary winding.

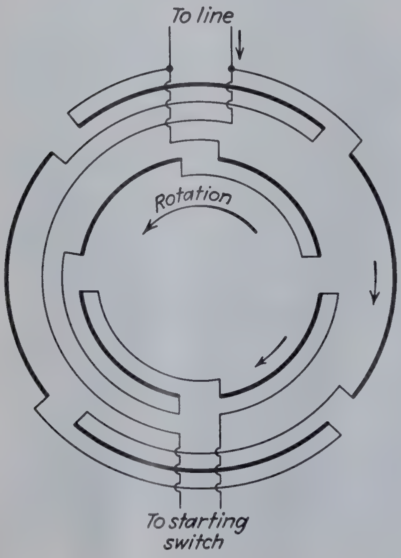
external connections shown in this figure are made inside the motor and only two line leads are brought out, the motor becomes nonreversible.

A stator connection diagram for a four-pole series-connected winding with two line leads, arranged for counterclockwise rotation, is given in Fig. 4-14. This diagram was derived from Fig. 4-9 by bringing one lead out from T4 and T5, and the other from T1 and T8.

Direction of rotation, as used above, refers to the end where the connections are made, which is usually the front end, or the end opposite the shaft extension.

4-16. Predetermining Direction of Rotation. Of course, the simplest way to predetermine the direction of rotation of a split-phase motor is to connect it to a suitable power source momentarily and observe the direction in which it starts. Or, if a wiring and line connection diagram is available, the direction of rotation can be predetermined by comparing the lead connections with the diagram. Sometimes, however, it is desired to find the direction of rotation of a wound stator without assembling it into a motor. At other times the problem may be to find out or to verify the direction of rotation that would be produced by following a certain stator connection diagram. Both of these latter problems are discussed below.

(1) *By Testing the Connected Windings.* Connect one end of the main winding and one end of the auxiliary winding to a common lead. Pass a small value of direct current through the auxiliary winding and, using a small compass in the stator bore, locate and mark a north pole



DETERMINATION OF DIRECTION OF ROTATION FROM STATOR CONNECTION DIAGRAM.

Fig. 4-14 Stator connection diagram; four poles; one phase, both windings series, two line leads, CCW rotation.

on the stator core by the numeral 1. Now, using the same common lead as before, pass a small direct current through the main winding and locate the north pole nearest to the auxiliary north pole just marked; this distance should be 90 electrical degrees, and the pole should be marked 2. (Care must be taken not to reverse the magnetism of the compass needle in this process.) Since the direction of rotation of a split-phase motor is from an auxiliary pole to a main pole of the same magnetic polarity, the assembled motor will rotate in the direction from 1 to 2.

A variation of the above method is to connect the main and auxiliary windings to one pair of line leads, providing means for opening and closing the starting switch leads. With the starting-switch leads joined, pass a small value of direct current through the two windings. Place the compass in the stator bore with the needle free to assume a position. Now, open the starting switch leads and observe which way the needle moves, for it will move in the direction in which the assembled motor will rotate. It is easy to see why this is so if we stop to reflect that, with both windings energized, the needle will assume a position *between* the main and auxiliary windings; now, when the auxiliary winding is opened by opening the switch leads, the compass needle moves toward the main winding away from the auxiliary winding, which is, of course, the direction of rotation.

A simple variation of the method of the preceding paragraph may be even more convenient for the small service shop. The windings are both connected to a high-frequency source, with the same provision for opening and closing the starting switch leads, and a paper clip suspended from a thread is used in place of a compass. The direction that the freely suspended paper clip moves in when the starting switch leads are opened is the direction of rotation to be expected, for reasons given in the paragraph above.

(2) *By Inspection of the Stator Connection Diagram.* How to predetermine the direction of rotation by inspection of the stator connection diagram is illustrated in Fig 4-14. Assume current to be entering the line lead at the right, as indicated by the arrow. The current divides, and a portion of it flows through the first main-winding coil in a clockwise direction on the diagram, as shown by a curved arrow; now, following the other portion of the current through the starting switch to the first coil of the auxiliary winding, a second curved arrow is drawn as shown. Now, the two poles indicated are both of the same magnetic polarity, since the imaginary current traverses both poles in the same direction on the diagram. Therefore, the direction of rotation will be counterclockwise, i.e., from the auxiliary coil to the nearest main coil of the same magnetic polarity.

4-17. Nonreversible Motor with One Line Lead on the Starting Switch. Figure 4-15 is an interesting variation of Fig. 4-14. It shows a connection employed by at least one manufacturer to eliminate one soldered or welded joint and thereby reduce cost of manufacture. There is only one soldered connection, viz., where one side of the line connects to the common point of the main and auxiliary windings. The free or open ends of the main and auxiliary windings are connected to the two separate terminals of the starting switch. The remaining line lead is connected to the same switch terminal as is the main winding.

This method of connection is given here to illustrate one of the many types of connections that may be encountered; it is also given to warn the serviceman that a switch lead is not necessarily a lead from the auxiliary winding.

4-18. Motor with Cord and Plug and Built-in Line Switch. Split-phase motors, especially for home-workshop use, are often provided with a cord and plug and a line switch. The line switch may be mounted on the end shield itself or on the conduit-box cover plate. The cord can be plugged into any convenience outlet, and the motor turned on and off by the motor-mounted toggle switch.

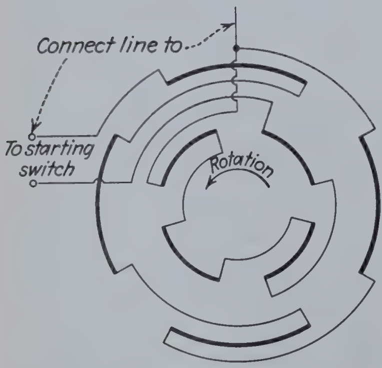
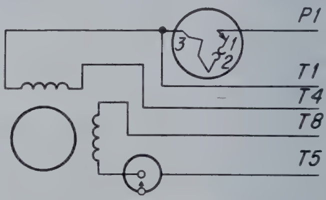


Fig. 4-15 Stator connection diagram for a motor with a line lead on the starting switch, four poles, series.



	L1	L2	Join
Counter-clockwise rotation	P1	T4, T5	T1, T8
Clockwise rotation	P1	T4, T8	T1, T5

Fig. 4-16 Schematic wiring and line connection diagram for a thermally protected reversible (either-rotation) split-phase motor with five line leads. (*From NEMA.*)

THERMALLY PROTECTED MOTORS

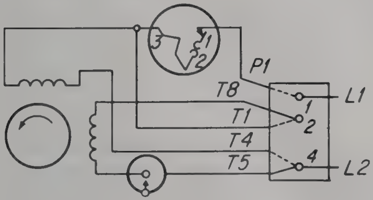
A general description of thermal protective devices and how they function is given in Arts. 17-14 to 17-19. How they are used in split-phase motors is the subject of the following paragraphs.

4-19. Reversible—Five or Six Line Leads. Figure 4-16 shows wiring and line connection diagrams of a split-phase motor equipped with a thermal protective device which is mounted on or in the motor, thus becoming an integral part of the latter. The connections are the same as for the typical split-phase motor of Fig. 4-5 except that the thermal protective device is connected in series with the line. The stator winding connections can, of course, be the same as those of any split-phase motor not equipped with thermal protection.

Five external leads are sufficient when protector post 3 and T1 are connected together inside the motor; without such an internal connection, six leads would be needed.

When a thermally protected motor is connected to a grounded circuit, the lead from the protector, P1 in this case, should be connected to the ungrounded side of the line so that, if the thermal protector opens, the motor windings will not be "hot." In Fig. 4-16, line lead L2 is the one to connect to the grounded side of the line. Most manufacturers state on their instruction tag which lead is to be connected to the ungrounded side of the line.

4-20. Nonreversible—Two Line Leads. A nonreversible motor, even if thermally protected, requires only two line leads, as does any other split-phase motor. Sometimes one lead is colored white to denote that it should be connected to the grounded side of the line. Some manufacturers, however, use a distinctive marking to indicate the protector lead; Robbins and Myers, for example, use a black lead with red tracer for just this purpose. The serviceman should always be careful to connect the proper lead to the grounded side of the line!



To obtain clockwise rotation interchange leads T5 and T8

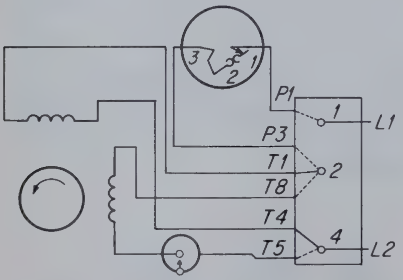
Fig. 4-17 Schematic wiring and line connection diagram for a thermally protected reversible (either-rotation) split-phase motor with terminal board. Main winding is permanently connected to the back of the terminal board. (*From NEMA.*)

4-21. Motors with Terminal Board. Thermally protected split-phase motors, provided with a terminal board, may be wired up as shown in Fig. 4-17 or 4-18. Caution: *Post 2 must on no account be connected to either side of the line.* The same stator connection diagrams as for Fig. 4-6 apply.

4-22. Heating Coil of Thermal Protector in Auxiliary Phase Only. Built-in thermal protectors usually are provided with a heating coil, or its equivalent, so that the device is influenced both by temperature and by current passing through the heater coil. In the motors just discussed, line current passes through the heater coil. If a third terminal is added to the protector, the latter can be connected so that only the current of the auxiliary phase passes through the heater, although the contacts open the line circuit. Such an arrangement is shown in Fig. 4-19.

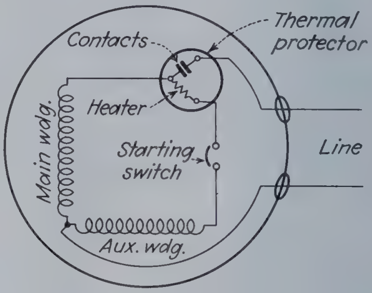
TWO-SPEED MOTORS

4-23. Two-speed Pole-changing Motors. Split-phase motors can be wound with pole-changing windings so as to give two different normal speeds of operation, either one of which can be selected by making changes in the external connections. Regardless of the speed selected, the motor will operate at a substantially constant speed within the range of its rating. The number of combinations is legion and only a few can be discussed here. For purposes of this discussion, pole-changing motors are broken down into two general classes: four-winding arrangements and three-winding arrangements. Because consequent-pole connections are often used, we will start by considering first what they are.



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4

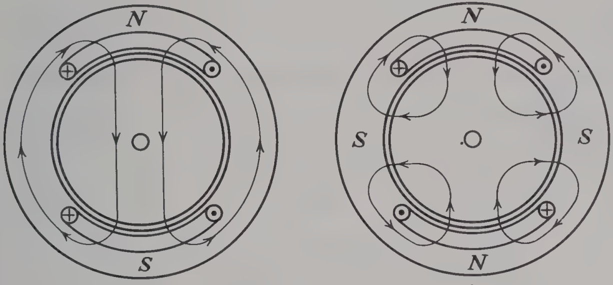
Fig. 4-18 Schematic wiring and line connection diagram, similar to Fig. 4-17, except that the auxiliary winding is permanently connected to the back of the board. (*From NEMA.*)



Wiring diagram

Fig. 4-19 Wiring and line connection diagram of a thermally protected split-phase motor with the heater coil in the auxiliary phase only.

4-24. Consequent-pole Windings. Briefly, a consequent-pole winding has only half as many pole groups as there are poles, and all these groups are connected for the same magnetic polarity. Why the resultant magnetic field has twice as many poles as there are coils was explained by C. W. Kincaid[5] with the use of a figure very similar to Fig. 4-20. In this figure, there are two coil groups: when these are connected for opposite magnetic polarities, as in (*a*), the magnetic field has two poles; when they are connected for the *same* magnetic polarity the two coils "buck" one another, but since the flux has to return across the air gap, two additional poles are formed. Thus, a four-pole magnetic field is produced as shown. In short, if all the coils are connected for the same magnetic polarity, there will be formed an equal number of consequent poles of the opposite magnetic polarity; the centers of the consequent poles will fall halfway between the coils. Stator connection diagram Fig. 4-23 shows the use of consequent-pole connections. Figure 4-22 shows an interesting variation: the auxiliary winding for the six-pole connection has only two poles wound; note, however, that these two coils have the same span, positions, and magnetic polarities that two coils of a conventional six-pole winding would have. In other words, the auxiliary winding is like the six-pole winding with four coils omitted. [To those who wish to probe the subject further, let it simply be stated that, technically, this winding is a two-pole winding with coils of one-third pitch, producing a strong third harmonic or six-pole mmf wave. The mathematical basis for this statement is contained in Eq. (14-12), as derived in Art. 14-3, of another work by the author.[10]]



(a)
Normal connection
2 poles

(b)
Consequent pole connection
4 poles

Fig. 4-20 A simple consequent-pole connection.

4-25. Two-speed Pole-changing Four-winding Motors. With this arrangement, there are two main windings and two auxiliary windings, one of each for each speed. Such an arrangement is shown schematically in Fig. 4-21, which shows the use of a double-pole double-throw switch to select the desired speed; a three-pole double-throw switch would be required to deenergize the motor completely. It will be noted that the connections are so arranged as to require but one starting switch. *This starting switch must operate at 75 to 80 percent of the synchronous speed of the low-speed winding.* To some extent, this requirement limits the switching torque on the high-speed connection.

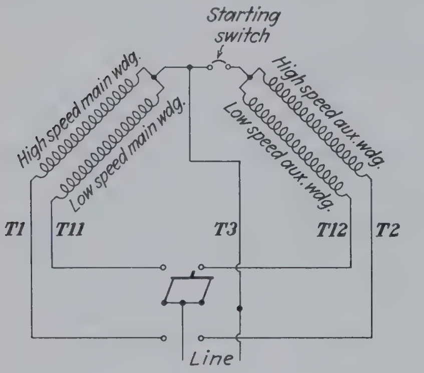


Fig. 4-21 Wiring and line connection diagram of a two-speed pole-changing split-phase motor with four windings.

The motor of Fig. 4-21 is not reversible, but it could be made so by bringing out the other ends of both main windings, at the expense of bringing out two more leads. It is also interesting to note that this motor could be arranged to operate in one direction on one speed, and

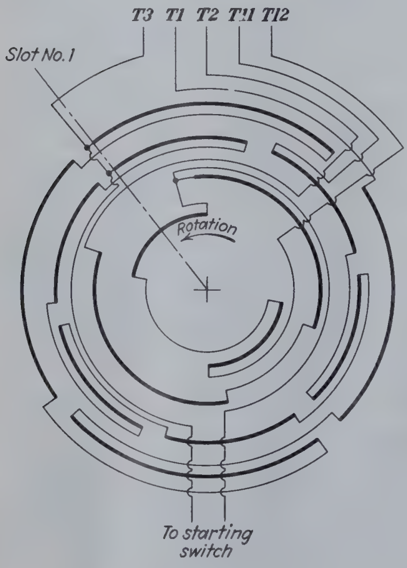


Fig. 4-22 Stator connection diagram for motor of Fig. 4-21; four and six poles, all series-connected. Both main windings are conventional; four-pole auxiliary is consequent-pole, and six-pole auxiliary (extreme inner winding) has only two coils as shown.

in the other direction on the other speed; the same can not be said for the three-winding motors discussed in Art. 4-26.

Because of the fact that four windings are used, considerable winding space is required in the motor. For this reason, the physical dimensions of a two-speed pole-changing motor are necessarily greater than those of a single-speed motor of the same horsepower and speed rating. To facilitate winding, the low-speed windings often use a consequent-pole connection. Typical stator connection diagrams are Figs. 4-22 and 4-23.

4-26. Two-speed Pole-changing Three-winding Motors. Three-winding arrangements were developed for pole-changing single-phase motors to simplify the winding process by omitting one auxiliary winding completely. Schematic wiring and line connection diagrams for one such motor are shown in Fig. 4-24. This motor automatically starts on the high-speed connection, regardless of whether it is connected externally for high or for low speed. If connected for low speed, it starts on the high-speed connection and transfers automatically to the low-speed connection at a predetermined speed. Only a single-pole double-throw switch is actually necessary for speed control, but a double-pole switch is needed for complete deenergization of the motor. The direction of rotation can be interchanged by changing two leads on the outside of the terminal board. An interesting feature of this particular motor is the two-heater thermal protector; one heater is for the low-speed winding, the other for the high-speed winding.

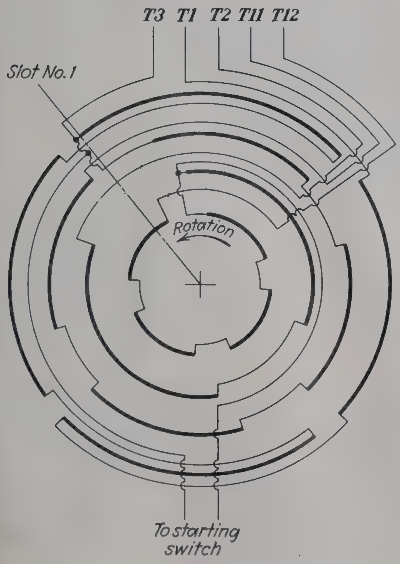
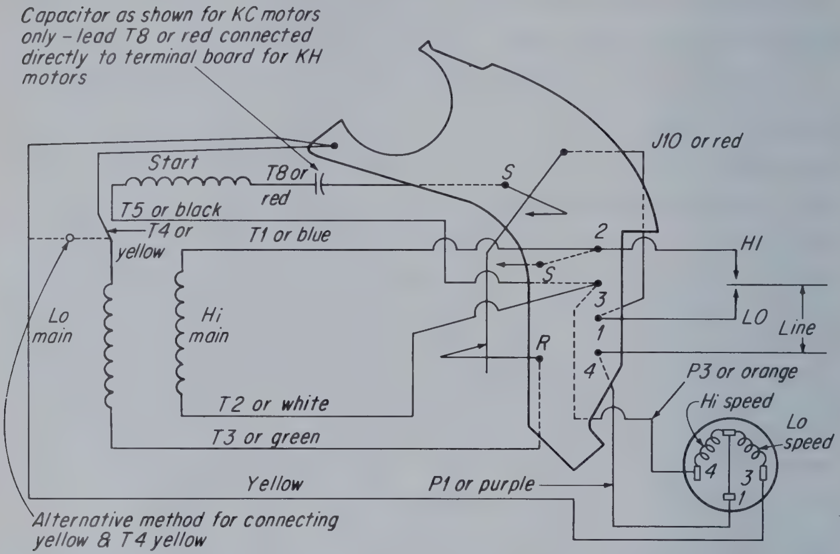


Fig. 4-23 Stator connection diagram for motor of Fig. 4-21; four and eight poles, all series-connected. Reading from the outside inward; four-pole main winding, conventional; eight-pole main winding, consequent-pole; four-pole auxiliary winding, consequent-pole; eight-pole auxiliary winding, consequent-pole.

Either rotation – single voltage –
2 speed pole changing – type KC or KH
with thermal protector



Capacitor as shown for KC motors only – lead T8 or red connected directly to terminal board for KH motors

Alternative method for connecting yellow & T4 yellow

Note#1 – To reverse rotation, interchange blue (or T1) and white (or T2) leads

Note#2 When more than one capacitor is used, connect in parallel

Fig. 4-24 Wiring and line connection diagram for a two-speed pole-changing split-phase or capacitor-start motor. Motor always starts on the high-speed connection, but if connected externally for low speed, it automatically transfers to the low-speed connection at a predetermined speed. Note the use of a thermal protector, provided with two heaters, one for each speed connection. (*General Electric Company.*)

HOME-LAUNDRY MOTORS

Home-laundry motors are specially designed and made for powering home washing machines, dryers, or combination washer-dryers. They are usually either split-phase or capacitor-start, single-speed or two-speed pole-changing. Sometimes they are provided with auxiliary terminals on the terminal board. A dryer motor that is bonded together with an epoxy is illustrated in Fig. 4-25.

4-27. Single-speed Home-laundry Motors. These are all four-pole motors, rated ⅙, ¼, ⅓, or ½ hp. Temperature rise, *as measured by resistance*, is 60°C for motors with Class A insulation, and 80°C for motors with Class B insulation. Locked-rotor current, on 115 volts, may go as high as 50 amp. Torque values, established by NEMA, are given in Table 4-2.

TABLE 4-2 Torque Characteristics of Laundry Motors*

Hp	Minimum breakdown torques, oz-ft				Minimum locked-rotor torques, oz-ft		
	Single-speed motors		Two-speed motors		Single-speed split-phase motors		Two-speed motors
	Type I	Type II	1800 rpm	1200 rpm	Type I	Type II	
½	45.0	....	45.0	40.0	....	....	42.0
⅓	35.0	40.5	40.5	35.0	27.0	33.0	33.0
¼	23.0	31.5	....	....	19.0	24.0	
⅙	18.0	....	....	....	16.0		

* From NEMA.

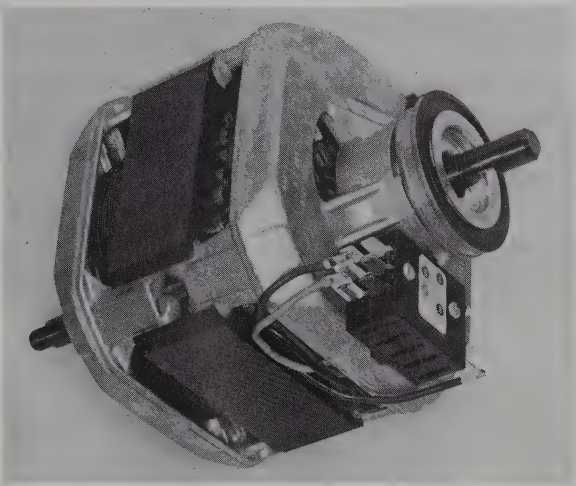
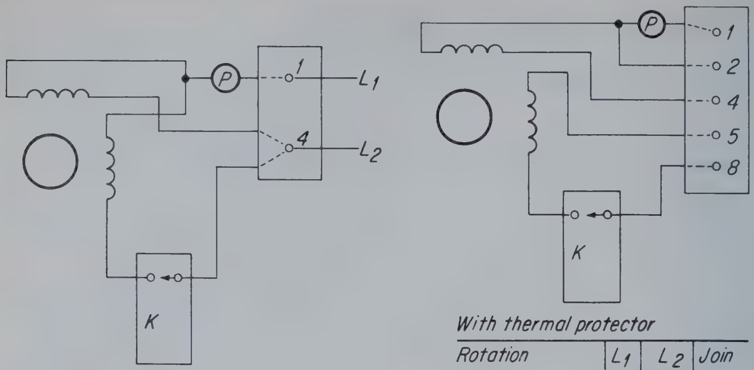


Fig. 4-25 A dryer motor that is held together with an epoxy. Note that the tongues on the die-cast end shields slide into an opening punched in the laminations. The rotor is held concentric in the air gap during curing of the epoxy, and after cure the motor cannot be dismantled. (*Emerson Electric Company.*)

Standard connection diagrams for single-speed reversible and nonreversible thermally protected motors were developed by NEMA and are reproduced in Fig. 4-26. Dotted connections to the terminal board are made by the manufacturer at the back of the board, inside the motor; solid-line connections are made to the outside of the terminal board by the user. Additional similar diagrams are given in NEMA standards.[7]



With thermal protector

With thermal protector

Rotation	L_1	L_2	Join
Clockwise	1	4-8	2-5
Counterclockwise	1	4-5	2-8

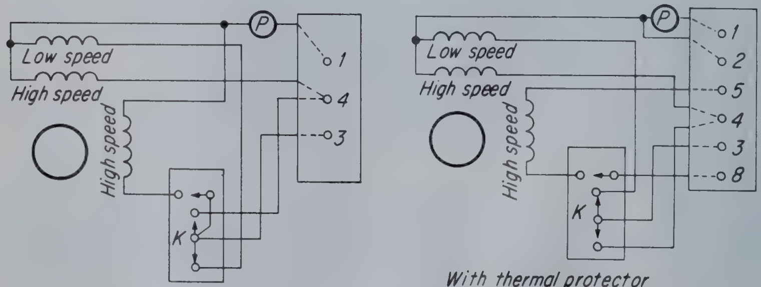
(a) Non-reversible

(b) Reversible

Fig. 4-26 Schematic connections for single-speed home-laundry motors, thermally protected, with terminal board. (*From NEMA.*)

4-28. Two-speed Home-laundry Motors. These motors are generally similar to the motors just described in the preceding article, except that they are wound for 4/6 poles, arranged generally as described in Art. 4-26. Torque values are given in Table 4-2.

Standard connection diagrams for reversible and nonreversible motors, thermally protected, were developed by NEMA and two of these are reproduced in Fig. 4-27. As in Fig. 4-26, dotted connections to the



With thermal protector

Speed	L_1	L_2
High	1	4
Low	1	3

With thermal protector

Rotation	Speed	L_1	L_2	Join
Clockwise	High	1	4-8	2-5
"	Low	1	3-8	2-5
Counterclockwise	High	1	4-5	2-8
"	Low	1	3-5	2-8

(a) Non-reversible

(b) Reversible

Fig. 4-27 Schematic connections for two-speed home-laundry motors, thermally protected, with terminal board. (*From NEMA.*)

terminal board are internally made, and solid ones externally made. The motor invariably uses the two high-speed windings for starting, with the auxiliary winding being cut out of the circuit by the centrifugal switch. After the centrifugal switch has operated, the motor may run on either the high-speed or the low-speed main winding, depending upon external connections. Thus, these motors are similar to those discussed in Art. 4-26.

One practical embodiment of such a motor is illustrated in Fig. 4-28. In this diagram, the external double-pole double-throw switch shown provides the capability of starting the motor from rest in either direction of rotation on either speed.

4-29. Laundry Motors with Auxiliary Terminals. Home-laundry motors are often provided with one or more extra terminals on the terminal board. These provide extra circuits which may or may not be common with the starting switch, and may be open, or may be closed, when the motor is running. Standard methods of marking such auxiliary circuits, as developed by NEMA, are reproduced in Fig. 4-29. This figure applies to single-speed motors, but similar terminals may also be added to two-speed motors. Such extra circuits make it easy for the appliance

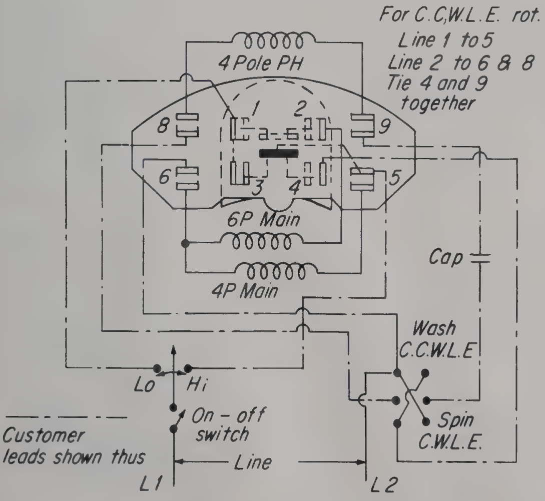
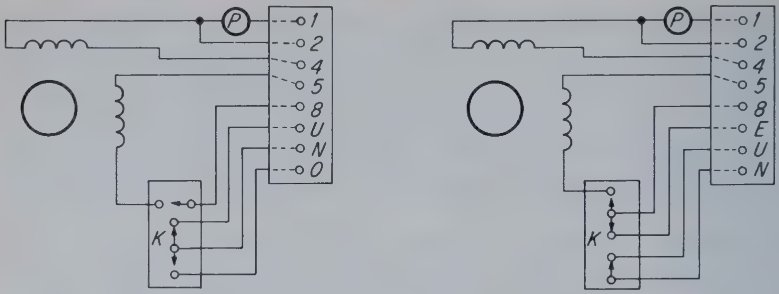


Fig. 4-28 Wiring and line connection diagram for a two-speed capacitor-start motor, full automatic starting, with direction of rotation selectable for either speed. (See Art. 4-28.) The starting position, at rest, connects terminal post 5 to posts 3 and 4; in the running position, it connects terminal post 5 to posts 1 and 2. Posts 1 and 3 are permanently connected together. The double-pole double-throw switch in the lower right corner reverses the connections between the auxiliary phase and the line to give desired rotation. (*Delco Products.*)



With thermal protector and with separate extra circuits

Rotation	L_1	L_2	Join
Clockwise	1	4-8	2-5
Counterclockwise	1	4-5	2-8

With thermal protector and with common and separate extra circuits

Rotation	L_1	L_2	Join
Clockwise	1	4-8	2-5
Counterclockwise	1	4-5	2-8

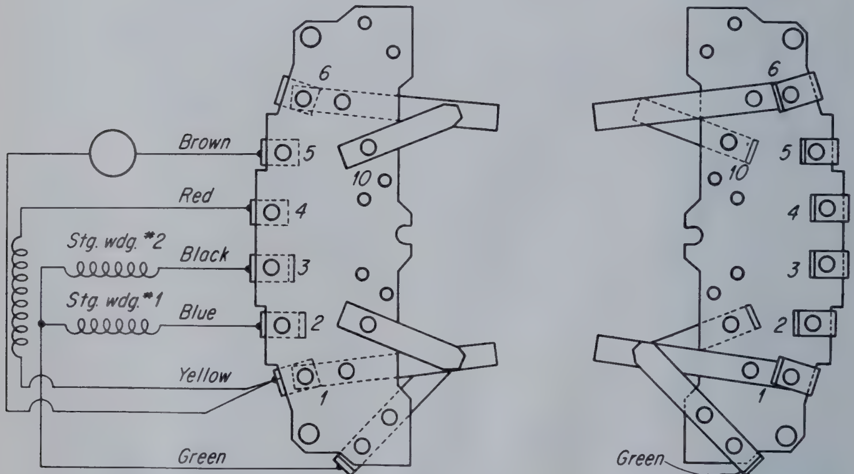
E – Extra circuit common with the starting switch, open with motor off and closed with motor running.

N – Extra circuit separate from the starting switch. Pivotal point for double-throw switching.

O – Extra circuit separate from the starting switch, open with motor running.

U – Extra circuit separate from the starting switch, closed with motor running.

Fig. 4-29 Schematic connections for single-speed reversing home-laundry motors, with extra circuits. Both motors are thermally protected. (*From NEMA MG*1-18.317, *January*, 1968.)



Motor wiring to inside of term. bd.

Outside of terminal bd.

CCW	CW
L1 to 4 and 3	L1 to 4 and 2
L2 to 5	L2 to 5

Back contact 6 to 10

Fig. 4-30 A dryer motor with back contacts on the starting switch through which the heater can be connected so that it can be energized only when the motor is running. Another feature is the use of two starting windings, so that the motor can be reversed by means of a single-pole double-throw switch. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

manufacturer to interlock the dryer heater with the blower motor, for example.

In Fig. 4-30, the use of such a circuit is illustrated. If the heater is connected to the line through posts 6 and 10, it can be energized only when the motor is running, for posts 6 and 10 are connected together only after the motor is up to speed. This same motor incorporates an interesting feature: one main winding and two auxiliary windings to simplify reversibility. One auxiliary winding is used for one direction of rotation, the other for the other direction. (All three windings are four-pole.) Direction of rotation can be preset, at standstill, simply by connecting 4 to 3 or to 2; in either case, line power is applied to 4 and 5.

MISCELLANEOUS ARRANGEMENTS

4-30. Resistance-start Split-phase Motor. A resistance-start split-phase motor is a form of split-phase motor in which an external resistor is connected in series with the auxiliary winding. It is little used because it is more economical to obtain the resistance needed by dropping the size of wire in the auxiliary winding.

4-31. Reactor-start Motor. A reactor-start motor is similar to a split-phase motor except that it is designed to have an external reactor connected in series with the *main winding* during the starting period. A typical arrangement is shown in Fig. 4-31. The effect of the reactor is to reduce the locked-rotor current in the main winding, at the same time increasing the angle of lag of main-winding current behind the impressed voltage. This increase in phase angle between the two currents tends to increase the locked-rotor torque, so that substantially

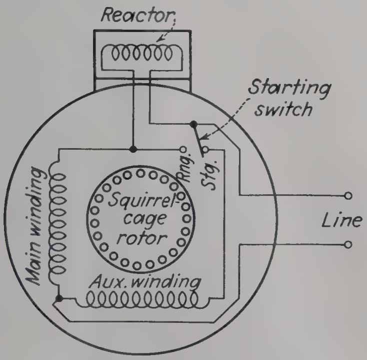


Fig. 4-31 The reactor-start motor.

the same locked-rotor torque is obtained, but with appreciably less locked-rotor current than would be obtained without the reactor. The starting switch has to be single-pole and double-throw, like the transfer switch used in the two-value capacitor motor shown in Fig. 6-1. Equations for calculating the reactor required for this type of motor have been developed by the author.[6]

MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

4-32. How to Reverse the Various Types of Motors. The fundamental principle involved in reversing split-phase motors is that the direction of current in the auxiliary phase, with respect to the current in the main phase, must be reversed. How to accomplish this change, in the case of four-lead motors, is shown in Fig. 4-5. How to connect the motor for a definite direction of rotation and how to predetermine this direction of rotation is fully covered in Arts. 4-15 and 4-16. It should be pointed out that, if the line leads of Fig. 4-5 are connected to a snap switch for reversing, the motor cannot be *plugged;* it is necessary to wait at least until the rotor has slowed down sufficiently for the starting switch to close the auxiliary-phase circuit, and sometimes until the motor comes to rest, before the motor can be reversed.

4-33. Rewinding or Reconnecting Motor for a Different Voltage and the Same Performance. If a split-phase motor is series-connected in both windings, it can be reconnected for half voltage by connecting both windings in parallel. Sometimes it may be difficult in practice to reconnect the motor, particularly if the coils were originally gun-wound or machine-wound, because the connections between coils are very short, and it may be difficult to solder a lead to them.

If it is desired to make a 230-volt motor out of a 115-volt motor and if both windings are series-connected, it will be necessary to rewind both windings, using wire three sizes smaller and twice as many turns in each. It is inadvisable, however, to attempt to rewind any motor for more than 250 volts, because of starting-switch limitations.

If the change in voltage is not to double or to halve it, both windings will have to be rewound. In general, the change in turns in each winding should be proportional to the change in voltage for which the motor is being rewound. The wire used in the main winding should be of as large a size as will go into the slots without omitting turns. For the auxiliary winding, however, it is definitely not advisable to choose the largest size that will fit into the slots; a fairly safe rule is to keep the difference in wire sizes (gauge numbers) between the main and auxiliary windings the same in the rewound motor as it was in the original motor.

4-34. Rewinding for Different Torques at the Same Voltage. Probably it is not often that a service shop will be called upon to rewind a motor to obtain a different torque, but some general hints on what to do in such a case may be helpful. At a given voltage and frequency, the breakdown torque will vary approximately inversely as the square of the number of turns in the main winding. Therefore, to increase the breakdown torque, decrease the turns in the main winding.

A word of caution must be given here. Before rewinding for a different torque, some careful check tests should be made on the motor that is to be rewound. Determine experimentally how high the voltage must be increased to obtain the desired breakdown torque. With the motor operating at rated load, measure the watts input at normal voltage and at the increased voltage. If the input is appreciably higher, a temperature run should be taken at the operating load at this increased voltage to see if the motor is capable of dissipating the increased losses. Instructions for making a temperature test are given in Art. 18-16(9). Normal temperature rises are given in Table 1-6. Also, listen carefully to the motor while it is operating at the higher voltage, as well as while it is operating at normal voltage, to make sure that with the increased torque the magnetic noise will not be excessive. If the temperature run indicates that the torque of the motor can be safely increased by as much as the ratio of, say, 110:120 volts [the torque increase will be $(120/110)^2$, or 19 percent], the turns in the main winding can be decreased in the ratio of 120:110. For such a small change in turns, it will be unnecessary to change the auxiliary winding. If the main-winding turns are decreased, it is desirable to use a larger size of wire when space permits.

If the motor is to be rewound for less torque, it is also important to check the input at reduced voltage, for the full-load losses may be either increased or decreased with a reduction in applied voltage. A good way to find out is to take a full-load saturation test, as described in Art. 18-16(8).

4-35. Rewinding for a Different Frequency. If the change in frequency is very small, say from 50 to 60 hz, it may not be necessary to rewind at all, unless the motor is severely overloaded. If the change is from 60 to 50 hz, a winding change is apt to be unnecessary. If the motor is a high-torque motor, it may be necessary to increase the turns of a 60-hz motor 10 percent to obtain satisfactory operation on 50 hz without overheating. When changing either a general-purpose or a high-torque motor from 60 to 50 hz the rotating member of the starting switch should be changed, for the switching torque would otherwise be adversely affected. Should the change be from 50 to 60 hz and should the torque requirements not be too severe, it may be unnecessary to change either the winding or the starting switch.

4-36. Use of a Capacitor in the Auxiliary Phase to Raise Locked-rotor Torque or to Reduce Locked-rotor Current. It has often been asked what beneficial effects can be obtained by inserting an electrolytic capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding of a split-phase motor. In Fig. 4-32 is shown the effect of inserting different values of capacitance in series with the auxiliary winding of a standard ⅙-hp 115-volt 60-hz four-pole split-phase motor. It will be noted that with 90 mfd,* the torque is the same as with a split-phase motor, but the locked-rotor current is reduced from 700 to 390 percent, or a total reduction of 44 percent. The use of a smaller number of microfarads reduces the locked current only slightly, but, within this range, the locked-rotor torque will be proportional to the number of microfarads used. It will be noted

---

* Abbreviation for microfarads.

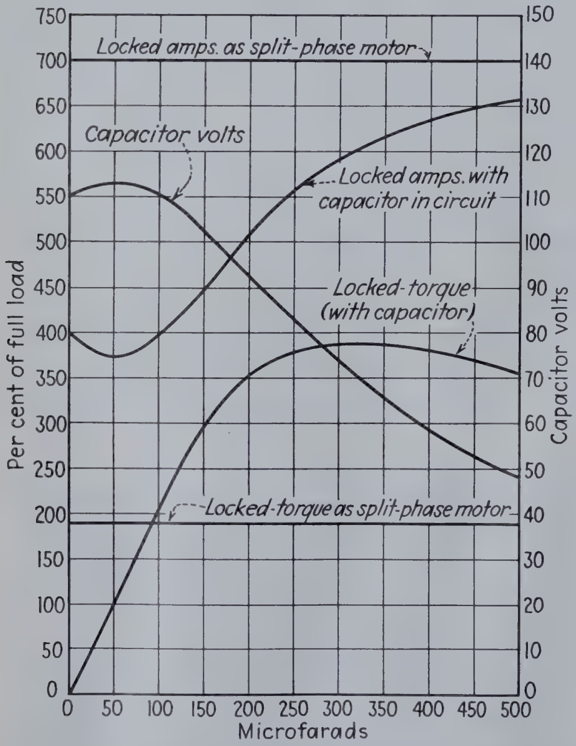


Fig. 4-32 Effect of inserting an electrolytic capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding of a ⅙-hp 115-volt 60-hz 1725-rpm standard split-phase motor.

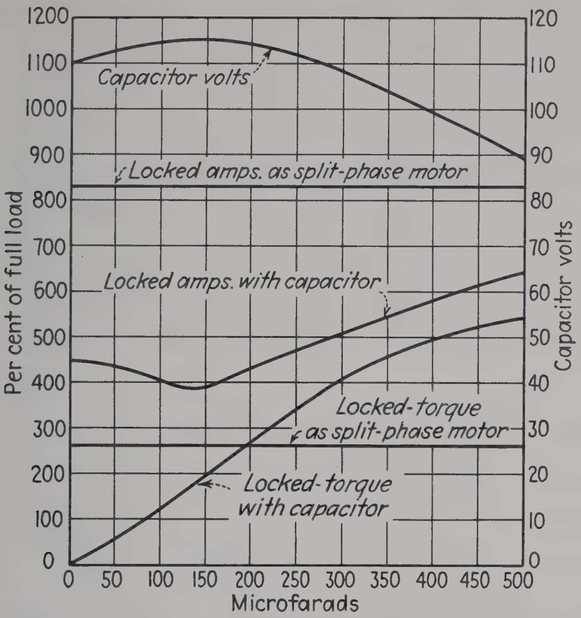


Fig. 4-33 Effect of inserting an electrolytic capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding of a ¼-hp 110-volt 60-hz 1725-rpm special-service split-phase washing-machine motor.

that, by use of 250 mfd, it is possible to double the locked-rotor torque with less locked-rotor current than is drawn as a split-phase motor. The conclusion may be drawn that use of a capacitor is both feasible and practical. If an electrolytic capacitor is available, it is suggested that an actual test be made to verify whether an important gain is effected or not. It would be well to check the locked capacitor volts to see that the voltage is not more than 20 percent higher than the rated voltage of the capacitor. (Commercial capacitors for 115-volt motors are built to withstand 135 volts for starting service.)

In Fig. 4-33 are shown corresponding curves for the use of a capacitor in series with the starting winding of a ¼-hp special-service split-phase washing-machine motor. It will be noted that it is necessary to use more actual microfarads to obtain a gain in locked-rotor torque than is the case with a standard ⅙-hp motor.

It would be difficult to estimate the exact value of capacitance necessary to use with a complete line of motors, but the two curves just mentioned should give some indication of what may be expected.

4-37. Distribution Factor and Effective Conductors. Sometimes it is necessary to compare a single-phase winding with another one of a different distribution. In general, they would be equivalent if both windings had the same number of *effective conductors.* To calculate *effective conductors,* we must know the distribution factor. For a single-phase winding, the *distribution factor* may be defined as the ratio of the actual voltage generated in a distributed concentric winding to the voltage that would be generated in it if all the turns in the distributed winding were wound full-pitch. For a better understanding of the meaning of the distribution factor, refer to Fig. 3-2: less voltage is induced in the inner coil lying in slots 4 and 9 than in the outer coil lying in slots 3 and 10 because the latter coil embraces more flux. Hence the smaller coils in a concentric winding are less effective than the larger ones. If

TABLE 4-3 Distribution Factors for Single-phase Concentric Windings

No.	Slots per pole	Distribution factor	Distribution												
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
1	4	0.8536	1	1	x	1	1								
2	4	0.8047	1	2	x	2	1								
3	4	1.0000	1	x	x	x	1								
4	6	0.9659	1	x	x	x	x	1							
5	6	0.8365	1	1	x	x	1	1							
6	6	0.6440	1	1	1	1	1	1							
7	6	0.8080	1	2	1	x	1	2	1						
8	6	0.7887	1	1	1	x	1	1	1						
9	9	0.8186	1	2	2	1	x	x	1	2	2	1			
10	9	0.8823	1	2	2	x	x	x	x	2	2	1			
11	9	0.9114	1	2	1	x	x	x	x	1	2	1			
12	9	0.9254	1	1	x	x	x	x	x	1	1				
13	9	0.9373	3	2	x	x	x	x	x	2	3				
14	9	0.8689	2	2	1	x	x	x	1	2	2				
15	9	0.8312	1	1	1	x	x	x	1	1	1				
16	9	0.8557	3	3	2	x	x	x	2	3	3				
17	9	0.8581	8	8	5	x	x	x	5	8	8				
18	12	0.9250	2	1	1	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	1	2	
19	12	0.8721	2	2	1	1	x	x	x	x	1	1	2	2	
20	12	0.8294	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x	1	1	1	1	
21	12	0.7400	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	1	1	1	1	1	
22	12	0.7763	3	3	2	2	2	x	x	2	2	2	3	3	
23	12	0.8387	1	2	2	1	1	x	x	x	1	1	2	2	1
24	12	0.9010	1	2	1	1	x	x	x	x	x	1	1	2	1
25	12	0.8223	1	2	2	2	1	x	x	x	1	2	2	2	1
26	12	0.9495	1	2	1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	2	1

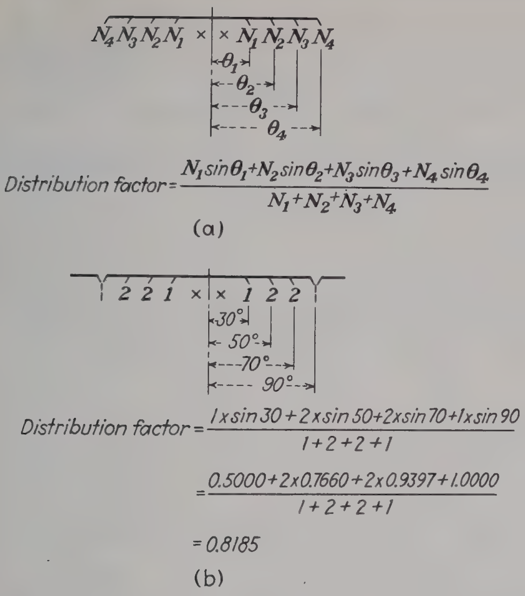

N4 N3 N2 N1 × × N1 N2 N3 N4
θ1
θ2
θ3
θ4
Distribution factor = (N1 sin θ1 + N2 sin θ2 + N3 sin θ3 + N4 sin θ4) / (N1 + N2 + N3 + N4)
(a)
2 2 1 × × 1 2 2
30°
50°
70°
90°
Distribution factor = (1 x sin 30 + 2 x sin 50 + 2 x sin 70 + 1 x sin 90) / (1 + 2 + 2 + 1)
= (0.5000 + 2 x 0.7660 + 2 x 0.9397 + 1.0000) / (1 + 2 + 2 + 1)
= 0.8185
(b)

Fig. 4-34 How to compute the distribution factor of a single-phase concentric winding.

a given winding has, say, 100 turns and if the distribution factor is 0.850, the total number of effective turns is 85. In other words

$$\text{Effective conductors} = \text{actual conductors} \times \text{distribution factor} \tag{4-1}$$

where

$$\text{Actual conductors} = \frac{\text{total main-winding conductors}}{\text{number of main-winding circuits}} \tag{4-2}$$

For winding calculations, the number of effective conductors is always more significant than the number of actual conductors, except when figuring the resistance.

Distribution factors for a number of different single-phase windings are given in Table 4-3. A method for computing the distribution factor for any single-phase winding with a whole number of slots per pole is given in Fig. 4-34.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Veinott, C. G.: An Old Tesla Motor, Grandfather of Modern Split-phase Motors, *Elec. J.*, March, 1931, p. 187.
2. Hanssen, I. E.: Calculations of the Starting Torque of Single-phase Induction Motors with Phase-splitting Devices, *AIEE Trans.*, May, 1908, p. 373.

3. Boothby, C. R.: Discussion on Capacitor Motor Papers, *AIEE Trans.*, April, 1929, p. 629.
4. "American Standard Definitions of Electrical Terms, Group 10, Rotating Machinery," ASA C42-1957, published by Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, New York.
5. Kincaid, C. W.: Change-speed Induction Motors, *Elec. J.*, August, 1924, pp. 357–363.
6. Veinott, C. G.: Starting Windings for Single-phase Induction Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 63, 1944, pp. 288–294.
7. "NEMA Motor and Generator Standards," NEMA Publication, No. MG1-1967, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, New York, 1967.
8. "American Standard Terminal Markings for Electrical Apparatus," ASA Standard C6.1-1956, published by National Electrical Manufacturers Association, New York.
9. Lloyd, T. C., and Karr, J. H.: Design of Starting Windings for Split-phase Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 63, 1944, pp. 9–13.
10. Veinott, C. G.: "Theory and Design of Small Induction Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1959. (Out of print, but available from University Microfilms, Inc., Div. of Xerox, Ann Arbor, Mich.)
11. Buchanan, L. W., and N. Maupin: Auxiliary-winding Design for Split-phase Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, pt. III, vol. 79, 1960, pp. 1183–1188.
12. Veinott, C. G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.

Chapter 5

Capacitor-start Motors

For heavy-duty general-purpose applications requiring high starting and running torques the capacitor-start motor is now by far the most popular type of single-phase motor. It is generally available in all ratings from ⅛-hp up.

5-1. Capacitor Motor Types Defined. Since there are three distinctly different varieties of capacitor motor, each with its own particular set of characteristics, we shall start by first defining the capacitor motor. A *capacitor motor* has two windings, a main and an auxiliary winding; the auxiliary winding is displaced in space from the main winding, usually by an angle of 90 electrical degrees, and is connected in series with a capacitor. This much is common to the three types of capacitor motors described below.

3 TYPES
CAP. MT

(1) *Capacitor-start Motor.* A *capacitor-start motor* is a capacitor motor that uses the auxiliary winding and capacitor only during starting; hence the easy-to-remember name *capacitor-start.*

(2) *Permanent-split Capacitor Motor.* A *permanent-split capacitor motor* uses the auxiliary winding and capacitor continuously, without change in capacitance.

(3) *Two-value Capacitor Motor.* A *two-value capacitor motor* uses one value of capacitance for starting and a different value for running; that is, a two-value motor uses two values of capacitance.

Since there are three recognized types of capacitor motors, the term "capacitor motor" should never be used by itself in specifying a motor, because the three types are so different from one another. When a prospective motor user writes to a manufacturer to make inquiries about a "capacitor" motor, he should be very explicit as to what kind of capacitor motor he wants. It is best to state the application together with approximate torque requirements and reasons why a capacitor motor is desired.

5-2. Essential Parts of a Capacitor-start Motor. We saw, in Art. 4-36, that a split-phase motor could be made into a capacitor-start motor simply by inserting a capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding. This arrangement is represented schematically in Fig. 5-1, which resembles Fig. 4-1—the similar sketch for a split-phase motor—except for the addition of the capacitor in the auxiliary phase. This does not mean that commercial capacitor-start motors are merely split-phase motors with a capacitor added, for the windings have to be specially designed and proportioned. Moreover, the torques of capacitor-start motors are generally higher than the corresponding torques of standard split-phase motors.

Both types of motors have two electrically distinct windings, generally located 90 electrical degrees apart. As in the case of a split-phase motor, the main winding is the bulkier of the two. It is usually wound with a larger size of wire and with fewer turns than the auxiliary winding. The auxiliary winding of a capacitor-start motor, however, generally contains more copper than the starting winding of a split-phase motor

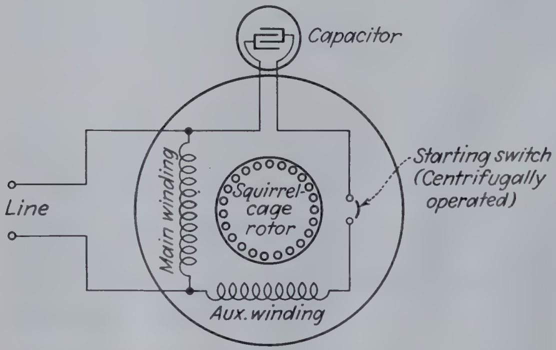


Fig. 5-1 The capacitor-start motor.

of the same rating. Articles 4-8, 4-15, and 4-16 on how to identify windings and how to predetermine rotation are equally applicable to capacitor-start motors.

There are, therefore, two electrical circuits, or phases. The main phase consists of only the main winding connected across the line. The auxiliary phase—also called "capacitor phase"—comprises an auxiliary winding, a capacitor, and a centrifugal switch which opens at approximately 75 to 80 percent of synchronous speed; all three are connected in series, the whole being connected across the line in parallel with the main winding. Dual-voltage capacitor-start motors, on the higher-voltage connection, usually have the auxiliary-phase circuit connected across only half of the main phase, instead of across the line. These motors are discussed in Arts. 5-15 to 5-21.

A cutaway view of a capacitor-start motor is shown in Fig. 5-2.

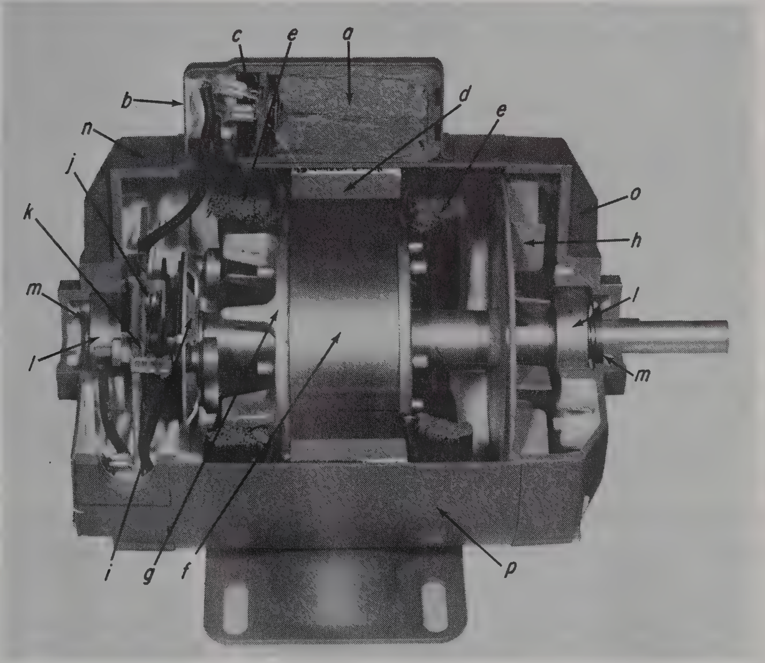


Fig. 5-2 Cutaway view of a 48-frame ball-bearing rigid-mounted capacitor-start motor. (*a*) Electrolytic starting capacitor, in phenolic case. (*b*) Capacitor housing (pressed steel). (*c*) Quick-connect capacitor terminal. (*d*) Stator laminations (punchings). (*e*) End windings. (*f*) Rotor laminations. (*g*) Die-cast end ring with cast-integral fan blades. (*h*) Pressed-steel cooling fan. (*i*) Rotating member of starting switch (see Fig. 17-7). (*j*) Contacts of stationary member of starting switch. (*k*) Terminal board for user line connections (see Fig. 5-6*b*). (*l*) Ball bearings. (*m*) Grease reservoirs. (*n*) Front end shield. (*o*) Back end shield. (*p*) Motor frame (steel). (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

5-3. Capacitor-starting Principle. As noted above, the capacitor-start motor generally resembles the two-phase motor in that there are two stator windings, displaced 90 electrical degrees. In order to obtain the rotating field necessary to develop locked-rotor torque, it is necessary that the currents in these two windings be displaced in time phase. In the case of the polyphase motor (as pointed out in Art. 4-3), this phase displacement is obtained by connecting the two electrically similar windings to two voltages differing in phase. In both the split-phase and capacitor-start motors, the two circuits are connected to the *same voltage;* and the phase displacement of currents is obtained by a dissimilarity of the electrical constants of the two circuits.

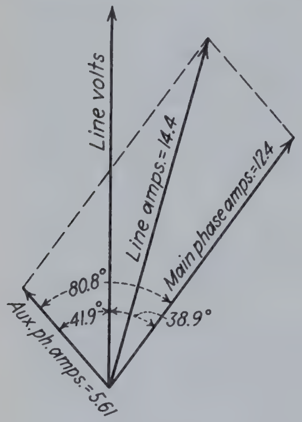


Fig. 5-3 A vector diagram of the locked-rotor currents in a general-purpose capacitor-start motor rated at ⅙ hp, four poles, 60 hertz, 115 volts, 1725 rpm.

In the split-phase motor, resistance is deliberately built into the auxiliary winding to bring the current more nearly in phase with the line voltage than is the main-winding current, as shown in Fig. 4-2. In a capacitor-start motor, the capacitor causes the auxiliary-phase current to *lead* the main-phase voltage, obtaining a large angle of displacement between the currents in the two windings. A vector diagram of the locked-rotor currents of a typical capacitor-start motor is given in Fig. 5-3. The line current of this motor is only two-thirds the line current of the corresponding split-phase motor shown in Fig. 4-2; yet this motor develops more than twice the locked-rotor torque of the split-phase motor. Thus a capacitor is seen to be a much more effective starting device than a resistor.

5-4 Capacitor Starting Compared with Split-phase Starting. A capacitor-start motor develops considerably more locked-rotor torque per ampere of line current than the split-phase motor for a number of reasons. The locked-rotor torque of a single-phase induction motor with two windings displaced 90° is proportional, among other things, to the product of these three factors:*

1. The sine of the angle of phase displacement between the currents in the two windings
2. The product of the main-winding current multiplied by the auxiliary-winding current
3. The number of turns in the auxiliary winding

---

* For a technical explanation, see Ref. 1 of the Bibliography at end of chapter.

Each of these three factors is more favorable in the capacitor-start motor. (1) Using the figures from the typical examples chosen, the phase displacement between the currents is 24.3° in the split-phase motor and 80.8° in the capacitor-start motor. The sines of these two angles (from Table A-6) are 0.4115 and 0.987, respectively; i.e., because of this factor alone, the locked-rotor torque of the capacitor-start motor would be $0.987/0.4115 = 2.4$ times as much for the split-phase motor. (2) It will be noted that, in the split-phase motor, the line current is nearly equal to the numerical sum of the currents in the main and auxiliary windings, whereas, in the capacitor-start motor, the line current is considerably less than the numerical sum because of the greater phase displacement between the two currents. For this reason, more current can be allowed in either or both windings of the capacitor-start motor, obtaining more locked-rotor torque for the same line current. (3) In the auxiliary winding of a split-phase motor, the leakage reactance has to be kept small in order that the locked-rotor current be nearly in phase with the voltage. Because the leakage reactance varies as the square of the number of turns, only a few turns can be used. In the capacitor-start motor, the reactance of the auxiliary winding is more than neutralized by the capacitor, so that more turns can be used than in the auxiliary winding of the split-phase motor. If the auxiliary winding has more turns, the same current sets up more ampere-turns and hence more flux and more torque.

Another way to explain the greater effectiveness of starting is to point out that the flux conditions in a capacitor-start motor at standstill are similar to the flux conditions of a two-phase motor.

The main winding is usually of heavier wire, is distributed in more slots, and is bulkier than the auxiliary winding, although the latter frequently has more turns than the main winding. As in the case of split-phase motors, the main winding is usually wound into the slots first.

5-5. Purpose of the Starting Switch. It was explained in Art. 4-4 that a starting switch was necessary in split-phase motors to improve the torque characteristics at full-load speed, to keep down the watts input, and to prevent burnouts at normal operating speeds. All these considerations apply with equal force to capacitor-start motors, but there is an even more important reason, viz., to prevent burnout or breakdown of the capacitor. In Fig. 5-4 are shown the speed-torque characteristics of a typical capacitor-start motor. In general, the torque characteristics are similar to those of the split-phase motor, except that the torques are much higher. *Capacitor volts vs. rpm* is also plotted on this curve. Observe that the capacitor volts increase rapidly above switch-operating speed. The switch must function at the proper speed; if it fails to

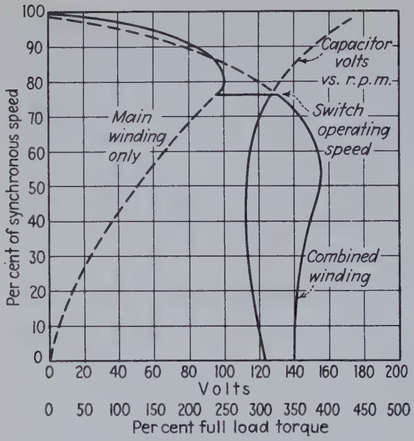


Fig. 5-4 Speed-torque curve of a capacitor-start motor.

operate and if the motor comes up to speed and is operated in this condition for an appreciable length of time, injury to the capacitor is certain.

The switch must, moreover, be positive in action; it must not flutter. As high as double voltage can be momentarily impressed on the capacitor by a fluttering switch. The reason for this will be explained: Suppose that the switch is fluttering and that it interrupts the circuit at such a time as to leave the capacitor fully charged; then suppose the switch happens to close when the voltage is of the opposite polarity—double voltage will be impressed momentarily upon the capacitor. *Switches must not be allowed to flutter!*

5-6. Torque Characteristics of Capacitor-start Motors. Capacitor-start motors have the torque characteristics of general-purpose motors, as shown in Table 19-1. Values given are minimum and there is usually some margin over the figures given in the table.

AC ELECTROLYTIC CAPACITORS

5-7. Construction. Alternating-current electrolytic capacitors were used for motor-starting service as far back as 1892, but it is only since 1930 that capacitor-start motors have attained commercial importance. It is interesting to note that, in 1896, the repulsion-start motor wiped the capacitor-start motor out of existence. Now, some decades later, the capacitor-start motor has all but made the repulsion-start motor obsolete for most applications.

The modern dry-type electrolytic capacitor is formed by winding two sheets of aluminum foil into a cylindrical shape. The two sheets of aluminum foil are separated by a suitable insulator which may be of gauze, two layers of thin paper, or a combination of gauze and paper. The insulator is impregnated with an electrolyte, usually ethylene glycol or a derivative. Capacitors with paper spacing are slightly smaller than those with gauze spacing. On each of the two layers of foil, an anodic film is produced by electrochemical means. The capacitor is then provided with suitable terminals and the whole is sealed into a case, now usually of a plastic material. A safety vent usually is provided to prevent explosion.

Formerly, the enclosing can was generally made from aluminum. While the active element inside the can was insulated, good practice demanded that the aluminum case be insulated electrically from the motor frame, from ground, and from any live part. A sectional view of a typical element with a phenolic case is shown in Fig. 5-5.

ELECTROLYTE
- ETHYLENE GLYCOL

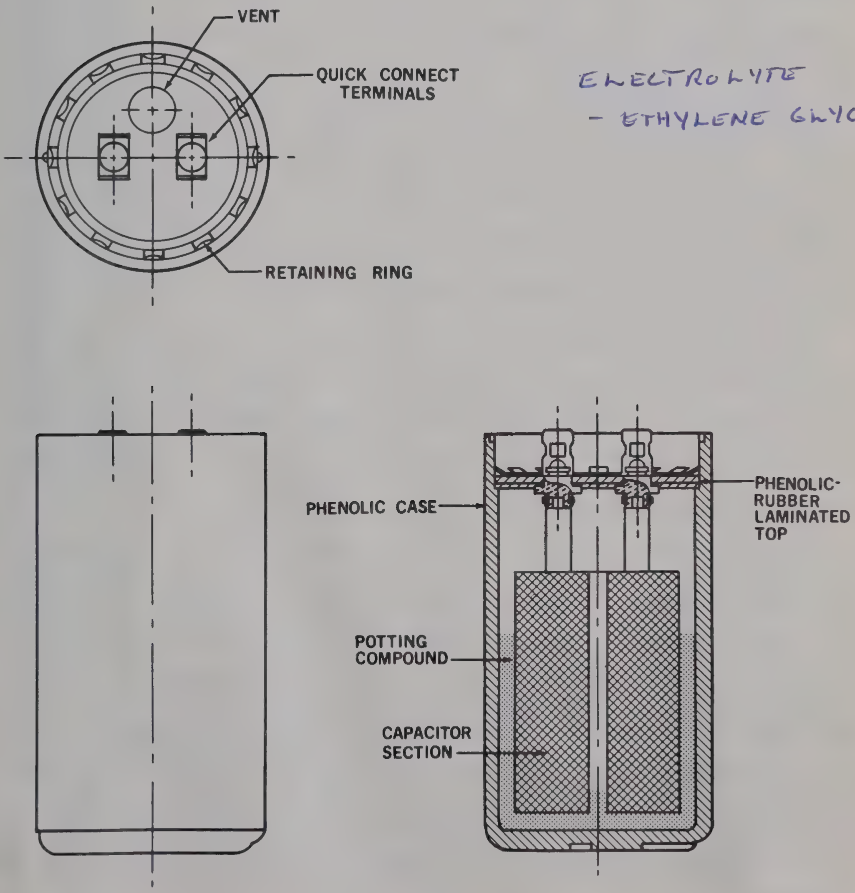


Fig. 5-5 An ac dry electrolytic capacitor for motor-starting services. It has a phenolic case and quick-connect terminals. (*Sprague Electric Company.*)

In modern electrolyic capacitors, the aluminum plates are etched and the effective surface area for a given size of plate is thereby increased, so that 2 to 2½ times as much capacitance can be obtained in a given volume as could be obtained with plain plates.

5-8. Characteristics of Motor-starting Capacitors. These capacitors are designed for use on alternating current and for intermittent service only. They must not be confused with the dc electrolytic capacitors used in radios and other electronic devices. For the same voltage and microfarad rating, ac capacitors are larger and bulkier, and the terminals do not bear any polarity markings. Present commercially available ac electrolytic capacitors have characteristics as follows:

(1) *Voltage Rating.* The voltage rating is usually stamped on the capacitor itself. This may or may not be the same as the voltage rating of the motor itself. Both 115-volt and 115/230-volt capacitor-start motors commonly use 110-volt capacitors. Also, 230-volt motors often use 110-volt capacitors when the windings are suitably arranged (see Art. 5-22). Sometimes the capacitor carries a higher voltage rating than the motor; for example, 125-volt capacitors may be used on 115-volt motors. The proper voltage rating is determined more by the design and arrangement of the windings than by the voltage rating of the motor. Good electrolytic capacitors will withstand, within the limits of the prescribed duty cycle, 125 to 130 percent of the rated voltage. An increase in operating voltage increases the power factor and slightly increases the capacitance.

(2) *Capacitance Rating.* Electrolytic capacitors are usually stamped with the minimum value of capacitance; maximum will be up to 20 percent higher. Standard capacitance ratings, together with minimum and maximum current values, are given in Table 5-1. These current values represent what the capacitor should draw at rated voltage, at 60 hz, and can be used for routine check of capacitance.

(3) *Temperature Rating.* Electrical characteristics of capacitors are normally tested at 25°C, but they are rated to operate in ambient temperatures up to 65°C (150°F) and will function successfully in ambients up to 80°C (176°F). However, their life is shorter at elevated temperatures. What really affects their life is internal temperature, which is a function of duty cycle as well as ambient temperature: 95°C is safe if not held continuously. Operation at very low temperatures does not harm the capacitor, but at temperatures lower than 0°C the capacitance falls off, and at —50°C it may drop as low as 50 percent of normal. However, at these reduced temperatures, the power factor becomes quite high so that the capacitors draw more watts from the line and warm up quickly.

TABLE 5-1 Ratings and Test Limits for AC Electrolytic Capacitors (Voltages below are all rms)*

110 volts (140 max.)			125 volts (160 max.)			163 volts (210 max.)			220 volts (280 max.)		
Min.	Amperes		Min.	Amperes		Min.	Amperes		Min.	Amperes	
mfd	Min.	Max.	mfd	Min.	Max.	mfd	Min.	Max.	mfd	Min.	Max.
21	0.87	1.04	21	0.99	1.18	21	1.31	1.56	21	1.74	2.07
25	1.04	1.25	25	1.18	1.42	25	1.56	1.87	25	2.07	2.49
30	1.25	1.5	30	1.42	1.70	30	1.87	2.24	30	2.49	2.98
36	1.5	1.79	36	1.70	2.03	36	2.24	2.68	36	2.98	3.57
43	1.79	2.15	43	2.03	2.44	43	2.68	3.22	43	3.57	4.28
47	1.95	2.33	47	2.22	2.64	47	2.93	3.5	47	3.9	4.64
53	2.20	2.64	53	2.50	3.0	53	3.30	3.86	53	4.4	5.28
64	2.65	3.18	64	3.02	3.62	64	3.99	4.79	64	5.31	6.37
72	2.99	3.59	72	3.29	4.07	72	4.48	5.38	72	5.97	7.47
88	3.65	4.5	88	4.15	5.1	88	5.49	6.74	88	7.3	8.95
108	4.48	5.38	108	5.1	6.12	108	6.74	8.05	108	8.95	10.75
124	5.15	6.18	124	5.85	7.02	124	7.73	9.28	124	10.3	12.35
130	5.4	6.49	130	6.13	7.36	130	8.1	9.72	130	10.8	12.9
145	6.02	7.23	145	6.85	8.22	145	9.05	10.85	145	12.0	14.5
161	6.67	8.02	161	7.6	9.12	161	10.05	12.05	161	13.4	16.0
189	7.85	9.42	189	8.92	10.7	189	11.8	14.15	189	15.7	18.8
216	8.96	10.75	216	10.2	12.25	216	13.45	16.15	216	17.9	21.5
233	9.67	11.6	233	11.0	13.2	233	14.55	17.45	233	19.3	23.2
243	10.1	12.1	243	11.45	13.75	243	15.15	18.2	243	20.2	24.2
270	11.2	13.45	270	12.75	15.3	270	16.85	20.2			
324	13.45	16.15	324	15.3	18.4	324	20.2	24.3			
340	14.1	17.0	340	16.0	19.3	340	21.2	25.5			
378	15.65	18.8	378	17.85	21.4	378	23.7	27.4			
400	16.6	19.8	400	18.9	22.7	400	25.0	30.0			
430	17.85	21.4	430	20.3	24.4	430	26.8	32.2			
460	19.1	22.9	460	21.7	26.0	460	28.7	34.4			
540	22.4	26.9	540	25.5	30.5						
590	24.5	29.4	590	27.8	33.4						

* Data from P. R. Mallory and Company.

(4) *Duty Cycle.* Motor-starting capacitors are rated on the basis of 20 three-second periods per hour, or an equivalent duty cycle; 60 one-second periods per hour would be one equivalent duty cycle.

(5) *Power Factor.* At normal room temperatures, the power factor of electrolytic capacitors is of the order of 5 to 6 percent, but it may be as high as 8 percent for small units, and 9.5 percent for large ones. At low temperatures, it goes up markedly.

5-9. When Replacing Electrolytic Capacitors. *When a defective capacitor is replaced, it is imperative that the new capacitor be of the same voltage and microfarad rating.* A 124-mfd capacitor may sometimes be substituted for the 130-mfd size without apparently impairing the ability of the motor to start its load, particularly if the machine is broken in and requires less power to drive than it did when new. However, reducing the microfarads of the capacitor in any given motor normally increases the voltage across the capacitor, incurring some danger of an early breakdown. (It is perfectly possible to get 150 volts across the capacitor with only 115 volts on the motor. The inductance of the motor winding is in series with the capacitor; as the capacitance is reduced, series resonance* is approached, increasing the capacitor voltage.) Using a capacitor that is too large generally will not harm the capacitor, but the switching torque of the motor may be adversely affected. Therefore, the serviceman should use the same value of capacitance that the motor manufacturer did. Electrolytic capacitors are all vented; for reasons of safety, this vent must never be sealed.

Capacitor testing boxes are sold for testing motors to determine, by means of a test on the motor, the size of capacitor to use. The locked-rotor torque is determined with different values of microfarads in series with the auxiliary winding, and the serviceman has often been advised to use that value of capacitance which gives the maximum locked-rotor torque. However, use of this much capacitance may cause a serious reduction in switching torque; hence the author recommends always using fewer microfarads than are required for maximum locked-rotor torque; 80 percent of this value is probably a safer figure to use than 100 percent. A much safer procedure is to obtain the required *voltage and microfarad* rating from the motor manufacturer.

5-10. Testing Electrolytic Capacitors. When an electrolytic capacitor is suspected of being defective, it should be tested for

1. Short circuits
2. Open circuits
3. Capacitance in microfarads
4. Power factor
5. Grounds

Connect the capacitor in series with a suitable fuse across a 115-volt 60-hz line. (1) If the capacitor is *short-circuited,* the fuse will blow. (A lighting-out lamp cannot be used, for a capacitor will pass enough current to light an ordinary light bulb.) If the capacitor is not short-circuited, connect meters in the circuit as shown in Fig. 18-3. Adjust the voltage across the capacitor to the rated voltage of the capacitor. Take a reading of watts and amperes input and also applied voltage, as explained in Art. 18-12, making sure to correct for meter losses. (2) If no current can be measured, the capacitor is *open-circuited.* (3) If a readable value of current input is obtained, the *capacitance in microfarads* can be determined by comparing the reading with the currents given in Table 5-1. The tested value of microfarads should be checked against the rating marked on the can. Or the microfarads and power factor can be computed from the following formulas:

---

* See any elementary textbook for an explanation of the phenomenon of series resonance.

For 60 hz:

$$\text{Microfarads} = \frac{2{,}650 \times \text{amperes}}{\text{applied voltage}} \tag{5-1}$$

For 50 hz:

$$\text{Microfarads} = \frac{3{,}180 \times \text{amperes}}{\text{applied voltage}} \tag{5-1a}$$

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{\text{watts}}{\text{volts} \times \text{amperes}} \tag{5-2}$$

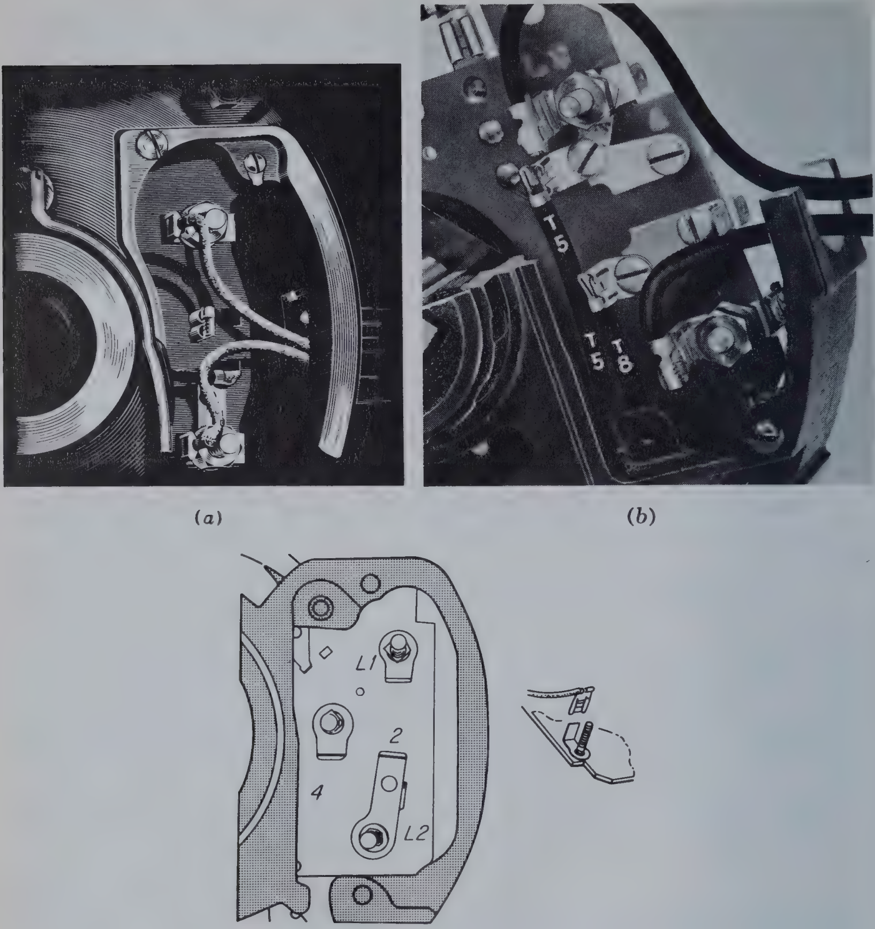
(4) Power factor is computed from the test readings, using Eq. (5-2). It should not be over 10 percent and will generally be less if the capacitor is in good condition. (5) If the capacitor has a metal case, it should be tested to determine whether the internal element is grounded to the case; this ground test can be made at rated voltage.

These readings should be taken as quickly as possible, for electrolytic capacitors are intermittently rated.

GENERAL-PURPOSE SINGLE-VOLTAGE MOTORS

5-11. Terminal Boards and Integral Conduit Boxes. It has long been the general practice in the fractional-horsepower industry to provide terminal boards with stud terminals to facilitate connecting the motors for a predetermined direction of rotation, and also to provide terminals to which the motor user can readily connect his line heads. Examples of such practice are offered in Fig. 5-6. The examples shown there all use "quick-connect" terminals, which greatly shorten the time of making connection changes. These terminal boards are securely mounted inside the conduit box, which is cast as an integral part of the front end shield.

Cast-integral conduit boxes have the important advantage over attached steel boxes that they cannot possibly rattle. Moreover, the cast



(a) (b)

(c)

Fig. 5-6 Typical arrangements of terminal boards used in fractional-horsepower motors. (*a*) General Electric Company. (*b*) Reliance Electric Company. (*c*) Westinghouse Electric Corporation.

conduit box is usually provided with one hole large enough to accommodate a conduit connection, and with one or more small slots through which rubber-covered cable can be run.

5-12. Single-voltage Motors—Without Thermal Protection. Single-voltage motors may be provided with four external line leads, or with a two-post terminal board; in the latter case, either the main winding or the auxiliary winding is connected to the back side of the board, while the other winding is connected to the front of the board.

NEMA standard connections are shown in Fig. 5-7. Note that all three possibilities of the preceding paragraph are covered.

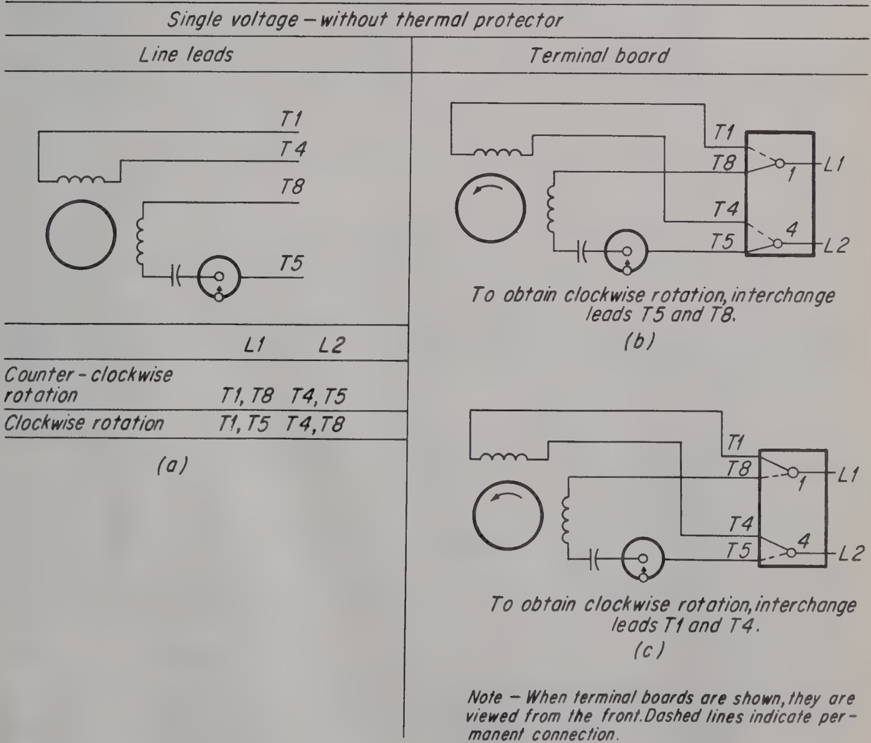
The arrangements shown in Fig. 5-7 are typical. For a certain special connection, using three leads, see Art. 5-22.

5-13. Single-voltage Motors—Thermally Protected. When a thermal protector is added to a single-voltage capacitor-start motor, an additional lead, or an additional post on the terminal board, is usually required. The motor should always be connected to the line, on grounded circuits, so that the thermal protector is on the "hot" side.

NEMA standard connections are shown in Fig. 5-8. Compared with Fig. 5-7, an additional lead P1 from a protector terminal is noted. When a terminal board is used—the usual case—an extra post, No. 2, is used.

Connections for a 230-volt motor, with a 115-volt auxiliary phase, are given in Fig. 5-9. In this diagram, the auxiliary phase is connected

Note — Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.



	L1	L2
Counter-clockwise rotation	T1, T8	T4, T5
Clockwise rotation	T1, T5	T4, T8

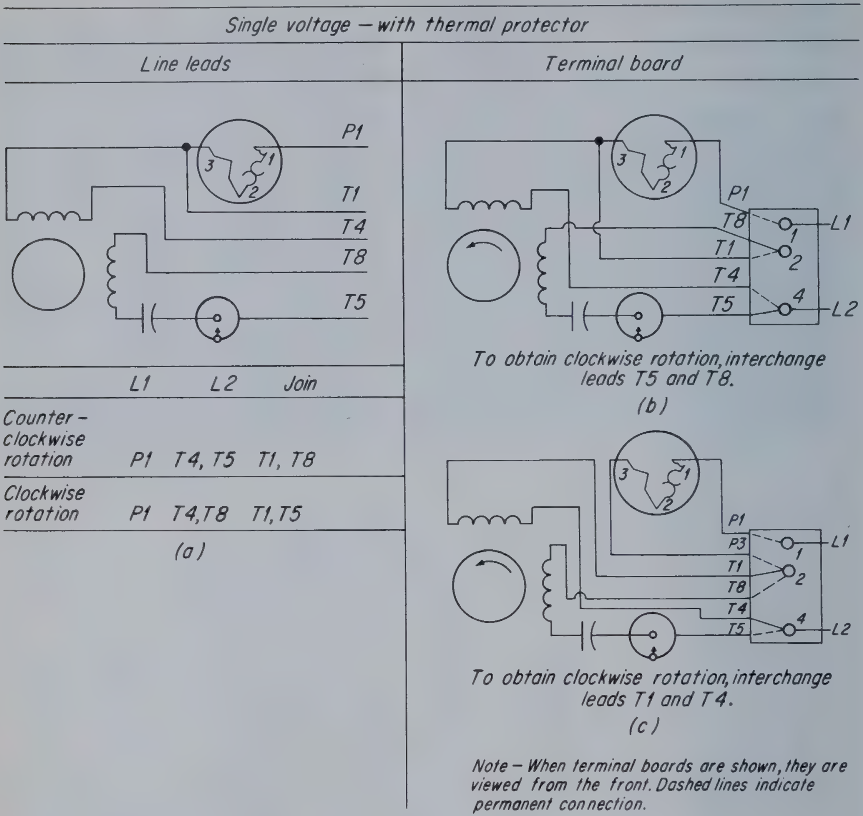
(b) To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

(c) To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

Note — When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Fig. 5-7 Schematic wiring and line connection diagrams for single-voltage capacitor-start motors, using line leads or terminal boards. (*From NEMA.*)

Note — Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.



	L1	L2	Join
Counter-clockwise rotation	P1	T4, T5	T1, T8
Clockwise rotation	P1	T4, T8	T1, T5

(a)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

(b)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

(c)

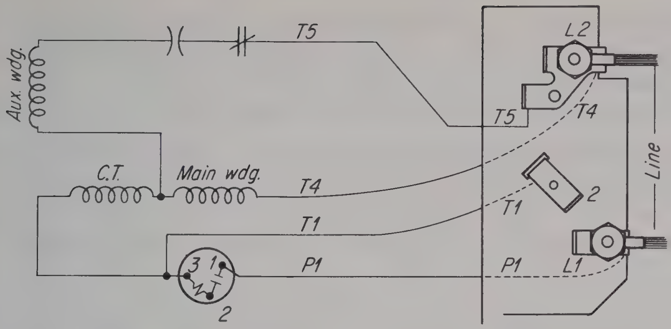
Note — When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Fig. 5-8 Schematic wiring and line connection diagrams for single-voltage thermally protected reversible capacitor-start motors, using line leads or terminal boards. (*From NEMA.*)

across half of the main winding, as in dual-voltage motors (q.v.), in order to use 110-volt capacitor elements.

Westinghouse uses a rubber terminal protector on one post (No. 2 in Fig. 5-8) to prevent connecting the power to posts 2 and 4, which would bypass the thermal protector, and also prevents connecting the power to posts 1 and 2, which would blow a fuse or damage the thermal protector or both.

5-14. Stator Connection Diagrams. Stator connection diagrams for capacitor-start motors are generally the same as for split-phase motors, except that the capacitor element has to be connected in series with the auxiliary winding, usually in series with the T5 lead. Hence, the



Note: When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connections.

Connections shown are for CCW rotation, facing lead end. For CW rotation connect T5 to 2 position

Fig. 5-9 Connection diagram for single-voltage thermally protected reversible capacitor-start motors, using a half-voltage auxiliary phase for starting, with terminal board. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

stator connection diagrams of Chap. 4 are generally applicable, except for motors wired per Fig. 5-9.

DUAL-VOLTAGE MOTORS

5-15. Reasons for Dual-voltage Windings.

Capacitor-start motors, rated ⅓ hp and above, are usually wound dual-voltage so that they can be operated on either 115- or 230-volt circuits. If a choice exists, it is generally preferable to connect a motor of this size to a 230-volt line in preference to a 115-volt line, in order to avoid possibility of causing lights on the same feeder circuit to flicker. Some power companies will not permit connection of a ¾-hp motor to a 115-volt circuit which is also used for lighting; others even extend this ban to ½-hp motors. A further reason for dual-voltage windings is that repulsion-start motors, formerly used for the same applications, were wound dual-voltage.

Even in ratings below ⅓ hp, two-, six-, and eight-pole motors are usually wound dual-voltage. These motors have relatively low activity, and use of the dual-voltage arrangement simplifies stocking problems.

5-16. Elementary Principles Involved.

Windings for dual-voltage motors of the capacitor type use a rather special arrangement. The main winding is split into two sections, which can be connected in series or in parallel, as might be supposed. These two sections are both wound on the same magnetic axes; i.e., the windings are in space phase with each other. However, the auxiliary winding is in but one section, which is displaced 90 electrical degrees from the main winding. This arrangement is shown schematically in Fig. 5-10. In series with the auxiliary winding is the customary centrifugal switch and a single capacitor.

For a 115-volt circuit, the two sections of the main winding and the auxiliary phase (auxiliary phase consists of winding, switch, and capacitor) are connected in parallel. Principles of operation are the same as for the single-voltage motor of Fig. 5-1.

For a 230-volt circuit, the two sections of the main winding are connected in series, but the auxiliary phase is bridged across one section of the main winding instead of being connected across the line. Each main-winding section has 115 volts across it, as does the auxiliary phase, which is across only one of the sections. This arrangement avoids splitting up the auxiliary winding and capacitor each into two sections, but it compels the main winding to perform a dual function when the motor is operating on the starting connection: to act (1) as an autotransformer and (2) as a main winding. Because of this autotransformer requirement, the series-parallel winding for a motor of this type is often somewhat special, in order to obtain a close magnetic coupling between the two sections of the main winding.

5-17. Winding Dual-voltage Motors. Auxiliary windings, being actually single-voltage windings, are quite conventional. Practices vary in the way the main winding is divided into two sections.

(1) *Two Wires in Parallel.* The main winding is wound in the conventional fashion of a single-voltage winding, except that two wires (preferably of different colors) are wound in parallel and are later connected as the two separate sections. This procedure gives a winding with the closest possible coupling between the two main-winding sections and, therefore, the torque characteristics on the 230-volt starting connection approach closely the torque characteristics on the 115-volt connection. However, this winding procedure means that on the average the voltage between adjacent strands is close to 115 volts. When a motor is wound this way, the main winding looks externally exactly like a single-voltage main winding.

(2) *Full-section Two-layer Main Windings.* Two complete main windings, each with coils on all the poles, are wound separately and inserted separately in the slots, forming two layers, which are usually insulated from each other. This gives very nearly the same coupling and the same torque characteristics as winding two wires in parallel, as discussed above. However, the voltage between adjacent strands is very much lower. Winding time is longer. This arrangement is readily

identified visually because the two distinct layers of the main winding are plainly apparent.

(3) *Use of Half the Poles in Each Section.* Still another arrangement is to wind all the poles just the same as for a single-voltage motor, but to connect half of the poles in one section and the remaining half of the poles in the second section; usually alternate poles (i.e., poles of the same magnetic polarity) are connected together to form a section. Such an arrangement is entirely satisfactory on the running connection, but on the starting connection, the torque may be substantially less on the 230-volt connection than on the 115-volt connection, because the coupling between the two sections of the main winding is not so good as it is for either arrangement (1) or arrangement (2) discussed above. However, by careful attention to design, the difference in starting-connection torques on the two voltages can be minimized. Moreover, the regulation of a 230-volt circuit is almost invariably better than that of a 115-volt circuit, so that the voltage does not drop so much percentagewise when the motor is started; hence, even if the motor does have a little less starting torque on 230 volts, the fact may go unnoticed.

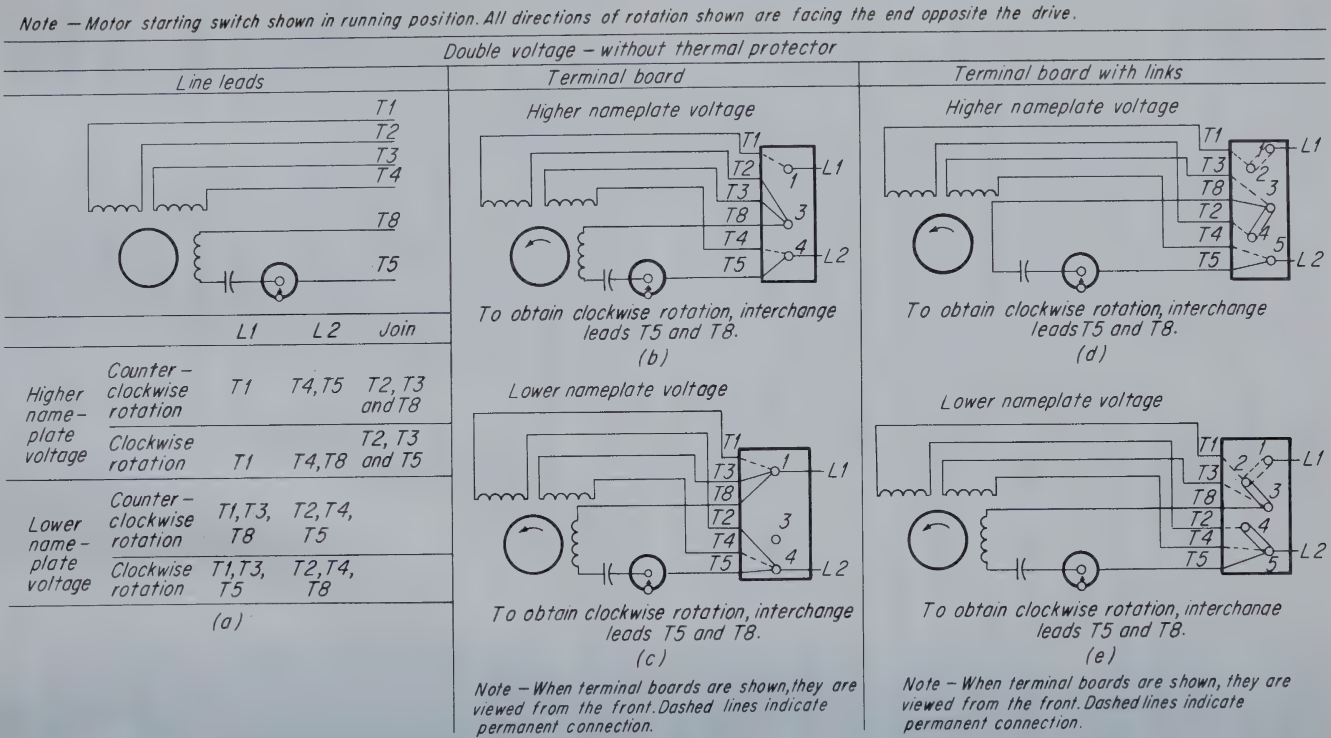
(4) *Splitting the Elements of a Pole Group.* There is another method sometimes used for two-pole motors with four coil elements to each pole group. The two inner elements of one pole are connected in series with the two outer elements of the other pole group, and vice versa.

A canvass of four major producers of capacitor-start motors yielded interesting results: one said that (1) represented his general practice; another reported that he used arrangement (3); a third stated that he used both (2) and (3), the choice depending upon design considerations; the fourth reported that he used (3) and (4).

5-18. Dual-voltage Motors—Without Thermal Protection. Dual-voltage capacitor-start motors, without thermal protection, may have six line leads, a three-post terminal board, or a five-post terminal board with links to effect the voltage change. Direction of rotation is reversed by changing two leads (from the auxiliary phase) on the front of the terminal board.

NEMA standard connections are shown in Fig. 5-10.

5-19. Thermal Protection of Dual-voltage Motors. Thermal protection against running overloads poses no particular problem. In Art. 17-17, it is shown how a thermal protector makes use of motor current and temperature. The running winding of a dual-voltage motor is divided into two sections, each of which is presumed to carry the same current, for the same output, on either voltage connection. Thus, in order that the same protection be obtained on either voltage connection, the *auxiliary heater* of the protector is connected in series with but one of the



Note — Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.

Double voltage – without thermal protector

		L1	L2	Join
Higher nameplate voltage	Counter-clockwise rotation	T1	T4, T5	T2, T3 and T8
	Clockwise rotation	T1	T4, T8	T2, T3 and T5
Lower nameplate voltage	Counter-clockwise rotation	T1, T3, T8	T2, T4, T5	
	Clockwise rotation	T1, T3, T5	T2, T4, T8	

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

(b)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

(c)

Note – When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

(d)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchanae leads T5 and T8.

(e)

Note – When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Fig. 5-10 Wiring and line connection diagrams for dual-voltage reversible capacitor-start motors: with leads; with three-post and with five-post terminal boards. (*From NEMA.*)

two sections, while the contacts are connected in series with the line in either case, so that when the device opens, the entire motor is cut off the line. Naturally then, on the lower-voltage connection, the contacts carry twice as much current as on the higher-voltage connection. This arrangement, then, requires that the protector be provided with a third terminal brought out between the contacts and auxiliary heater. Further, in a disk-type device such as that illustrated in Fig. 17-12, the thermal actuating element has to carry the same current as the contacts; naturally, the disk itself has some heater effect. The heater effect of the disk, compared with that of the heater, has to be relatively low in order to obtain comparable protection on both voltage connections. If the heater effect of the disk is substantial, the overload device will trip at lighter loads on the lower-voltage connection and will permit higher temperatures on the higher-voltage connection. In summary, to obtain comparable overload protection on both voltage connections: (1) the heater effects of the contacts circuit has to be small; (2) the currents in the two sections of the main winding have to be equal to each other.

Locked-rotor protection of the dual-voltage motor is somewhat more difficult, because the added complications of the auxiliary phase have to be taken into account. Under locked-rotor conditions, the currents handled by the protective device are much greater than under running conditions. An idea of the problem can best be understood by referring to Fig. 5-11. In this figure, I_m is assumed to be the total current in the main winding for the lower-voltage connection, so that each section carries 0.5 I_m. In Fig. 5-11*a*, the higher-voltage connection is shown; to the main-winding current, half the auxiliary-phase current is added in one section and subtracted in the other (just as in an autotransformer, magnetizing current is neglected). Contacts of a protective device would have to be connected at *n*, but the heater could be connected either at *m*, *n*, or *o*. If the heater is inserted at *m*,

$$\text{Heater amperes} = 0.5(I_m - I_a) \tag{5-3}$$

at *n*,

$$\text{Heater amperes} = 0.5(I_m + I_a) \tag{5-4}$$

at *o*

$$\text{Heater amperes} = I_a \tag{5-5}$$

On the lower-voltage connection in *b*, the contacts, of course, can only be connected at *r*, but the heater could be connected in at three possible places. If it is connected in at *p*,

$$\text{Heater amperes} = 0.5\ I_m \tag{5-6}$$

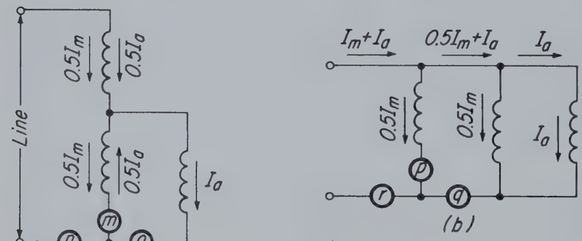
at q

$$\text{Heater amperes} = 0.5\,I_m + I_a \tag{5-7}$$

at r

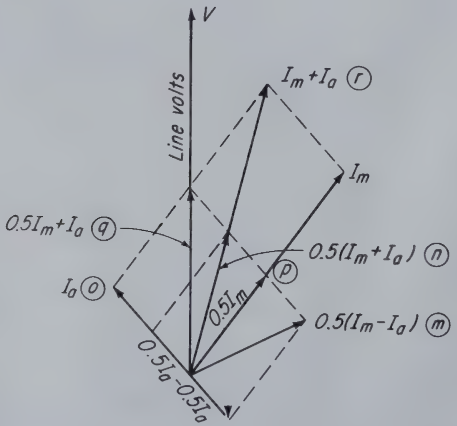
$$\text{Heater amperes} = I_m + I_a \tag{5-8}$$

The additions indicated in the above are, of course, vectorial, and the relative magnitudes of these sums will vary with different designs. All six of these currents are shown to scale in Fig. 5-11*c*. In practice, the positions most commonly used are: for the higher-voltage connections, n or m; for the lower-voltage connections, p or q. Correct application of a protector to obtain comparable protection for both voltage connections requires careful selection of the protector and choice of the most suitable method for connecting in the auxiliary heater, which involves



(a) Higher-voltage connections

(b) Lower-voltage connections



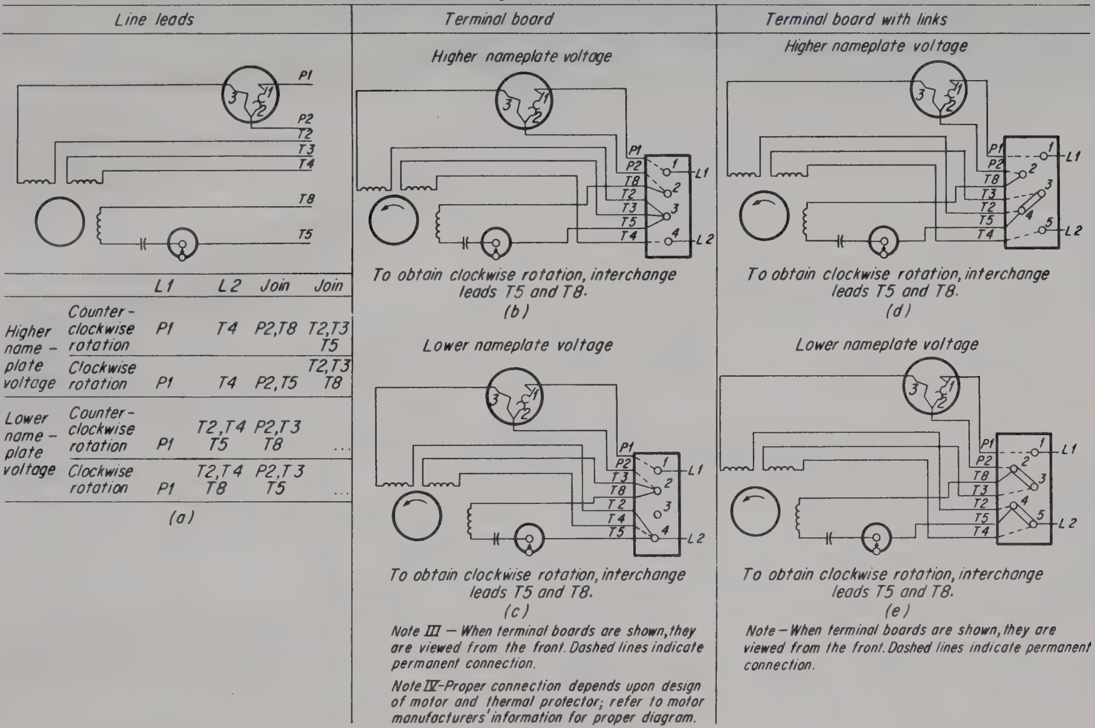
(c) Vector diagram of the currents

Fig. 5-11 Vector diagram of the locked-rotor currents of Fig. 5-3 when wound and connected as a dual-voltage motor.

Note I – The design proportions for dual-voltage reversible, capacitor-start motors are such that three different groups of diagrams are necessary to show the means for obtaining adequate protection for these motors. These three groups of diagrams (I, II and III) insert the thermal protector at different points in the circuit; therefore, different currents are provided to actuate the thermal protector.

Note II – Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.

Group I – Double voltage – with thermal protector



Higher nameplate voltage

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.
(b)

Higher nameplate voltage

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.
(d)

		L1	L2	Join	Join
Higher name-plate voltage	Counter-clockwise rotation	P1	T4	P2,T8	T2,T3 T5
	Clockwise rotation	P1	T4	P2,T5	T2,T3 T8
Lower name-plate voltage	Counter-clockwise rotation	P1	T2,T4 T5	P2,T3 T8	...
	Clockwise rotation	P1	T2,T4 T8	P2,T3 T5	...

(a)

Lower nameplate voltage

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.
(c)

Note III – When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Note IV–Proper connection depends upon design of motor and thermal protector; refer to motor manufacturers' information for proper diagram.

Lower nameplate voltage

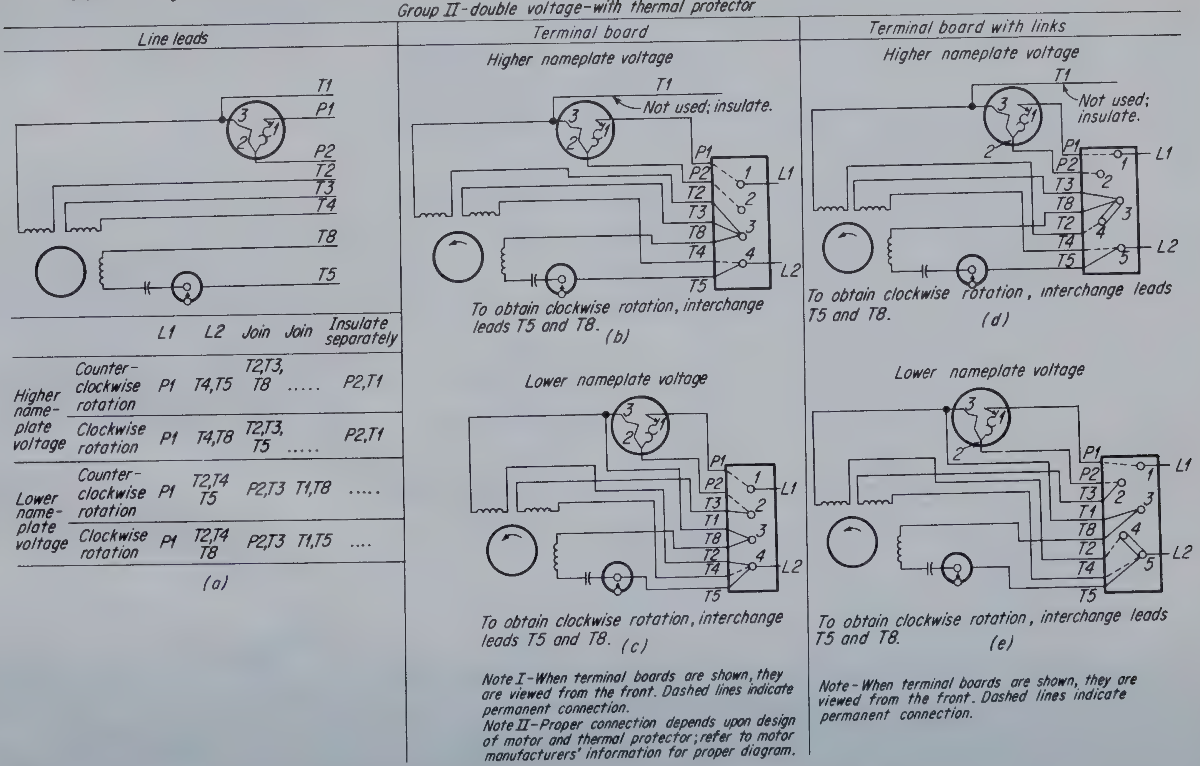
To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.
(e)

Note – When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Fig. 5-12 Wiring and line connection diagrams for dual-voltage thermally protected capacitor-start motors. Group I. Heater coil is connected at m and p for the two voltage connections (see Fig. 5-11). (*From NEMA.*)

Note–Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.

Group II–double voltage–with thermal protector



		L1	L2	Join	Join	Insulate separately
Higher nameplate voltage	Counterclockwise rotation	P1	T4,T5	T2,T3, T8	.....	P2,T1
	Clockwise rotation	P1	T4,T8	T2,T3, T5	.....	P2,T1
Lower nameplate voltage	Counterclockwise rotation	P1	T2,T4 T5	P2,T3	T1,T8	.....
	Clockwise rotation	P1	T2,T4 T8	P2,T3	T1,T5	....

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (b)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (d)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (c)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (e)

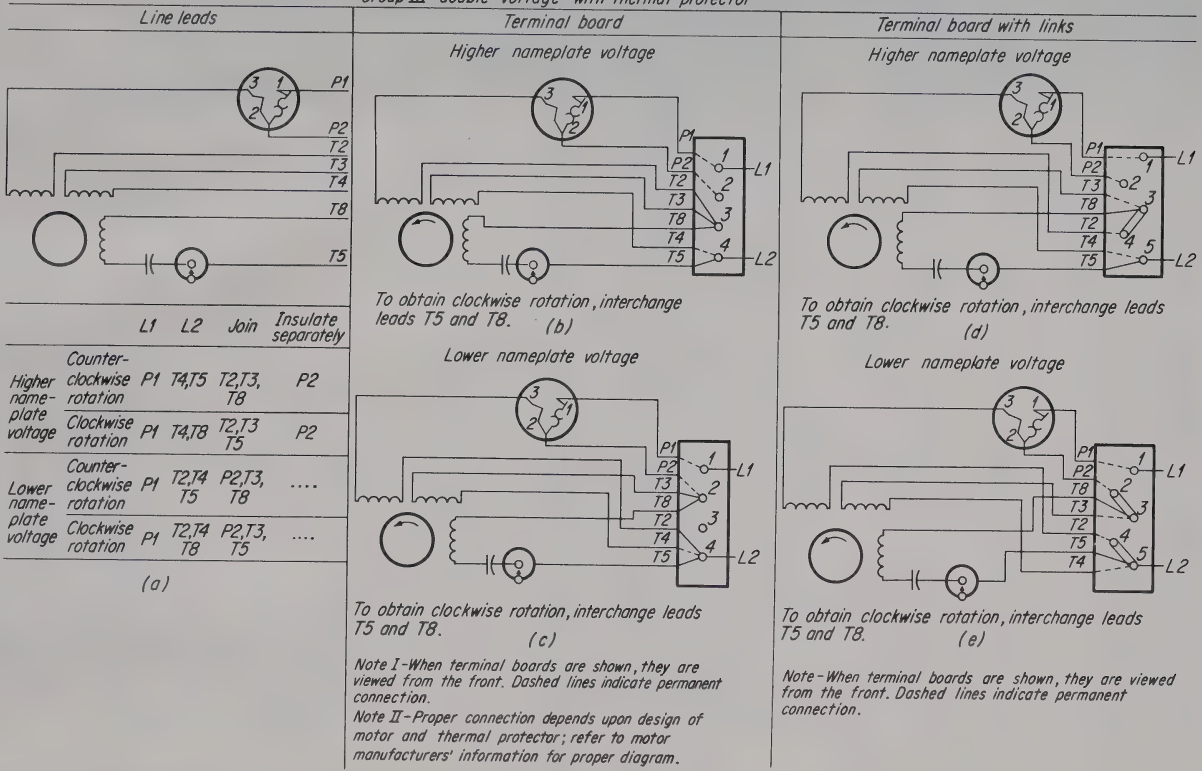
Note I–When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.
Note II–Proper connection depends upon design of motor and thermal protector; refer to motor manufacturers' information for proper diagram.

Note–When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Fig. 5-13 Wiring and line connection diagrams for dual-voltage thermally protected capacitor-start motors. Group II. Heater coil is connected at n and q for the two voltage connections (see Fig. 5-11). (*From NEMA.*)

Note-Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.

Group III-double voltage-with thermal protector



		L1	L2	Join	Insulate separately
Higher nameplate voltage	Counter-clockwise rotation	P1	T4,T5	T2,T3, T8	P2
	Clockwise rotation	P1	T4,T8	T2,T3 T5	P2
Lower nameplate voltage	Counter-clockwise rotation	P1	T2,T4 T5	P2,T3, T8	....
	Clockwise rotation	P1	T2,T4 T8	P2,T3, T5	....

(a)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (b)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (c)

Note I-When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Note II-Proper connection depends upon design of motor and thermal protector; refer to motor manufacturers' information for proper diagram.

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (d)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8. (e)

Note-When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Fig. 5-14 Wiring and line connection diagrams for dual-voltage thermally protected capacitor-start motors. Group III. Heater coil is connected at n and p positions (see Fig. 5-11). (*From NEMA.*)

taking into account the added heater effect in the disk on the lower-voltage connection due to the greater current through the disk.

5-20. Dual-voltage Motors—Thermally Protected. It was shown in the preceding article that there are three different ways of connecting in the auxiliary heater on each voltage connection. None of them is universal.

NEMA connection diagrams are given for three arrangements, as follows:

1. Fig. 5-12. Heater connected in *m* and *p* positions of Fig. 5-11. (NEMA Group I.)
2. Fig. 5-13. Heater connected in *n* and *q* positions of Fig. 5-11. (NEMA Group II.)
3. Fig. 5-14. Heater connected in *n* and *p* positions of Fig. 5-11. (NEMA Group III.)

5-21. Stator Connection Diagrams for Dual-voltage Motors. In Art. 5-17 it was pointed out that there are a number of ways of splitting the main winding of a dual-voltage motor into two sections. Two of the methods involve having a coil group from every pole in both sections, whereas others do not. For the former, a stator connection diagram is given for a four-pole motor in Fig. 5-15. When each section contains half the poles, as discussed in Art. 5-17(3), the main winding would generally be connected like the stator of a repulsion motor, as illustrated in Fig. 8-7.

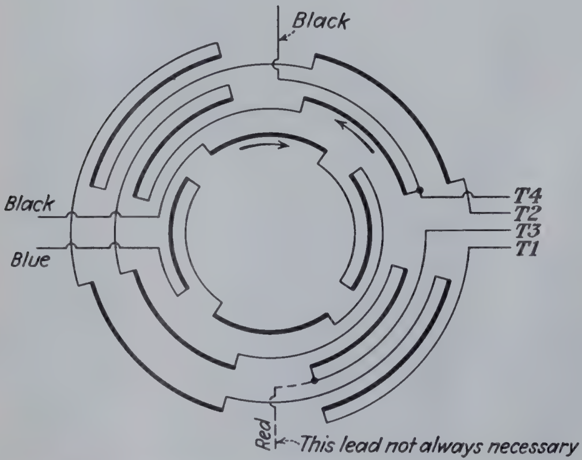


Fig. 5-15 Stator connection diagram for a four-pole dual-voltage capacitor-start motor.

MISCELLANEOUS ARRANGEMENTS

5-22. "Swing" Connection (Half-voltage Starting Winding). Single-voltage motors for 230-volt operation are often wound the same as dual-voltage motors, in order to use a half-voltage starting winding and a 110-volt capacitor. One such arrangement is illustrated in Fig. 5-9, for example; note that only one lead on the terminal board has to be moved to change direction of rotation. The arrangement is represented schematically in Fig. 5-16, where rotation is changed simply by swinging a link from one position to another, giving rise to the name "swing connection."

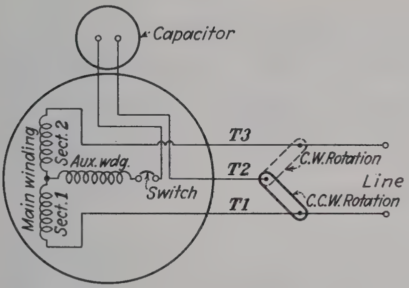


Fig. 5-16 The swing connection.

5-23. Terminal Board in the Mounted Capacitor. Some motors, especially those which were used in household refrigerators with a belt-driven compressor, were provided with a terminal board in the mounted capacitor unit. One such arrangement is illustrated in Fig. 5-17. TL is a dummy terminal not connected to the windings. The line is connected across T and TL.

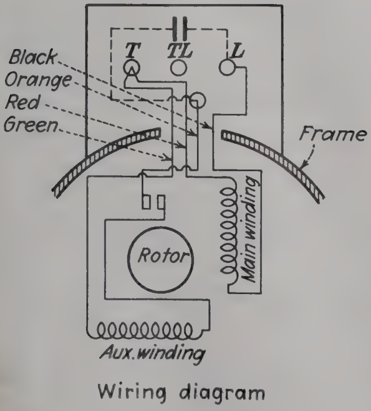
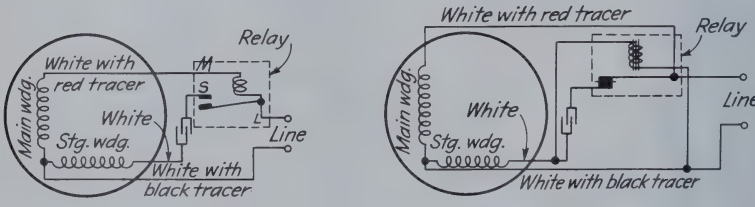


Fig. 5-17 Wiring diagram of a capacitor-start motor with terminal board in the capacitor. These connections are for CCW rotation; for CW rotation, interchange the red and black leads on the terminal board. (*Wagner Electric Corporation.*)

5-24. Two-speed Pole-changing Motors. Capacitor-start two-speed pole-changing motors are quite similar to their split-phase counterparts which were discussed in Arts. 4-23 to 4-26 and 4-28. The principal difference is the use of a capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding, which is therefore designed to make optimum use of the capacitor. Locked-rotor torques are, of course, substantially higher than in split-phase motors.

5-25. Motors with Magnetically Operated Switch. Motors for hermetic refrigeration service commonly employ an external relay of some sort, located outside the sealed unit, to open the starting winding when the motor is up to near operating speed. Relays may also be used for other applications. Magnetic relays may be either current-operated or voltage-operated.

1. *Current-operated relays* make use of the fact that the current in the main winding decreases sharply as the motor approaches normal operating speed. A typical arrangement is shown in Fig. 5-18*a*. The magnet coil is connected in series with the main winding, and the switch contacts in series with the auxiliary winding. When there is no current in the relay coil, the contacts remain in the open position. When the motor is thrown on the line, the current drawn by the main winding under locked-rotor conditions is sufficient to close the contacts, thereby energizing the capacitor phase. As the motor comes up to speed, the main-winding current decreases; the relay is set so that when the current has fallen below a predetermined value, the relay drops out, opening the capacitor phase and allowing the motor to run as a single-phase induction motor. Such relays are discussed in Art. 17-9 and illustrated in Figs. 17-8 and 17-9.



(a)
With current-operated relay

(b)
With voltage-operated relay

Fig. 5-18 Schematic diagrams of a capacitor-start motor with separate capacitor and magnetic relay, for hermetic refrigerator applications.

Many relays used for this purpose are not adjustable. If the relay does permit adjustment, it must be set so that it will always close under locked-rotor conditions with low voltage impressed. (By low voltage is meant the lowest circuit voltage likely to be encountered at the motor terminals.) It must also be set to drop out as the motor comes up to speed, even when driving its heaviest load, at any voltage, from the lowest to the highest likely to be encountered at the motor terminals. If there is an appreciable difference between these two adjustments, the proper setting becomes largely a matter of judgment; some intermediate setting can be used.

2. *Voltage-operated relays* make use of the increase in auxiliary-winding voltage as the motor nears normal operating speed. A typical arrangement is shown in Fig. 5-18*b*. The operating coil of the relay is connected in parallel with the auxiliary winding (not including the capacitor), and the contacts in series with the capacitor phase. When not energized, the relay contacts are normally closed. When the motor is thrown on the line with the rotor at standstill, the voltage across the auxiliary winding is not sufficient to open the relay contacts; as the motor comes up to speed, the voltage across the auxiliary winding steadily increases and, finally, as the motor nears normal operating speed, the voltage becomes great enough to open the relay contacts, thereby deenergizing the auxiliary phase. It might be supposed that the voltage on the auxiliary winding would disappear and that the relay contacts would again close. However, when the motor is up to speed and energized, there is a voltage induced in the auxiliary winding,* and this voltage is sufficient to maintain the relay contacts open.

These relays may or may not be adjustable. If the relay does permit adjustment, it must be set so that (1) it will never pick up with the rotor at standstill, with maximum voltage impressed; (2) it will always pick up as the motor comes up to speed while driving its heaviest load, with minimum voltage impressed; (3) once it has opened, it will not reclose with minimum voltage impressed. If all three of these conditions cannot be met with a single setting, a compromise setting has to be made.

5-26. Reversing Motors.

Before discussing reversing motors, a clarification of terms is necessary.

A *reversible motor* is one which can be started from rest and operated in either direction of rotation. The direction of rotation is determined by the starting connection; once a capacitor-start motor is up to speed, the starting winding is out of the circuit, and hence reversing its connections will not affect the motor at all. But if the connection change is made while the motor is operating on the starting connection, it will usually reverse promptly. Synonymous terms are *externally reversible* (used in an earlier work[20]) and *either-rotation* (General Electric).

---

* In Art 2-10, it was explained that the rotor of a single-phase squirrel-cage motor, running light, sets up a field which is displaced approximately 90° in both time and space from the field set up by the main winding. This cross field induces a voltage in the auxiliary winding of a capacitor-start motor by transformer action.

A *reversing motor* is one which can be reversed even while it is running at full operating speed. Such motors were referred to as *electrically reversible* motors in the author's earlier work.[20] Some manufacturers distinguish between *quick-reversing* and *instant-reversing* motors; a quick-reversing motor requires a time delay of $\frac{1}{25}$ sec or more in switching, while an instant-reversing motor requires no delay at all during switching.

A multitude of schemes have been used to achieve the reversing feature for capacitor-start motors. Two articles in the literature go into detail on such schemes.[11,12] In Art. 5-30 of the earlier work,[20] a reversing motor for hoist service was explained in great detail. Reversing motors offered today usually employ a direction-sensing centrifugal switch, a magnetic relay with special circuitry, or both. Such motors are offered by Franklin, General Electric, Reliance Electric, and others.

MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

5-27. Rewinding or Reconnecting Motor for a Different Voltage and Same Performance.

(1) *Changing from* 115 *to* 230 *Volts.* (*a*) One way to do this is to double the number of turns in each winding using wire three sizes smaller in each; it is then necessary to use a 220-volt capacitor having one-fourth the microfarad rating of the capacitor used with the 115-volt motor. (*b*) Another way is to rewind the motor for dual voltage or for the swing connection (see Arts. 5-15 to 5-22): in this case, the same capacitor and the same auxiliary winding are used; but each section of the main winding should use wire three sizes smaller and each section must have the same number of turns as the 115-volt main winding. (*c*) If the main and auxiliary windings are both parallel-connected, it may be possible to reconnect them in series and use a 220-volt capacitor of one-fourth the microfarad rating. If the main winding is wound in two parallel-connected sections, each section containing only half the total number of poles (i.e., using the diagram of Fig. 8-7), it is not recommended that such a winding be split in two sections to use for a swing connection or for a dual-voltage connection unless the torque requirements are relatively light. (*d*) If the main winding is wound of two strands of wire in parallel and if it is possible to separate these strands, test between strands at 500 volts; if the winding stands this test, it is safe and simple to reconnect the motor for 230 volts, using the proper swing connection diagram.

(2) *Changing from* 230 *to* 115 *Volts.* (*a*) If the motor is swing-connected, it is a simple matter to reconnect the two main-winding sections in parallel (if due care as to magnetic polarity is exercised), leaving the auxiliary winding and capacitor undisturbed. (*b*) If the stator connections are conventional (like those shown in Fig. 4-9), a 110-volt capacitor of four times the microfarad rating of the 220-volt capacitor must be used, and the windings can be either reconnected in parallel or rewound. If they are to be reconnected, each winding can be split into two sections, each section including every alternate pole. (Care must be taken to preserve proper magnetic polarities!) (*c*) If the windings are rewound, half as many turns and wire three sizes larger should be used in each winding.

(3) *Changing from* 230 *to* 460 *Volts.* The problem of changing a 230-volt motor to a 460-volt motor, if the motor has conventional connections, is similar to the problem of changing from 115 to 230 volts, which is discussed in the first paragraph of this article, except that, because of switch and capacitor limitations, only the swing or dual-voltage connection is recommended.

(4) *Other Voltage Changes.* In general, changes for voltages other than those just described are not to be recommended, for a capacitor of the proper voltage and microfarad rating is seldom available. The rules for such a change would be as follows:

If

V_r = rated voltage

V_d = desired circuit voltage

the number of turns of both main and auxiliary windings is

$$\frac{V_d}{V_r} \times \text{turns in old windings}$$

and the cross-sectional area of the copper wire should be

$$\frac{V_r}{V_d} \times \text{area of copper wire in present winding}$$

or as near as possible to this value. The capacitor should be rated for V_d volts, and the microfarad rating should be

$$\left(\frac{V_r}{V_d}\right)^2 \times \text{the microfarad rating of the present capacitor}$$

5-28. Rewinding for Different Torques. In general, it is not wise for a repair shop to attempt to rewind for a different torque by changing the wire size or number of turns, as discussed for split-phase motors in Art. 4-34. The serviceman may rewind a capacitor-start motor, actually obtaining more torque, but in so doing he may subject the capacitor to higher voltages, a fact that may not show up in his test but that will eventually show up in reduced life of the capacitor.

5-29. Rewinding for a Different Frequency. The redesign of a winding of a capacitor-start motor to operate on a different frequency is a problem for a design engineer, and no simple rules can be laid down that the serviceman can follow with safety. Such a rewinding job is, therefore, not to be recommended unless the winding specification can be obtained from the manufacturer.

5-30. Changing a Capacitor-start to a Split-phase Motor. It was brought out in Art. 4-36 that a split-phase motor could be converted to a capacitor-start motor by the addition of a capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding. By use of the capacitor it was possible to increase the locked-rotor torque and decrease the locked-rotor amperes. Likewise, it is usually possible to operate a capacitor-start motor as a split-phase motor by substituting an external resistance for the capacitor. Some capacitor-start motors will start under no-load conditions as split-phase motors, and others will not; even if a particular motor will start as a split-phase motor, a resistor in series with the auxiliary winding will usually improve the locked-rotor torque and reduce the locked-rotor current. For any given motor, there is a definite value of resistance that will give a maximum locked-rotor torque. This "best value" of resistance to give the most locked-rotor torque will probably be from one to two times the ohmic resistance of the auxiliary winding; different values of resistance in this range may be tried to determine the best value to use.

A rough idea of what might be expected is given in the tabulated results shown below; these are based on a ⅓-hp four-pole 60-hz 115-volt capacitor-start motor.

Capacitor-start Motor Used as a Split-phase Motor

	As a normal capacitor-start motor	As a split-phase motor, no external resistance	As a split-phase motor, 6.7 ohms external resistance
Locked amperes:			
Main winding	22.5	22.5	22.5
Auxiliary winding	8.05	9.71	6.38
Line	24.5	32.1	28.4
Locked-rotor torque, oz-ft	65.0	12.5	19.2
Full-load torque, oz-ft	16.0	16.0	16.0

This example illustrates the point that an external resistance boosts the locked-rotor torque and cuts the line current, but with the best value of external resistance (which in this case happened to be 133 percent of the auxiliary winding resistance) the locked-rotor torque is very small compared with that of a capacitor-start motor. This torque is sufficient to start a fan or blower but would not start a compressor. The running performance, of course, is the same whether the motor starts as a resistance-start split-phase motor or as a capacitor-start motor.

5-31. Regeneration in Capacitor-start Motors. Regeneration is an effect that can occur with a capacitor-start motor, particularly if the motor is driving a high-inertia load such as a fan or blower. The effect may be noticed in either of two ways:

1. While the motor is slowly coasting to a stop, the starting switch closes; immediately the motor vibrates and becomes noisy and declerates rapidly, as if it were being suddenly braked electrically, which, in fact, it is.
2. In an oil-burner application, a solenoid-operated oil valve is sometimes connected across the motor so that the valve is open only when the motor is energized. If regeneration occurs while the motor is coasting to a stop, a voltage appears at the motor terminals and may cause false opening or fluttering of the oil valve or any other relay connected across the motor.

(1) *Causes of Regeneration.* It is a well-known fact that an induction motor can be made to act as an induction generator and supply power to the line to which it is connected, merely by driving it above synchronous speed. It is also well known that the power output of an induction generator must always have a leading power factor, never unity or lagging power factor; i.e., the current output of the generator must always have a leading component in order to provide the excitation to set up the magnetic field required in the generator. It has been shown that an induction motor can be made to act as an induction generator by connecting shunt capacitors of proper value across the output terminals; these capacitors draw the leading current necessary for the machine to build up as a self-excited generator, without the necessity for its being connected to an external supply line.[7,13,25] Suppose that the starting switch of the motor of Fig. 5-1 is closed, and further suppose that the motor is being driven mechanically at full-load speed with no external voltage applied to the terminals. There will always be a little residual flux in the rotor, which will cut the stator windings and induce a small voltage in them. Referring to Fig. 5-1, it is seen that

there is a voltage impressed across the capacitor which is equal to the sum of the two voltages induced in the main and auxiliary windings; this voltage causes a small leading current to flow through the capacitor. The leading current increases the field excitation in the motor, increasing the output voltage, increasing the leading current, and so on, until quite an appreciable output voltage is reached; the magnitude of this voltage is limited only by saturation of the magnetic circuit of the machine. This effect is so marked that it is probable that almost any general-purpose capacitor-start motor would burn out in a short time if it were driven at synchronous speed with the starting switch closed—so great is the regenerative effect under these conditions. This effect has been discussed more completely by the author, and some of the more important conclusions are merely summarized below without proof:[8]

1. For any given motor driven always at the same speed, there is a critical value of capacitance below which the machine will not build up at all. The more this capacitance is exceeded, the greater will be the voltage, current, and dynamic-braking torque.
2. For any given machine with a fixed value of capacitance, there is a critical speed below which the machine will not build up at all. The more the speed exceeds this critical value, the greater will be the current, voltage, and dynamic-braking torque.
3. For any given machine, the critical value of capacitance is inversely proportional to the square of the speed; the converse of this is likewise true.
4. If the capacitor is charged at the instant that the starting switch closes, buildup is much more likely to occur, but buildup can occur with no initial charge in the capacitor.
5. If a resistor is connected in parallel with the capacitor, the tendency of the machine to build up is reduced, partly because the resistor bleeds off the capacitor charge, and partly because the resistor acts as a load on the generator—just as a load across a shunt generator decreases the critical field resistance above which the machine will not build up.

(2) *Remedies.* Probably the easiest remedy for a serviceman is to install a small resistor—of the type found in a radio supply store—in the capacitor assembly, connecting it across the capacitor terminals. If it is observed that the regenerative buildup occurs only if the motor is stopped within a few seconds after starting, but does not occur if the motor has been running for some time, then a fairly high resistance, 1,000 ohms, say, can be tried. If this does not cure the difficulty, smaller value of resistance should be tried. This process can be repeated until a value of resistance is found that cures the trouble. This resistor should have the maximum resistance that can be used and still be effec-

tive. Care should also be exercised to use a resistor of a high enough watt rating so that it does not overheat during a starting or stopping period. Use of a resistor tends to increase the locked-rotor current.

Lowering the reclosing speed of the starting switch enough will eliminate the difficulty. Ordinarily a serviceman can do this only by using a switch with a lower opening as well as a lower reclosing speed, and this would generally affect the switching torque adversely. With a current-operated magnetic switch, regeneration difficulties cannot occur because the starting circuit never closes after the motor is deenergized. With a voltage relay, regeneration is almost certain to occur because the starting switch closes instantly after the power is shut off; however, these relays are used mostly for hermetic refrigerators, which stop very quickly so that there is little danger of serious trouble on this account.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Boothby, C. R.: Discussion on Capacitor Motor Papers, *AIEE Trans.*, April, 1929, p. 629.
2. Specht, H. C.: Fundamental Theory of the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.*, April, 1929, p. 607.
3. Bailey, Benjamin F.: The Condenser Motor, *AIEE Trans.*, April, 1929, p. 596.
4. Morrill, Wayne, J.: The Revolving Field Theory of the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.*, April, 1929, p. 614.
5. Trickey, P. H.: Design of Capacitor Motors for Balanced Operation, *AIEE Trans.*, September, 1932, p. 780.
6. Veinott, C. G.: Starting Windings for Single-phase Induction Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 63, 1944, pp. 288–294.
7. Bassett, E. D., and Potter, E. M.: Capacitive Excitation for Induction Generators, *AIEE Trans.*, 1935, pp. 540–545.
8. Veinott, C. G.: Discussion of Bassett and Potter Paper, *AIEE Trans.*, 1935, p. 1106.
9. Deely, Paul McKnight: "Electrolytic Capacitors," Cornell-Dubilier Electric Corp., South Plainfield, N.J., 1938.
10. Georgiev, Alexander M.: "The Electrolytic Capacitor," Murray Hill Books, Inc., Technical Division, New York.
11. Appleman, W. R.: Twelve Ways of Reversing Capacitor-start Motors, *Electrical Manufacturing*, August, 1950.
12. London, Sol: Reversing Single-phase Motors, *Machine Design*, Dec. 3, 1964.
13. Angst, G.: Self-excitation of Capacitor Motors, *AIEE Trans.* vol. 71, pt. III, 1952, pp. 557–562.
14. Covo, A. and Lingo, L. E.: *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 75, pt. III, 1956, pp. 1309–1312.
15. Trickey, P. H.: Capacitor Motor Performance Calculations by the Cross-field Theory, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 75, pt. III, 1956, pp. 1547–1553.
16. Rao, P. V.: Switching Transients in Single-phase Induction Motors with Constant Speed, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 78, pt. III, 1959, p. 713.
17. Ismail, M. K. E., and Adkins, B.: Performance Calculations of the Capacitor Motor Using the Transformer Analogue Analyser, *Proc. IEE*, vol. 106 pt. A, 1959, pp. 175–182.

18. Rekus, G. G.: Conditions for the Symmetrical Performance of a Capacitor Motor, *Elect. Tech.*, vol. 7, 1960, pp. 394–400.
19. Hartman, A. E., and Mueller, G. V.: Computer Design of Capacitor-start-motor-start Windings, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 79, pt. III, 1960, pp. 1087–1090.
20. Veinott, C. G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.
21. Buchanan, L. W., and Winters, T. F.: Auxiliary Phase Design for Capacitor-start Motors, *IEEE Trans., Power Apparatus and Systems,* vol. 84, pp. 993–999.
22. Rotating Machinery Committee: Bibliography of Rotating Electric Machinery 1886–1947, *AIEE Pub. S*-32, January, 1950.
23. ———: Bibliography of Rotating Electric Machinery for 1948–1961, *IEEE Trans. Paper* No. 64–1, 1964.
24. ———: Bibliography of Rotating Electric Machinery for 1962–1965, *IEEE Trans. Paper* No. 31 TP 67–477.
25. Oldenkamp, John L.: Capacitive Regenerative Braking in Single-phase Motors, *IEEE Trans. on Power Apparatus and Systems,* vol. PAS-86, no. 11, November, 1967, pp. 1312–1316.

Chapter 6

Two-value Capacitor Motors

The two-value capacitor motor gained great commercial importance in the early 1930s for applications requiring high locked-rotor torque, such as refrigerators, compressors, and stokers. It has since been replaced largely by the capacitor-start motor, though it is still often used to squeeze an extra rating or two in a given frame size.

6-1. Two-value Capacitor Motor Defined. A two-value capacitor motor is a form of capacitor motor that starts with one value of capacitance in series with its auxiliary winding and runs with a different value. This change in value of capacitance is automatic and may be effected either by the use of an autotransformer or by the use of two separate capacitors. The two-value motor has high starting and running torques.

6-2. Essential Parts of the Two-value Motor. Discussed below are the two major types of two-value capacitor motors:

(1) *Motor Using a Capacitor-transformer Unit.* A two-value motor using a capacitor-transformer unit is represented diagrammatically in Fig. 6-1. To all intents and purposes, the windings are the same as for the capacitor-start motor that was discussed in Art. 5-2, and the rotor is of squirrel-cage construction. A difference in the starting switch

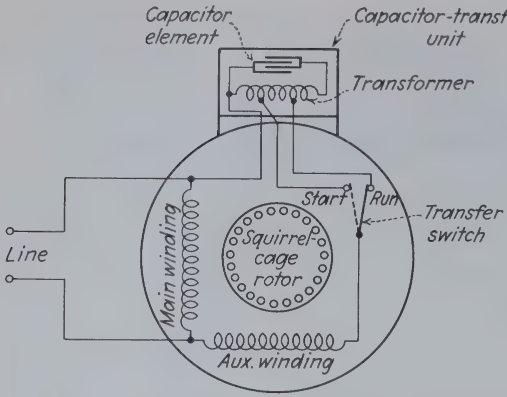


Fig. 6-1 The two-value capacitor motor using a capacitor-transformer unit.

will be noted, however, for this motor uses a "transfer switch" which is equivalent to a single-pole double-throw switch. By means of this transfer switch, a high voltage (approximately 600 to 800 volts) is impressed for starting purposes across the capacitor element; this voltage is then reduced to approximately 330 volts for continuous running. This change in voltage is effected by changing taps on the primary side of the autotransformer and corresponds to changing the effective microfarads in series with the auxiliary winding. This form of two-value motor is now used but little.

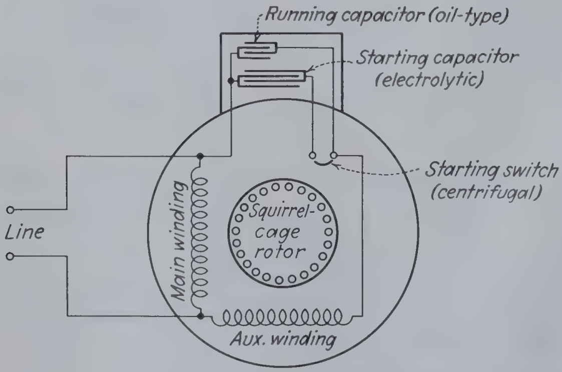

Running capacitor (oil-type)
Starting capacitor (electrolytic)
Starting switch (centrifugal)
Line
Main winding
Squirrel-cage rotor
Aux. winding

Fig. 6-2 The two-value capacitor motor using two capacitors.

(2) *Motor Using Two Capacitors.* A two-value capacitor motor using two separate capacitors is illustrated diagrammatically in Fig. 6-2. The arrangement of windings and switch in this motor is identical with the arrangement used in a capacitor-start motor. The difference between these two motors is that the two-value motor has a running capacitor

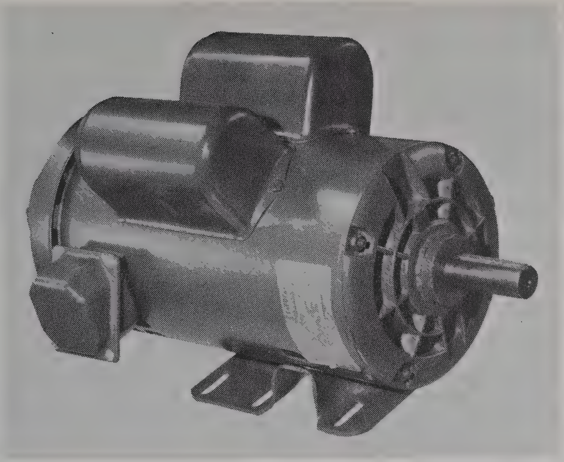


Fig. 6-3 Two-value motor using two capacitors, an electrolytic one for starting and a Pyranol one for running. (*General Electric Company.*)

permanently connected in series with the auxiliary winding; the starting capacitor is paralleled with the running capacitor only during the starting period. The running capacitor is usually of the paper-spaced oil-filled type, rated at 370 (formerly 330) volts alternating current, continuous operation. Castor oil, mineral oil, Dykanol, Inerteen, Insulatum, and Pyranol are variously used as the impregnating medium. Capacitances range from 3 to 16 mfd. The electrolytic capacitors for 115-volt 60-hz motors range in size from 85 mfd or less to 300 mfd or more. A motor of this type is illustrated in Fig. 6-3, where the two-capacitor units are in two cases.

6-3. Effect of the Running Capacitor. It was pointed out in the preceding paragraph that the motor of Fig. 6-2 is merely the capacitor-start motor of Fig. 5-1 with a "running capacitor" permanently connected in the circuit. Considering any given motor, the effect of adding this capacitor is to

1. Increase the breakdown torque from 5 to 30 percent
2. Improve the full-load efficiency and power factor
3. Reduce the noise under full-load operating conditions
4. Increase the locked-rotor torque 5 to 20 percent

Why does the running capacitor improve performance? The reader is referred to Chap. 2, Arts. 2-8 to 2-11, wherein it is pointed out that the rotating field of a single-phase induction motor may be considered as comprised of two component pulsating fields, a main field and a cross field, spaced 90 electrical degrees apart and differing in time phase by 90°; the main-field component is set up directly by the main winding and the cross field by the rotor. When the auxiliary winding is connected across the line in series with a running capacitor of the proper value, the current drawn by the auxiliary winding leads the current drawn by the main winding by approximately 90°. The net result is that the auxiliary winding sets up a part or all of the cross field, thereby reducing or eliminating the magnetizing currents in the rotor and the accompanying rotor copper losses.

The effect of the addition of a running capacitor is illustrated in Fig. 18-11, lines 38 to 47. The first column is an analysis of the full-load losses of a ¼-hp motor operating without a capacitor, and the second column is a similar analysis of the same motor operating with a running capacitor in the circuit. The reduction in losses and improvement in performance are marked.

Another effect of the running capacitor is to give 5 to 30 percent more breakdown torque. Still another effect is the reduction of the double-frequency torque pulsations normally inherent in single-phase motors. (For a discussion of this phenomenon, see Art. 17-11.) This effect is noticeable at or near full load and may not be noticed at no load.

In short, the effect of the running capacitor is to make the motor perform more nearly like a two-phase motor, particularly at one value of load. It is not possible to duplicate two-phase motor performance at all load values with a single value of capacitance, however, because a different value of capacitance would be required for each different load. Trickey[1,7]* shows how to proportion a winding and capacitor to obtain two-phase motor performance at any one desired load point. Morrill,[2,6] Trickey,[7] and others show how to calculate the performance of a capacitor motor at any load.

6-4. Purpose of the Starting Switch. The starting or transfer switch serves the same purpose as the starting switch of a capacitor-start motor, discussed in Art. 5-5. A representative speed-torque curve of a two-value motor is illustrated in Fig. 6-4. The curve of *capacitor volts vs. rpm* indicates, in the case of a motor such as that illustrated in Fig. 6-1, the voltage across the primary of the transformer; the actual voltage across the capacitor element is approximately five to seven times the voltage across the primary, or up to 800 volts. In the case of the motor of Fig. 6-2, the capacitor volts curve represents the actual voltage across the two capacitor elements when the motor is operating on the *starting connection.*

---

* For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

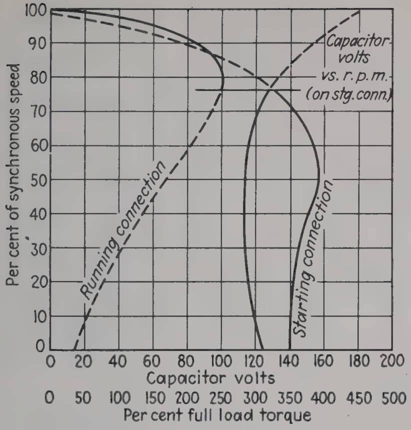


Fig. 6-4 Speed-torque curve of a two-value capacitor motor.

6-5. Torques of Two-value Capacitor Motors. By comparing Fig. 6-4 with Fig. 5-4, it will be noted that the capacitor-start motor has substantially the same torques as the two-value motor. The reason for this is simply that the main winding of the capacitor-start motor is designed for more torque, so that the torques of the two types of motors are practically identical. The two-value motor, however, will start a light load on the running connection whereas the capacitor-start motor probably will not. The torques given in Table 19-1 apply also to two-value motors, as do the locked-rotor currents given there.

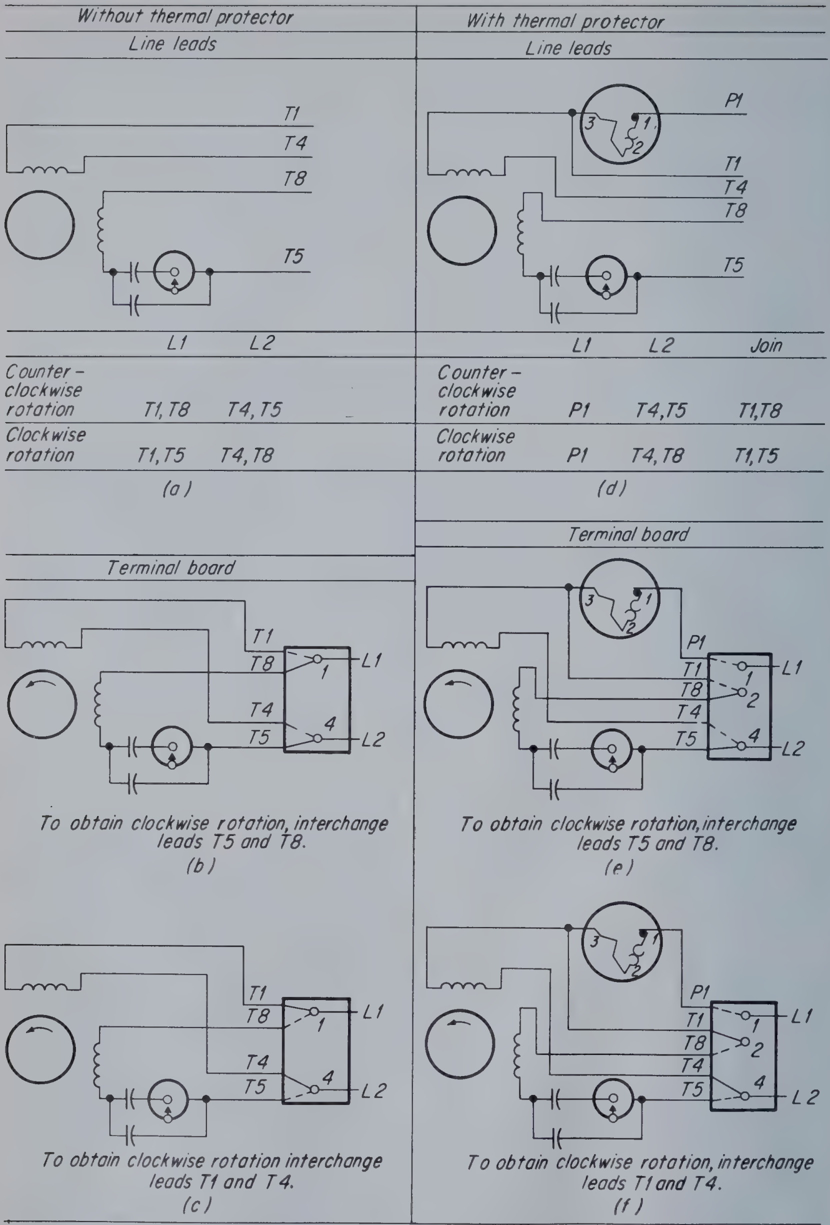
SINGLE-VOLTAGE MOTORS

6-6. Standard Connections for Reversible Motors. Figure 6-5 shows motor and line wiring diagrams for motors with and without thermal protection, with and without terminal boards, as developed by NEMA.

6-7. Motor with Dual-section Auxiliary Winding. In Fig. 6-6 is illustrated schematically a motor which uses a two-section auxiliary winding. When starting, current flows through the first section of the auxiliary winding and the electrolytic capacitor; on the running connection, current flows through both sections of the auxiliary winding and the oil-type running capacitor. A natural question is to ask why such an arrangement is used in preference to the simpler arrangement of Fig. 6-2.

For economic reasons, it is usually advantageous to work electrolytic capacitors at a relatively low voltage, of the order of 115 to 130 volts, whereas oil capacitors are best worked at higher voltages, of the order of 300 or more. Using the arrangement of Fig. 6-8, it is possible to work the electrolytic capacitor at its own appropriate voltage; by proper

Note – Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.



	L1	L2
Counter-clockwise rotation	T1, T8	T4, T5
Clockwise rotation	T1, T5	T4, T8

(a)

	L1	L2	Join
Counter-clockwise rotation	P1	T4, T5	T1, T8
Clockwise rotation	P1	T4, T8	T1, T5

(d)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.
(b)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.
(e)

To obtain clockwise rotation interchange leads T1 and T4.
(c)

To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.
(f)

Note – When terminal boards are shown, they are viewed from the front. Dashed lines indicate permanent connection.

Fig. 6-5 Wiring and line connection diagrams for two-value capacitor motors, single-voltage, reversible, with and without a thermal protector, with tagged leads, and with two-post and three-post terminal boards. (*From NEMA.*)

choice of turns in Sec. 2, the voltage on the running capacitor is increased, and the same auxiliary-winding current produces more effect because of the added turns in Sec. 2. Thus, the arrangement of Fig. 6-6 enables the designer to obtain more of the beneficial effects cited in Art. 6-3 from the same number of running microfarads, and to work the running capacitor closer to its rated voltage.

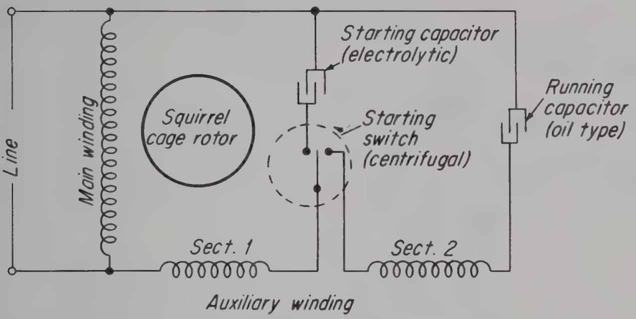
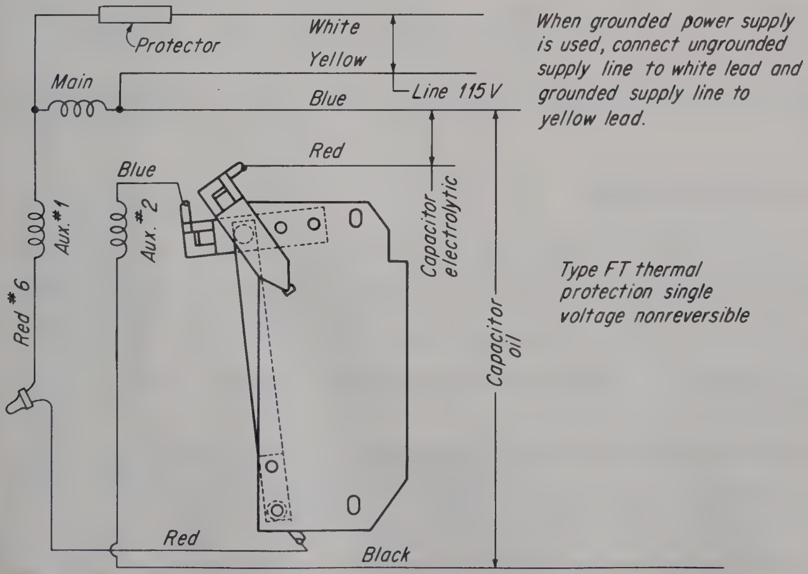

Line
Main winding
Squirrel cage rotor
Starting capacitor (electrolytic)
Starting switch (centrifugal)
Running capacitor (oil type)
Sect. 1
Sect. 2
Auxiliary winding

Fig. 6-6 Schematic arrangement of a two-value capacitor motor, using two capacitors and a two-section auxiliary winding.

One practical embodiment of this arrangement is shown in Fig. 6-7. A



When grounded power supply is used, connect ungrounded supply line to white lead and grounded supply line to yellow lead.

Type FT thermal protection single voltage nonreversible

Fig. 6-7 Motor and line wiring diagram for a single-voltage two-value nonreversible capacitor motor, using a two-section auxiliary winding. Starting switch connects red to red for starting and red to blue for running. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

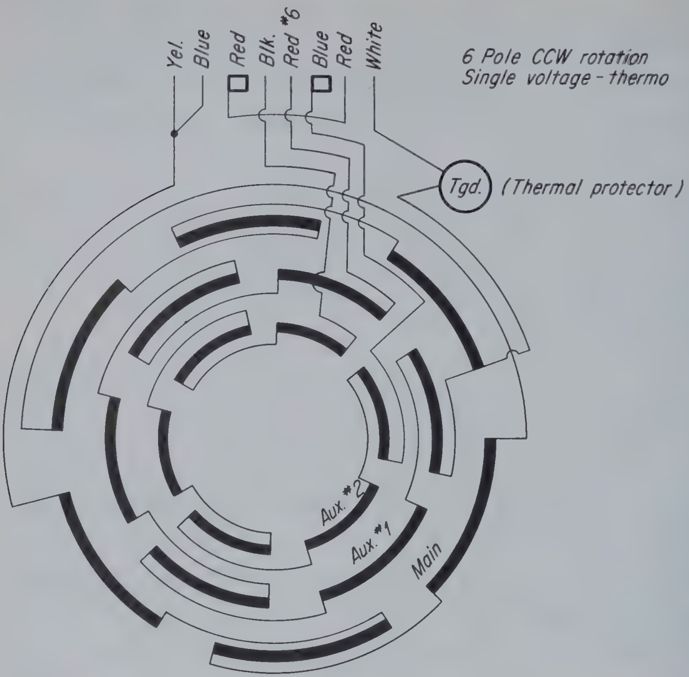


Fig. 6-8 Stator connection diagram for a six-pole two-value capacitor motor, connected per Fig. 6-7. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

typical stator connection diagram—this one for six poles—is given in Fig. 6-8.

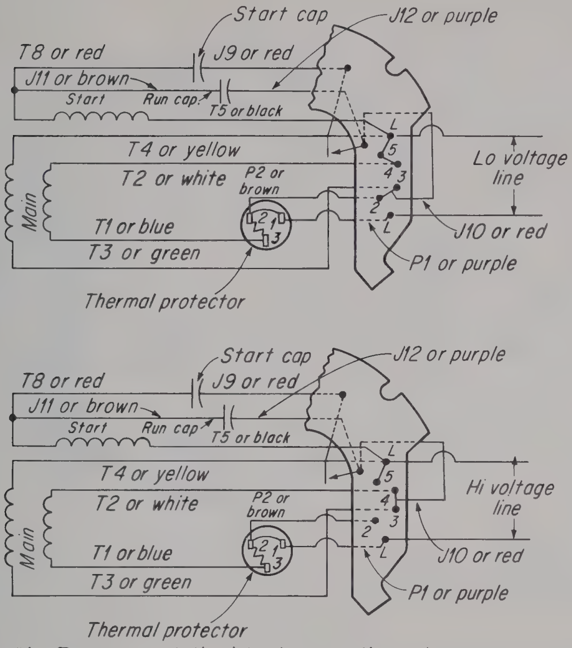
DUAL-VOLTAGE MOTORS

In general, dual-voltage two-value capacitor motors split the main winding into two sections, which are connected in series or in parallel, as do capacitor-start motors, and the same considerations, discussed in Chap. 5 (q.v.), generally apply. The auxiliary winding may have a single section, or two sections, as discussed in Art. 6-7 (not for series-parallel connection).

6-8. Dual-voltage Motors with Single-section Auxiliary Winding. Figure 6-9 is a motor and line wiring diagram for a dual-voltage (either rotation) reversible thermally protected motor with a terminal board.

6-9. Dual-voltage Motors with Two-section Auxiliary Winding. A dual-voltage thermally protected motor with a two-section auxiliary winding is shown in Fig. 6-10. A four-pole stator connection diagram for such a motor is given in Fig. 6-11.

Either rotation – dual voltage type KC
with overload



Note *1 – To reverse rotation, interchange red (or J10) and
black (or T5) leads

Fig. 6-9 Motor and line wiring diagram for a dual-voltage two-value reversible (either rotation) capacitor motor, using two capacitors, thermally protected. (*General Electric Company.*)

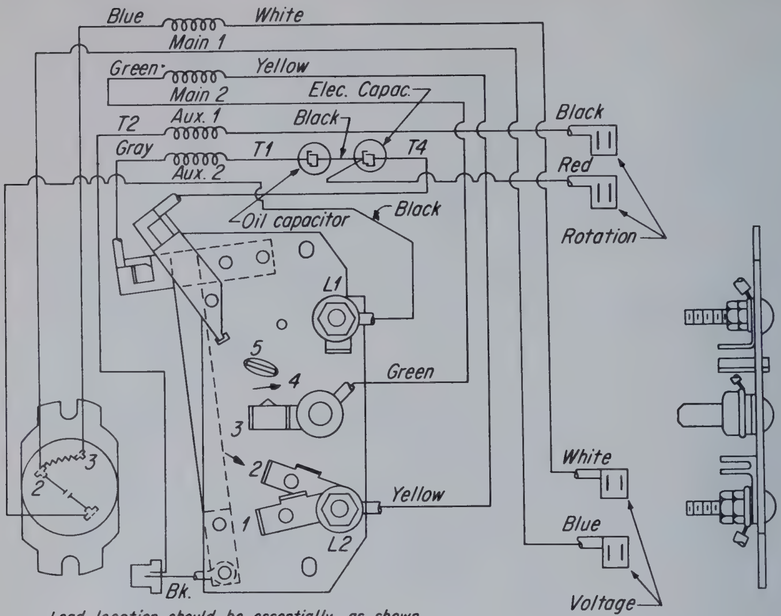
MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

6-10. Rewinding or Reconnecting Motor for a Different Voltage but for Same Performance.

(1) *Changing from* 115 *to* 230 *Volts.* About the only safe way for a serviceman to rewind for 230 volts is to rewind for the dual-voltage connection, such as that used in capacitor-start motors. In this case, the same capacitor-transformer unit or the same double-unit capacitor and the same auxiliary winding are employed.

(2) *Other Voltage Changes.* Other voltage changes are hardly to be recommended unless rewinding information can be obtained from the motor manufacturer.

6-11. Rewinding for Different Torques, Speed, or Frequency. Because of the complications involved in the capacitor unit and also for the



Lead location should be essentially as shown.

Connect leads for rotation & voltage per fig. no. spec. on style list.

4	CW	Red → 2 Blk → 4	115	White → 1 Blue → 3 5
3	CCW	Blk → 2 Red → 4	115	White → 1 Blue → 3 5
2	CW	Red → 2 Blk → 4	230	1 White → 3 Blue → 5
1	CCW	Blk → 2 Red → 4	230	1 White → 3 Blue → 5
Fig	Rot	Rot. conn.	Volt.	Volt. conn.

Fig. 6-10 Motor and line wiring diagram for a dual-voltage two-value reversible thermally protected capacitor motor, using two capacitors and two sections of auxiliary winding. Starting switch connects black to T4 for starting and black to gray for running. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

reasons outlined in Arts. 5-28 and 5-29, these types of changes are not to be recommended.

6-12. Changing a Two-value Motor to a Capacitor-start Motor. It is sometimes possible to substitute a simple electrolytic capacitor for a capacitor-transformer unit, thus converting the two-value motor into a capacitor-start motor. If the effective capacitance of the capacitor-

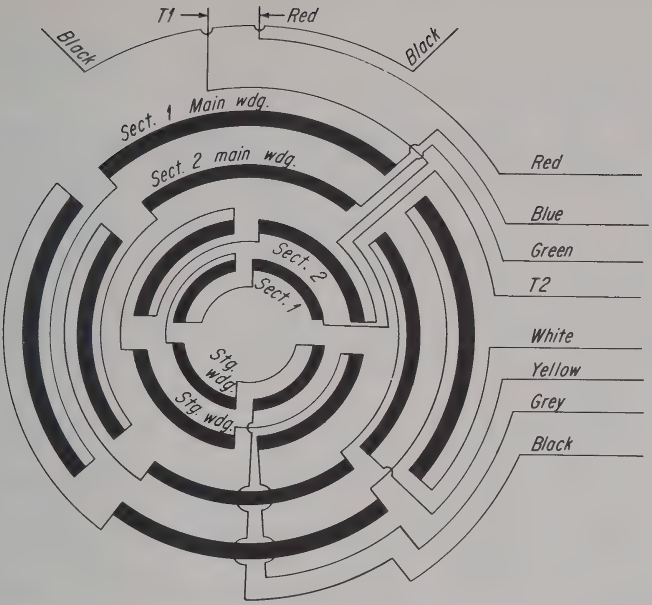


Fig. 6-11 Stator connection diagram for a four-pole dual-voltage two-value capacitor motor, using two capacitors and two sections of auxiliary winding. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

transformer unit on the starting connection is not known, it is suggested that the procedure of Art. 5-9 be followed to determine the amount of capacitance to be used.

Substitution of an electrolytic capacitor for a capacitor-transformer unit is fraught with certain hazards, some of which will be discussed: (1) In the first place, the breakdown torque of the motor may be reduced from 5 to 30 percent. This point may or may not be important, but it should be considered. (2) The full-load losses, watts input, and resultant heating will increase, though *perhaps* not to an injurious extent. (3) Too severe voltages may be imposed upon the electrolytic capacitor in operation, shortening its life.

Any motor in which such a substitution is made will bear careful observation and testing; without doubt there will be times when the risks of such a substitution are wholly justified.

If the motor uses two capacitors and the running capacitor develops a short circuit, the motor will not operate properly; but if the defective capacitor is removed from the circuit, the motor should then operate satisfactorily as a capacitor-start motor (provided that there is no other defect), with the limitations discussed above.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Trickey, P. H.: Design of Capacitor Motors for Balanced Operation, *AIEE Trans.,* September, 1932, p. 780.
2. Morrill, Wayne J.: The Revolving Field Theory of the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* April, 1929, p. 614.
3. Specht, H. C.: Fundamental Theory of the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* April, 1929, p. 607.
4. Bailey, Benjamin F.: The Condenser Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* April, 1929, p. 596.
5. Trickey, P. H.: Equal Volt-ampere Method of Designing Capacitor Motors, *AIEE Trans,* vol. 60, 1941, pp. 990–992.
6. Morrill, Wayne J.: The Apparent-impedance Method of Calculating Single-phase Motor Performance, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 60, 1941, pp. 1037–1041.
7. Trickey, P. H.: Performance Calculations on Capacitor Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 60, 1941, pp. 662–663.
8. Puchstein, A. F., and Lloyd, T. C.: Capacitor Motors with Windings Not in Quadrature, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 54, 1935, pp. 1235–1239.
9. Lyon, W. V., and Kingsley, Charles, Jr.: Analysis of Unsymmetrical Machines, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 55, 1936, pp. 471–476.
10. Puchstein, A. F., and Lloyd, T. C.: Cross-field Theory of the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 60, 1941, pp. 58–61.
11. McFarland, T. C.: Current Loci for the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 61, 1942, pp. 152–156.
12. ———: Turn Ratio of the Capacitor Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 62, 1943, pp. 892–898.
13. Tarboux, J. G.: A Generalized Circle Diagram for a Four-terminal Network and Its Application to the Capacitor Single-phase Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 64, 1945.
14. Suhr, F. W.: Symmetrical Components as Applied to the Single-phase Induction Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 64, 1945, pp. 651–656.

Chapter 7

Permanent-split Capacitor Motors

Permanent-split capacitor motors (once called *single-value capacitor motors*) are generally used for special-purpose applications such as shaft-mounted fans and blowers, instruments (often using synchronous rotors), and servomotors. In the smaller sizes, they often compete with shaded-pole motors. They are more efficient, have better power factor, have more output per pound, but are more costly than shaded-pole motors. With shaded-pole motors they share the important advantage that they require no starting switch or relay. Generally speaking, they are not suitable for belted applications or for any other continuous-duty application requiring substantial locked-rotor torque. However, they do lend themselves well to high-torque reversing intermittent-duty service. They are generally available in ratings from 1 mhp to ⅓ hp, and, for shaft-mounted fans and blowers, up to ¾ hp.

7-1. Permanent-split Capacitor Motor Defined. This motor is defined in Art. 5-1 as a capacitor motor that uses its auxiliary winding and capacitor continuously, without change in capacitance. This definition shows why no starting switch or relay is required.

7-2. Essential Parts of a Permanent-split Capacitor Motor. A permanent-split capacitor motor is represented schematically in Fig. 7-1. It is to be noted that the arrangement of windings and connections is exactly the same as in Fig. 5-1, except that the starting switch is omitted. Further, it should be noted that it is exactly like Fig. 6-2, except that both starting switch and starting capacitor are omitted. Hence, the stator windings of a permanent-split capacitor motor generally resemble in form and arrangement those of a capacitor-start motor. That is, there are two windings, spaced 90 electrical degrees apart. A single-voltage motor will usually have a single-section main winding, and a dual-voltage motor a two-section main winding; but, in either case, the auxiliary winding will usually be single-section. The motor also uses a squirrel-cage rotor, almost invariably with a higher resistance than that found in a capacitor-start motor. As mentioned before, no starting switch or relay is required. Some motors use tapped main windings; these are discussed in Arts. 7-14 and 7-15. A continuous-rated capacitor is required with all arrangements; such a capacitor is usually of the paper-spaced oil-filled type. Castor oil, mineral oil, Dykanol, Inerteen, Insulatum, and Pyranol are variously used as an impregnating medium.

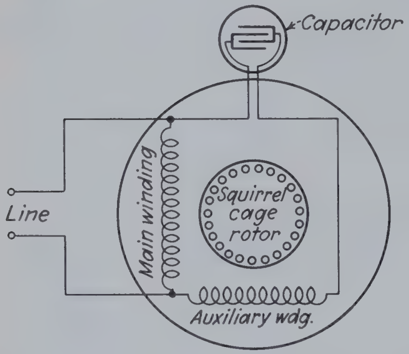


Fig. 7-1 The permanent-split capacitor motor.

7-3. Principles of Operation. The effect of the running capacitor is to improve the performance by creating flux conditions at some one load approximating those of a polyphase motor. These polyphaselike flux conditions obtain at only one load, generally somewhere between half load and full load. The effect of this running capacitor is discussed at greater length in Art. 6-3, wherein it is pointed out that the capacitor increases the breakdown torque, efficiency, and power factor and reduces the noise. Thus, the net effect is to increase the available output per pound or per cubic inch of active material.

The speed-torque characteristic of a continuous-rated motor is quite like the "running connection" curve shown in Fig. 6-4, except that more rotor resistance is customarily used in order to improve the locked-rotor torque; this higher rotor resistance increases the full-load slip over and above the slip shown in Fig. 6-4. Another typical speed-torque characteristic of a continuous-rated permanent-split capacitor motor is illustrated by the "high" curve of Fig. 7-9.

An intermittent-rated high-torque permanent-split capacitor motor would have a speed-torque characteristic more like that of the "starting connection" curve of Fig. 6-4, except that this motor, too, would have higher rotor resistance, which would increase the locked-rotor torque, and cause the breakdown torque to occur at a higher slip than shown.

Use of a running capacitor makes it possible to reduce the speed of a motor driving a shaft-mounted fan by as much as 50 percent. It has been shown by the author[2,*] that the speed of a straight single-phase induction motor cannot be made to occur below about 70 percent of synchronous speed; hence, without a capacitor, a stable speed reduction of 50 percent cannot be achieved.

SINGLE-SPEED MOTORS

7-4. Performance Characteristics of Permanent-split Capacitor Motors. Approximate performance characteristics of permanent-split capacitor motors, such as those used for shaft-mounted fans and blowers, are given in Table 7-1. Permanent-split motors, with outputs of the order of 2 to 5 mhp, are used in industrial instruments; such motors are generally rated on the basis of full-load torque and have a locked-rotor torque equal to rated torque while the breakdown torque may be around 175 percent of full-load torque.

Compared with capacitor-start or split-phase motors, permanent-split motors have lower full-load speeds (see Tables 1-4 and 1-5) and these speeds are generally subject to wider variations among individual motors, as well as to changes in load on any given motor. The problem is the same as it is for shaded-pole motors, which is discussed in Art. 10-9.

7-5. Connections and Diagrams—Single-voltage Motors. Wiring and line connection diagrams, according to NEMA, are given in Fig. 7-2. Note that the external connections are identical with those for a split-phase motor, as shown in Fig. 4-5, or for a capacitor-start motor, as shown in Fig. 5-7.

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

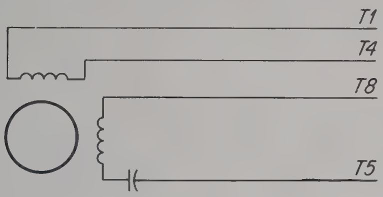
TABLE 7-1 Approximate Performance Data of 60-hz Permanent-split Capacitor Motors (Except those used for hermetic motor service; as single-speed motors) (Torques in oz-ft)

Rated hp*	No. of poles*	Full-load rpm*	Rated output		Approximate torques		Approximate locked-rotor amp on 115 volts†
			Watts	Torque	Breakdown*	Locked-rotor†	
1/20	4	1625	37.3	2.59	3.20– 4.13	2.3	2.5
	6	1075	37.3	3.91	4.70– 6.09	3.5	2.5
	8	825	37.3	5.10	6.20– 8.00	4.6	2.5
1/15	4	1625	49.7	3.45	4.13– 5.23	2.7	3.3
	6	1075	49.7	5.21	6.09– 7.72	4.1	3.3
	8	825	49.7	6.79	8.00–10.1	5.4	3.3
1/12	4	1625	62.2	4.31	5.23– 6.39	3.1	4.0
	6	1075	62.2	6.52	7.72– 9.42	4.7	4.0
	8	825	62.2	8.49	10.1 –12.4	6.0	4.0
1/10	4	1625	74.6	5.17	6.39– 8.00	3.4	4.8
	6	1075	74.6	7.82	9.42–11.8	5.1	4.8
	8	825	74.6	10.19	12.4 –15.5	6.7	4.8
1/8	4	1625	93.3	6.47	8.00–10.4	4.0	5.8
	6	1075	93.3	9.78	11.8 –15.3	6.1	5.8
	8	825	93.3	12.74	15.5 –20.1	7.9	5.8
1/6	4	1625	124.3	8.62	10.4 –12.7	5.2	7.5
	6	1075	124.3	13.03	15.3 –18.8	7.9	7.5
	8	825	124.3	16.98	20.1 –24.6	10.0	7.5
1/5	4	1625	149.2	10.35	12.7 –16.0	6.1	9.0
	6	1075	149.2	15.64	18.8 –23.6	9.2	9.0
	8	825	149.2	20.38	24.6 –31.0	12.0	9.0
1/4	4	1625	186.5	12.93	16.0 –21.0	7.4	11.0
	6	1075	186.5	19.55	23.6 –31.5	11.2	11.0
	8	825	186.5	25.48	31.0 –41.0	14.5	11.0
1/3	4	1625	248.7	17.25	21.0 –31.5	9.6	14.5
	6	1075	248.7	26.07	31.5 –47.0	14.5	14.5
	8	825	248.7	33.97	41.0 –61.0	18.7	14.5
1/2	4	1625	373	25.87	31.5 –47.5	13.5	21.0
	6	1075	373	39.10	47.0 –70.8	20.5	21.0
3/4	4	1625	560	38.80	47.5 –63.5	19.4	30

* Taken from NEMA standards.
† Original sources.

Note I - All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive.
Note II - There are other terminal markings for definite-purpose permanent-split capacitor motors.

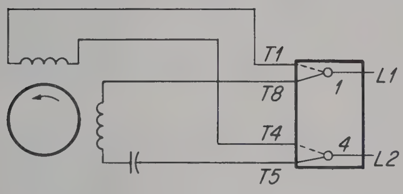
Line leads



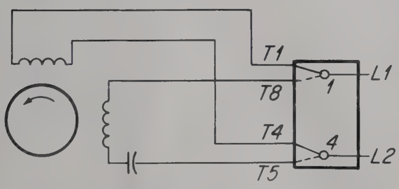
	L1	L2
Counter-clockwise rotation	T1,T8	T4,T5
Clockwise rotation	T1,T5	T4,T8

(a)

Terminal board



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.
(b)



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.
(c)

Fig. 7-2 Wiring and line connection diagrams for permanent-split capacitor motors, single-voltage, with tagged leads, and with two-post terminal board. (*From NEMA.*)

NEMA connection diagrams for permanent-split capacitor motors for industrial instrument service are given in Figs. 7-3 and 7-4. These diagrams would be equally applicable for a high-torque intermittent-duty reversing motor.

Stator connection diagrams for split-phase motors, as given in Chap. 4, are generally applicable to permanent-split motors. However, for greater quietness, both main and auxiliary windings of a permanent-split motor are often parallel-connected. Diagrams for parallel-connected six-pole and eight-pole motors are given in Figs. 7-5 and 7-6; these diagrams show diametrically opposite poles connected in parallel in order to minimize any unbalanced pull on the rotor due to unbalanced magnetic fluxes on opposite sides of the shaft.

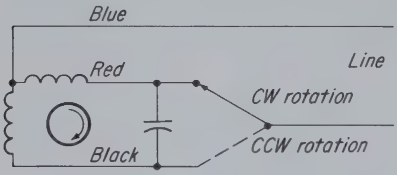
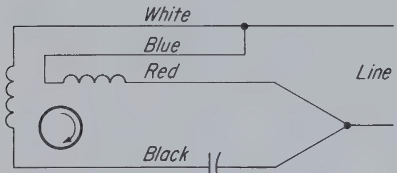


Fig. 7-3 Connection diagram for a three-lead single-voltage reversing permanent-split capacitor motor. (*From NEMA MG*1-18.012.)

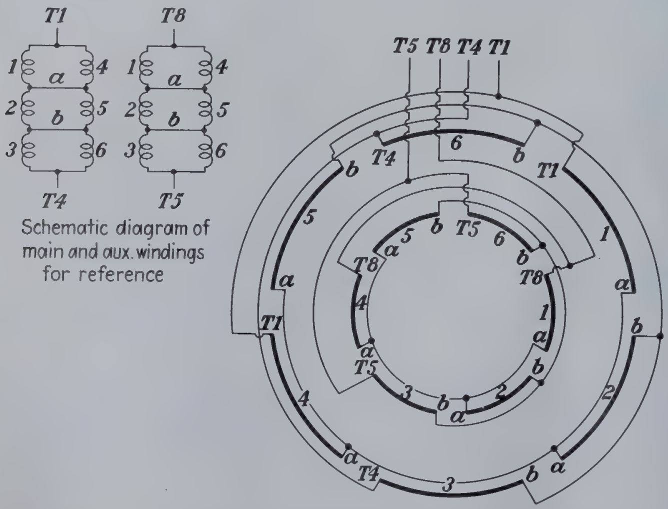


For CCW rotation, interchange leads of either phase.

Fig. 7-4 Connection diagram for a four-lead single-voltage reversible permanent-split capacitor motor. (*From NEMA MG*1-18.012.)

7-6. Connections and Diagrams—Dual-voltage Motors.

Dual-voltage single-speed permanent-split capacitor motors can be arranged substan-



Schematic diagram of main and aux. windings for reference

Fig. 7-5 Stator connection diagram for six-pole four-lead externally reversible permanent-split capacitor motor. Both windings are parallel, cross-connected.

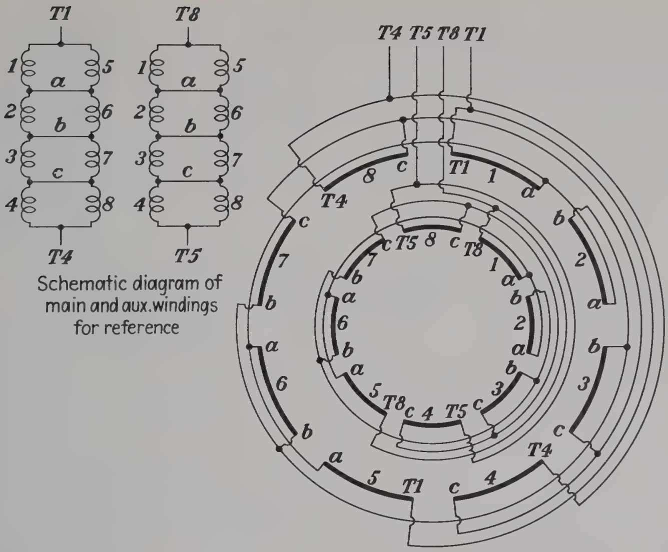


Fig. 7-6 Stator connection diagram for eight-pole four-lead externally reversible permanent-split capacitor motor. Both windings are parallel, cross-connected.

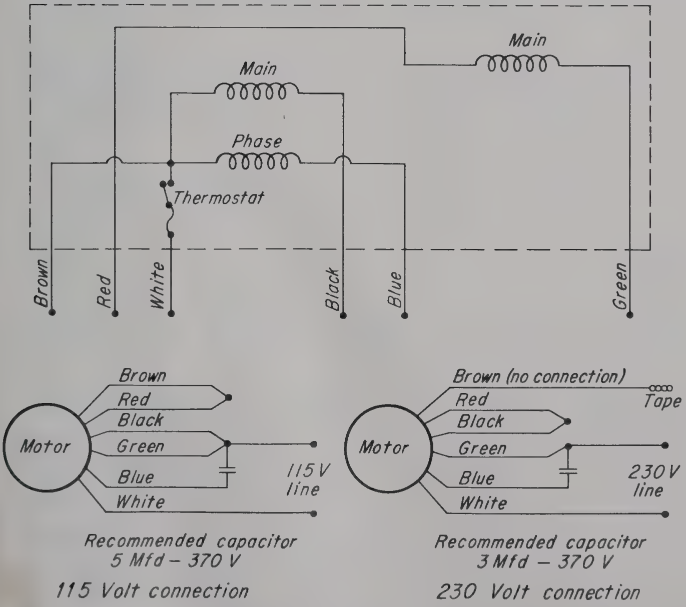


Fig. 7-7 Wiring and line connection diagrams for a dual-voltage reversible permanent-split capacitor motor. (*Delco Products.*)

tially the same as capacitor-start motors (omitting the switch, of course), as discussed in Arts. 5-15 to 5-21, inclusive.

Wiring and line connection diagrams for a *Delco* motor are given in Fig. 7-7.

Wiring and line connection diagrams for *Century* unit-heater motors, both with external leads and with terminal boards, are given in Fig. 7-10.

SPEED-CONTROL METHODS FOR PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS

Speed control is often desirable in a large number of fan and blower applications in heating and air-conditioning installations. One such typical use is for unit-heater service, where it is desirable to operate the fan at a high speed in order to obtain a quick initial warming up; once the room is warm, a quieter and more uniform flow of heat can be achieved by reducing the speed. Moreover, it may often be found necessary to increase the normal operating speed when the outside temperature falls a great deal.

7-7. Basic Methods of Speed Control. Speed control of permanent-split capacitor motors is obtained by adjusting the flux in the motor, and thereby changing the slip. Pole changing is not used; when pole-changing motors are wanted, split-phase or capacitor-start motors should be used.

There are a number of different methods of changing the flux, and thereby the slip and operating speed, of a permanent-split motor:

1. Changing connections of the windings
2. Changing the voltage impressed on one or on both windings
3. Inserting an external impedance, preferably in series with the main winding only
4. Tapped-winding methods

All these methods give similar operating characteristics. Let us begin our discussion by looking at voltage control.

7-8. Systems of Voltage Control. Four systems of controlling the voltages on the windings of a *permanent-split capacitor motor* are illustrated in Fig. 7-8. Figure 7-8*a* shows a simple autotransformer used in conjunction with a permanent-split motor; with this system, the voltage on both phases (main and auxiliary) is the same at all times. Generally speaking, this system gives unsatisfactory starting characteristics on the low-speed connection. Figure 7-8*b* shows a system whereby only the voltage of the main phase is varied, the capacitor-phase voltage being fixed. Figure 7-8*c* shows a system in which the voltage on the main phase is varied proportionately more than is the voltage on the auxiliary phase, though both are varied. In Fig. 7-8*d*, a decrease in the main-phase voltage is accompanied by an increase in the auxiliary-phase voltage. Systems *b*, *c*, and *d* have all been used successfully for speed control of unit-heater motors. In the three articles that follow, an explanation is given of the fundamental principles involved in the control of the speed of fan motors by varying the slip. Also, the inherent limitations of this method of speed control are discussed.

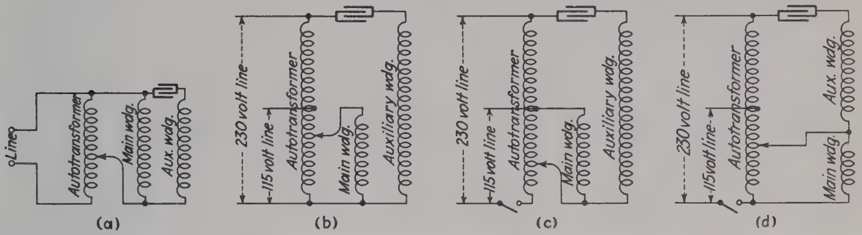


Fig. 7-8 Voltage-control systems for adjustable varying-speed capacitor motors.

7-9. Fundamental Relationship between Slip, Voltage, and Torque.

In Art. 2-2, the principle of the induction motor was illustrated by means of a rotating magnet which caused a copper disk to rotate with it. It was there pointed out that if the magnet were revolved at a uniform speed, the disk would revolve at a lower speed than the magnet, and the difference between the speed of the magnet and the speed of the disk was called the *slip*. A strong magnet will cause the disk to rotate at a high speed, i.e., with less slip than will a weak magnet revolved at the same speed as the strong magnet. The underlying reason is simply that the strong magnet will induce more eddy currents in the disk for any given slip. A little careful reasoning will lead to a fundamental relationship between slip, strength of the field, and torque.

At any given slip, the rate of cutting of lines of force is proportional to the number of lines of force in the field, i.e., to the strength of the field. Therefore, the voltages tending to set up eddy currents in the disk—or secondary—are also proportional to the strength of the field. Since the eddy currents are proportional to the voltages generating them, they are likewise proportional to the strength of the field. The torque developed by the disk is proportional to the product of field strength and eddy currents. Since eddy currents are proportional to field strength, it follows that the torque developed is proportional to the *square* of the field strength. In a practical induction motor, the field strength is varied by changing the voltage.

This principle, then, is as follows: *The torque developed in any induc-*

tion motor, at any given slip, is proportional to the square of the applied voltage. For any given load torque, the stronger the field, the less will be the slip.

7-10. Speed Control by Means of Voltage Control. The speed-torque curve of a typical adjustable varying-speed permanent-split capacitor motor with normal voltage on the windings is represented by the *high* curve of Fig. 7-9 and the speed-torque curve of a *normal fan* is likewise shown. The operating speed of the motor driving this fan is at point *a,* given by the intersection of the respective torque curves of the motor and fan. If the voltage on the windings is reduced, thereby reducing the flux to a *medium* value, a corresponding speed-torque curve is obtained. (At any slip, the torque is less than on the *high* connection because the voltage is less.) The operating speed of the motor driving the same fan is at point *b*, the intersection of the two torque curves. It is to be noted that the operating speed of the fan was reduced approximately 25 percent. If the voltage on the windings is reduced still further to a *low* value, a third speed-torque curve is obtained, the intersection of which with the fan speed-torque curve at *c* gives the operating speed of the motor driving the fan under this condition. The speed has now been reduced to about 50 percent of normal full-load speed. Thus, speed control of this motor has been effected by means of controlling the voltage on the windings. This speed control can be obtained by one of the schemes of Fig. 7-8 or by a similar one.

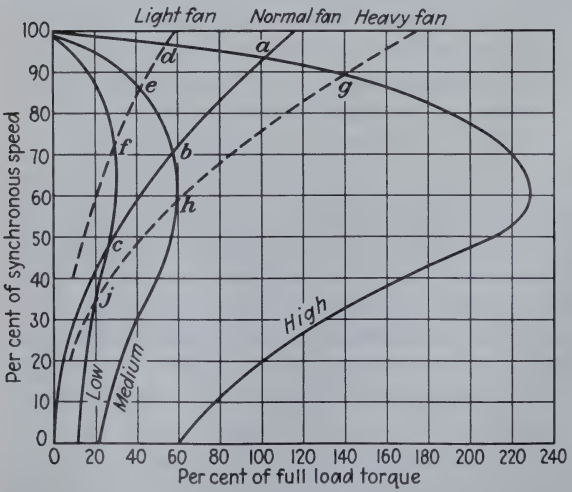


Fig. 7-9 How speed control of a fan is obtained with an adjustable varying-speed capacitor motor. The *high, medium,* and *low* curves are the three speed-torque curves on the respective speed connections.

7-11. Limitations of Flux-control Systems of Speed Control. Motors with this type of speed control have been very successful when used with shaft-mounted fans and blowers, but this method of speed control does have limitations.

(1) *Speed Depends upon the Load.* At no load, the motor will operate at practically the same speed on the *high, medium,* and *low* connections. If a *light fan,* requiring one-half the power of the *normal fan,* is used, the motor will operate at speeds as shown by points *d, e,* and *f* on Fig. 7-9. It is to be noted that even on the *low* connection, a speed reduction of less than 25 percent is obtained instead of the 50 percent obtained when the *normal fan* was used. If a *heavy fan* is used, i.e., one requiring 50 percent more power than the rating of the motor, the three operating speeds are *g, h,* and *j.*

(2) *Locked-rotor Torque Necessarily Low.* The locked-rotor torque on the low-speed connection has to be lower than the fan torque at the desired low speed. At half speed, the fan torque is about 25 percent of full-load torque, and the locked-rotor torque of the motor has to be less than this value.

(3) *Not Suited to Belted Drives.* Because of the inherently low locked-rotor torque and also because there is apt to be a considerable variation in belt friction, particularly if a V belt is used, and because the low speeds would, therefore, be uncertain, this type of speed control is not suited to belt-driven applications.

(4) *Unstable Low-speed Connection.* Because, on the low-speed connection, the fan-torque and motor-torque curves cross at a very small angle, speed characteristics tend to be unstable, and the speed is sensitive to changes in voltage and also to restrictions in the inlet and outlet ducts of the unit heater or fan it is driving. Restrictions in the path or ducts of a propeller fan generally increase the load requirements and slow the motor down; restrictions in either the inlet or exhaust ducts of a centrifugal fan or blower unload the fan, causing the motor to operate at a higher speed. In general, this characteristic of instability is more pronounced in a motor having a low slip at full load than it is in a motor having a higher full-load slip.

MULTISPEED MOTORS

7-12. Motors for Unit-heater Service. It was mentioned earlier that adjustable speed was a desirable feature for unit-heater motors in order to provide a smooth steady flow of heat quietly under normal conditions, and quick initial warm-up when needed, or to adjust for abnormally low outside temperatures. Wiring and line connection diagrams for one such line of unit-heater motors are given in Fig. 7-10. These motors may use line leads or built-in terminal boards. They can be used:

1. With a line switch, as a single-speed motor on 115- or 230-volt circuits
2. With a connection-changing switch, as a two-speed motor on a 115-volt circuit (accomplished by connecting the main winding for 230 volts but applying only 115 volts to it)

In Fig. 7-10 connection diagrams are given for two different two-speed switches. Arrow-Hart and Hegeman switch No. 80788 is a special switch which makes the following connections:

Toggle up—High speed

L2 to T2 and T3 (Motor leads 1, 4, 6 connected to one line)
L1 to T1 (Motor leads 5, 3, cap., to the other line)

Toggle down—Low speed

L2 to T3 (Motor leads 1, 4 to one line)
L1 to T2 (Motor leads 5, 6 connected together)
(Motor leads 3, cap., to the other line)

This switch has been superseded by H. and H. switch No. 39947, which is a conventional three-pole double-throw switch, so connected to the

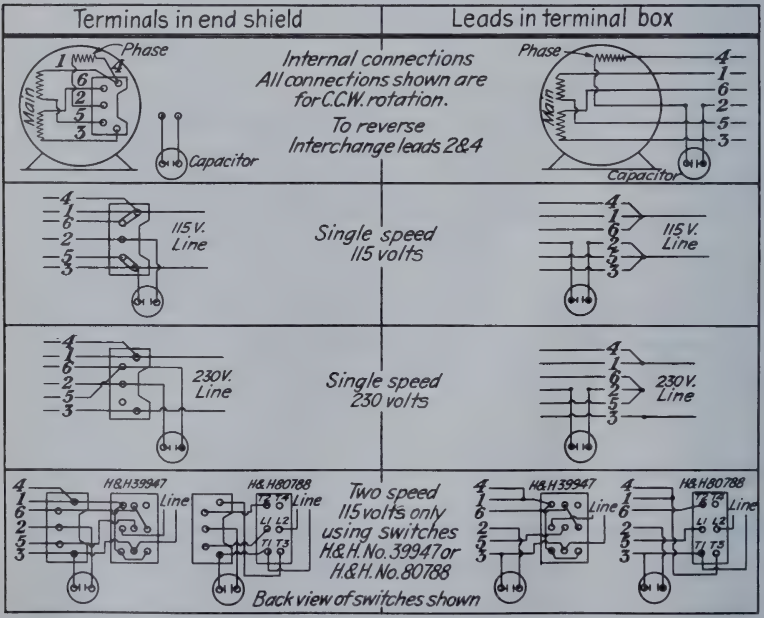


Fig. 7-10 Wiring and line connection diagrams for Century Type C unit heater motors.

motor as to give the same connections indicated above. (When the toggle is up, the three center terminals are connected, respectively, to the three bottom terminals, and vice versa.)

This line of motors permits the ultimate user to purchase only the single-speed motor and try it out. If, later, he feels the need for two-speed operation, he merely has to procure the proper switch without obtaining a new motor. Chapter VIII of an earlier work by the author[3] went into greater detail on this, as well as on other lines of such motors and their speed controllers which were then in greater vogue than now. Pole-changing split-phase motors, tapped-winding permanent-split capacitor motors, and tapped-winding shaded-pole motors have replaced many of them.

7-13. External Impedance Control.

If an external impedance, which can be either a resistor or a reactor, is connected in series with the main winding, the voltage impressed across the main winding itself is thereby reduced, reducing the flux, thereby increasing the slip when loaded, and reducing the operating speed. The effect is not exactly the same as reducing the voltage by means of an autotransformer, for in the latter case, the voltage impresssed across the winding does not change with load, whereas the series impedance causes a drop in voltage proportional to the load current drawn. Hence, when an external impedance is used, the low-speed connection is likely to be not quite so stable as it would be if a transformer were used. When the speed reduction is obtained by a connection change, the effect is comparable to the use of a transformer. However, the external impedance can be added later to almost any high-slip permanent-split capacitor motor to obtain speed reduction when the motor is driving a shaft-mounted fan. A reactor has the advantage that it has negligible losses in it, whereas a resistor would have substantial losses in it. A connection diagram for a motor with external impedance control is given in Fig. 7-11. It should be noted that the external impedance is connected in series with only the main winding, in order to obtain better stability on the low-speed setting, for reasons discussed above.

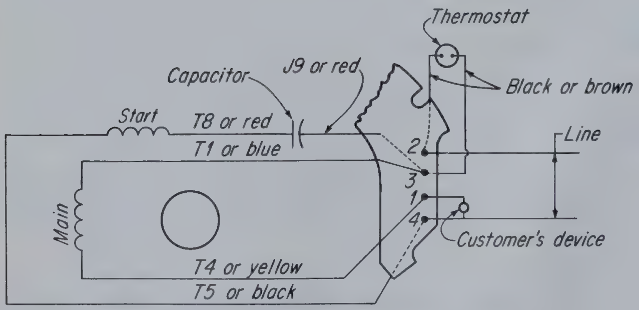
7-14. Three Kinds of Tapped-winding Arrangements.

For shaft-mounted fans and blowers, tapped-winding permanent-split capacitor motors, giving up to as many as five different speeds, are now available. Such motors effect speed control by flux control, accomplished primarily by changing the impressed volts per turn on the main winding. In the motors discussed in Art. 7-8, the volts per turn were changed by changing the impressed voltage and a general discussion of the results so obtained was given in Arts. 7-9 to 7-11. Tapped-winding motors vary the volts per turn, and hence the flux, slip, and speed, by changing the number of series conductors in the main phase.

A two-speed tapped-winding motor has three windings, which we shall here call the *main winding, intermediate winding,* and *auxiliary winding.* The main and intermediate windings are wound in space phase with one another, i.e., one is wound on top of the other, in the same slots, with the same distribution but not necessarily with the same number of turns or wire size. In principle, they are similar to the dual-voltage windings used in dual-voltage capacitor-start motors, discussed in Arts. 5-16 to 5-18, except that the two sections of the tapped-winding motor are seldom, if ever, identical. The third winding is the auxiliary winding which is displaced 90 electrical degrees from the main and intermediate windings. The rotor, of course, is of squirrel-cage construction and no starting switch is used. The intermediate winding is also variously identified as an *extra main,* a *booster,* or a *low-speed winding.* For more than two speeds, the intermediate winding itself is tapped. There are three recognizable systems for connecting the three windings and capacitor, and as these give somewhat different conditions, they will be discussed separately.

(1) *Auxiliary Phase across Low-speed Taps (L Connection).* Figure 7-12 shows one arrangement, identified as the L connection. Consider

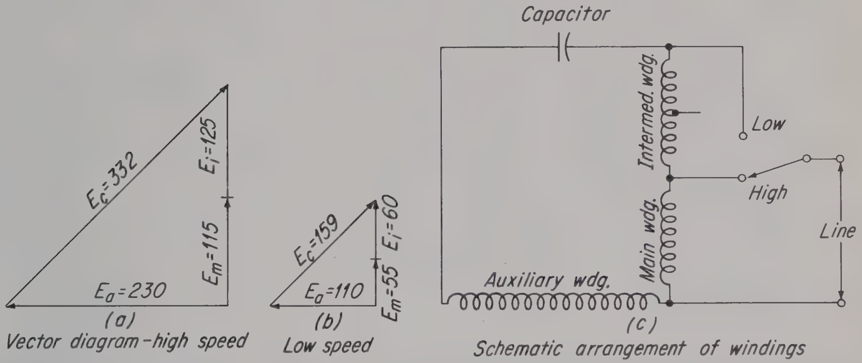
Either rotation-single voltage
Type KCP with thermal protector



*Note *1: To reverse rotation, interchange blue (or T1) and yellow (or T4) leads.*

Fig. 7-11 Motor and line wiring diagram for a reactor-controlled adjustable-speed single-voltage permanent-split capacitor motor with terminal board. (*Customer's device* is the reactor controller, which can be adjustable.) (*General Electric Company.*)

first the high-speed connection, with 115 volts impressed across the main winding. Let us assume, for purposes of discussion, that the number of turns in the intermediate winding is such as to give a voltage of 125, and that in the auxiliary winding to give 230 volts, when 115 volts is impressed across the main and the motor is operating at full speed. Now the voltages on the main and intermediate windings are in time phase because the windings are in space phase, and the voltage across the auxiliary winding is 90° out of phase. Figure 7-12*a* represents this condition; by drawing the vector diagram to scale, or by calculation, it can be found that the voltage across the capacitor element itself is 332 volts. On the low-speed connection, the 115 volts is impressed across the main and intermediate windings in series with one another; hence the voltages on all three windings are reduced in the ratio of 115:240 (240 = 115 + 125). The resultant vector diagram is given in Fig. 7-12*b*.



(a) Vector diagram-high speed (b) Low speed (c) Schematic arrangement of windings

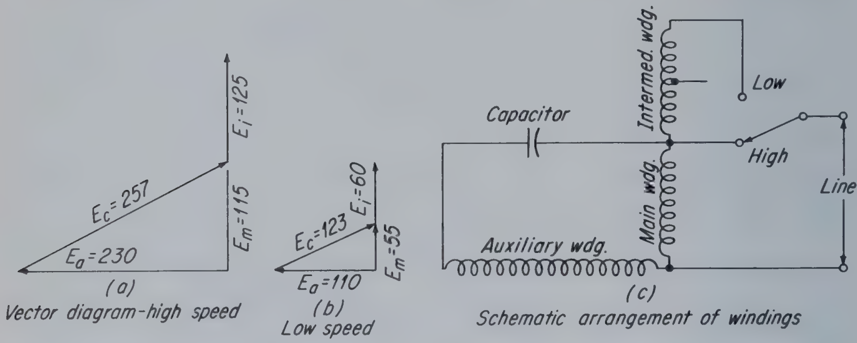
Fig. 7-12 Schematic arrangement of a two-speed tapped-winding capacitor motor with auxiliary phase connected across the low-speed taps. (L connection.)

(2) *Auxiliary Phase across High-speed Taps (T Connection).* Figure 7-13 shows the auxiliary phase connected across the high-speed taps. This arrangement is called the T connection for convenience, because the auxiliary phase was connected to the point between the main and intermediate windings, forming a T (in this figure, on its side). Assuming the same windings as in Fig. 7-12, the vector diagrams for the high- and low-speed connections were constructed in (*a*) and (*b*) of Fig. 7-13. It should be noted that the capacitor voltages are substantially lower than in Fig. 7-12.

(3) *Auxiliary Phase across the Line.* In Fig. 7-14, the same windings used in the previous two figures are shown, but the capacitor phase is connected across the line. The corresponding vector diagrams, (*a*)

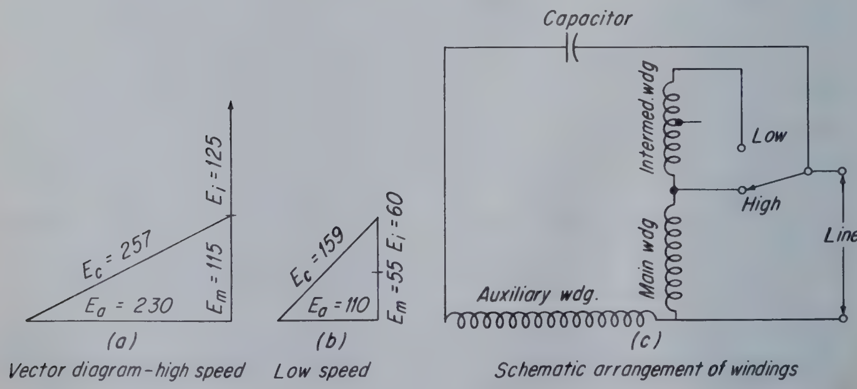
and (*b*), show the approximate capacitor voltages encountered for the two speeds.

Discussion of Significance of the Three Arrangements. Motors can be designed and built to operate successfully, using any one of the three arrangements just discussed, and the motor specifier need not concern himself with which arrangement is used. However, in service, the motor must be connected for the system for which it is designed, meaning that the manufacturer's instructions need to be followed carefully. As an example of what could happen, suppose a motor were designed to be connected per the T connection, but in service, it was inadvertently connected for the L connection, and let us further suppose that the turns ratios were the same as in the three figures. Now, reconnecting



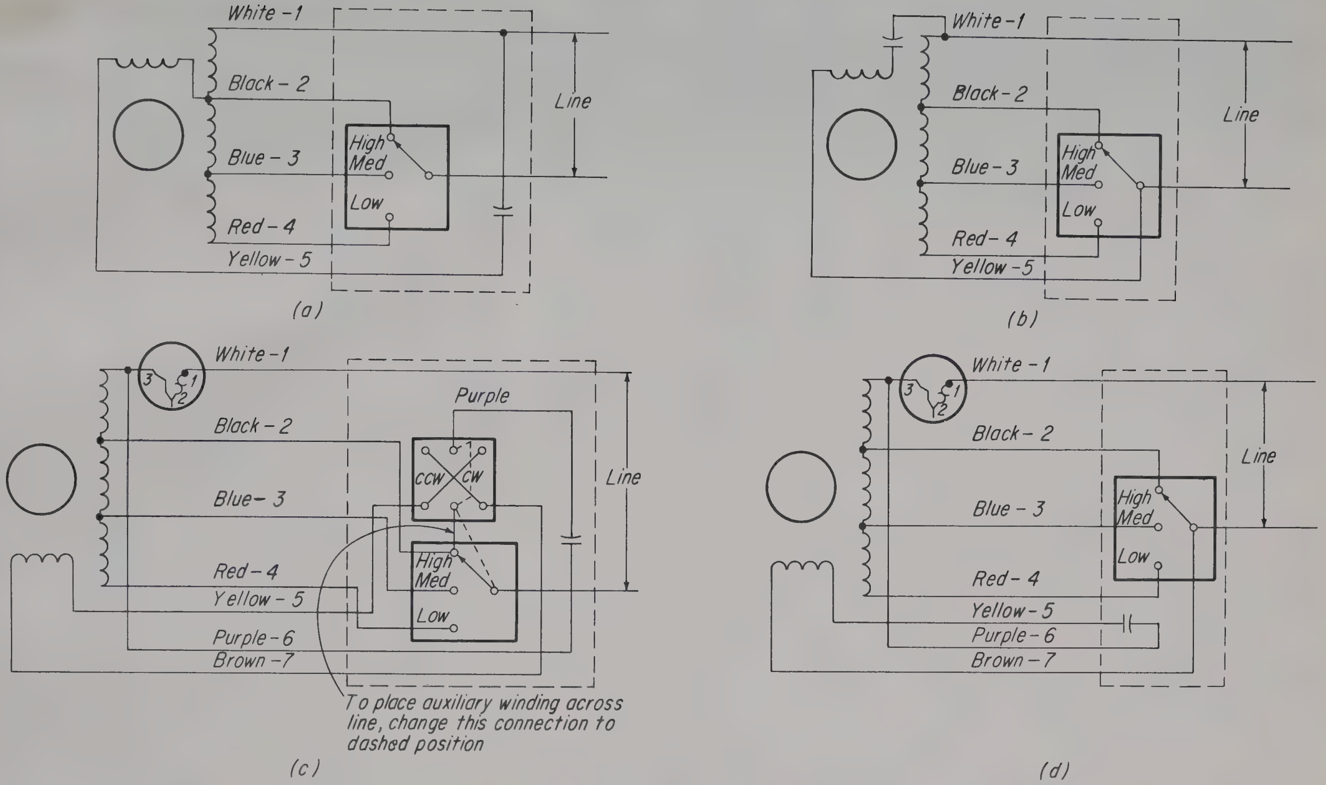
(*a*) Vector diagram-high speed (*b*) Low speed (*c*) Schematic arrangement of windings

Fig. 7-13 Schematic arrangement of a two-speed tapped-winding capacitor motor with auxiliary phase connected across the high-speed taps. (T connection.)



(*a*) Vector diagram-high speed (*b*) Low speed (*c*) Schematic arrangement of windings

Fig. 7-14 Schematic arrangement of a two-speed tapped-winding capacitor motor with auxiliary phase connected across the line.



To place auxiliary winding across line, change this connection to dashed position

Note I — Parts shown within the dotted area are not a part of the motor. They are included in the diagram to clarify the motor terminal connections made by the user.

Note II — For two-speed motors, omit terminal 4 (red) and the corresponding winding.

Fig. 7-15 Wiring and line connection diagrams for three-speed tapped-winding permanent-split capacitor motors for shaft-mounted fans and blowers. (See Art. 7-15.) (*From NEMA* 1.)

from T to L would raise the capacitor voltage from 257 to 332 volts, an increase of 29 percent. This might or might not be above the safe voltage rating of the capacitor, and might or might not damage the capacitor. A more serious effect would be to increase the capacitive volt-amperes by 66 percent or more ($1.29^2 = 1.66$); this increase in capacitive volt-amperes would likely cause any one or all of the following effects: increased operating speed, losses, temperature rise, current and power consumption, and inability to obtain normal speed reduction on the low-speed connection. Conversely, if the motor were designed to be operated on the L connection and if it were connected in service for the T connection, the motor would operate at too slow a speed on both connections, but especially on the low-speed one, and might not even start at all on the low-speed connection.

Hence, it is most important that the right connection diagram be used when connecting the motor to the line.

Another important point is that, when the auxiliary phase is connected across the line, the external line switch needs an extra pole in order to disconnect the auxiliary phase from the line; with the other two arrangements, as shown in Figs. 7-12 and 7-13, the motor windings are both deenergized when the single-pole double-throw switch is in the neutral position.

More than two speeds are obtained by bringing extra taps out from the intermediate winding. In Figs. 7-12 to 7-14, a single tap from the intermediate winding is shown; this would give a third speed, if used. More taps may be added.

7-15. Connection Diagrams for Tapped-winding Motors. Many arrangements and modifications are variously used.

NEMA diagrams for three-speed motors are given in Fig. 7-15.

(*a*) uses the T connection and is nonreversible.

(*b*) puts auxiliary phase across the line, nonreversible.

(*c*) solid lines show T connection, reversible, and dotted line shows auxiliary across line, reversible; both are thermally protected.

(*d*) puts auxiliary phase across line, nonreversible, thermally protected.

A *Westinghouse* diagram is given in Fig. 7-16 for a four-speed nonreversible motor.

A *General Electric* diagram is given in Fig. 7-17 for a five-speed nonreversible (set rotation) motor.

A *Westinghouse* diagram is given in Fig. 7-18 for a five-speed nonreversible motor.

Stator Connection Diagrams. It is obvious that the number of possible stator connection diagrams for tapped-winding capacitor motors is legion—certainly too many to include here. For two-speed motors, the stator connection diagrams could be essentially the same as for dual-voltage capacitor-start motors, as shown in Fig. 5-15, for example, except for tagging of the leads. When more than two speeds are needed, it generally is not feasible or practicable to use several layers. Figure 7-19 shows the stator connection diagram for a six-pole five-speed motor, by way of illustration; it is for the motor of Fig. 7-18. Note that this stator connection diagram shows two booster (intermediate) windings, both of which are tapped at an intermediate point, not at the center of either winding.

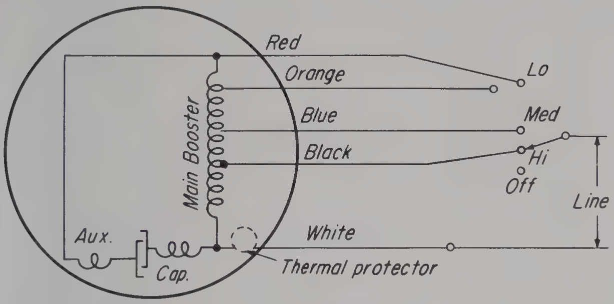


Fig. 7-16 Motor and line wiring diagram for a four-speed single-voltage nonreversible tapped-winding capacitor motor. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

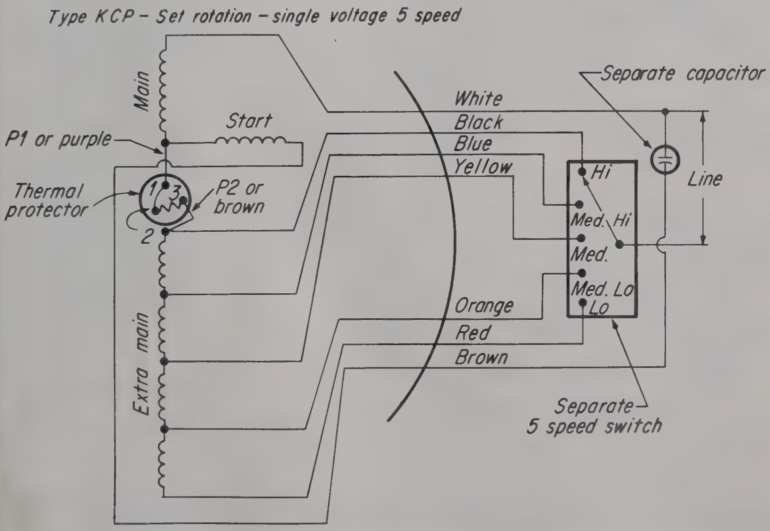


Fig. 7-17 Motor and line connection diagram for a five-speed single-voltage nonreversible (set-rotation) tapped-winding capacitor motor with thermal protection. (*General Electric Company.*)

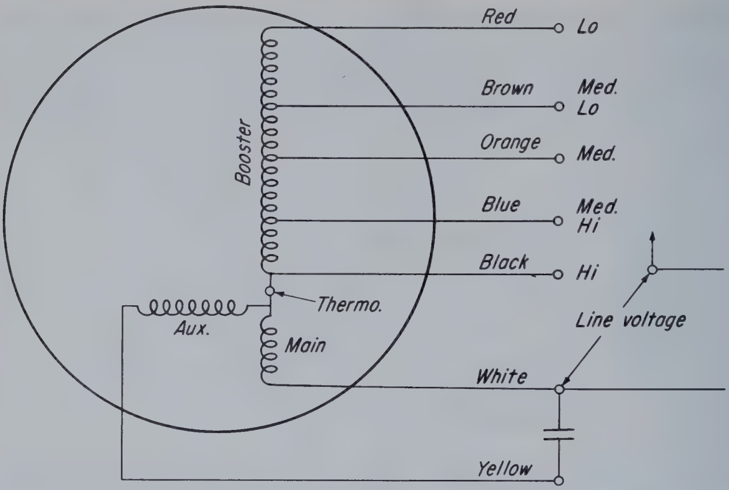


Fig. 7-18 Motor and line connection diagram for a five-speed single-voltage nonreversible tapped-winding capacitor motor with thermal protection. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

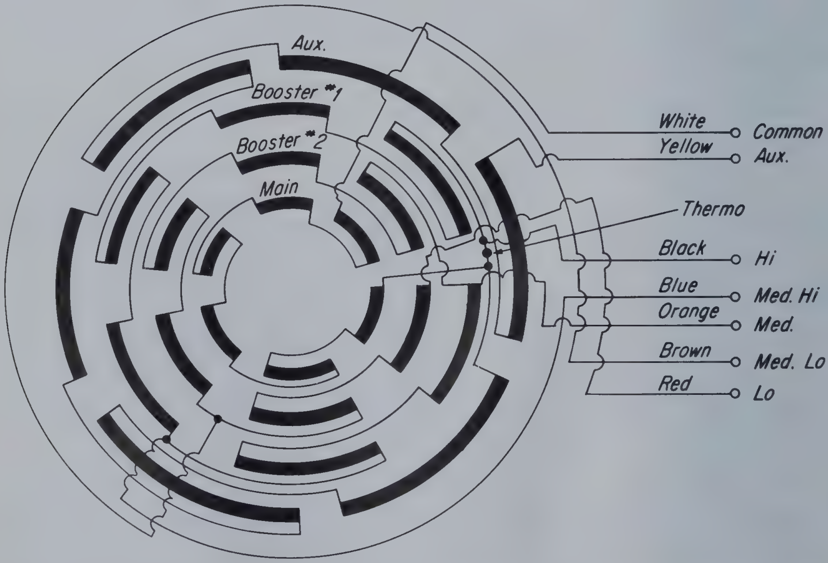


Fig. 7-19 Stator connection diagram for a six-pole five-speed motor, wired and connected per Fig. 7-18; rotation is counterclockwise. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

MISCELLANEOUS

7-16. Special Mechanical Features of Fan Motors. Motors used on unit heaters and other propeller fan applications almost invariably have the fan draw air over the motor. Since a large volume of air is drawn over the motor, it has been the practice of the industry to use totally enclosed motors, and to depend upon the air for cooling; hence such motors are commonly rated on a totally enclosed air-over basis. Since the fan is mounted on the shaft, provision has to be made to accommodate the axial thrust of the fan. The rear-end oiler is often extended so that oil may be more readily added without interference from the fan. Capacitors may be mounted on the front end of the motor, or separately, to keep them out of the air stream and also to make it possible to hold the motor by means of a clamping ring around the body of the motor. Through bolts may extend out the rear end of the motor; these extended bolts may be used either for mounting the motor itself or for attaching a fan guard.

When the motor drives a shaft-mounted blower and does not draw the air over the motor, it is often made of open construction.

7-17. Reversing, High-torque, Intermittent-rated Motors. The permanent-split capacitor motor lends itself ideally to high-torque reversing duty, intermittently rated. Essentially such motors have a two-phase winding or equivalent and are designed for high locked-rotor torque. The speed-torque characteristic is similar to the "starting connection" curve of Fig. 6-4, except that the breakdown torque occurs down closer to standstill. Such a motor is usually connected as shown in Fig. 7-3. It can be reversed instantly, and requires only a single-pole double-throw switch; neither winding is energized in the off position of this switch. The control could hardly be simpler!

7-18. Rewinding or Reconnecting. In general, rewinding or reconnecting, except to duplicate the original windings, is to be discouraged unless the specification for the new winding is obtained from the motor manufacturer.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Trickey, P. H.: Performance Calculations on Tapped-winding Capacitor Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 62, 1943, pp. 1–3.
2. Veinott, C. G.: "Theory and Design of Small Induction Motors," Art. 8-9, p. 163, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1959. (Out of print, but available from University Microfilms, Inc., Div. of Xerox, Ann Arbor, Mich.)
3. ———: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.

Chapter 8

Repulsion-start Induction Motors

The repulsion-start induction motor is, perhaps, the first type of single-phase induction motor that gained widespread commercial acceptance. Invented by Dr. Englebert Arnold, it was used commercially in this country as early as 1896. Although widely popular until the middle thirties, it has now been almost entirely supplanted for new applications by capacitor-start and two-value capacitor motors. However, there are many thousands of this type of motor still operating satisfactorily.

8-1. Repulsion-start Induction Motor Defined. The repulsion-start induction motor is sometimes erroneously called a *repulsion-induction motor* or simply a *repulsion motor*. The latter-mentioned types are defined in Arts. 9-1 and 9-2. A repulsion-start induction motor may be defined as a single-phase motor having the same windings as a repulsion motor, but at a predetermined speed the rotor winding is short-circuited or otherwise connected to give the equivalent of a squirrel-cage winding. This type of motor starts as a repulsion motor but operates as an induction motor with constant-speed characteristics.

8-2. Application and Torque Characteristics. Repulsion-start motors were used on such applications as pumps, compressors, and miscellaneous general-purpose applications wherever high locked-rotor torque and low locked-rotor current were desired. A representative speed-torque curve is given in Fig. 8-1. For most applications, the repulsion-start motor has been replaced largely by the capacitor-start motor. The principal advantage of the repulsion-start motor over the capacitor-start motor is that it can develop more locked-rotor torque with much less locked-rotor current; this feature has shown the repulsion-start motor to great advantage in farm applications where the motor is frequently called upon to operate at the end of a long line in which there is substantial voltage drop. However, repulsion-start motors are becoming more difficult to obtain, and more costly.

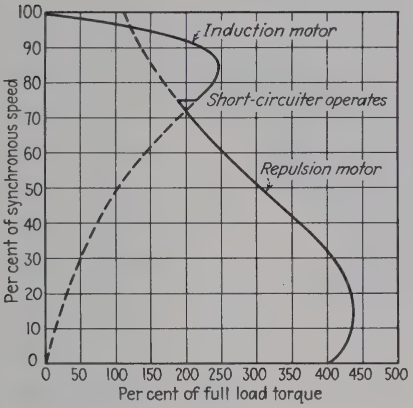


Fig. 8-1 Speed-torque curve of a repulsion-start induction motor.

8-3. Essential Parts of the Repulsion-start Induction Motor. Figure 8-2 is a cutaway view of a repulsion-start induction motor showing clearly the essential and necessary parts:

a. The *stator winding* usually is a single, concentric winding of the type discussed in Chap. 3 and may be hand-wound or mold-wound with progressive or concentric coils. Because of the fact that there is only one winding, not all the stator slots may be wound. Some manufacturers use the empty slots for ventilating ducts to keep the motor cool. Two empty slots are visible in this photograph. The stator core is laminated because it is excited with alternating current.

b. The *armature,* or rotor, is slotted and wound just as if it were a dc armature. The core is, of course, laminated.

c, d. A *commutator* and *brushes* are necessary with a repulsion type of winding just as with a dc winding.

e. The brushes are mounted on a *rocker ring,* or *brush yoke,* which can be shifted circumferentially to reverse the direction of rotation.

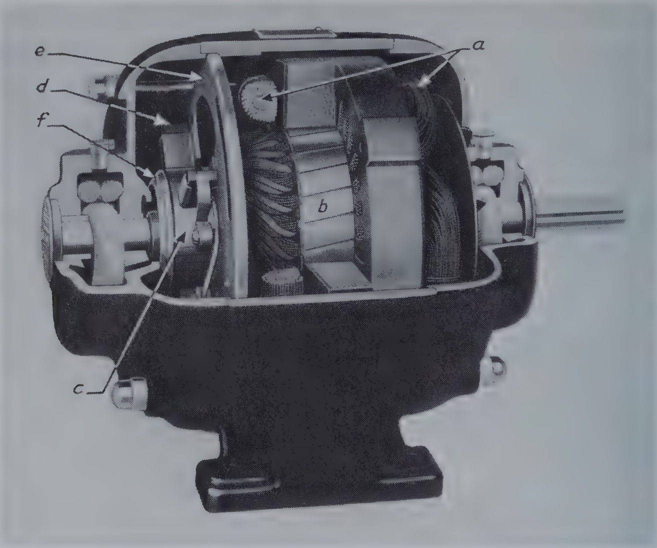


Fig. 8-2 A cutaway view of a repulsion-start induction motor. (*a*) Stator winding. (*b*) Armature. (*c*) Commutator. (*d*) Brushes. (*e*) Rocker ring. (*f*) Short-circuiter. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

f. A centrifugally operated *short-circuiter* short-circuits all the commutator bars, making the armature, in effect, a squirrel-cage rotor. This particular short-circuiter is illustrated in Fig. 8-14 and discussed in more detail in Art. 8-17.

The motor just described is a *brush-riding motor* i.e., the brushes ride on the commutator continuously. In a *brush-lifting motor,* the brushes are lifted away from the commutator except during the starting period; such a motor is illustrated in Fig. 8-16.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

8-4. Repulsion Motor Similar to Series Motor. The torque characteristics of a repulsion motor are quite similar to those of a series motor, and some idea of its principle of operation can be gained by comparing it with a series motor. A simple series motor is represented in Fig. 8-3; it consists of a field and an armature connected in series. The current flowing through the field winding sets up a magnetic field in the horizontal axis. The brushes and armature winding are arranged so that current passing from one brush to the other flows through half of the armature conductors in one direction and through the other half in the other direction; these directions of current flow are indicated by the dots and plus signs in the figure. On one side of the armature an upward force is produced and on the other side a downward force,* the net result being torque or turning effort. (How torque is developed is elaborated upon in slightly more detail in Art. 13-3.)

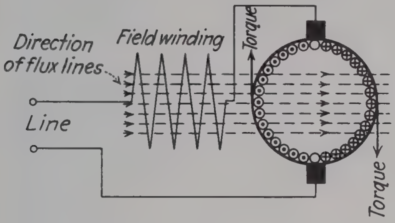


Fig. 8-3 A simple series motor.

A repulsion motor is represented in Fig. 8-4. Like the series motor of Fig. 8-3, it has an armature, brushes, and a *field winding,* but the brushes are short-circuited upon themselves, and there is a second, or *inducing,* winding, displaced 90 electrical degrees from the field winding. This inducing winding induces current to flow in the armature in the same predetermined paths as in the series motor, and thus torque is produced just as in the series motor. The inducing winding acts as the primary of a two-winding transformer, the secondary of which is the short-circuited armature winding. Therefore, since the field winding and the inducing winding are both in series, it follows that the torque characteristics of the repulsion motor of Fig. 8-4 must be similar to the torque characteristics of the series motor of Fig. 8-3. To emphasize the similarity further—in the series motor, the armature current

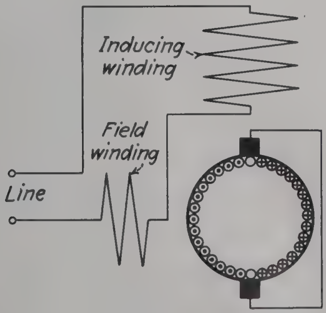


Fig. 8-4 A simple repulsion motor with two stator windings.

---

* There is a left-hand rule for *motor* action similar to the Fleming right-hand rule for generator action explained in the footnote to Art. 2-10. *Extend the thumb and first and second fingers of the left hand mutually perpendicular. The thumb points in the direction of motion if the first finger is pointed in the direction of the lines of force and if the second finger points in the direction of current flow.*

is equal to the field current at all times because the armature and field are in series; in the repulsion motor, the armature current is proportional to the current in the inducing winding, and the latter is in series with the field.

The motor of Fig. 8-4 has two stator windings displaced 90 electrical degrees from each other. Neither winding can induce a voltage in the other winding by transformer action, and only the inducing winding can induce a voltage in the armature by transformer action. The series motor of Fig. 8-3 can be reversed by interchanging either the field leads or the armature leads; the repulsion motor of Fig. 8-4 can likewise be reversed by interchanging either the field-winding leads or the inducing-winding leads.

8-5. The Simple Repulsion Motor. The simple repulsion motor is illustrated in Fig. 8-5. It has but a single stator winding, and the brush axis is shifted from the axis of this winding. Following the well-known process of dividing a vector into two components, the field set up by the stator winding can be resolved into two perpendicular component fields, one along the brush axis, the other perpendicular to it; the process of resolving the field into these two components is shown in vector form in Fig. 8-5*b*. Thus, a single winding with a shifted brush axis as shown in Fig. 8-5 is equivalent to two windings displaced 90 electrical degrees. (This point is developed more fully and from a different viewpoint in Art. 12-6.) Therefore, the simple repulsion motor of Fig. 8-5 is similar in characteristics to the repulsion motor of Fig. 8-4, which in turn is similar to the series motor of Fig. 8-3.

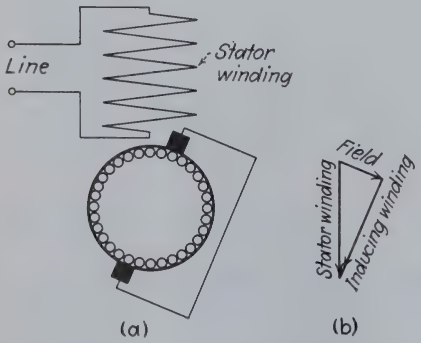


Fig. 8-5 A simple repulsion motor with one stator winding and shifted brushes.

This type of repulsion motor cannot be reversed by changing connections but must be reversed by shifting the brushes.

8-6. Hard Neutral and Soft Neutral. To determine experimentally how the locked-rotor torque and stator current of a repulsion motor vary with brush position, some tests were taken on a ⅙-hp 110/220-volt 60-hz repulsion-start induction motor. Instead of measuring locked-rotor torque—which varies considerably with rotor position—the torque and current were measured at 50 rpm, i.e., with the rotor barely turning over; readings of current and torque were taken at a number of different brush positions. The results of these tests are plotted in Fig. 8-6.

In Fig. 8-6, a brush position of zero degrees indicates that the brushes were set for the position of maximum induced voltage and current in the armature circuit—this position would correspond to Fig. 8-4 if the field winding were left out of the circuit. In this position the torque is zero. This point is called *hard neutral.* Ninety electrical degrees from hard neutral is another point of zero torque, known as *soft neutral.*

At this point, the relative positions of the brushes and stator winding are the same as in Fig. 8-3, and there is no voltage induced between brushes; hence, no current flows in the armature circuit.

Hard neutral and soft neutral are comparatively easy to distinguish in a practical motor. Hard neutral is very sharply defined—a slight shift in either direction will cause the armature to rotate *in the same direction that the brushes are shifted.* Soft neutral is less sharply defined, and an appreciable shift is frequently necessary to cause the armature to rotate at all and then the armature will revolve *against the direction of brush shift.* These opposite characteristics make it simple to distinguish between the two neutral positions.

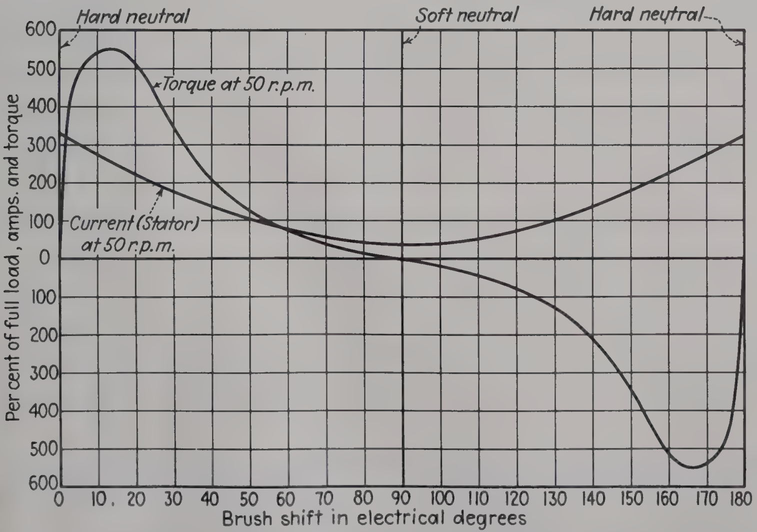


Fig. 8-6 The effect of brush position on the torque and stator current of a repulsion-start motor at 50 rpm.

Although there is current in the armature at hard neutral, the position of the brushes is such that no torque can be developed; at soft neutral, the brushes are in the best possible position, but there is no current flowing. At an intermediate position, current is induced, and torque is developed.

Commercial repulsion-start motors usually operate with the brushes set 15 to 20 electrical degrees from hard neutral.

8-7. Function of the Short-circuiter. The short-circuiter is a device that automatically short-circuits all the bars of the commutator at a predetermined rotor speed. (For construction of short-circuiters, see Art. 8-17.) The effect is the same as if several turns of bare copper wire were suddenly wrapped around the commutator. Since all the armature coils are mutually short-circuited upon each other, the armature then becomes, in effect, a squirrel-cage rotor, and the motor operates like any other single-phase induction motor. When the commutator bars are short-circuited, the brushes become inoperative, and sometimes a mechanism is provided to lift the brushes away from the commutator (see Art. 8-18). With the short-circuiter in the open position, the motor has the speed-torque characteristics of a repulsion motor (shown in Fig. 8-1).

STATOR WINDINGS

8-8. Dual-voltage Four-lead Motors. A stator connection diagram for a dual-voltage four-pole winding is shown in Fig. 8-7. The motor wiring and line connection for this stator connection diagram are given in Fig. 8-8. Some manufacturers tag the leads as shown, some color them as shown, and others merely bring out four leads clamped in the relative positions shown but otherwise unidentified. NEMA connections are shown in Fig. 8-9; these differ from Fig. 8-8.

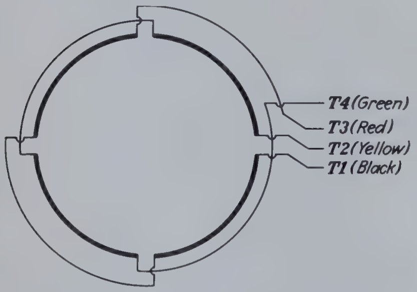
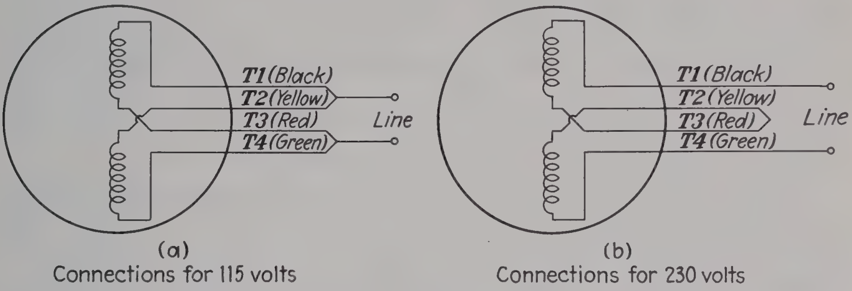


Fig. 8-7 Stator connection diagram for a dual-voltage motor of the repulsion type, four poles.

In this stator connection diagram, it will be noted that the stator winding is divided into two sections: one section contains both pole groups of one magnetic polarity, and the other section both pole groups of the opposite magnetic polarity.

8-9. Rewinding for a Different Voltage. Of the various types of single-phase motors so far discussed, the repulsion-start induction motor offers the fewest complications when it becomes a question of rewinding for a different operating voltage. A 115/230-volt motor can be rewound for 230/460 volts by using twice as many turns of wire three sizes smaller used in the original stator winding.



(a)
Connections for 115 volts

(b)
Connections for 230 volts

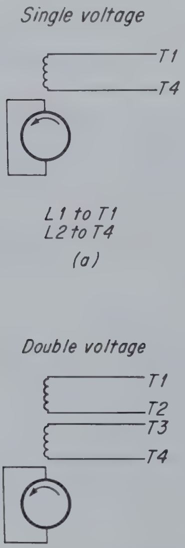
Fig. 8-8 Wiring and line connection diagrams for a dual-voltage motor of the repulsion type.

The General Rule. To rewind to obtain the same performance on a circuit of a voltage higher or lower than rated voltage, rewind the stator with more or fewer turns in direct proportion to the increase or decrease in voltage. In general, use the largest size of wire that will permit the correct number of turns to be put into the slots. The armature winding should not be changed.

8-10. Rewinding for Different Torques. The remarks in Art. 4-34 regarding changing the main winding of a split-phase motor to change the torques all apply directly to changing the stator winding of a repulsion-start induction motor, and like precautions should be taken to see that the rewound motor does not overheat. If the stator-winding turns are changed not more than 10 or 15 percent, it will not be necessary to rewind the armature.

8-11. Rewinding for a Different Frequency or Number of Poles. A 50-hz repulsion-start motor can be safely operated on 60 hz without rewinding, but the torques will probably be inadequate. The breakdown torque, in terms of full-load torque, may be as much as 15 percent low; but the pull-up torque will be even more reduced, for it is reduced both by the decrease in breakdown torque and by the relatively slower operating speed of the short-circuiter. If the short-circuiter operated at 75 percent speed on 50 hz, it would operate at 62 percent speed on 60 hz because the change in frequency affects the full-load speed; if the operating speed of the short-circuiter of the motor of Fig. 8-1 is reduced from 75 to 62 percent speed, the pull-up torque is reduced from 185 to 150 percent, or a 20 percent reduction in pull-up torque due to the use of a slow-speed short-circuiter. Therefore, when a 50-hz motor is changed for operation on a 60-hz circuit, a 60-hz short-circuiter should be obtained; it may then be further necessary to rewind the stator, using 5 to 10 percent fewer turns; whether or not rewinding the stator is necessary will depend largely upon the severity of the torque requirements of the load. It should not be necessary to rewind the armature.

A 60-hz motor can seldom be operated successfully on a 50-hz circuit, for the operating speed of the short-circuiter will be too high. The proper 50-hz short-circuiter must be used, and it may or may not be necessary to rewind the stator. Rewinding the stator with 5 to 10 percent more turns of wire of the same size as the 60-hz winding will improve the 50-hz performance somewhat.



	L1	L2	Join
Higher nameplate voltage	T1	T4	T2,T3
Lower nameplate voltage	T1,T3	T2,T4	...

(b)

Fig. 8-9 Wiring and line connection diagrams for brush-shifting repulsion-type motors, single-voltage and dual-voltage. (*From NEMA.*)

Rewinding for a different number of poles is not to be recommended for a number of reasons:

1. The armature would have to be rewound, and it would be difficult to formulate any general rules for such a change. Moreover, the number of slots and commutator bars might not be suitable, particularly when rewinding for a greater number of poles.
2. The spacing of the brushes would have to be altered, which means a new rocker ring or brush yoke.
3. If cartridge-type brush holders are used, changing the spacing is not feasible.
4. A new short-circuiter would have to be obtained.

ARMATURE WINDINGS

Space does not permit even a modest treatment of the subject of armature windings here. Considerably more information on this subject can be found in an earlier work.[7,*] The most common types of windings are *lap* and *wave* windings.

8-12. Lap Windings. A simplex lap winding is illustrated in Fig. 8-10. How the coil connections are brought out to the commutator is illustrated for a number of cases in Fig. 8-11. With such coil connections, the brushes are physically located opposite the centers of the stator coils

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

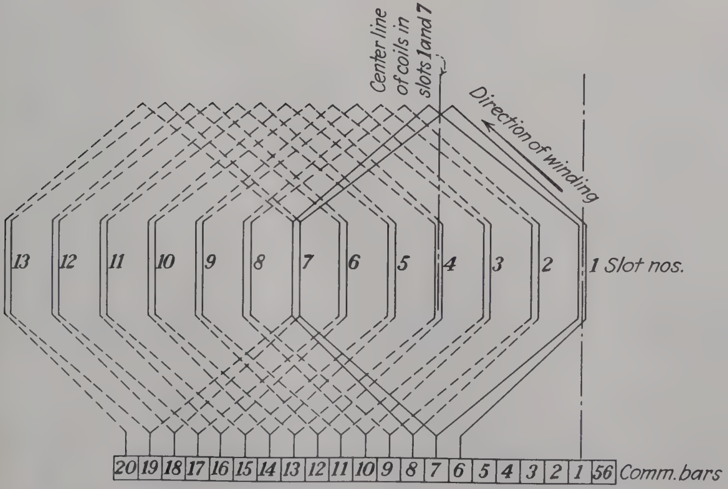


Fig. 8-10 A simplex lap winding. Four poles, 28 slots, 1 and 7 throw, 56 bars, progressive.

for soft neutral. Ordinarily a lap winding requires as many brush arms as there are poles, unless all the commutator bars are cross-connected. (Cross connections are between bars 180 electrical degrees apart.) If all bars are cross-connected, and if the brushes are large enough, only two brush arms are required regardless of the number of poles. Brushes are, of course, spaced 180 electrical degrees apart. It is a good idea to cross-connect the bars, even if one brush per pole is used, for then any two adjacent brushes can stick in their holders without serious loss of torque. But if the armature is not cross-connected, and if a single brush sticks, the motor is likely to fail to start. A lap winding has as many circuits as there are poles.

8-13. Wave Windings. A simplex wave winding is illustrated in Fig. 8-12. Often one or more dead coils are needed; one is shown in the illustrative example. A simplex wave winding has but two circuits, regardless of the number of poles, and only two brush arms are needed. How to lay out the coil connections of a wave winding to the commutator is illustrated in Fig. 8-13.

8-14. Testing an Armature. Short-circuited coils usually can be detected by means of a growler. The armature is placed in the growler and rotated slowly, while an iron knife, or other light piece of iron

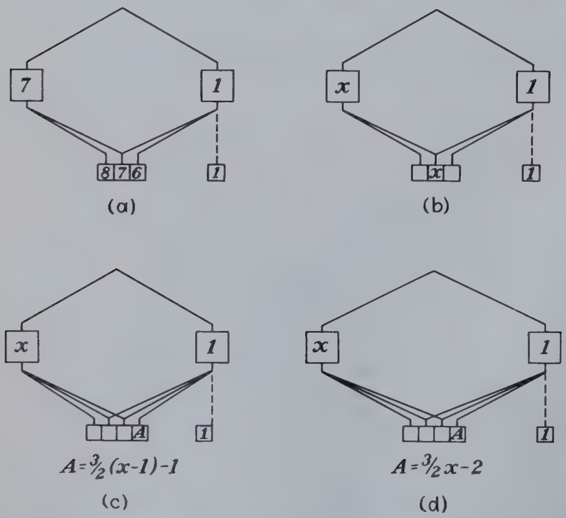


Fig. 8-11 Armature connection diagrams for lap windings. (*a*) For the winding of Fig. 8-10. (*b*) For any simplex winding with two bars per slot having a coil throw of 1 and x. (*c*) For any simplex winding with three bars per slot, having an even coil throw (x is an odd number). (*d*) For any simplex winding with three bars per slot, having an odd coil throw (x is an even number).

or steel, is held over the top of the slowly revolving armature. If a coil is short-circuited, the two slots in which the two sides of the short-circuited coil lie will attract the keeper. Open-circuited coils can also be found by using the growler. While the armature is slowly being rotated by hand, every pair of adjacent bars in the commutator can be successively short-circuited by means of a knife, kept in approximately the same position while the armature is rotated. The same amount of sparking should occur between every pair of bars; if a coil is open, no spark at all can be obtained.

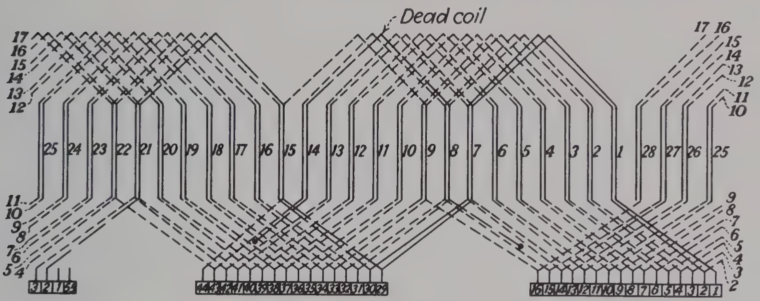
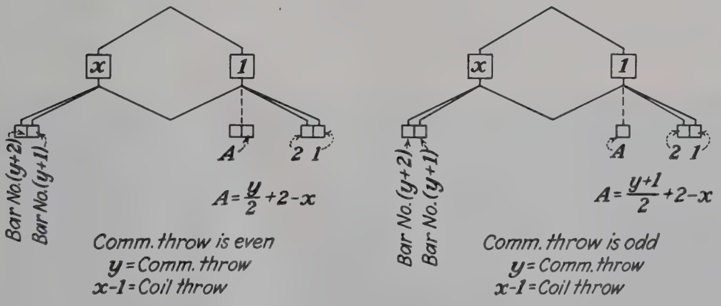


Fig. 8-12 A simplex wave winding, four poles, 28 slots, 1 and 7 throw, 55 bars, one dead coil, commutator throw 1 and 29.



(a) (b)

Fig. 8-13 Armature connection diagrams for simplex wave windings with two coils (four coil sides) per slot. The winding may be full pitch or chorded.

CONSTRUCTIONAL FEATURES AND CARE

8-15. Mark Position of End Shield. Before any repulsion-start motor is dismantled for any purpose whatsoever, the position of the front (commutator) end shield with respect to the stator or to the frame must be marked carefully and positively. An excellent way to mark the position is by means of a cold chisel, a mark being made simultaneously on the frame and on the end shield. Often the manufacturer makes this mark himself. When the motor is reassembled, care should be taken to line up these marks exactly, for a serious loss in repulsion torque may be encountered if the brushes are not set correctly.

8-16. Commutators.

(1) *Radial and Axial Types.* There are two principal types of commutator construction, *radial* and *axial.* The *radial* type is illustrated in Fig. 8-16; it presents its wearing surface in a plane perpendicular to the shaft, and the working surfaces of the commutator bars are wedge-shaped. This type of commutator is used principally in brush-lifting motors. The commutator in Fig. 8-14 is an *axial* commutator; it is cylindrically shaped, and the brushes ride on the outside of the cylindrical surface. This type of commutator is used more commonly on brush-riding motors.

(2) *Undercutting.* It is common practice to cut the mica away about $\frac{1}{32}$ in. below the working surface of the commutator by means of a small high-speed saw. The principal purpose of this undercutting is to eliminate high mica. *High mica* is a result of the wearing away of the commutator bars faster than the mica between bars. If the brushes carry no current, the mica and copper wear equally, but when current passes from commutator to brush, or vice versa, the copper frequently wears away faster than the mica. Undercutting generally is to be recommended to improve the life of the brushes and commutator; it may possibly minimize the radio interference during the starting period

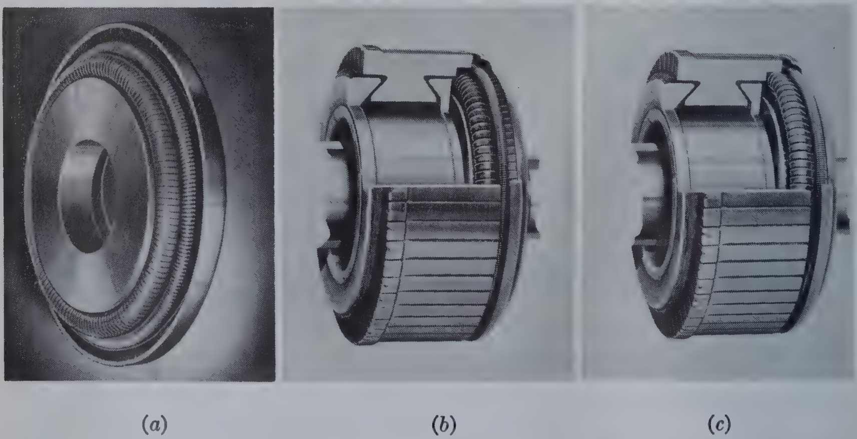

(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 8-14 A Master short-circuiter. (*a*) The device itself. (*b*) Position when the motor is at rest. (*c*) Position when the motor is running. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

although it tends to make the brushes noisier. If the commutator was originally undercut by the manufacturer, the wisest policy for the serviceman is to keep it undercut.

8-17. Short-circuiters. A short-circuiter is a mechanism that short-circuits the armature coils or otherwise connects them to give the equivalent of a squirrel-cage winding. Types and designs vary somewhat; three specific types are described in the following paragraphs.

(1) *Reliance (Master).* A Master short-circuiter is illustrated in Fig. 8-14. The device itself is shown in Fig. 8-14*a*; there are a large number of copper segments which are restrained from moving radially by means of a garter spring. In Fig. 8-14*b*, the position of these short-circuiting segments is shown when the motor is at rest. In Fig. 8-14*c*, the position of these segments when the motor is running is shown; centrifugal force has caused the segments to move in a radial direction against the commutator, short-circuiting the latter. Centrifugal force holds the short-circuiting segments against the commutator which is grooved to accomplish this result; the groove also limits the outer travel of the segments.

(2) *Westinghouse.* The action of a Westinghouse short-circuiter device can be understood by referring to Fig. 8-15. When the rotor begins to turn, the slugs tend to fly outward, bearing against the guide ring at the point C. At a predetermined speed, the centrifugal force acting on end portions B of the slugs overcomes the resistance of the garter spring, and the point C moves forward into contact with the end of the commutator, which is machined to a smooth surface. The slugs pivot about A. After B has moved out a short distance, the garter spring moves in, and the balance of the travel is snappy in action because the lever arm of the garter spring which restrains the movement is less after the spring has moved in toward the commutator.

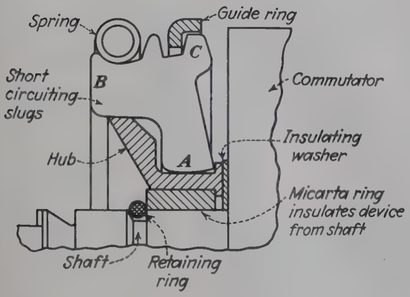


Fig. 8-15 Sectional drawing of a slug-type short-circuiter. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

(3) *Wagner.* A somewhat different type of short-circuiter is shown in Fig. 8-16. The commutator is of the radial type. Between the com-

mutator and armature laminations is a short-circuiter ring. Inside the short-circuiting ring is carried a *necklace* of copper segments on a *spring barrel.* During the starting period, the short-circuiting necklace is not in contact with the commutator bars, the *governor spring* holding the spring barrel in the position shown. When the motor reaches a predetermined speed, the *governor weights* actuate the *push rods,* forcing the spring barrel forward until the short-circuiting necklace connects the commutator bars and the short-circuiting ring, thus short-circuiting all the commutator bars and making the motor operate as an induction motor.

8-18. Brush-lifting Mechanism. The brush-lifting mechanism, if used, is usually made in conjunction with the short-circuiting device, as illustrated in Fig. 8-16. As pointed out in the preceding paragraph, the governor weights actuate the push rods frontward, forcing the spring barrel forward, which moves the brush holder forward, "lifting" the brushes away from the commutator.

8-19. Brush-holder Mechanisms. The majority of repulsion-start motors are designed to be reversed by shifting the position of the brushes, and the brush holders are designed with that end in view. Also, provi-

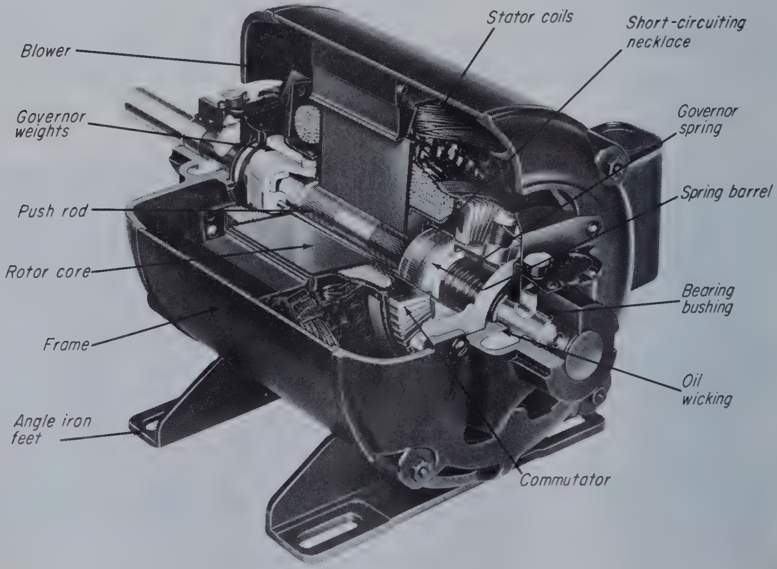


Fig. 8-16 Cutaway view of a repulsion-start motor, using a radial commutator and a brush-lifting mechanism. (*Wagner Electric Corporation.*)

sion has to be made to short-circuit the brushes upon each other. One popular type of construction uses a rocker ring.

In the rocker-ring type of construction, which resembles in principle the rocker rings used in large dc machines, brush holders are mounted on an adjustable ring or circular plate. This rocker ring is referred to under various names, including *brush-holder plate, brush plate, brush ring,* and *brush-carrier ring;* NEMA uses the term *brush yoke.*

Number of Brushes and Spacing Required

1. For lap-wound armatures, not cross-connected, one per pole
2. For lap-wound cross-connected armatures, two, regardless of number of poles
3. For wave-wound armatures, two, regardless of number of poles

8-20. How to Reverse a Motor Using a Rocker Ring. Motors provided with a rocker ring usually are arranged so that the latter can be moved circumferentially to any position; means are provided for locking this rocker ring in any desired position. Two or three positions of the rocker ring are marked in some manner or other. If there are three positions marked, the central position indicates the location of the brushes for hard neutral; *the brushes must never be left in the neutral position.* If the rocker ring is turned in a clockwise direction to one of the other two positions, the motor will start and run in a clockwise direction; conversely, if turned counterclockwise to the other position, rotation will be counterclockwise. Sometimes only two positions of the rocker ring are marked.

8-21. Checking or Setting Neutral.

(1) *Use Wedge-shaped Brushes.* The neutral position normally is located and set by the manufacturer. If, however, a motor is rewound, or even if it is dismantled and reassembled, it is advisable to check the neutral setting. The greater the number of poles, the more important it is that the neutral be set correctly. The brushes used for this purpose should be shaped in the form of a wedge so that only a line contact can be formed between the brush and commutator; this line of contact should come at the center of the brush. A properly shaped brush is shown in Fig. 8-17.

(2) *Checking Neutral.* Using wedge-shaped brushes in all holders, set the brushes in the central position, and excite the stator, preferably at half voltage; the armature should not rotate, but only a very slight movement of the brushes in either direction will cause the armature to rotate in the direction of brush shift.

(3) *Setting Neutral.* If it is found that the neutral does not occur with the rocker ring in the center position, two different courses of procedure are open:

1. Lock the rocker ring in the central position, loosen the end-shield bolts, and turn the end shield slightly away from the direction of rotation of the armature until the position is found where the armature will not rotate in either direction, and tighten up the end-shield bolts, locking the end shield in position. The rocker ring should then be shifted to one of the other two positions, depending upon the desired direction of rotation.
2. Turn the rocker ring in the end shield until the neutral position is found. Opposite the center of the three marks on the rocker ring, make a new mark to indicate the neutral setting, and obliterate the old mark. Then set either one of the other two markers on the rocker ring opposite this new stationary mark. *Great care must be taken in setting neutral; this point is vitally important!*

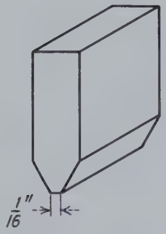


Fig. 8-17 Wedge-shaped brush used for setting neutral.

8-22. Replacement of Brushes.

(1) *Grades.* In general, whenever it is necessary to replace brushes, an intensive and honest effort should be made to use a new brush that is an exact duplicate of the original brush supplied by the manufacturer, in size, grade, and brand.

(2) *Seating Brushes.* New brushes should be seated on the commutator. Hold a piece of fine sandpaper so that it fits partly around the commutator, and insert the brush in the holder in which it is to be used. Pushing radially against the brush with one hand, with the other hand rotate the commutator and sandpaper together in the direction the motor is to run. Release the brush pressure, and turn the armature and sandpaper backward; then push against the brush and again rotate the commutator and sandpaper in the direction the motor is to run. Repeat this process until the brush fits the commutator perfectly. If the brush is properly seated, it should be shiny all over the contact

surface after the motor has been in use for a short time. If the motor has been disassembled for any reason, it will often be found easier to seat the brushes before the motor is reassembled, using only the armature and front end shield. The use of a brush-seating compound which is an abrasive powder applied to the commutator surface is not recommended.

Another method of seating brushes is by scraping them—somewhat like scraping a bearing. Run the motor long enough to develop shiny spots on the brushes; stop the motor, remove the brushes, and with a sharp-edged instrument carefully scrape off all polished spots. Again run the motor, and repeat the process just described until the brush is seated—i.e., until it takes a polish over its entire surface. In some cases, particularly for very small motors, this method is easier than sandpapering.

8-23. Care and Maintenance—General. In addition to the same care and attention as to lubrication, etc., required by all types of fractional-horsepower motors, repulsion-start motors require attention to other features.

(1) *Commutator and Brushes.* If the commutator is dirty and blackened, it can be wiped off with a rag or cleaned with fine sandpaper (when running) but *never with emery,* because emery particles are conducting. If the commutator is badly pitted and grooved, it is advisable to remove the armature and "true-up" the commutator on a lathe. If the commutator was originally undercut, it will be necessary to undercut it again. In any case, if high mica has developed—a condition that can be determined by running the fingers over the commutator—the latter should be trued-up and undercut. No more material should be taken off than is absolutely necessary. The brushes should be inspected to see that they all move freely and easily and that all make contact with the commutator at normal pressure. Worn-out brushes should be replaced. If there are two brushes on a single pigtail, the latter should be examined to see that it is not broken or unduly frayed. The surface of the commutator against which the short-circuiter operates should be kept reasonably clean and bright.

(2) *Short-circuiter and Brush Lifter.* The short-circuiter is a vital part of the motor and should be kept clean and in good condition; it should operate to short-circuit the commutator at about 75 percent of full-load speed. The commutator surfaces against which it acts should all be clean and not pitted. The brush-lifting mechanism should work freely and should not be allowed to become fouled with dirt or jammed in any way. If the governor weights have cushion stops to minimize noise, these cushions should be inspected and replaced if necessary.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Braymer, Daniel H., and Roe, A. C.: "Rewinding Small Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1932.
2. Langsdorf, Alexander S.: "Principles of Direct Current Machines," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1931.
3. Hamilton, James L.: The Repulsion-start Induction Motor, *AIEE Trans.*, October, 1915, pp. 2443–2474, Disc. 2475–2482.
4. Trickey, P. H.: Performance Calculations on Repulsion Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 60, 1941, pp. 67–73.
5. Appleman, W. R.: Repulsion-type Motors, *Elect. Mfg.*, vol. 50, September, 1952, p. 90.
6. Morris, D.: An Investigation of Parasitic Brush Currents in Single-phase Commutator Machines with Particular Reference to the Repulsion Motor, *Proc. IEE* (British publication), vol. 100, pt. IV, 1953, pp. 113–128.
7. Veinott, C. G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.

Chapter 9

Repulsion and Repulsion-induction Motors

Repulsion and repulsion-induction motors are two modifications of the repulsion-type motor. Straight repulsion motors are often used where speed adjustment is required, for their speed can be adjusted by varying the brush shift, giving them *adjustable varying-speed characteristics.* Repulsion-induction motors are often used for plugging service. The various types are often confused with one another. The repulsion-start induction motor was defined in Art. 8-1. The other two major types are defined in the following paragraphs.

9-1. Repulsion Motor Defined. A *repulsion motor* may be defined as follows: A repulsion motor is a single-phase motor which has a stator winding arranged for connection to the source of power and a rotor winding connected to a commutator. Brushes on the commutator are short-circuited and are so placed that the magnetic axis of the rotor winding is inclined to the magnetic axis of the stator winding. This type of motor has a varying-speed characteristic.

9-2. Repulsion-induction Motor Defined. A *repulsion-induction motor* may be defined as follows: A repulsion-induction motor is a form of repulsion motor which has a squirrel-cage winding in the rotor in addition to the repulsion motor winding. A motor of this type may have either a constant-speed or varying-speed characteristic.

DUAL-VOLTAGE MOTORS

9-3. Dual-voltage Repulsion Motor. The repulsion motor is a single-phase motor that starts and runs as a repulsion motor. The principles of operation of this type of motor are discussed in Arts. 8-4 to 8-6. A representative speed-torque curve is given in Fig. 9-1. These torque characteristics resemble those of the repulsion-start motor of Fig. 8-1 when the latter is operated on the starting connection. The straight repulsion motor is similar in construction to the repulsion-start motor which is described in Art. 8-3 except for the omission of the short-circuiter. The brushes of a straight repulsion motor are usually shifted 20 to 30 electrical degrees from *hard neutral,* as compared with the usual shift of 15 to 20 electrical degrees for the repulsion-start motor.

The straight repulsion motor is classified as a *varying-speed motor* because the operating speed depends upon the load and may vary widely with changes in load. It becomes an *adjustable varying-speed motor* when provision is made for shifting the brushes.

The *stator connection diagram* for a four-lead dual-voltage four-pole motor is shown in Fig. 8-7. The motor wiring and line connection diagrams for such a stator connection diagram are given in Fig. 8-8. It will be noted that these are the same diagrams used for repulsion-start motors.

As to rewinding a straight repulsion motor, the considerations discussed in Arts. 8-9 to 8-11 apply. The discussion on armature windings (Arts. 8-12 to 8-14) also applies to this type of motor.

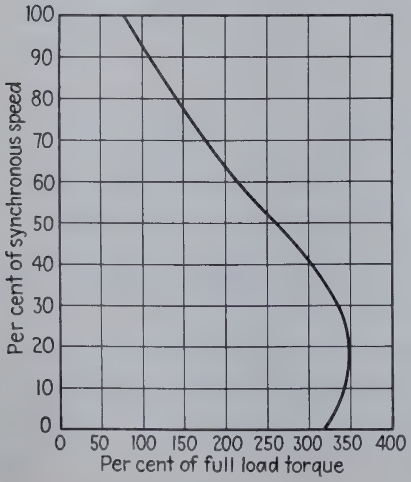


Fig. 9-1 Speed-torque curve of a straight repulsion motor.

9-4. Dual-voltage Repulsion-induction Motor. The repulsion-induction motor is similar in construction to the straight repulsion motor just discussed except that buried beneath the armature winding is a squirrel-cage winding. This motor has no short-circuiter or brush-lifting mechanism; nor are there any centrifugal mechanisms of any sort. The term "repulsion-induction" motor is sometimes erroneously used to designate a repulsion-start motor (see Art. 8-1).

A rotor punching for a motor of this type is illustrated in Fig. 9-2, wherein can be seen the slots for putting in the repulsion winding and also the slots for the squirrel-cage winding. This squirrel cage may be wholly or partly made of copper, brass, or even iron, depending upon the torque characteristics desired. A typical speed-torque curve is shown in Fig. 9-3.

In order to gain a better understanding of the characteristics of such a motor, it is sometimes helpful to look upon the repulsion-induction motor as if there were two distinct motors coupled mechanically to the same shaft; one of these motors is a straight repulsion motor having speed-torque characteristics similar to Fig. 9-1, and the second motor is a squirrel-cage single-phase induction motor having speed-torque characteristics similar to the "main (running) winding only" curve of Fig. 4-3. At any speed, these two torques add up to give a combined characteristic similar to Fig. 9-3. This analogy is wrong academically on at least two counts: (1) The two motors should be connected in series instead of in parallel, and (2) there is interaction between the repulsion winding and the squirrel-cage winding. However, the comparison serves in a rough way to illustrate the principle of the repulsion-induction motor.

The effect of the embedded squirrel cage is to give the motor nearly constant-speed characteristics, without unduly sacrificing the high locked-rotor torque of the repulsion motor. At no load, the repulsion-

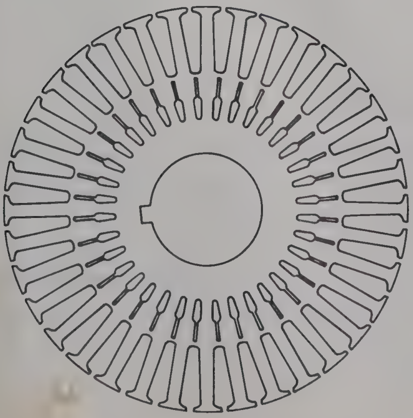


Fig. 9-2 Rotor punching for a repulsion-induction motor.

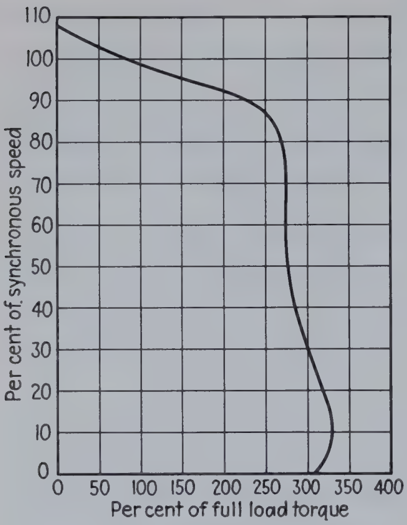


Fig. 9-3 Speed-torque curve of a repulsion-induction motor.

induction motor usually will operate above synchronous speed and may actually run hotter than at full load. It can be classified as a constant-speed motor although the change in speed from no load to full load is slightly greater than in the case of the repulsion-start motor. It generally has lower locked-rotor torque but better pull-up characteristics than the repulsion-start motor, and it has the advantage of requiring no short-circuiter or other automatic-switching means. Moreover, this motor, with a suitable winding arrangement, can be used for *plugging service.*

This motor may use the same type of stator and armature and the same connection diagrams for both stator and rotor as the repulsion-start motors described in Arts. 8-8 and 8-12 to 8-14. As for rewinding this motor, the same general considerations discussed in Arts. 8-9 to 8-11 apply except that there is no short-circuiter to introduce complications.

REVERSING* MOTORS FOR PLUGGING SERVICE

9-5. Reversing Repulsion-type Motors Electrically. Any of the three types of repulsion motors just discussed, viz., repulsion-start, repulsion, and repulsion-induction, can be reversed by shifting the brushes, and this is the usual method. All three of these types may likewise be reversed by making changes in the stator connections—as intimated in Art. 8-1—*without changing* the brush position. If the stator connections are suddenly changed to reverse the direction of rotation while the motor is running, straight repulsion and also the repulsion-induction motor will stop and then start up in the opposite direction, but the repulsion-start induction motor will continue running in the same direction unless the motor is allowed to slow down until the short-circuiter operates.

---

* For definition of this term, see Art. 5-26.

This type of reversal, viz., from full speed in one direction to full speed in the opposite direction by a change of electrical connections, is known as *plugging*. Most of the types of single-phase motors discussed in this book so far will not plug, except for the motors of Arts. 5-26 and 7-17. Ordinarily, it is necessary to wait until the rotor has slowed down sufficiently to allow the centrifugal device to return the motor to the starting connection, before the motor can be reversed electrically, unless a special control system such as described in Art. 5-26 is devised.

The repulsion-induction motor has sometimes been used for driving a lathe because it has essentially constant-speed characteristics and can be plugged. Likewise it, or the straight repulsion motor, may be used on such applications as valves, rheostats, or door openers, where the plugging characteristic is a necessity. The straight repulsion motor plugs much more energetically than does the repulsion-induction motor.

Since the same stator winding arrangements can be used for either a repulsion or a repulsion-induction motor, the winding arrangements that follow are applicable to either type of motor.

9-6. Reversing Motor with Single-phase Type of Winding. In Fig. 8-4 is shown a repulsion-type motor with two stator windings displaced 90 electrical degrees apart. This motor can be reversed by interchanging the two *field-winding* leads. A scheme that results in simpler connections is to use two field windings, as shown in Fig. 9-4, which may be considered and used as a *wiring and line connection diagram.* The *stator connection diagram* for a four-pole motor using this arrangement is Fig. 9-5. One field winding is inserted in the slots, there being one coil group for every pole; separators are inserted in the slots on top of the first winding, and a second field winding, identical with the first in distribution, wire size, and number of turns, is placed on top of the first winding. The *inducing winding* is then wound in the slots displaced 90 electrical degrees from the first two windings. An alternate method would be to wind the two field windings as a single winding with two strands in parallel. The insulation between strands would then have to be carefully tested.

As for rewinding this type of motor, the same general considerations discussed in Arts. 8-9 to 8-11 apply, except that there is no short-circuiter to introduce complications.

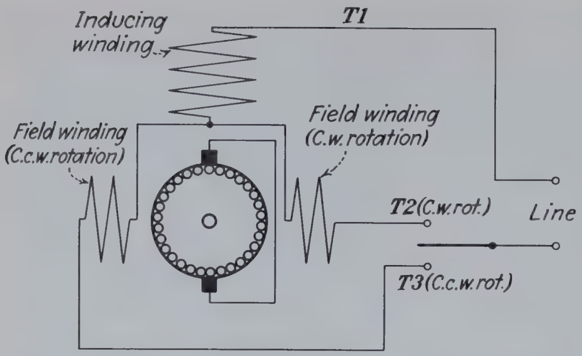

Inducing winding
T1
Field winding (C.c.w. rotation)
Field winding (C.w. rotation)
T2(C.w. rot.)
Line
T3(C.c.w. rot.)

Fig. 9-4 A three-lead electrically reversible repulsion or repulsion-induction motor used for plugging service.

9-7. Reversing Motor with Polyphase Type of Winding.

(1) *Balanced Polyphase Winding for* 30° *Shift.* If the stator is wound as if for a three-phase star-connected winding with an equal number of coils per group and if the three leads are tagged T1, T2, and T3, the *wiring diagram* of Fig. 9-4 again is applicable. (It may be found necessary to interchange tags T2 and T3 to make the direction of rotation agree with the figure.) In such cases, the two field windings and the inducing winding are all equal in number of turns, wire size, and distribution, and these three windings are spaced 120 electrical degrees apart. With this arrangement, a brush shift of 30 electrical degrees either side of neutral is invariably obtained.

(2) *Polyphase Winding with Unequal Coil Grouping.* If any brush shift other than 30 electrical degrees is desired with à polyphase type of winding, it is necessary to use unequal numbers of coils per group. For example, if a four-pole motor has 36 stator slots and 36

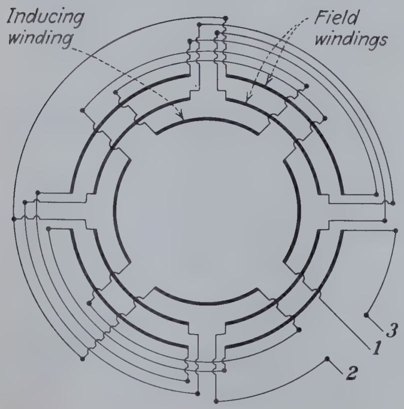
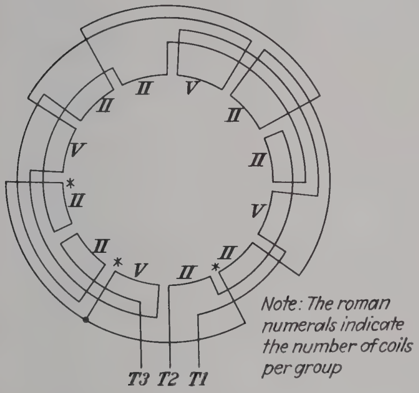


Fig. 9-5 Stator connection diagram for a four-pole series-connected electrically reversible repulsion or repulsion-induction motor.

stator coils, there are 9 coils per pole or 9 coils for every three groups. The coils can then be grouped 2-5-2, 2-5-2, etc., and the T1 lead must be connected to a group containing 5 coils. This point is illustrated by means of the *stator connection diagram,* Fig. 9-6. With this arrangement, a brush shift of 20 electrical degrees either side of hard neutral is obtained. Why this is so was explained in Chap. XII of an earlier work (see Ref. 7 at end of Chap. 8).



Note: The roman numerals indicate the number of coils per group

Fig. 9-6 Stator connection diagram for a four-pole series-connected electrically reversible repulsion or repulsion-induction motor using a polyphase type of winding and unequal grouping of coils.

9-8. Checking or Setting Neutral. Install wedge-shaped brushes (see Fig. 8-17) in all the brush holders. Connect the power to leads T1 and T2, and find and mark the rocker-ring position for hard neutral (see Arts. 8-6 and 8-21). When the brushes are in this position, the armature will not rotate; but a slight shift of the brushes in either direction will cause the armature to rotate in the same direction as the shift of the brushes. Now, connect the power to T1 and T3, and again find and mark the hard-neutral position. The brushes should be set and left halfway between these two positions.

Chapter 10

Shaded-pole Induction Motors

Shaded-pole induction motors are used in a wide variety of applications requiring an induction motor of ¼ hp or less, even down to less than 1 mhp. In the subfractional range—horsepower ratings below $\frac{1}{20}$—it is the standard general-purpose constant-speed ac motor. It is simple in construction, low in cost, and extremely rugged and reliable—like a polyphase induction motor—because it needs no commutator, switch, collector rings, brushes, governor, or contacts of any sort. Its torque characteristics and applications are similar to those of a permanent-split capacitor motor, except that it has a lower efficiency and a lower power factor. But efficiency and power factor are seldom of importance in these sizes. It is used in an extremely wide variety of applications: home appliances such as rotisseries, fans of all kinds, humidifiers, slide projectors; small business machines such as photocopy machines; vending machines, advertising displays, etc. They are available with integral gear reducers to obtain almost any speed, even down to less than one revolution per month. Some manufacturers offer integral clutches and/or brakes. Although the simple shaded-pole motor is inherently nonreversible, reversible motors are built in different forms. Also, by employing special constructional arrangements, their use has been extended to various servosystem applications, as well as to use as permanent-split capacitor motors.

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

10-1. Shaded-pole Motor Defined. A shaded-pole motor may be defined as a single-phase induction motor provided with an auxiliary short-circuited winding or windings displaced in magnetic position from the main winding.

Such a definition does not recognize synchronous shaded-pole motors, which are discussed in Chap. 11; the latter are widely used in clocks and timing devices. Only induction types are discussed in this chapter. In the usual form of construction, salient poles are used, and the "auxiliary short-circuited winding" consists of a single turn placed around a portion of the main pole. This coil is known as a "shading coil" because it causes the flux in that portion of the pole surrounded by it to lag behind the flux in the rest of the pole. Sometimes two or three shading coils are used on each pole, each coil surrounding a different percentage of the main-pole face (see Fig. 10-5).

10-2. Essential Parts of a Shaded-pole Motor. Figure 10-1 gives a schematic representation of a simple shaded-pole motor. There is but a single winding, which is connected to the line, a second winding permanently short-circuited upon itself, and a squirrel-cage rotor. This short-circuited winding is displaced from the main winding by an angle which can never be as much as 90 electrical degrees. It has to be shifted from the axis of the main winding by a definite amount in order to set up a component field along an axis in space different from that of the main winding; furthermore, this shift has to be less than 90° so that a voltage can be induced in the short-circuited winding by transformer action of the main winding. Constructions may vary considerably in detail, but the above are the essential elements found in all shaded-pole induction motors. Additional elements are found in some shaded-pole motors, developed for special purposes; some of these will be discussed later in this chapter. The simple elements just described are also evident in Fig. 10-2.

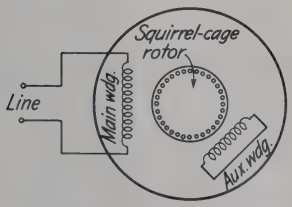


Fig. 10-1 The shaded-pole induction motor.

10-3. Principle of the Shaded-pole Motor. Like any other induction motor, the shaded-pole motor is caused to run by the action of a revolving magnetic field set up by the primary windings. The method of obtaining the revolving field is slightly different from that of other types of induction motors. It was seen in Chap. 2 that the revolving field in a two-phase motor is the resultant of two stationary fields displaced 90° apart in space and 90° apart in time. In a split-phase motor at standstill, the fields are 90° apart in space, but they are displaced considerably less than that in time, as shown in Fig. 4-2; however, there is enough of a rotating field to produce considerable torque. Actually, it is not necessary that the fields be displaced in space by a full 90° in order to set up a sort of a rotating field; it is necessary only that there be *two* component fields, displaced both in time and in space. This condition is fulfilled in all shaded-pole motors, as will be shown. Each pole may be considered as split into two sections:

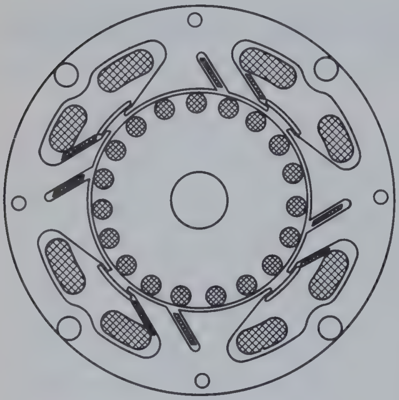


Fig. 10-2 A shaded-pole motor with tapered poles and magnetic wedges. (*Electrical Engineering.*)

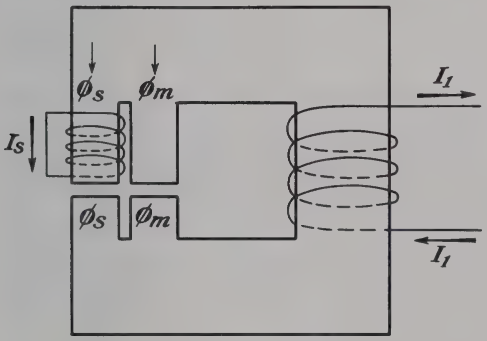
1. *Main body* of the pole
2. *Shaded portion,* i.e., the portion surrounded by the shading coil

An elementary understanding of the action of the shading coil may be gained from a study of the simple magnetic circuit of Fig. 10-3*a*, which shows a single pole divided into two equal parts, one of which is shaded. Consider the instant of time when the current flowing in the primary coil is actually zero, but is just starting to increase positively. In the main portion, the flux ϕ_m is just starting to build up in phase with the current. Likewise the flux ϕ_s in the shaded area is starting to build up, but this change in flux induces a voltage in the shading coil which causes current to flow. Since an induced current always flows in such a direction as to oppose the change in flux which induces it,* the current in the shading coil delays the building up of the flux ϕ_s. Further, when the current in the primary coil starts to decrease, flux ϕ_m starts to decrease immediately. However, the current induced in the shading coil by a decreasing flux still tends to oppose the change in flux, i.e., in this case, the induced current tends to maintain the flux. Hence, flux ϕ_s continues to lag behind ϕ_m during the second part of the cycle. By similar considerations, it is evident that flux ϕ_s always lags behind flux ϕ_m in time. Hence, the net effect of this time and space displacement is to produce a shifting flux in the air gap which shifts always toward the shading coil. *Therefore, the direction of rotation of a shaded-pole motor is always from the unshaded to the shaded portion of the pole.*

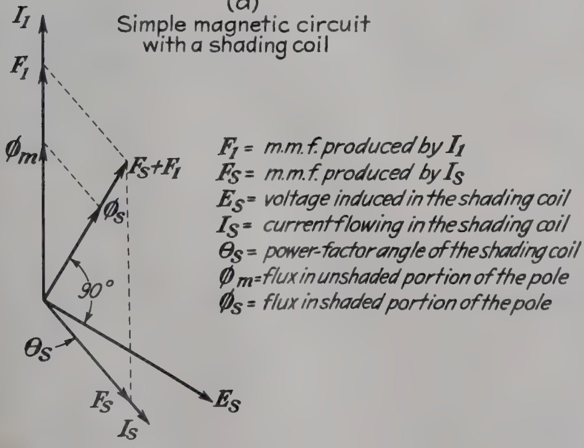
---

* This is an application of Lenz's classical law, which is discussed in practically every elementary text on electricity.

A somewhat more rigorous and precise explanation of the action of a shading coil is given in the following article.



(a)
Simple magnetic circuit with a shading coil


I1
F1
Øm
Fs+F1
Øs
90°
θs
Fs
Is
Es
F1 = m.m.f. produced by I1
Fs = m.m.f. produced by Is
Es = voltage induced in the shading coil
Is = current flowing in the shading coil
θs = power-factor angle of the shading coil
Øm = flux in unshaded portion of the pole
Øs = flux in shaded portion of the pole

(b)
Vector diagram for (a)

Fig. 10-3 How a shading coil reduces the flux threading it and delays it in time phase.

10-4. Action of a Simple Shading Coil Explained. Figure 10-3*b* is the vector diagram for the simple shading coil illustrated. It was constructed so as to fulfill simultaneously the following conditions, all of which must be satisfied in accordance with elementary principles; these determine the diagram:

1. ϕ_m is proportional to, and in phase with, F_1.
2. ϕ_s is proportional to, and in phase with, $F_s + F_1$.
3. E_s is proportional to, and 90° in time behind, ϕ_s.
4. I_s is proportional to, and $\theta_s°$ behind, E_s.
5. F_s is proportional to, and in phase with, I_s.

After the diagram is constructed to fulfill simultaneously the conditions outlined above, it becomes at once apparent, by comparing the magnitude and position of ϕ_s with ϕ_m, that the effect of the shading coil is to reduce the flux in the shaded portion of the pole and, at the same time, to shift it in time phase behind the flux in the unshaded portion.

Thus, Fig. 10-3 demonstrates qualitatively why the shading coil reduces the flux in the shaded portion of the pole and why it shifts the phase angle. In a practical motor, the effect is modified somewhat by the action of the rotor currents, but it still persists. The net result of the shifting of the phase angle of the flux in the shaded portion of the pole is to produce the same effect as that of a gliding flux which is constantly shifting from the *main body* toward the *shaded portion*, tending to cause the rotor to move in that direction.

10-5. Use of Magnetic Wedges or Bridges. Figure 10-2 shows one popular idea of construction for the larger motors, especially those having four or six poles. The shading coils, one for each pole, are put on before the main-winding coils; the latter may be wound as form coils

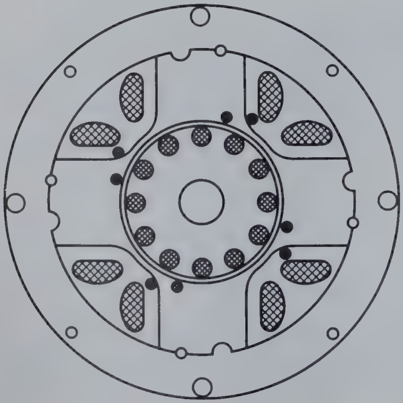


Fig. 10-4 A shaded-pole motor with a two-piece stator. (*Electrical Engineering.*)

and slipped on over the poles, or they may be machine-wound right in place. It has been found that when the wedges shown in the figure are made of a magnetic material, such as iron, the performance of the motor is improved.

Figure 10-4 shows another construction, which uses a solid and permanent magnetic bridge. In this case, the stator core is made in two parts and the pole sides are straight and parallel. There are four shading coils, as shown. The four stator coils can be wound directly on the poles quite easily, or they can be wound on molds and readily slipped onto the pole projections, after which the internal part of the core and its windings are pressed into the outer ring of punchings. Sometimes, when this construction is used, two diametrically opposite coils are omitted for economy in winding; in this case, however, there are twice as many turns on each of the two poles as there would be in a single coil if there were four coils.

10-6. Triple Shading Coils. In Fig. 10-5 is illustrated a motor using triple shading coils, each one surrounding a different percentage of the main pole. We may think of the largest coil as acting like the simple coil described in Arts. 10-3 and 10-4; it causes all the flux it embraces to be delayed in time behind the flux in the unshaded portion of the pole. Now, the middle shading coil will delay the flux it embraces behind the rest of the flux within the large shading coil, thus creating a third area of the pole in which the flux lags behind even more than in the second area. A third shading coil creates a fourth area in like fashion so that, by use of the triple shading coils, the pole is divided into four areas; progressing from the unshaded portion, the flux in each of these four areas lags a little farther behind the flux in the preceding

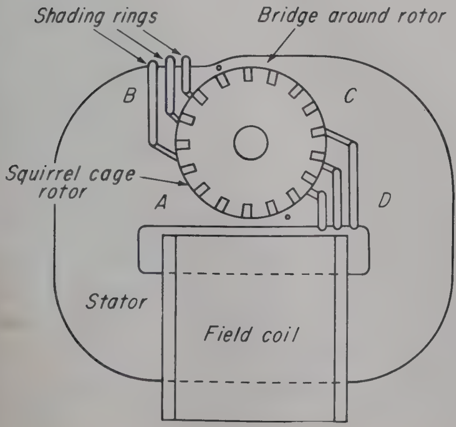


Fig. 10-5 A shaded-pole motor, skeleton-type construction, with triple shading coils. (*Barber-Colman Company.*)

section. Note also that a continuous magnetic bridge is employed with this construction.

10-7. Use of a Reluctance Effect in the Leading Pole Tip. A number of manufacturers report that they now use some form of additional reluctance effect in the leading pole tip to improve the performance of their shaded-pole motors, especially those in the larger sizes.

In 1937 Carl Rall[2,*] described a "reluctance-start" motor which was built essentially like the motor of Fig. 10-2, except that there was no provision for a shading coil, and except that the air gap for half of the pole face was approximately doubled. Such a motor, he reported, gave performance comparable to that of a shaded-pole motor. Why such a motor would develop locked-rotor torque is not easy to explain. (This motor is illustrated in Fig. 13-10 of an earlier work of the author,[11] as well as in Fig. 5-13 of another work.[12]) One theory advanced is that, because there is relatively less iron in the magnetic circuit—compared with the amount of air—on the wide-gap side of the pole, there is less damping of the flux by the eddy currents in the iron; therefore, the flux in the wide-gap section leads the flux in the narrow-gap section, producing the effect of flux shifting from the wide to the narrow gap, so that the motor runs from the wide to the narrow gap.

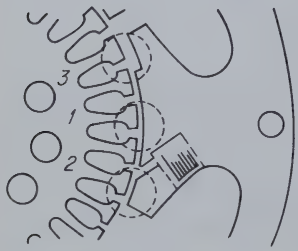


Fig. 10-6 The Tri-Flux principle. Reluctance effect of leading tip 3 supplements shading-coil effect at 2. (*Controls Company of America.*)

John L. Baum[5] made an extensive mathematical analysis of this motor and he ascribes the locked-rotor torque to two causes:

1. The difference in leakage inductance of the rotor bars on one side of the pole from that on the other causes a different current to flow on each side, producing a resultant torque as in a repulsion motor.
2. The difference in mutual reactance on the two sides of the poles gives the rotor current under the two sides some difference in phase, which also produces a resultant torque.

One way of adding this reluctance effect to a shaded-pole motor is illustrated in Fig. 10-6; here, a portion of the leading pole tip is trimmed away. In trying to understand this effect, it may be helpful to note that, although the shading coil causes considerable damping of the flux within the area it embraces, there is some damping in the unshaded portion of the pole, caused by the eddy currents in the iron itself. Now, if some iron is trimmed away from the leading pole tip, the amount of damping that would have been produced by the iron in that pole tip is eliminated by the removal of the iron; hence the flux in the wide-gap section at the leading pole tip lags less than the flux in the middle of the pole. Hence we have three parts of the pole each carrying flux, slightly displaced from that of the other two.

---

* For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

Another way of achieving the reluctance effect in the leading pole tip is illustrated in Fig. 10-7. Here, the effect is achieved by piercing a rectangular hole in the leading pole tip.

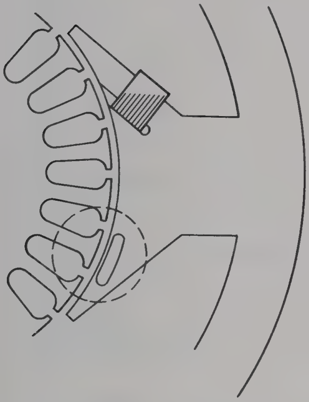


Fig. 10-7 A shaded-pole motor with reluctance slot in the leading pole tip. (*Universal Electric Company.*)

10-8. Ratings, Performance, and Torque Characteristics. Shaded-pole motors are built in a very wide variety of ratings and performance characteristics.

(1) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* Horsepower and speed ratings, according to NEMA, are given in Table 1-5. Motors rated from $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ hp are generally built in a typical round construction, such as shown in Figs. 10-2, 10-4, and 10-11, for example; they may have four, six, or even eight poles. Motors rated 40 mhp or less are more often built in a skeleton construction, such as Figs. 10-5, 10-12, or 10-13, for example; these have but two poles. Full-load speeds of such motors, for 60 hz, may range from 2000 to 3000 rpm.

(2) *Full-load Inputs and Efficiencies.* Typical values of inputs and efficiencies for shaded-pole motors are given in Fig. 10-8. Since this curve was plotted, efficiencies have been raised somewhat, particularly for the motors at the upper end of the horsepower range.

(3) *Speed-torque Characteristics.* Performance characteristics of an 8-mhp motor, taken from data published by Trickey,[1] are given in Fig. 10-9. This speed-torque curve is generally similar in shape to that of a polyphase induction motor, except that locked-rotor and breakdown torques are considerably lower, in terms of full-load torque. He shows

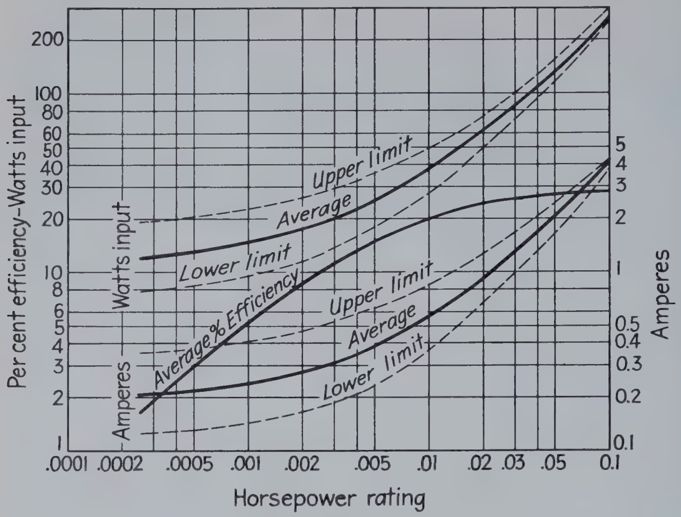


Fig. 10-8 Full-load inputs and efficiencies of shaded-pole motors.

the motor worked close to breakdown torque, a practice still typical today.

Other typical speed-torque curves are given in Figs. 10-10 and 10-25; the former shows a slight cusp or saddle point at one-third synchronous speed, due to the third space harmonic, and this cusp is sometimes greater than shown in this figure.

(4) *Locked-rotor and Breakdown Torques.* Locked-rotor torques are low, of the order of 35 to 90 percent of full load, with a tendency toward the higher torques in the lower horsepower ranges. Breakdown torques

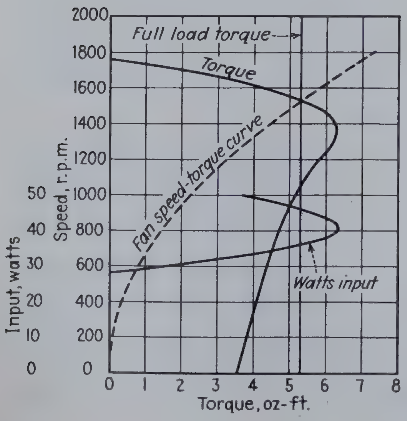


Fig. 10-9 Performance curves of a shaded-pole motor.

are also low, of the order of 120 to 150 percent of full load. NEMA values for breakdown torques are given in Table 1-3.

(5) *Duty Ratings.* Many shaded-pole motors carry a continuous rating, and do not depend upon supplemental cooling. Many are suitable for continuous duty only if the air from a fan is continuously blowing over them; this could be the fan they are driving, or a fan mounted on the motor for only this purpose. Many carry only an intermittent or short-time rating, such as 5, 10, 15, or 30 minutes; this is true in even the low millihorsepower ranges, and was done to make them as compact and as economical in price as possible.

(6) *Thermal Protection.* When the locked-rotor temperature does not exceed 150°C, the motor is said to be "impedance-protected" and a thermal protector is not required. Otherwise, thermal protectors are often installed in shaded-pole motors.

10-9. Variations in the Operating Speed. The operating speed of a shaded-pole motor driving a fan may be subject to wide variations due either to manufacturing variations or to changes in applied voltage, or both. These variations are greater than would be encountered when a split-phase or capacitor-start motor drives a fan. Figure 10-10 is one used by NEMA to explain why this is so.

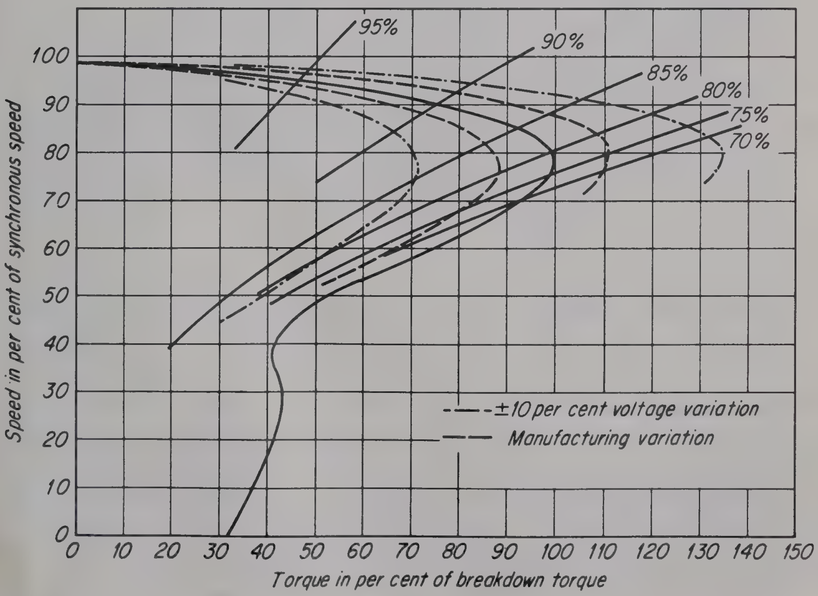


Fig. 10-10 Typical speed-torque curve for a shaded-pole motor, showing speed variations expected due to manufacturing and voltage variations. (*From NEMA MG1-18.220, January, 1968.*)

In Fig. 10-10, a typical speed-torque curve is represented by the solid line. The curves, drawn with dashed lines, illustrate the range in characteristics, due to manufacturing variations, when the motor is operated at rated voltage and frequency. The curves, drawn with dot-dash lines, illustrate the total effect of adding a voltage variation of plus or minus 10 percent to the manufacturing variations. Now, a series of fan speed-torque curves was drawn with solid lines, and these are labeled 95%, 90%, etc. The 95% fan loads the typical motor at rated voltage, at 47 percent of breakdown torque, and runs at 95 percent of synchronous speed. (This corresponds to a breakdown torque of 212 percent.) Now, with this 95% fan which loads the motor only lightly, the speed variations are small, from about 93 to 97 percent of synchronous speed. On the other hand, the 80% fan is one which loads the motor right up to breakdown torque and, on average, runs at 80 percent of synchronous speed. Note that with this fan, the variation that may be expected in operating speed due to manufacturing and voltage variations is very great, being from 58 to 88 percent of synchronous speed, which represents a variation in operating rpm of minus 38 percent to plus 10 percent. Note that similar effects are encountered with multispeed permanent-split capacitor motors, as discussed in Arts. 7-9 to 7-11.

UNIDIRECTIONAL (FIXED-ROTATION) MOTORS

10-10. Single-speed Motors. Motors in the fractional-horsepower range are generally built with four or more poles, of typical round-frame construction. One such construction is illustrated in Fig. 10-11. Motors in the subfractional-horsepower range are usually rated in millihorsepower and built in some form of skeleton-type construction. One such construction is illustrated in Fig. 10-12, and another in Fig. 10-13.

10-11. Multispeed Motors. In general, multispeed motors are offered over the entire range of ratings, both fractional and subfractional. Usually multispeed operation is achieved with tapped windings. A line connection diagram for two-speed and also for three-speed motors, with leads tagged as established by NEMA, is given in Fig. 10-14. Often such motors are equipped with blade terminals; identification and location of such blade terminals, as established by NEMA, are shown in Fig. 10-15. Note that the common terminal is separated from the others; if one line is connected to this post, the other line lead can be connected to any one of the other three. However, connection of the two line leads to any two of the closely spaced blades could lead to disastrous consequences!

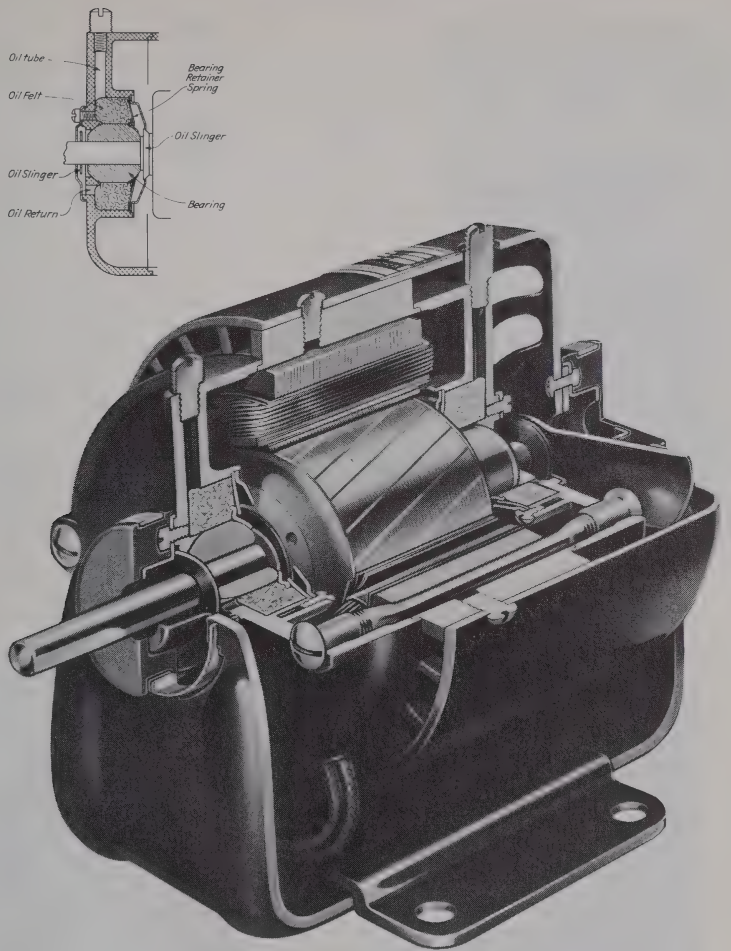


Fig. 10-11 Cutaway view of a totally enclosed fan-cooled shaded-pole induction motor with self-aligning sleeve bearings. Inset shows details of the bearing construction. (*Motor Division, Controls Company of America.*)

A furnace-fan motor which can readily be connected by the user for any one of four speeds is illustrated in Fig. 10-16. This permits the furnace installer, or the user himself, to adjust the speed of the furnace blower to the best speed to provide a quiet uniform flow of heat, and to change it later if conditions so require—without the need for an expensive controller. Internal wiring connections for this motor are given in Fig. 10-17.

A typical stator connection diagram for a six-pole four-speed tapped-winding shaded-pole motor is given in Fig. 10-18.

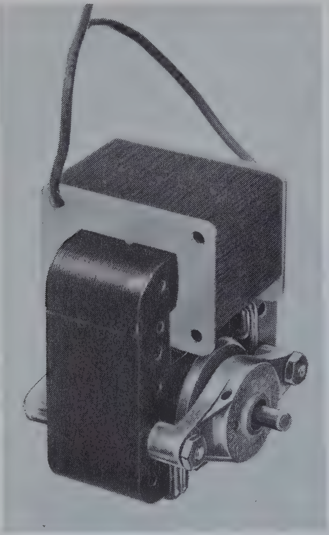
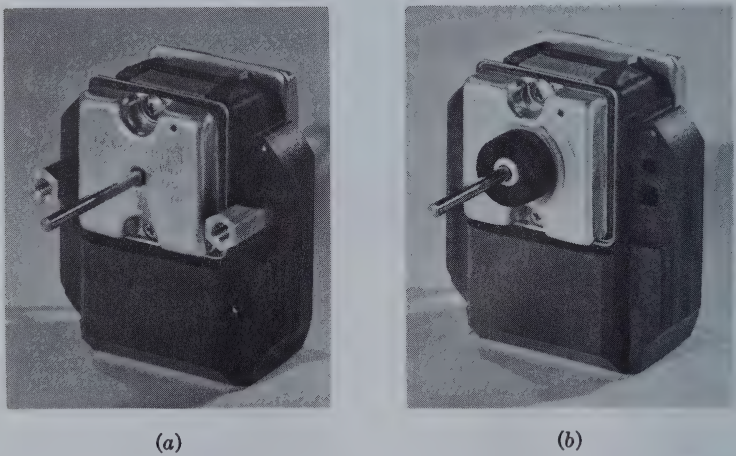
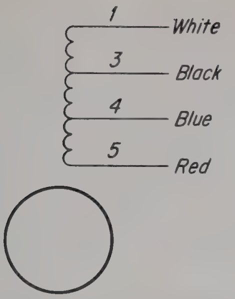


Fig. 10-12 A subfractional-horsepower shaded-pole motor, skeleton-type. (*Triem, Inc.*)



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 10-13 Subfractional-horsepower shaded-pole motors for solid or for resilient mounting. Stator laminations are bonded together, and end shields, containing controlled-porosity bearings, are bonded to the stator core. Oil from storage wicks, mounted on the end shields, is metered to the bearing-shaft clearance during operation. (*a*) Solid- (stud-) mounted motor. (*b*) Motor with resilient rings. (*General Electric Company.*)



Speed	L_1	L_2	Open
High	White	Black	Blue, red
Medium	White	Blue	Black, red
Low	White	Red	Blue, black

Fig. 10-14 Line connections for two-speed and three-speed shaded-pole motors. Two-speed motors omit the blue lead and "medium" speed. (*From NEMA.*)

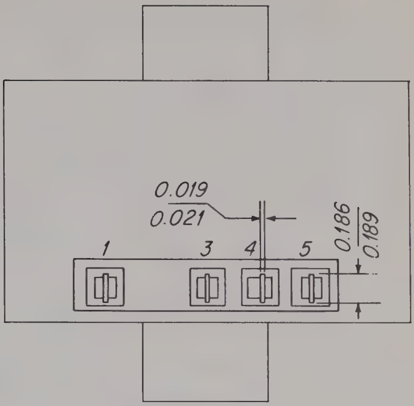


Fig. 10-15 Identification and location of blade terminals, when used on shaded-pole motors. (*From NEMA.*)

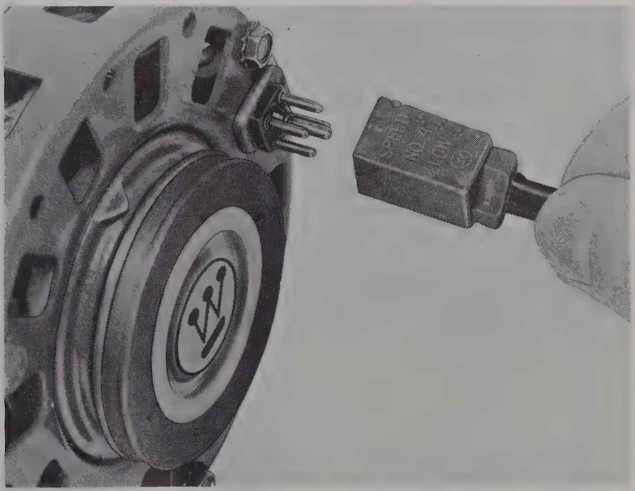


Fig. 10-16 Four-speed shaded-pole furnace-fan motor with connection plug, which can be plugged in in any one of four positions to give any one of four speeds. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

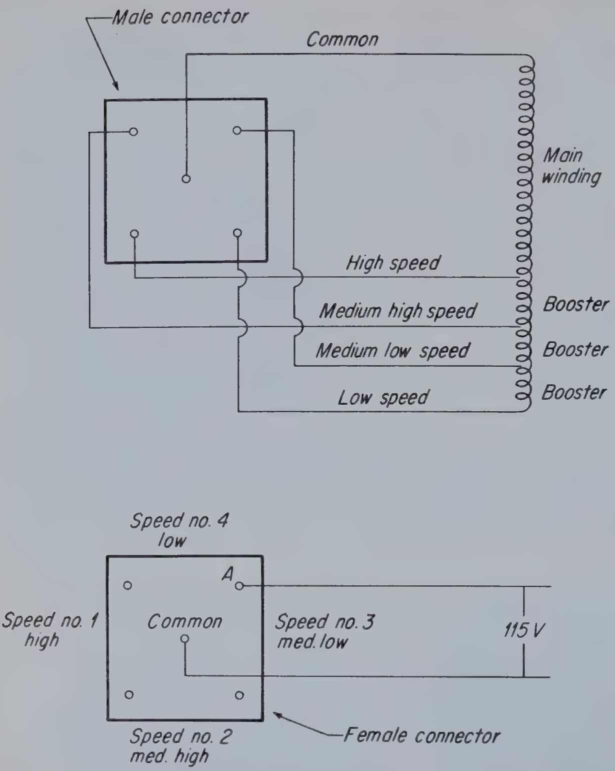


Fig. 10-17 Wiring and line connections for the four-speed motor of Fig. 10-16. The male portion of the connector is built into the motor end shield and the connections to it shown in the top sketch are made at the factory. Line connections are made to the female portion as shown in the lower sketch. Line voltage may be applied between common and any one of the four speed taps by properly positioning the plug. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

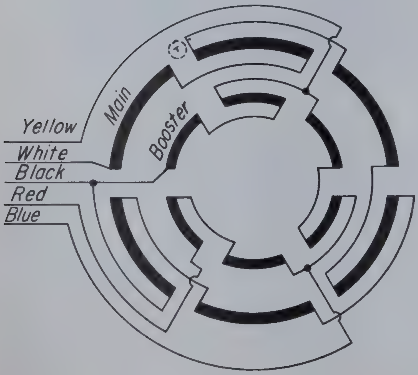


Fig. 10-18 Stator connection diagram for a four-speed six-pole shaded-pole motor with a tapped booster winding. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

It should be pointed out, however, that shaded-pole motors are generally somewhat less satisfactory as multispeed motors than permanent-split capacitor motors. Part of the reason is that the characteristic cusp at one-third speed makes them more unstable when driving a fan, as can readily be seen by inspection of Fig. 10-10. Also, permanent-split motors can be arranged to have a higher ratio of locked-rotor to breakdown torque on the low-speed connection than they do on the high. These points were discussed in Arts. 7-7 to 7-13.

REVERSIBLE MOTORS

10-12. Use of Two Motors in Tandem. Since the ordinary shaded-pole motor is inherently unidirectional, because of the shading coil, reversibility poses a problem. Some manufacturers solve this problem by using two motors, one for each direction of rotation. Both rotors are mounted on the shaft, and one stator or the other is energized, depending upon the direction of rotation desired. One such motor is illustrated in Fig. 10-19.

10-13. Use of Two Wound Shading Coils per Pole. Figure 10-20 shows schematically how a shaded-pole motor can be reversed if it is provided with two shading coils per pole. Direction of rotation is determined by which shading coil is short-circuited. The figure shows a switch in only the shading coil circuits; it may or may not be necessary to deenergize the main coil when the shading coil circuits are open and the motor is not running.

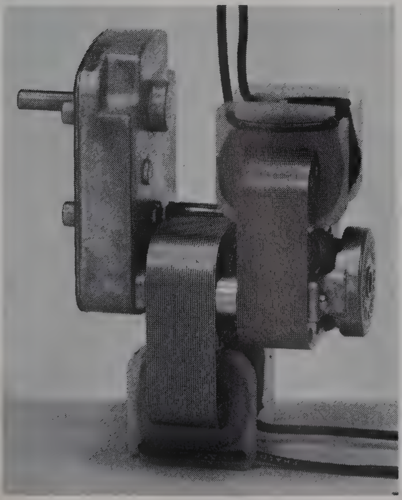


Fig. 10-19 A reversible shaded-pole geared motor, using two motors in tandem. (*Brevel Products Corp.*)

It is obvious, of course, that the leading pole tips of a reversible motor cannot be trimmed to improve torque. So far as achieving reversibility is concerned, each of the two shading coils could embrace half of the pole. However, when the middle portion of the pole is not embraced by either shading coil, some remarkable effects can be achieved, as will be discussed in the articles that follow.

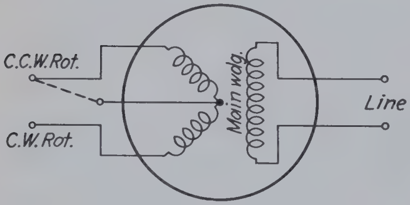


Fig. 10-20 A reversible shaded-pole motor with two auxiliary windings.

10-14. Production of a Space-quadrature Field with Wound Shading Coils.

Figure 10-21 shows the laminations for a two-pole skeleton-type shaded-pole reversible motor, using two shading coils per pole, or four wound shading coils in all. Note that there is a middle section of each pole which is not embraced by either shading coil; this is important, as will be shown. Positions of the four shading coils are represented in Fig. 10-22, and the coils are designated as A_1, A_2, B_1 and B_2. Either the A pair or the B pair of coils is short-circuited, depending upon the desired direction of rotation.

Now, what happens if the A coils and the B coils are connected in series and a current is passed through them? It is obvious that for proper functioning as shading coils, the two A coils must be so connected as to set up a flux in the *same horizontal direction;* the same consideration applies to the two B coils. Now, let the B coils be connected so that their mmfs are directed to the right, and let the A coils be so connected that their mmfs are both directed to the left, as shown

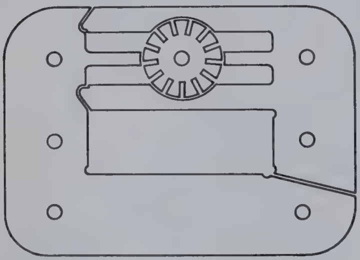


Fig. 10-21 Laminations for a motor with four shading coils. Above they are shown slightly separated to show how they are assembled. (*Barber-Colman Company.*)

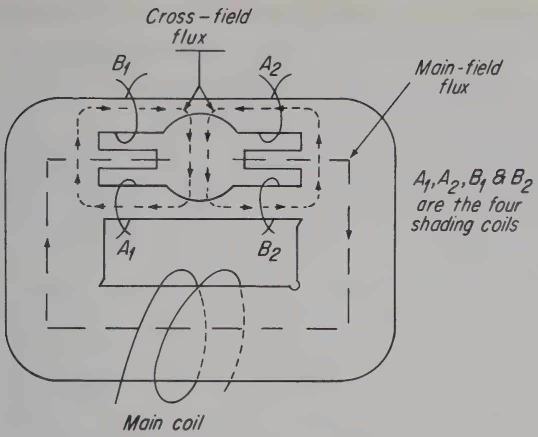


Fig. 10-22 Production of a cross-field flux in space quadrature with the main-axis flux by four shading coils.

in Fig. 10-22. Clearly then, as can be seen from the figure, the resultant flux due to the energization of these four shading coils can cross the air gap only in the vertical direction, that is, in a direction at right angles to the main-axis flux which flows through the centers of the two poles and is horizontal. Thus, since these four shading coils were connected in series to produce a space-quadrature flux, the total circuit of the four coils so connected represents a space-quadrature winding, just like the auxiliary winding of a capacitor-start or permanent-split capacitor motor. It should be obvious to the reader that the only net voltage that can be induced in the four windings thus connected in series is by a cross-axis flux.

The above considerations are represented schematically in Fig. 10-23. The two A coils are both displaced from the main winding but are in space phase with each other. Likewise, the two B coils are in

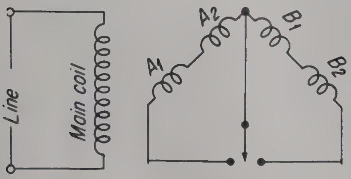


Fig. 10-23 Schematic diagram of connections for a reversible motor using four shading coils as in Fig. 10-22.

space phase with each other but displaced from both the main coil and the A coils. Either pair of coils can be short-circuited, depending upon the direction of rotation desired. The four coils in series are in space quadrature with the main winding. If the B_2 coil had been connected to the end of the A_2 coil, the effect would have been to put the four coils in series *in space phase* with the main winding, as shown schematically in Fig. 10-20. Hence when the four coils are to be used as a quadrature winding, it is important that they be connected properly.

10-15. Versatility of the Motor with Four Shading Coils. The ability to use the two sets of shading coils in series as a quadrature winding makes possible a variety of uses and arrangements in order to obtain special effects.

(1) *Simple Reversible Shaded-pole Motor.* It has already been discussed how this motor can be used as a reversible motor, as shown in Fig. 10-23. In general, five-wire control is needed in order to deenergize the motor completely. From the standpoint of torque output from the same amount of material, such a motor suffers severely as compared with a unidirectional motor of the same physical size and weight. Because the wound shading coils require insulation space, less room is left for iron; also leading pole tips cannot have increased air gaps to boost the shading effect with a reluctance effect. The magnitude of these effects is illustrated in Fig. 10-25, by comparing curves 1 and 2.

(2) *Permanent-split Capacitor Motors.* Figure 10-24 shows two arrangements of permanent-split capacitor connections, which take advantage of the ability to connect the four coils as a space-quadrature winding. Figure 10-24*a* shows a conventional permanent-split capacitor arrangement; rotation is reversed by reversing the capacitor phase. The very great improvement in torque output over the shaded-pole connection is shown in Fig. 10-25, curve 4. Four wires from the motor are needed.

A somewhat different arrangement, requiring only three motor leads, is shown in Fig. 10-24*b*. More capacitance is required, and the torque

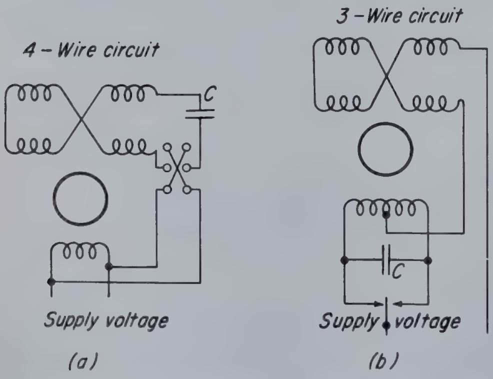


Fig. 10-24 A "shaded-pole" motor connected as a permanent-split capacitor motor. (*a*) Four-wire circuit. (*b*) Three-wire circuit. (*Barber-Colman Company.*)

is slightly less, but it is still much more than with the shaded-pole connection, as can be seen in Fig. 10-25.

(3) *Dynamic Braking.* Dynamic braking can be achieved by leaving the main coil excited and short-circuiting the four shading coils in series. This is a familiar method of braking: short-circuiting an auxiliary winding while the main is still excited.

(4) *Servomotor.* Since there are two windings in space quadrature, this motor can be used as a two-phase servomotor, or by using the

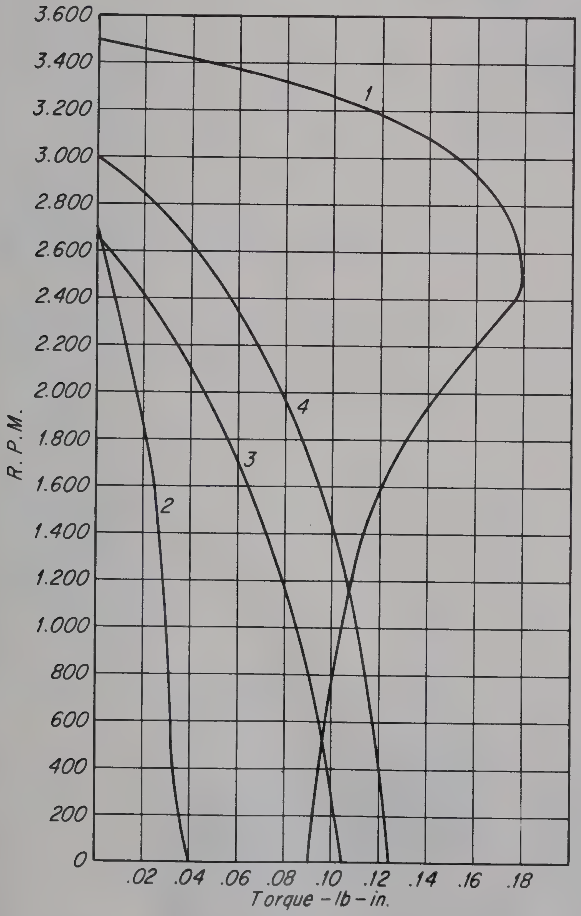


Fig. 10-25 Speed-torque characteristic curves for skeleton-type shaded-pole motors, all continuously rated and all weighing 29 oz. (1) Conventional, unidirectional, triple-shading coils (KYAF). Reversible, four shading coils, as in Fig. 10-22 (KYAE). (2) As shaded-pole motor (shading coils short-circuited). (3) As three-wire permanent-split capacitor motor, with 3 mfd. (4) As four-wire permanent-split capacitor motor, with 2 mfd. (*Plotted from data supplied by Barber-Colman Company.*)

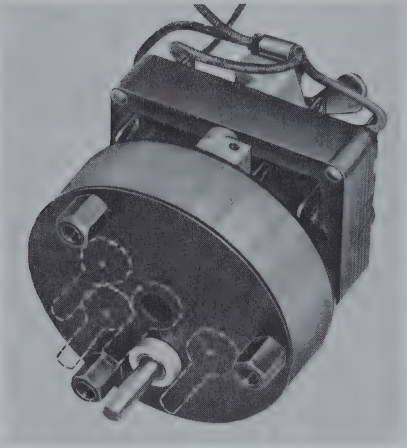


Fig. 10-26 Geared shaded-pole motor with offset drive-shaft assembly. Dotted lines show four additional optional drive-shaft locations. (*Gleason-Avery, Inc.*)

proper capacitor with one of the windings, as a single-phase servomotor. Speed-torque characteristics, as shown in Fig. 10-25, are quite suited to servo operation.

(5) *Tachometer Generator.* With rated voltage applied to the main winding, an output voltage is generated in the four shading coils which is proportional to the speed, over quite a range of speeds.

MISCELLANEOUS

10-16. Geared Motors. Shaded-pole motors with an integral gear-head speed-reducer are offered by many manufacturers. One example of a reversible geared motor is shown in Fig. 10-19. Another one is shown in Fig. 10-26. Also, built-in clutches and brakes are offered by a number of shaded-pole motor producers.

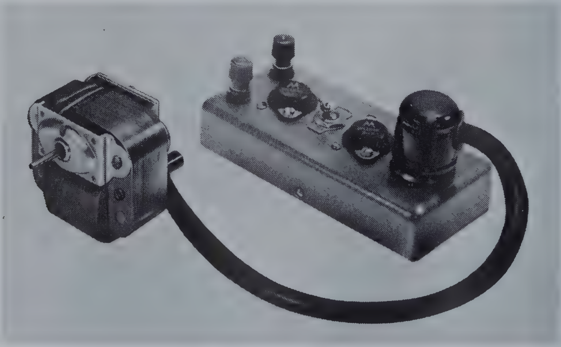


Fig. 10-27 Shaded-pole motor with transistorized power supply. (*Barber-Colman Company.*)

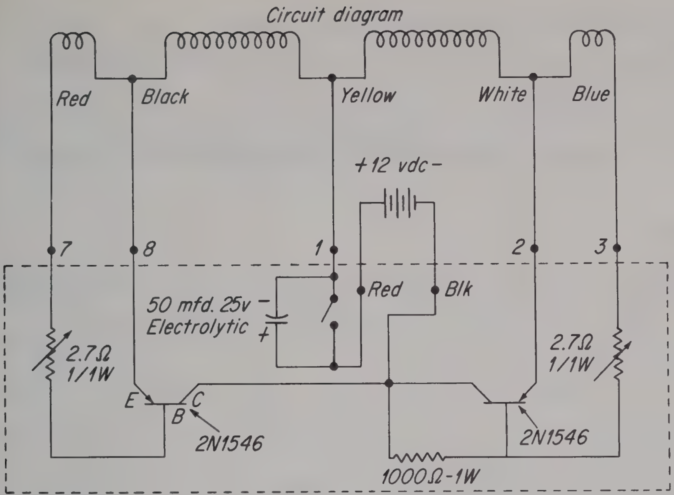


Fig. 10-28 Circuit diagram for motor of Fig. 10-27.

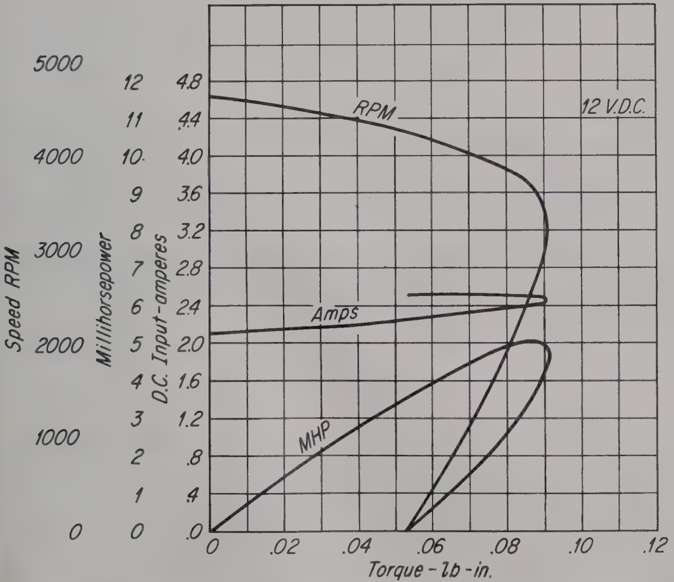


Fig. 10-29 Performance characteristics for motor of Fig. 10-27, operated on a 12-volt dc source.

10-17. Battery-operated Shaded-pole Motor System. Some manufacturers are offering a shaded-pole motor powered by a battery. By electronic means, the dc power is inverted to ac power to drive the motor. One such system is illustrated in Figs. 10-27, 10-28, and 10-29. This system uses the transistor oscillator circuit shown in Fig. 10-28.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Trickey, P. H.: An Analysis of the Shaded Pole Motor, *Elec. Eng.*, September, 1936, pp. 1007–1014.
2. Rall, Carl A.: This Motor Meets Many Product Needs, *Elec. Manufacturing*, June, 1937, pp. 31–35.
3. Veinott, C. G.: Discussion on Trickey's Paper, *Elec. Eng.*, May, 1937, pp. 612–613.
4. Braymer, Daniel H., and Roe, A. C.: "Rewinding Small Motors," Chap. XX, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1932.
5. Baum, John L.: The Asymmetrical Stator as a Means of Starting Single-phase Induction Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 63, 1944, pp. 245–250.
6. Kimberley, E. E.: The Field Fluxes of the Shaded-pole Motor, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 68, pt. I, 1949, pp. 273–277.
7. Kron, G.: Equivalent Circuits of the Shaded-pole Motor with Space Harmonics, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 69, pt. II, 1950, pp. 735–741.
8. Chang, S. S. L.: Equivalent Circuits and Their Application in Designing Shaded-pole Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 70, pt. I, 1951, pp. 690–699.
9. Suhr, F. W.: A Theory for Shaded-pole Induction Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 77, 1958, pp. 509–515.
10. Herzog, G. E., and Sherer, G. H.: The Calculation of Shaded-pole Motor Performance by the Use of a Digital Computer, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 78, pt. III, 1959, pp. 1607–1610.
11. Veinott, C. G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.
12. ———: "Theory and Design of Small Induction Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1959. (Out of print, but available from University Microfilms, Inc., Div. of Xerox, Ann Arbor, Mich.)

Chapter 11

Synchronous Motors

Exactness of speed is the outstanding characteristic that has made synchronous motors so popular in fractional- and subfractional-horsepower sizes. Speed of a synchronous motor is exactly proportional to the line frequency, which is regulated on all large 60-hz power systems so closely that clocks are driven by synchronous motors; the frequency is rarely in error by more than a small fraction of 1 percent, and these small errors are averaged out over a period of time. Hence, synchronous motors are widely used for timing motors.

11-1. General. Synchronous motors are built over a horsepower and speed range greater than that of any other type of motor. Horsepower ratings range from 5,000 or greater down to one millionth of a horsepower; output speeds range from 24,000 rpm (400-hz motor) down to as low as one revolution per month (with reduction gearing). In integral-horsepower sizes, their popularity is due in large measure to their ability to correct system power factor but, in fractional- and subfractional-horsepower sizes, dc excitation is almost never used (except for dynamic braking), and the power factor is poorer than for induction motors of comparable rating. In sizes from ⅛ hp down to about 1 mhp, synchronous motors are used for such applications as teleprinters, facsimile picture transmission, instruments of all kinds, and sound-recording or sound-reproducing apparatus. Also, they are often used in textile applications where several motors may be driven from the same variable-frequency source. In subfractional-horsepower ratings (below 1 mhp), they are widely used for clocks and all kinds of timing devices. Almost invariably, they are self-starting, but some clock motors have been intentionally made so that manual starting is required.

11-2. Types of Synchronous Motors. Synchronous motors are built in a wide variety of types and constructions. However, most of them have one feature in common with induction motors: a stator structure with windings, which, when properly energized with alternating current, set up a revolving magnetic field as explained in Chap. 2. The speed of this magnetic field—known as the synchronous speed—is exactly proportional to the frequency. Synchronous motors are so built that they lock into step with the rotating magnetic field and rotate at exactly the same speed as the latter. Induction motors, on the other hand, always rotate at a speed a little slower than synchronous. It is the construction of the rotor that determines whether it locks into step with the rotating field, or whether it rotates at a slightly slower speed. Hence, synchronous motors are usually classified (1) by the type of rotor construction and (2) by the stator winding arrangement. Large synchronous motors (that is, the larger integral-horsepower sizes) use a salient-pole rotor with a dc-excited field coil on each pole and a squirrel-cage damper winding for starting and for preventing hunting when in synchronism. However, dc excitation is not used in fractional-horsepower sizes, though permanent magnets are often used in one way or another. Popular constructions are *reluctance, hysteresis,* and *inductor.* Reluctance and hysteresis types use a stator structure like that of an induction motor, but the inductor type uses a special construction for both stator and rotor.

RELUCTANCE MOTORS

11-3. Reluctance Motor Definitions. Types of reluctance motors include:

Reluctance Motor. A synchronous motor similar in construction to an induction motor, in which the member carrying the secondary circuit has salient poles, without dc excitation. It starts as an induction motor, but operates normally at synchronous speed.

Subsynchronous Reluctance Motor. A form of reluctance motor which has a number of salient poles greater than the number of electrical poles of the primary winding, thus causing the motor to operate at a constant average speed which is a submultiple of its apparent synchronous speed.

11-4. Construction and Principles of Operation. As implied in its definition above, the reluctance motor is really a special case of a dc-excited synchronous motor with an open field circuit. However, the small reluctance motor is usually built from induction-motor parts, except that some teeth are cut out of the squirrel-cage rotor; in addition, flux barriers are often added in the yoke section of the rotor to accentuate the saliency effect.

(1) *Construction.* Large synchronous motors use a salient-pole rotating field which is excited with direct current. The salient poles are provided with squirrel-cage damper windings which are used to start the motor as an induction motor and then to provide stability against hunting once the motor is in synchronism. Rotors of reluctance motors have a squirrel-cage damper winding and salient poles, but no winding for dc excitation; one form of rotor punching is shown in Fig. 11-1, made for a six-pole motor. In each of six places, teeth have been removed. If—as in the example—the sizes or locations of these cutouts are slightly unsymmetrical, better locked-rotor torque is obtained than if the cutouts were uniform in size and spacing, because cogging effects are thereby reduced. Although the teeth were removed, the end rings were left intact, and the bars were left in place. These projecting groups of teeth provide something that can be "grabbed" by the rotating field and "held" so that the rotor stays in step with the rotating field, thereby giving synchronous speed. Other rotor laminations are illustrated in

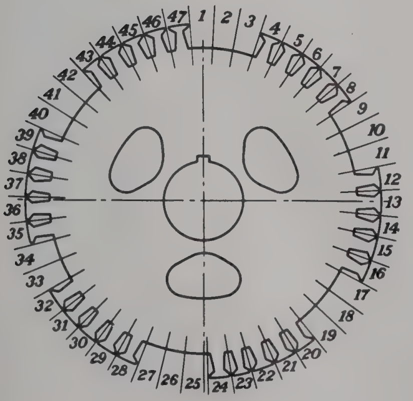


Fig. 11-1 Rotor punching used in a reluctance motor.

Fig. 11-2. These, too, show the projecting or salient poles, as well as flux-barrier slots.

A way of explaining the synchronizing action of the salient poles, somewhat more accurate than the one given above, follows. In any simple magnetic circuit, consisting of a fixed and a movable flux-carrying element, the movable element will tend to assume a position such that the reluctance of the magnetic circuit is a minimum, and a mechanical force is exerted on the movable piece to try to make it assume this position of minimum reluctance. When the centers of the salient groups of teeth in Fig. 11-1 line up with the centers of the poles of the revolving field, the reluctance of the magnetic path is at a minimum, and hence the rotor punchings tend to assume and hold this position.

(2) *Effect of the Flux-barrier Slots.* Figure 11-2 shows the use of flux-barrier slots to improve performance. That they do improve performance is based upon the fundamental fact that the force exerted upon a movable flux-carrying element in a magnetic field of constant strength is proportional to the rate of change of reluctance caused by the movement. In the reluctance motor, the strength of the magnetic force tending to align the salient projections of the rotor with the rotating magnetic field depends upon how much the reluctance of the magnetic circuit changes with change in rotor position with respect to the rotating magnetic field. When centers of the revolving magnetic field poles line up with the cutout slots, the reluctance is greatest; it is least when the flux poles line up with the salient groups of teeth. The synchronous torque depends upon the difference in reluctance of the magnetic circuit for these two extreme positions. Each of the two rotor punchings illus-

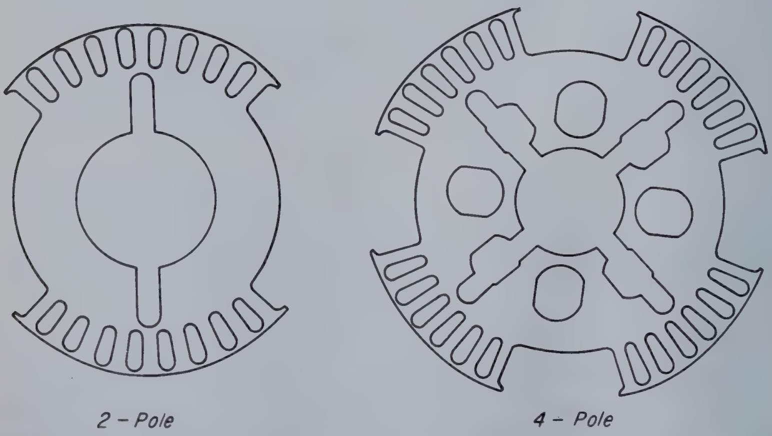


Fig. 11-2 Rotor laminations for polyphase reluctance motors, showing flux-barrier slots. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

trated in Fig. 11-2 uses a long radial slot in the center of each main pole. This barrier slot interposes no appreciable additional reluctance when the salient poles are lined up with the centers of the revolving field poles, because the barrier slots are parallel to this flux and, therefore, the flux does not have to cross the slots. However, when the poles of the revolving field are aligned with the centers of the cutouts, these barrier slots do interpose a substantial increase in reluctance because the flux in the yoke (core section) has to flow *across these slots.* Thus, the effect of the barrier slots is to increase the synchronous torque because they accentuate the change in reluctance that occurs when the flux passes from the cross axis of the rotor to the main axis.

In textbooks and other theoretical treatises on synchronous motors, the reactance of the stator winding when the rotor is in the position of *minimum* reluctance is called the *direct-axis reactance;* the reactance of the stator winding when the rotor is in the position of *maximum* reluctance is called the *quadrature-axis reactance.* It is shown analytically in such treatises that synchronizing torque is a function of the difference between these two reactances. Expressed in these terms, the effect of the barrier slots is to decrease the quadrature-axis reactance, thereby increasing the synchronizing torque.

(3) *How a Reluctance Motor Pulls into Step.* In the discussion that follows, let us assume, for purposes of simplicity, that we are talking about a polyphase reluctance motor, which has a true rotating field. Although we shall be thinking about the polyphase motor, the remarks that follow apply qualitatively to reluctance motors with other types of stator excitation.

Starting from rest, the motor accelerates as an induction motor. As it approaches synchronous speed, the salient poles of the rotor slip by the poles of the rotating magnetic field which are set up by the stator currents; but the nearer the rotor gets to synchronous speed, the slower the poles slip. As a rotor pole passes and begins to lag behind a pole of the rotating field, a synchronizing torque is developed, tending to make the rotor catch up with the rotating field. This torque tends to accelerate the rotor above its induction-motor speed, because it is pulling the rotor in the direction of rotation. If the rotor has not pulled into step by the time its salient pole slips back halfway to the next salient pole, the synchronizing torque disappears. When the rotor has slipped back just over halfway to the next pole of the rotating magnetic field, the latter will try to pull the rotor pole *back* toward it. The effect of this is to decelerate the rotor so long as the salient pole of the rotor is ahead of the nearest pole of the rotating magnetic field; that is, the synchronizing torque in this case is negative. The average effect of these successive pulls in opposite directions is zero; therefore, unless the rotor can accelerate from the induction speed to synchronous speed while a rotor pole passes a pole of the stator field, the motor will not synchronize at all. In other words, synchronization starts just as the centers of the poles of the rotating field line up with the centers of the salient groups of teeth; synchronization has to be completed before the rotor can slip back as much as half a pole pitch (90 electrical degrees).

(4) *Effects of Inertia and Rotor Resistance.* Pull-in torque of a synchronous motor is defined as the maximum constant torque against which the motor will pull its connected load into synchronism. When a motor is driving a load at a steady speed, all of the internal torque (torque developed by electromagnetic action) is available to carry the load. However, synchronization involves a sudden change in speed, as we saw above, and a torque is required to overcome the inertia of the rotating parts in order to effect this change in speed. Hence the torque available to carry the load is reduced by the amount consumed in overcoming inertia. Now, the inertia torque required to effect the speed change necessary for synchronization is proportional both to the speed change and to the total rotational inertia. Since a low rotor resistance means that, as an induction motor, the motor will come up close to synchronous speed, the speed change required is small, and so is the inertia torque. Hence a low rotor resistance helps the pull-in torque. Load inertia increases the inertia torque, so that load inertia decreases the pull-in torque.

(5) *Effect of Frequency.* The difficulty of designing and building a reluctance motor to operate on a high-frequency circuit goes up very rapidly with frequency. To understand why this is so, consider a 60-hz reluctance motor, and let us try to operate it on 120 hz. If the voltage is doubled, the synchronizing torque would be about the same, but because the frequency is doubled, the synchronization has to take place in half the time. Moreover, the change in speed during synchronization would be somewhat greater because the synchronous speed is now doubled, and the slip, in rpm, would normally be increased in order to obtain locked-rotor torque.

11-5. Polyphase Reluctance Motors. Reluctance motors were discussed a long time ago by Trickey,[1,*] who later published methods for making performance calculations on them.[2] Polyphase reluctance motors use regular polyphase windings in the stator, and a rotor with cutouts, of the general form of Fig. 11-2. The motor starts and comes up to speed as an induction motor, pulls into step and operates as a synchronous motor. A typical speed-torque curve is shown in Fig. 11-3. The induc-

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of chapter.

tion-motor breakdown torque and the average locked-rotor torque are little affected by the rotor cutouts, although the minimum locked-rotor torque is appreciably reduced because of the greater cogging of the synchronous rotor. The synchronous pull-out torque is from one-third to one-half the induction-motor breakdown torque. Because of this, the pull-out torque of reluctance motors is usually made less than the breakdown torque of an induction motor of the same rating; also, reluctance motors are worked a little harder and often use more material, even if in the same frame, than the induction motor of comparable rating.

11-6. Split-phase Reluctance Motors. Split-phase reluctance motors use a rotor construction as described in Art. 11-4, but the stator is wound as a split-phase motor. In other words, a split-phase reluctance motor is a split-phase motor with a reluctance rotor.

11-7. Capacitor-type Reluctance Motors. Capacitor-type reluctance motors are capacitor-type motors with a reluctance rotor. The windings could be any one of the three capacitor types: capacitor-start, two-value capacitor, or permanent-split capacitor. Reluctance motors with a permanent-split capacitor winding are widely used in instrument applications. Figure 11-4 illustrates one such motor. NEMA connection diagrams, given in Figs. 7-3 and 7-4, apply to synchronous capacitor motors

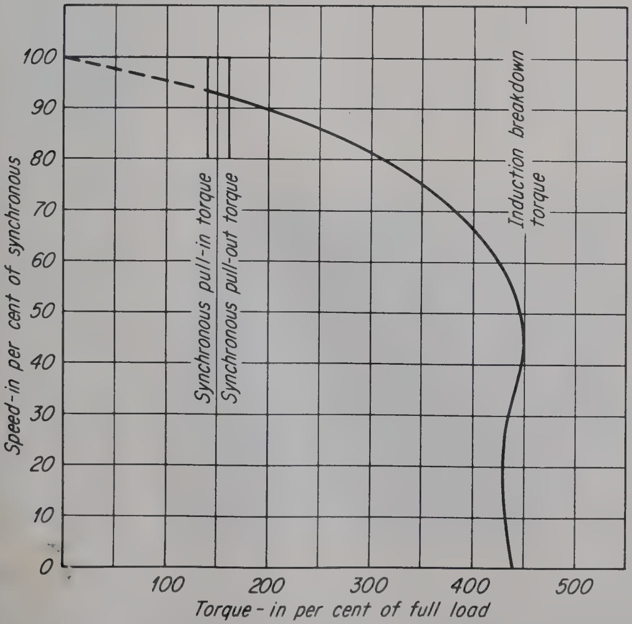


Fig. 11-3 Speed-torque curve of a polyphase reluctance motor.

TABLE 11-1 Performance Specifications of Small 60-hz Reluctance-type Motors, Single-phase, Capacitor*

hp	rpm	Torque, oz-in.			
		Full-load	Locked-rotor	P.I.T.	P.O.T.
1/100	1800	5.6	8.0	6.0	8.0
1/50	1800	11.2	11.2		
1/30	1800	18.6	14.0	18.6	19.5
1/20	1800	28.0	18.0	27.0	28.0
1/10	1800	56.0	22.0	57.0	70.0
1/25	3600	11.2	10	14	16
1/75	900	15	13	15	27

* Data supplied by Ashland Electric Products, Inc.

as well as to asynchronous capacitor motors. Table 11-1 gives some typical performance data.

11-8. Shaded-pole Reluctance Motors. Shaded-pole reluctance motors are shaded-pole motors with reluctance rotors. In Fig. 11-5 are given performance curves for two shaded-pole reluctance motors. In general, these motors are of the skeleton-type construction shown in Figs. 10-5 and 10-27, and they are of approximately the same physical size as the motor for which the characteristics are given in Fig. 10-25. Note that the pull-out torque compares quite favorably with curve 1 of Fig. 10-25, but the pull-in torque is very much less. This is probably due

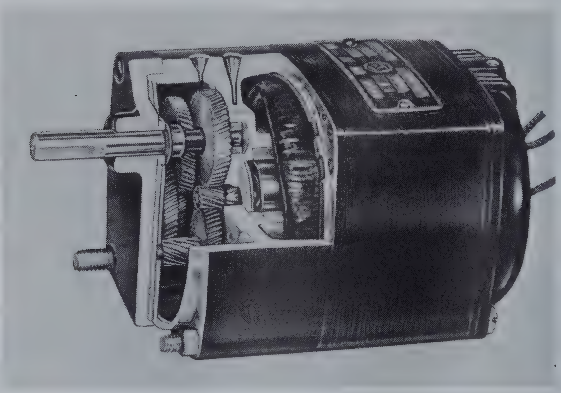


Fig. 11-4 Small capacitor-type synchronous or nonsynchronous gearmotor with built-in helical gear reduction. Standard 60-hz motors are from 0.7 to 300 rpm; output torques are from 110 to 1.3 oz-in., respectively. Motor has three leads and is electrically reversible. (*Bodine Electric Company.*)

to the inherently high slip of the shaded-pole motor. We saw, in Art. 11-4(4), that a high-slip induction motor has reduced pull-in torque.

Some shaded-pole synchronous motors employ a permanent magnet on either end of the rotor and are called *polar synchronous motors.* Such a motor has, with respect to the line voltage, only one rotor position per pair of poles, into which it pulls into step, whereas the conventional reluctance motor has two positions per pair of poles into which it can pull into step.

11-9. Making a Synchronous Motor in the Repair Shop. A reluctance synchronous motor can easily be made in the repair shop from almost any induction motor, whether it be polyphase or single-phase. One should not expect to get much, if any, more than about one-third the rating of the induction motor from which it is made. To make such a synchronous motor, it is recommended that the easiest way is probably to mill flats on the rotor surface, equally spaced, with as many flats as there are poles in the stator winding. The total area of the flats should be of the order of 40 percent of the total cylindrical area of the rotor before the flats were milled; this means that the unmilled cylindrical area will be almost half again as large as the milled flats. In such a case, the rotor resistance rings and the conductors in the flat part will be partially, but not entirely, removed. One must not mill through the resistance rings! Usually this partial removal of conductors and resistance rings will do little appreciable harm. The motor should be able to carry roughly about one-third its nameplate rating.

An alternative, and probably a better, although a more tedious, way is to chisel out 35 to 40 percent of the rotor teeth, without disturbing

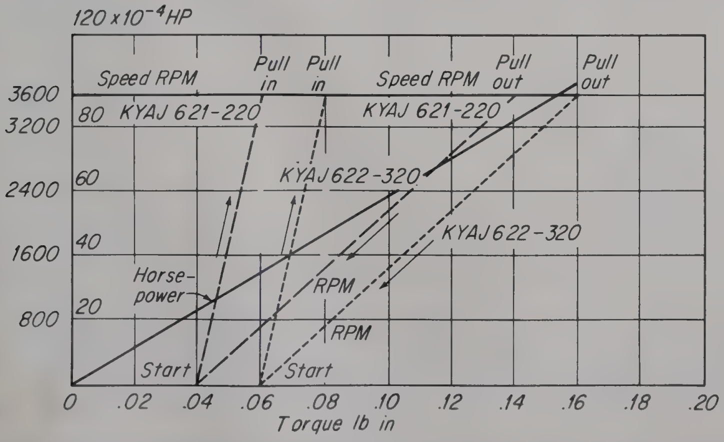


Fig. 11-5 Performance curves of two different shaded-pole reluctance motors, each the size of the motor shown in curve 1, Fig. 10-25. (*Barber-Colman Company.*)

the conductors or resistance rings. The teeth should be cut out at approximately equal intervals, there being as many cutouts as there are poles, as shown in Fig. 11-1.

A motor of this type is particularly useful for checking tachometers, as well as for numerous other applications.

A synchronous motor can be made out of any wound-rotor polyphase induction motor by connecting two of the three-phase secondary leads to one side of a dc source, and the third secondary lead to the other side of the dc source. The motor is first brought up to speed as an induction motor with secondary leads shorted; then the dc excitation is applied. Such a motor is known as a *synchronous induction motor.*

HYSTERESIS MOTORS

Unlike reluctance motors, hysteresis motors pull into or out of step smoothly, because there are no physical "poles" or projections on the rotor. Hence, hysteresis motors can pull into step just about any load they can carry, regardless of the connected inertia of that load. They do not pull into step in any predetermined position with respect to the applied voltage wave. In this respect they differ from reluctance motors which always pull into step with the rotor in one or more positions with respect to the applied voltage; with ordinary reluctance motors, there is one position per pole, but with polarized[21] synchronous motors, there is one position per pair of poles. Although hysteresis motors pull into step smoothly, they may produce a "flutter"[22] (variation in speed during a revolution) which can be objectionable in certain applications.

11-10. Hysteresis Motor Defined. *Hysteresis motor:* A synchronous motor without salient poles and without dc excitation which starts by virtue of the hysteresis losses induced in its hardened steel secondary member by the revolving field of the primary and operates normally at synchronous speed due to the retentivity of the secondary core.

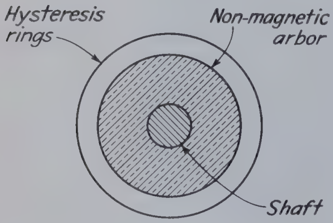


Fig. 11-6 Rotor construction for a hysteresis motor.

11-11. Construction. Rotor construction for a typical hysteresis motor is illustrated in Fig. 11-6. Hysteresis rings of a special magnetic material, such as an alloy of steel, containing 3.5 percent chromium, or 3 to 36 percent cobalt, or alnico, are carried on a supporting arbor made of a nonmagnetic material such as brass; the assembly is carried on the shaft. Hysteresis rings are usually from thin stock and several of them are assembled to give a built-up laminated rotor. In the smallest sizes, the rotor may consist of a single solid ring, or cylinder.

Almost any form of stator construction that sets up a rotating magnetic field can be used; polyphase stators set up more uniform rotating fields than single-phase induction motors, but the latter are quite successful and widely used. Mechanical arrangements of the stator vary widely. Principles of operation of both polyphase and single-phase motors are discussed in the following paragraphs.

11-12. Polyphase Hysteresis Motors. Assume that the rotor of Fig. 11-6 is placed inside a conventional polyphase stator which, when energized, sets up a rotating field such as shown in Fig. 2-4. In the stator iron, the field is an alternating or pulsating field. This point can be more easily understood by referring to Fig. 2-4 and noting what happens to the strength and direction of the flux in the iron back of slot 7 at each of the four times illustrated.

Time 1—Strength—4; direction—clockwise
Time 2—Strength—1; direction—clockwise
Time 3—Strength—2; direction—counterclockwise
Time 4—Strength—4; direction—counterclockwise

Similarly, it can be shown that the iron back of each and every stator slot carries an alternating flux. Likewise, the hysteresis rings on the rotor carry an alternating flux when the rotor is stationary. (It is to be noted that the flux back of each slot is slightly out of time phase with the flux back of each of the other slots, but it is an *alternating flux* back of every slot.) It is well known that an alternating flux in an iron circuit causes losses due to eddy currents and to hysteresis. In a polyphase hysteresis motor, the torque is directly proportional to the hysteresis loss in the rotor. In fact, the hysteresis torque, expressed in synchronous watts, is equal to the hysteresis loss in the rotor at standstill. This is another way of saying that a hysteresis loss of, say, 5 watts, under locked-rotor conditions, produces a locked-rotor torque numerically equal to the running torque required at synchronous speed to develop an output of 5 watts. An interesting comparison is afforded by the polyphase induction motor, in which the locked-rotor torque, expressed in synchronous watts, is numerically equal to the locked-rotor secondary I^2r loss.

In other words, if the rotor of Fig. 11-6 is placed inside the stator of a polyphase motor that is excited to produce a rotating magnetic field, two kinds of iron losses will be produced in the hysteresis rings: eddy-current losses, which produce induction-motor torque; hysteresis losses, which produce hysteresis motor torque. There is an important distinction between these two kinds of torque. Induction-motor torque decreases to zero at synchronous speed, whereas, in an "ideal" hysteresis motor, the hysteresis torque is constant at all speeds from standstill to synchronism; i.e., *locked-rotor, pull-in,* and *pull-out torques* are all mutually equal to one another. Such a speed-torque curve is shown in Fig. 11-7. In a practical motor, the shape of the speed-torque curve is modified somewhat from the theoretical curve shown by harmonics in the rotating field and by other irregularities.

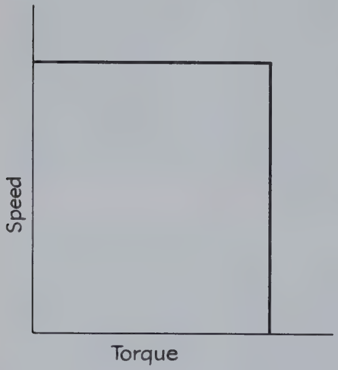


Fig. 11-7 Speed-torque curve of an "ideal" polyphase hysteresis motor.

For a more extended and mathematical treatment of the theory of hysteresis motor torque, the reader is referred to a paper on the subject by B. R. Teare, Jr.[3]

For military applications, polyphase hysteresis motors are built in sizes down to as small as $^{21}/_{32}$ in. in diameter by 1.335 in. long, and weighing but 2 oz. One such motor, built by Globe Industries, develops 0.08 oz-in. torque at 24,000 rpm, which amounts to 1.9 mhp. It can be used on a single-phase 400-hz circuit by using a phase-splitting capacitor. Kearfott build a 400-hz motor which is only ¾ in. in diameter by 1.25 in. long, and which develops about 2 mhp at 8000 rpm. Larger motors, developing more power, are also available.

11-13. Capacitor-type Hysteresis Motors. Capacitor-type hysteresis motors are essentially the same as polyphase hysteresis motors except that the rotating field is set up by a capacitor-motor stator. Rotating fields set up by a capacitor motor are generally elliptical in shape (see

Art. 2-12) rather than circular, as in a polyphase motor. Also, the shape of the ellipse varies with the load because the capacitor cannot maintain balanced conditions at more than one load. Consequently, the actual speed-torque curve of a capacitor hysteresis motor departs more from the "ideal" curve of Fig. 11-7 than does that of a polyphase hysteresis motor. In fractional-horsepower sizes, a capacitor-start stator may often be used, but in sizes below about 1/20, permanent-split motors have found great acceptance.

Performance specifications for one line of permanent-split capacitor hysteresis motors, with horsepower and speed ratings from 5 to 125 mhp, are summarized in Table 11-2. Figure 11-8 shows a photograph of one of these motors. In horsepower ratings smaller than these, shaded-pole hysteresis motors are frequently used.

11-14. Multispeed Hysteresis Motors. Since hysteresis motors usually have a smooth cylindrical rotor, it is a simple matter to obtain more than one speed of operation by putting more than one set of windings on the stator. Polyphase windings can be wound two-speed, using consequent-pole windings. In general, however, it is not practicable to make the windings of a permanent-split capacitor motor consequent-pole, because a consequent-pole connection doubles the electrical space angle between the main and auxiliary windings. It is much better to use two separate sets of windings for a two-speed capacitor motor.

TABLE 11-2 Performance Specifications of Small 60-hz Hysteresis Synchronous Permanent-split Capacitor Single-speed Motors
(Torques are in oz-in.)*

hp	rpm	Full-load torque	Locked-rotor torque
1/200	600	8.4	8.4
1/200	900	5.6	5.6
1/75	900	15.0	15.0
1/100	1800	5.6	5.6
1/75	1800	7.5	7.5
1/50	1800	11.2	11.2
1/20	1800	28.0	28.0
1/15	1800	37.4	37.4
1/12	1800	46.6	46.6
1/20	3600	14.0	14.1
1/8	3600	35.0	35.0

* Data supplied by Ashland Electric Products, Inc.

TABLE 11-3 Performance Specifications of Dual-speed 60-hz Hysteresis Synchronous Permanent-split Capacitor Motors
(Torques are in oz-in.)*

hp		rpm		Full-load torque		Locked-rotor torque	
Lo-speed	Hi-speed	Lo-speed	Hi-speed	Lo-speed	Hi-speed	Lo-speed	Hi-speed
1/300	1/150	600	1200	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6
1/150	1/75	600	1200	11.2	11.2	11.25	11.25
1/37	1/17	600	1200	45	49	38	28
1/300	1/100	600	1800	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6
1/300	1/150	900	1800	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7
1/100	1/50	900	1800	11.2	11.2	11.2	11.2
1/60	1/30	900	1800	18.7	18.7	18.7	18.7
1/25	1/12	900	1800	45	46	30	28
1/60	1/40	1200	1800	14	14	14	14
1/15	1/12	1200	1800	56	46	40	20

* Data supplied by Ashland Electric Products, Inc.

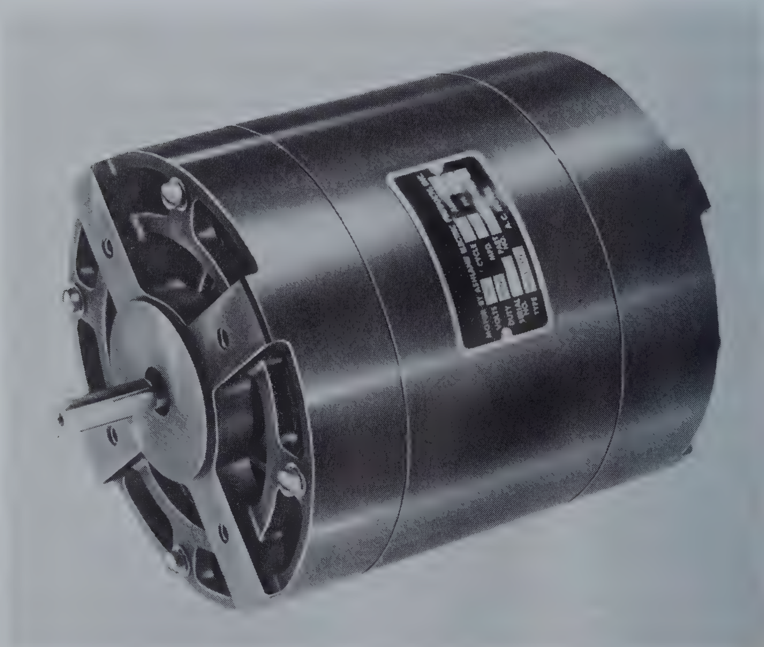


Fig. 11-8 Hysteresis synchronous permanent-split capacitor motor. It may have a single-speed winding with performance as given in Table 11-2, or it may have dual-speed windings with performance as given in Table 11-3. (*Ashland Electric Products.*)

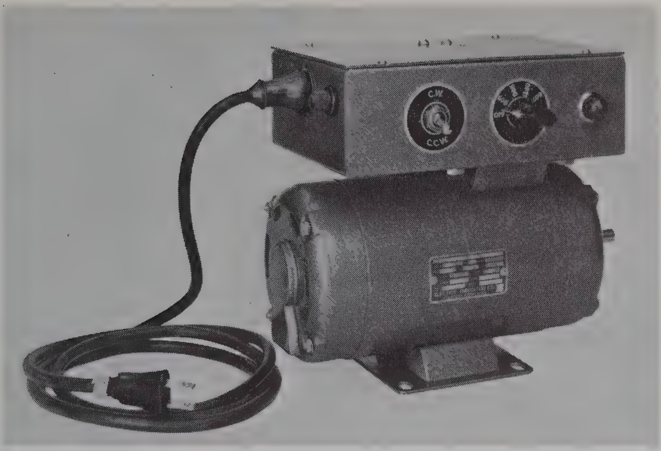


Fig. 11-9 A hysteresis synchronous capacitor motor, arranged for five speeds, selected by the switch on the control box. (*Electric Indicator Company.*)

Performance on one manufacturer's line of two-speed hysteresis motors is summarized in Table 11-3. A number of manufacturers offer two-speed hysteresis motors; some offer three-speed motors. One manufacturer even builds a five-speed hysteresis motor, as shown in Fig. 11-9.

INDUCTOR MOTORS

Inductor-type motors are essentially inductor-type synchronous generators operated as motors. They have the interesting characteristic that they will run only at synchronous speed, or not at all; they do not operate at subsynchronous speeds as can reluctance and hysteresis motors. However, the small inductor-type motors described in the following paragraphs use permanent-magnet excitation, instead of dc excitation as used in conventional inductor alternators. Many small ac timing motors are inductor-type.

11-15. Construction—"50-frame" Motors. Parts and assemblies of a synchronous inductor motor are illustrated in Fig. 11-10. Rotor punchings are mounted on an alnico disk-shaped hub. Two rotors are mounted on the shaft, as shown. Figure 11-11 shows the path of the permanent-magnet flux; all the teeth of one rotor are of the same magnetic polarity, and all the teeth of the second rotor are of the opposite magnetic polarity. There are eight polar projections to the stator punchings, and each of these has a toothed pole face with teeth having the same pitch as the rotor teeth. The stator winding consists of eight

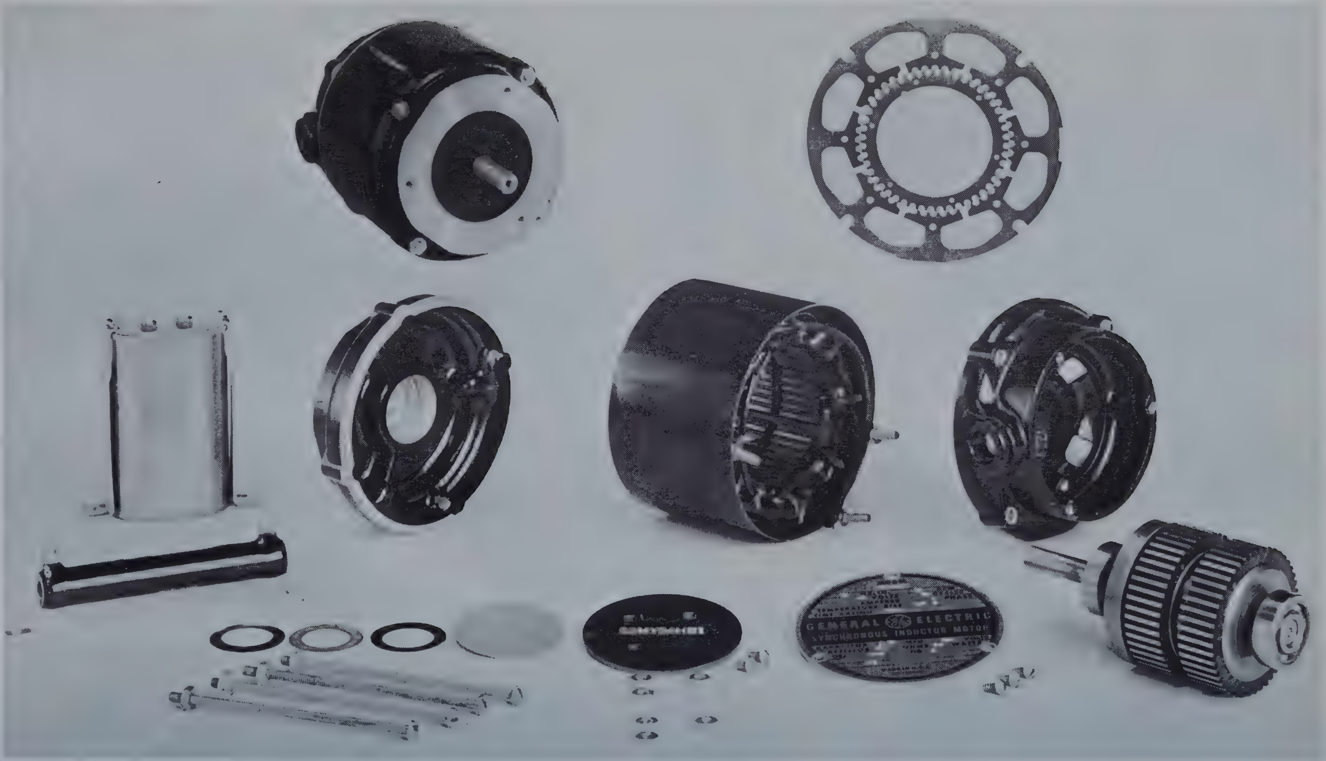


Fig. 11-10 Disassembled view of a synchronous inductor motor, type SMY 50-frame. At the top left is a view of the complete motor; at the top right are shown stator and rotor laminations in detail. Available torques are 75 to 250 oz-in. in steps of ratings. All run at 75 rpm on 60 hz. (*General Electric Company.*)

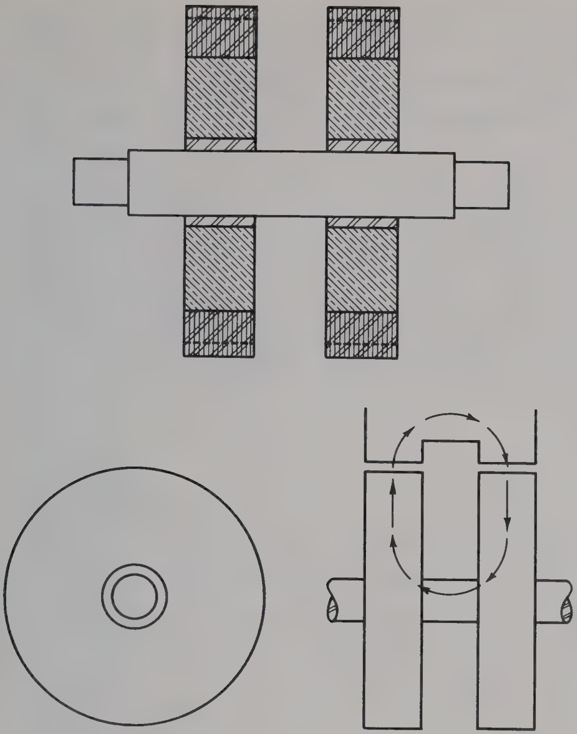


Fig. 11-11 Schematic sectional view of double-rotor inductor motor showing path of permanent-magnet flux. (*General Electric Company.*)

coils, each one wound around one tooth; these coils are connected as in a conventional two-phase winding.

11-16. Principles of Operation. Principles of operation are best explained with the help of Fig. 11-12, which shows eight stator teeth—one per coil—and ten rotor teeth. Stator coils are connected as a four-pole two-phase winding, and excited, say, so as to produce a clockwise-rotating field. Assume, for purposes of discussion, that all the rotor teeth are magnetized as south poles due to the alnico disk. Now, consider the instant of time when coils 1 and 3 are energized so that 1 is a north pole and 3 a south pole. It is obvious that the rotor locks in the position shown because pole 1 attracts A and pole 3 repels teeth C and D equally. (At this same instant, coils 2 and 4 are not excited. Although teeth B and E are attracted to poles 2 and 4 because of the permanent-magnet excitation, these two forces balance each other and produce no net torque.) If the rotor is displaced slightly from the position shown in Fig. 11-12, the magnetic forces tend to return it to that position. One-quarter cycle later, pole 2 becomes a north pole, and poles 1 and 3 are not excited. Since pole 2 is now a north pole, the rotor will turn clockwise until B and 2 are in alignment, with C displaced only one-quarter of a tooth pitch from 3; thus, the rotor has turned a quarter tooth pitch in a quarter cycle of the applied voltage. Poles 3, 4, and 1 successively become north poles at one-quarter-cycle intervals, and at each interval the rotor moves a quarter of a tooth pitch. Thus, in one cycle of power frequency, the rotor moves *one rotor tooth pitch,* and not one stator pole pitch. Therefore, when the speed of an inductor-type motor is figured, each rotor tooth must be counted as *two* poles. In Fig. 11-10, the rotor has 48 teeth; hence, from the equation in Art. 2-17 the synchronous speed for 60-hz excitation becomes

$$\frac{120 \times 60}{2 \times 48} = 75 \text{ rpm}$$

Motors of the double-disk construction are built with two rotor-stator units spaced apart as shown in Fig. 11-10 in order to prevent excessive magnetic leakage in the axial direction. However, common stator coils thread like poles of both units. Rotors, of course, are magnetized so that opposite polarities appear at the peripheries. Stator slots are in

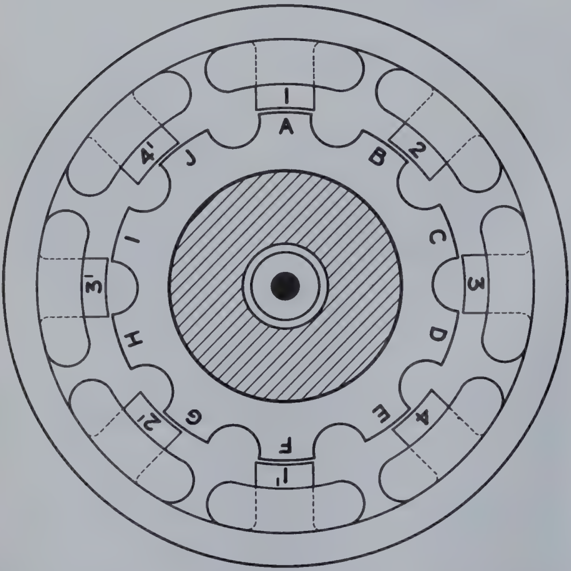


Fig. 11-12 Schematic sectional view of inductor motor with one stator tooth for each stator coil. Actual motor has several teeth per coil (see stator punching in Fig. 11-10), but principles of operation are the same. (*General Electric Company.*)

alignment, but the teeth in two rotors are displaced circumferentially by 180 electrical degrees.

Windings, instead of being two-phase, are usually of the permanent-split capacitor type. *Bifilar-type* motors have two windings in each of the two phases.

11-17. Characteristics and Applications. Inductor motors start almost instantaneously; they attain synchronous speed in a quarter to a half cycle of the power supply, or in 4 to 8 msec. If they did not, they would never synchronize at all! They stop equally fast, for the magnetic rotor provides a built-in braking action, as well as a holding torque—of as much as 10 oz-in.—after the motor has stopped. When necessary, the holding torque can be increased by passing a small amount of direct current through the windings. Current consumption is practically independent of the load, and the motor may be stalled indefinitely without harm.

Servomotor and Stepper-motor Applications. The characteristics just enumerated make this motor well suited to certain off-on servo applications. A circuit as simple as that of Fig. 7-3 can be used for such a purpose. Load inertia should be kept low, not over 2.5 lb-in.^{2}, unless 5° of angular freedom is provided by the coupling, in which case more inertia can be handled. By use of proper circuitry, the motor can be used as a stepper motor, making 96 or 192 steps per revolution, depending upon the circuitry used. (See also Chap. 15.)

Bifilar-type motors are supplied with two windings in each phase to simplify external circuitry when a transistorized switching circuit is used; by pulsing the two coils alternately, the necessity for external polarity reversals is avoided.

11-18. A Small Synchronous Inductor Motor.

Construction. A smaller inductor motor has been developed, using the same basic principles of operation but differing considerably in the arrangement of the active elements, which are shown in Fig. 11-13. The rotor consists of four cup-shaped stampings, each having 36 teeth. These punchings are arranged in two pairs, back to back, and adjacent to the opposite ends of a cylindrical alnico magnet with a large clearance hole for the shaft. The entire assembly is held in a fixture and die-cast as a single unit; since the die-cast material is nonmagnetic, it does not affect axial magnetization of the magnet. The outside diameter is then ground. The stator likewise consists of four cup-shaped metal stampings, each having 36 teeth. These punchings are arranged in two pairs adjacent to each other axially, with the two middle punchings back to back. The entire assembly is encased in a single plastic-molded unit resembling a double spool. The inside bore is ground to expose four complete rings of uniformly spaced teeth in axial alignment.

(1) *Principles of Operation.* Principles of operation are similar to those of the larger motor. In this motor, the stator teeth are axially aligned, while the two rotor punchings comprising one pair are displaced from each other circumferentially by one-half tooth pitch. The second pair of rotor punchings, identical with the first, is displaced circumferentially from the first pair by one-quarter tooth pitch. Consider the moment when the current in one winding is maximum and the current in the other zero; consider only the two stator punchings and the two rotor punchings associated with the excited coil. All 36 teeth of one of the stator punchings are magnetized as north poles; all 36 teeth of the other as 36 south poles. Now, all 72 rotor teeth have the same polarity since they are all on the same end of the alnico magnet; say that they are all south poles. Then, the rotor will assume a position such that 36 rotor teeth line up with the 36 stator teeth magnetized as north poles, like A and 1 in Fig. 11-12; the other 36 rotor teeth will fall halfway between the other 36 stator teeth magnetized as south poles, just as 3 falls between C and D in Fig. 11-12. One-half cycle later, the rotor will have moved one-half a tooth pitch; it might be in either direction without the second phase, which acts similarly but which imparts a definite predetermined direction of rotation to the rotor.

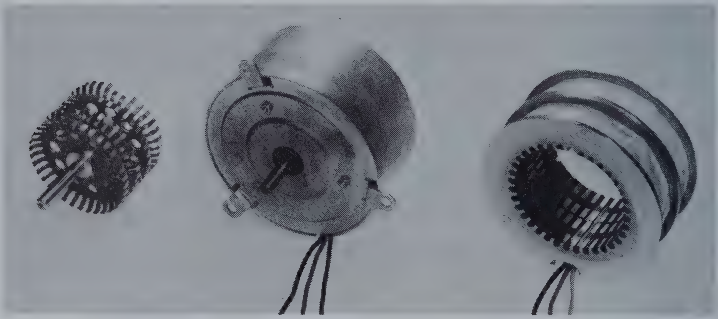


Fig. 11-13 Small synchronous inductor motor ("20-frame"), of different construction than the motor of Fig. 11-10. This motor has a rated torque of 2 oz-in. and runs at 100 rpm on 60 hz. (*General Electric Company.*)

(2) *Characteristics and Applications.* This small inductor motor has many of the same characteristics as its larger brother: quick starting and stopping, automatic holding, etc. It is used chiefly as a timer motor. It is supplied with three external leads to be used as a reversible motor. The torque at synchronous speed is a series of pulsations, with

peak values occurring four times per cycle. Because of this torque pulsation, ball-bearing models can run in the direction opposite to what is intended, though this seldom happens with sleeve-bearing motors. This can be avoided by keeping the motor loaded at all times, preferably near its rated load; it should definitely not be used where the load may overhaul the motor. For a fast, smooth start, the manufacturer recommends allowing 5° of free play between the motor and its load.

TIMING MOTORS

Ac timing motors are small synchronous motors, with power outputs generally only a fraction of a millihorsepower, often as little as 0.001 mhp. They are used in industrial and military control systems for timing any number of functions. Less costly versions are widely produced for driving small clocks, or other timing applications. Usually they are supplied with a built-in gear reduction to give an output-shaft speed of 1 rpm. A popular construction is to put these gears in a pear-shaped cup as shown in Figs. 13-16 and 13-17. Popular electrical types are shaded-pole hysteresis, capacitor hysteresis, and inductor. Manufacturers of timing motors are listed in Table 15-1.

11-19. Multipolar Shaded-pole Hysteresis Motor with a Single Stator Coil. A shaded-pole hysteresis motor of novel construction, used for demand meters, two-rate meters, recording instruments, and time switches, is illustrated in Fig. 11-14. It has but a single cylindrical stator coil which excites 12 main coils. Two washers serve as shading coils for all 12 poles. Synchronous speed of a 12-pole motor is 600-rpm for a 60-hz circuit.

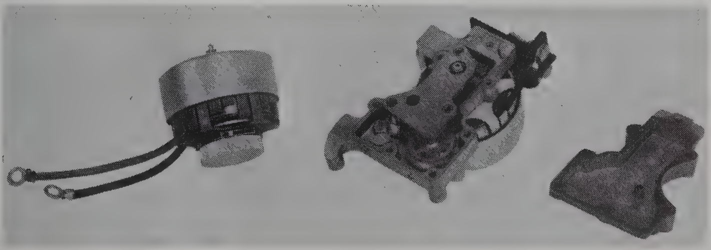


Fig. 11-14 Multipolar shaded-pole hysteresis motor used for demand meters, timing switches, etc. Motor runs at 600 rpm on 60 hz, drawing 1.6 watts input, and delivering an output of 0.005 mhp. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

11-20. Multipolar Capacitor Hysteresis Motor with But Two Stator Coils. A 16-pole capacitor hysteresis motor of essentially the same construction discussed in the preceding article is shown in Fig. 11-15. Schematic wiring diagrams are given in the figure for a three-lead reversible arrangement or for a two-lead nonreversible arrangement. When the two stator coils are identical, the motor can be operated from a two-phase supply. Motors of this construction are available for 400-hz circuits and also for 60-hz circuits. On the former, they operate at 3000 rpm; on the latter, at 450 rpm.

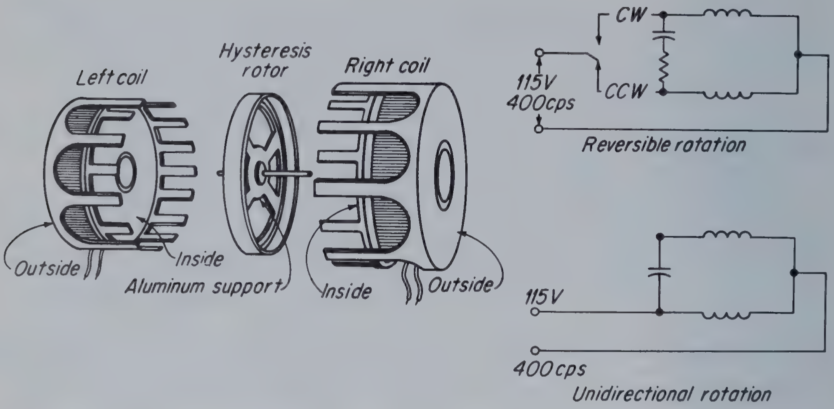


Fig. 11-15 Typical capacitor-type 400-hz timing motor. (*Reprinted from Machine Design.*)

11-21. Inductor-type Timing Motors. Inductor-type timing motors may be of the type described in Arts. 11-15 to 11-18, or they may use a shaded-pole primary to determine direction of rotation. As pointed out earlier, such motors run either synchronously or not at all; they have to synchronize in a quarter to a half cycle or less, or they will not synchronize at all. Also, they are limited in the amount of inertia they can pull into step.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Trickey, P. H.: The Non-excited Synchronous Motor, *Elec. J.*, April, 1933.
2. ———: Performance Calculations on Polyphase Reluctance Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, 1946, pp. 191–193.
3. Teare, B. R., Jr.: Theory of Hysteresis Motor Torque, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 59, 1940, p. 907.
4. Pearce, R. M.: Small Synchonous Timing Motors Can Assist Automatic Operation, *Elec. Manufacturing*, March, 1945, p. 109.

5. MacGahan, Paul: A Slow-speed Synchronous Time Motor Operates on the Remanence or Hysteresis Principle, *The Instrument Maker,* July-August, 1942.
6. Chi Yung Lin: Characteristics of Reluctance Machines, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 70, pt. II, 1951, pp. 1071–1077.
7. Chang, S. S. L.: An Analysis of Unexcited Synchronous Capacitor Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 70, pt. II, 1951, pp. 1978–1982.
8. Talaat, M. E.: Steady-state and Transient Synthesis of 3-phase Reluctance Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 70, pt. II, 1951, pp. 1963–1970.
9. Chi Yung Lin: Equivalent Circuits of Reluctance Machines, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 71, pt. III, 1952, pp. 1–9.
10. Cochran, E. V.: What Makes a Hysteresis Motor Run? *Elec. Manufacturing,* vol. 51, February, 1953, p. 107.
11. Merrill, F. W.: Characteristics of Permanent-Magnet Synchronous Motors, *Elec. Manufacturing,* January, 1956, p. 88.
12. Helmick, C. G., and Bachelor, A. T.: Reluctance Motors for Adjustable-frequency Drives, *Westinghouse Engineer,* July, 1956, p. 114.
13. Douglas, J. F. H.: Snychronous Performance of Reluctance Motors by Improved Circle Diagrams, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 77, 1958, pp. 1038–1041.
14. Lee, C. H.: The Theory and Design of a Very Slow-speed Reluctance Motor, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 78, 1959, pp. 1683–1688.
15. Douglas, J. F. H.: Current Loci of Permanent-magnet Sychronous Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 78, pt. III, 1959, pp. 76–78.
16. ———: Pull-in Criterion for Reluctance Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 79, 1960, pp. 139–142.
17. Helmick, C. G., and Chapman, J. H.: The Modern Hysteresis Motor, *Westinghouse Engineer,* July, 1961, pp. 127–128.
18. Bekey, A.: New High-performance Designs for Small Synchronous Motors, *Electro-Technology,* November, 1961, p. 85.
19. Merrill, F. W.: The Permanent-field Synchronous Motor, *Electro-Technology,* December, 1961, p. 113.
20. Anderson, W. A., and Haegh, J. E.: Two-speed Non-excited Synchronous Motors, *Electro-Technology,* January, 1962, p. 60.
21. Winston, Joseph: The Polarized Synchronous Motor, *Electro-Technology,* July, 1963, p. 92.
22. Miller, Norman A.: Hysteresis Motor Flutter, *Electro-Technology,* July, 1964, pp. 123–127.

Chapter 12

Universal Motors

The universal motor is characterized by its ability to operate, with substantially the same performance, on direct as well as on alternating current of frequencies up to 60 hz. It develops more horsepower per pound than other ac motors, principally because of its high speed. These motors are series-wound and have series characteristics on both alternating and direct current, except when governors or other means are used to control their speed. No-load speeds are high, sometimes well over 20,000 rpm; but the armatures are designed so that they will not be damaged at these speeds. Power ratings vary from 10 mhp to 1 hp, for continuous-rated motors, and even higher for intermittent-rated motors. They are usually designed for full-load operating speeds of 4000 to 16,000 rpm in the larger horsepower ratings, and up to 20,000 or more in the smaller power ratings. At the higher speeds, better universal characteristics (i.e., more nearly the same performance characteristics on both alternating and direct current) can be obtained, as well as more output per pound. Universal motors are generally custom-built for a specific application and are very often sold as parts rather than as complete motors. Usually they are not off-the-shelf items, though a number of companies do stock them.

12-1. Universal Motor Defined. A *universal motor* is a series-wound or a compensated series-wound motor designed to operate at approximately the same speed and output on either direct current or single-phase alternating current of a frequency not greater than 60 hz and of approximately the same rms voltage.

12-2. Application and Torque Characteristics. Very popular applications for universal motors are portable drills, saws, routers, vacuum cleaners, sewing machines, food mixers, blenders, and many others. There used to be two major types of universal motors, *noncompensated* and *compensated*, but the latter has now largely disappeared. The noncompensated motor usually is built with concentrated or salient poles. The speed-torque curve of a noncompensated concentrated-pole universal motor, for both ac and dc operation, is given in Fig. 12-1. Similar speed-torque curves for a compensated motor are given in Fig. 12-2. It is to be noted that the compensated universal motor has better universal characteristics (i.e., more nearly the same speed on both alternating and direct current) than the noncompensated motor. It is also to be

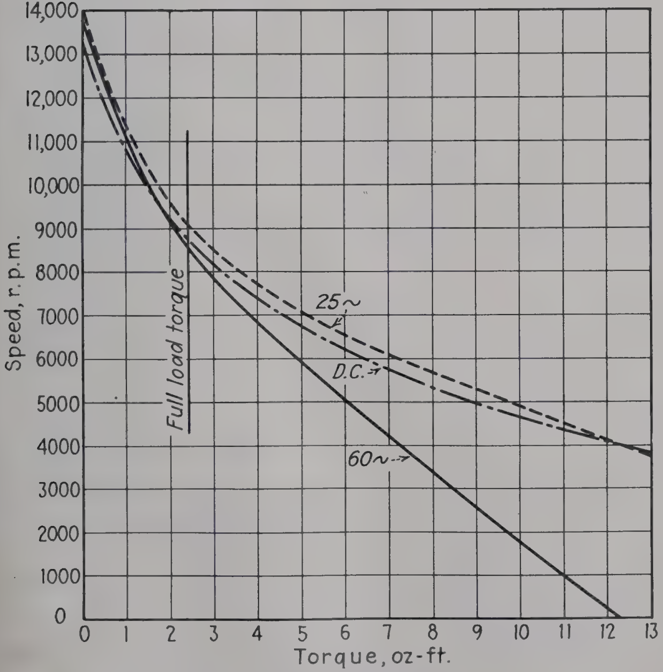


Fig. 12-1 Speed-torque curves of a noncompensated concentrated-pole universal motor rated at ¼ hp, 8000 rpm.

noted that the superiority of the compensated motor as regards universal characteristics is more marked at low speeds than at high speeds.

The noncompensated motor is less expensive and simpler in construction and is more generally used for those reasons.

It is to be noted that with either type, the speed drops off rapidly with an increase in load and increases with a decrease in load. This characteristic is most desirable in vacuum-cleaner service, for if the cleaner is used under conditions which decrease the volume of air handled, the load on the motor decreases. This decrease in motor load is accompanied by increased motor speed and increased vacuum, so that the cleaner will actually handle more air than it would if a constant-speed motor were used. Likewise, this characteristic of speeding up on light loads is very desirable in the case of portable drills, for the motor will drive small drills at high speed and larger drills at a lower speed.

When dc distribution networks were commonly used in the downtown areas of large cities, universal motors were popular for driving business machines of all kinds, because of their ability to operate on either direct or alternating current. Constant speed, when needed, was obtained by means of a mechanical governor. Now that such dc distribution networks have all but disappeared, the universal motor in business machines has been replaced by some form of induction motor which is inherently constant-speed, quieter, and less expensive; moreover, the induction motor does not produce the radio interference of a commutator-type motor. Also, when the application requires an adjustable-speed motor, electronic speed-control means are now feasible.

No industry-wide standards of horsepower and speed ratings have been established for universal motors, because these motors are often

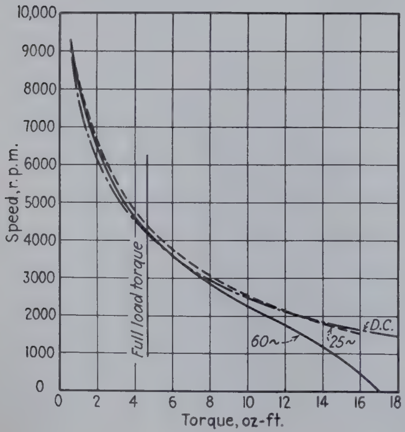


Fig. 12-2 Speed-torque curves of a compensated universal motor rated at ¼ hp, 4000 rpm.

TABLE 12-1 Dimensions for Universal Motor Parts (For explanation of symbols, see Fig. 12-3)
(All dimensions in inches)*

BH (+0.000) (−0.002)	CJ Max.	CK†	CL	CM	CN	CP†	CR‡ (±0.010)	CS	CT	CU (+0.0000) (−0.0003)	CV
2.125	1 7/16	1 1/2	1 53/64	None	None	29/32	43/64	3/16	7/8	0.2363	5/16
2.125	1 11/16	1 3/4	1 53/64	None	None	31/32	45/64	1/4	7/8	0.2363	5/16
2.125	1 15/16	2	1 53/64	None	None	31/32	45/64	1/4	7/8	0.2363	5/16
2.125	2 3/16	2 1/4	1 53/64	None	None	31/32	45/64	1/4	7/8	0.2363	5/16
2.437	1 7/16	1 1/2	2 1/8	None	None	1 1/32	49/64	1/4	7/8	0.2363	3/8
2.437	1 11/16	1 3/4	2 1/8	None	None	1 1/32	49/64	1/4	7/8	0.2363	3/8
2.437	1 15/16	2	2 1/8	None	None	1 1/32	49/64	1/4	7/8	0.2363	3/8
2.437	2 3/16	2 1/4	2 1/8	None	None	1 5/32	53/64	3/8	7/8	0.2363	3/8
2.875	1 1/2	1 9/16	2 7/16	None	None	1 5/32	55/64	1/4	1	0.3151	3/8
2.875	1 3/4	1 13/16	2 7/16	None	None	1 9/32	59/64	3/8	1	0.3151	3/8
2.875	2	2 1/16	2 7/16	None	None	1 9/32	59/64	3/8	1	0.3151	3/8
2.875	2 1/4	2 5/16	2 7/16	None	None	1 9/32	59/64	3/8	1	0.3151	3/8
3.187	1 1/2	1 19/32	2 3/4	1 11/16	2 9/32	1 3/16	59/64	1/4	1 1/8	0.3151	1/2
3.187	1 7/8	1 31/32	2 3/4	1 11/16	2 9/32	1 5/16	63/64	3/8	1 1/8	0.3151	1/2
3.187	2 1/4	2 11/32	2 3/4	1 11/16	2 9/32	1 7/16	1 3/64	1/2	1 1/8	0.3151	1/2
3.187	2 5/8	2 23/32	2 3/4	1 11/16	2 9/32	1 7/16	1 3/64	1/2	1 1/8	0.3151	1/2
3.687	2	2 3/32	3 1/4	None	None	1 1/2	1 5/32	3/8	1 1/4	0.3939	5/8
3.687	2 3/8	2 15/32	3 1/4	None	None	1 5/8	1 7/32	1/2	1 1/4	0.3939	5/8
3.687	2 3/4	2 27/32	3 1/4	None	None	1 13/16	1 19/64	3/4	1 1/4	0.3939	5/8
3.687	3 1/8	3 7/32	3 1/4	None	None	1 13/16	1 19/64	3/4	1 1/4	0.3939	5/8
3.687	3 5/8	3 23/32	3 1/4	None	None	1 13/16	1 19/64	3/4	1 1/4	0.3939	5/8
4.375	2 5/16	2 13/32	4 1/8	None	None	1 15/16	1 27/64	3/4	1 5/8	0.4724	7/8
4.375	2 11/16	2 25/32	4 1/8	None	None	1 15/16	1 27/64	3/4	1 5/8	0.4724	7/8
4.375	3 1/16	3 5/32	4 1/8	None	None	2 3/16	1 35/64	1	1 7/8	0.4724	7/8
4.375	3 7/16	3 17/32	4 1/8	None	None	2 7/16	1 43/64	1 1/4	1 7/8	0.4724	7/8
4.375	3 15/16	4 1/32	4 1/8	None	None	2 7/16	1 43/64	1 1/4	1 7/8	0.4724	7/8

* From NEMA MG1-18.058 5-17-53. NOTE: NEMA source gives additional dimensions.

† Housing design must permit clearance for these dimensions.

‡ Tolerance refers to housing.

NOTE: For meaning of letter dimensions, see Fig. 12-3.

sold as sets of parts, because the choice of possible full-load operating speeds is virtually unlimited, and because most of the applications for them are highly specialized. However, the dimension standards in Table 12-1 have been established by NEMA.[11,*]

---

* For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

The standard direction of rotation is counterclockwise, facing the end opposite the shaft extension.

12-3. Essential Parts of the Universal Motor.

(1) *The Concentrated-pole Noncompensated Motor.* The parts for a concentrated-pole noncompensated universal motor for a built-in application are illustrated in Fig. 12-3. The shape of the stator punching and that of the complete wound stator are shown. The armature has a commutator and is wound like the armature of a dc motor or like the rotor of a repulsion-start induction motor. Figure 12-3 also serves to explain the lettered dimensions given in Table 12-1. Names of the various parts and a typical arrangement of them in a motor are given in Fig. 12-4.

Since universal motors are so generally supplied as parts, NEMA has prepared Authorized Engineering Information (MG1-18.061)[11] on common practice in motor frame designs for universal motor parts, in order to assist the user in making proper use of them. The following is abstracted from this source.

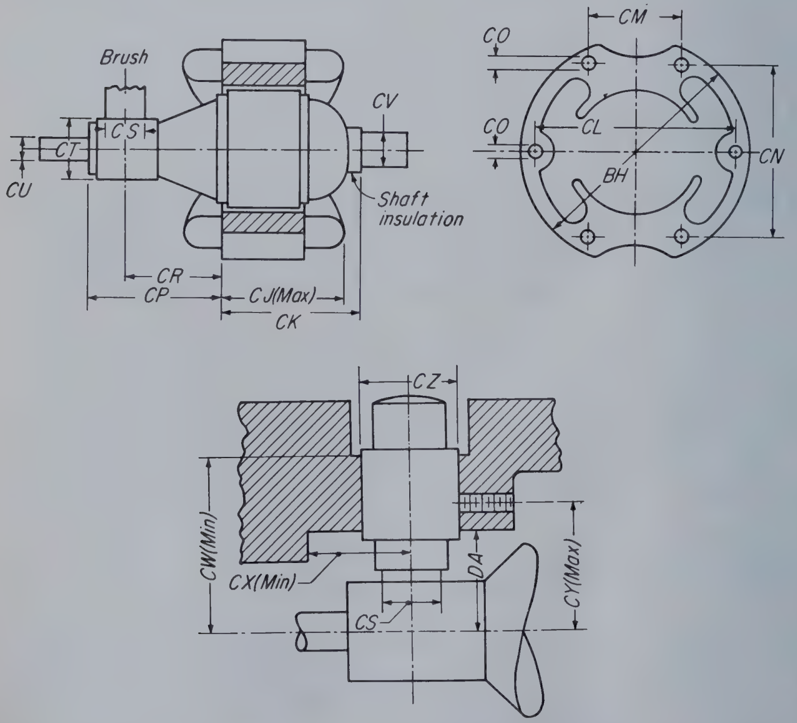


Fig. 12-3 Outline drawing showing arrangement of parts, together with letters, identifying the dimensions tabulated in Table 12-1. (*From NEMA MG*1-18.058.)

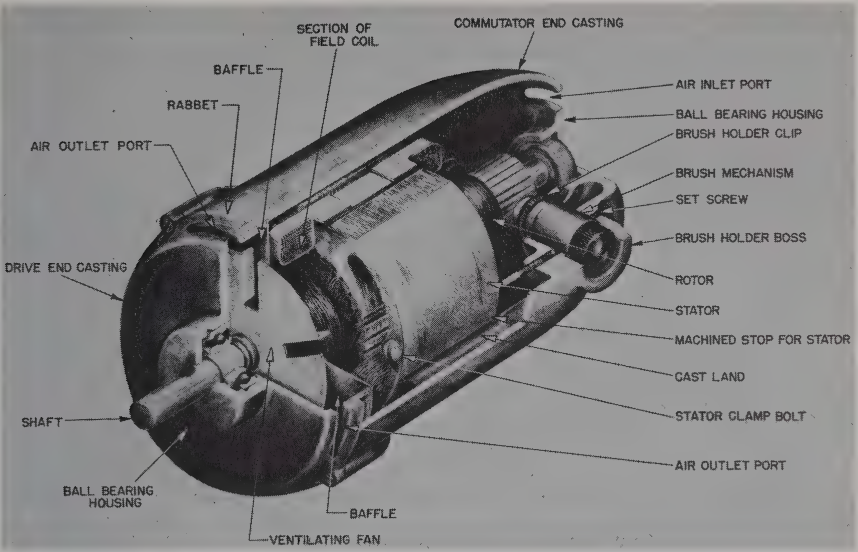


Fig. 12-4 Identification and typical arrangement of the parts of a typical noncompensated salient-pole universal motor. (*From NEMA.*)

Frames are of the open type to permit self-ventilation and consist of two aluminum castings which are held together by screws entering holes tapped in one of the castings. Bolts passing through holes in the stator laminations are rarely used because a fan small enough to clear them is usually too small to provide adequate cooling. The front-end casting is relatively deep, and is machined to accommodate the stator, which is, almost without exception, mounted on narrow cast lands, permitting the passage of cooling air over the stator laminations: it is also designed to accommodate the brushholders and bearings. The drive-end casting is relatively shallow and often is a part of the driven device as well as a part of the motor housing. Ventilation is provided by a large-diameter centrifugal fan, arranged to draw air in the commutator end over the motor parts and between field coils, exhausting through openings in the drive-end casting, provided for that purpose: a baffle is provided to prevent recirculation of the cooling air inside the motor.

(2) *Distributed-field Compensated Universal Motors.* The armature of a distributed-field compensated universal motor is generally the same in appearance as that of the one used in noncompensated universal motors. However, the stator punching looks very much like the stator punching for a two-pole induction motor. Some compensated universal motors use two windings: a *field winding* and a *compensating winding,* displaced 90° from the main winding. Other compensated universal motors use a single winding and shift the brushes so that the single

winding serves two purposes, as a single winding does in the repulsion-start motor. These winding arrangements and the reason for the compensating winding are discussed more fully in Art. 12-6.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

12-4. Operation on Direct Current. The theory of the operation of the dc series motor is discussed in Arts. 13-3 and 13-6 and does not need to be repeated here.

12-5. Operation on Alternating Current. If alternating current is applied to a series motor, it will start and run. The current in the armature circuit, of course, reverses 120 times per second (for 60 hz), but the field excitation and stator flux likewise reverse 120 times per second; and these reversals take place *in time phase with the armature current.* On alternating current, the torque varies instantaneously 120 times per second, but the torque developed is always in one direction. (It is, perhaps, superfluous to say that the motor operates in the same direction of rotation on alternating current that it does on direct current.) However, there are some effects present on ac operation that are not present on dc operation.

(1) *Laminated-field Construction.* Because the stator flux alternates, it is necessary to use a laminated-field structure in order to reduce hysteresis and eddy-current losses.

(2) *Reactance Voltage.* In a simple dc circuit, the current is limited by the resistance. In a simple ac circuit, the current is limited by the impedance and not solely by the ohmic resistance. The impedance is made up of two components, resistance and reactance. Reactance is present in an ac circuit whenever a magnetic circuit is set up by the current flowing in the electric circuit. Reactance is, therefore, present to a marked degree in the case of a universal motor. This reactance voltage, which is present during operation on ac but not on dc operation, absorbs some of the line voltage, reducing the voltage applied to the armature, so that the speed of the motor, for any given current, tends to be lower on alternating than on direct current.* In other words, the effective voltage on the armature, for any given current, is less on ac than on dc operation.

(3) *Saturation Effect.* In the preceding paragraph, it was shown that the tendency of the reactance voltage is to make the speed lower on

---

* The *IR* drop and the *reactance voltage* of both the armature and field are all substracted vectorially from the voltage applied to the motor to obtain the counter electromotive force. The counter emf, hence speed, is reduced by the reactance voltage regardless of whether the latter appears in the field or in the armature.

alternating than on direct current. There is another effect which gives the opposite tendency. This effect is simply that a given *root-mean-square value* of alternating current will produce less rms alternating flux than will a direct current of the same value because of saturation effects in the iron.* At low currents and high speeds, the reactance voltage is relatively unimportant; and this saturation effect usually causes the motor to operate at a higher no-load speed on alternating than on direct current. Likewise, under 25-hz operation, the saturation effect is as pronounced as on 60 hz, but the effect of the reactance voltage is appreciably less, in the ratio of 25:60. The net result is that the motor may sometimes operate at a higher speed on 25 hz than it does on direct current. (See Fig. 12-1.)

(4) *Commutation and Brush Life.* The commutation on alternating current is substantially poorer than on direct current, and the brush life is likewise less. The principal reason for the poorer commutation on alternating current is because of the voltage induced in the short-circuited coils undergoing commutation by the transformer action of the alternating main field. No such transformer voltage exists when the motor is operated on direct current.

12-6. Compensated Universal Motors.

(1) *Purpose of Compensating Winding.* It was mentioned in the preceding article that the principal reason why the speed is lower on alternating than on direct current under normal load conditions is the presence of the reactance voltage. The reactance voltage, or simply reactance, occurs both in the armature and in the field. The reactance voltage due to the field cannot be eliminated—unless the working field is eliminated—but the reactance voltage due to the armature can be practically eliminated by the use of a compensating winding. The compensating winding is a winding connected in series with the armature and so arranged that the ampere-turns of this winding oppose and neutralize the ampere-turns of the armature. To obtain this compensation, the compensating winding is displaced 90 electrical degrees from the field winding. When properly porportioned, the compensating winding virtually nullifies the effect of the reactance voltage due to the armature. There is another equally important effect, viz., that the com-

---

* When the instantaneous value of the alternating current is exactly equal to the rms value, the magnetic flux will be substantially the same as it would be with the same amount of direct current flowing through the windings. Forty-five degrees later in time, the instantaneous value of the alternating current has risen to its *peak* value, which is 1.414 × its rms value. Owing to saturation of the iron parts of the magnetic circuit, the flux does not increase 41.4 percent; and therefore, the effective, or rms, value of the flux is less for a given effective value of alternating current than for the same value of direct current.

pensating winding eliminates the distortion of the main-field flux and improves the commutation; a slight overcompensation still further assists commutation.

One way to keep the field reactance down is to keep the product of field turns and flux as low as possible. The weaker the field is made, the stronger must the armature be (the more turns must it have) to develop the necessary torque and output. A strong armature will distort a weak field, and there are definite practical limits as to how low the ratio

$$\frac{\text{Field ampere-turns}}{\text{Armature ampere-turns}}$$

can be made. When a compensating winding is used, this ratio can be made lower than with a noncompensated motor.

To summarize: (1) The compensating winding neutralizes the reactance voltage that would be present in the armature; (2) it practically eliminates field distortion due to the armature, and for this reason, it permits the designer to take reactance out of the field and put it into the armature where it can be neutralized; and (3) it is a pronounced boon to commutation. As a matter of fact, it is really due to the assistance to commutation that the compensated motor can be operated at weak fields. The compensated universal motor is in reality a miniature edition of an ac series motor such as used in railway service.

(2) *Two-field Compensated Motor.* As mentioned previously, the compensating winding is displaced 90 electrical degrees from the main winding. Such an arrangement is shown in the distribution chart of Fig. 12-5*a*. In Fig. 12-5*b*, the direction of current flow in each of the stator slots and in each of the windings is shown. Likewise, the neutral position of the brushes is shown as opposite slots 18, 9, and 18. (The actual physical position of the brushes depends on how the connections are made to the commutator, but these positions are shown as the reference axes for the brushes.)

(3) *Single-field Compensated Motor.* A little study will reveal how the two windings of Fig. 12-5*a* and *b* can be replaced by a single winding. For example, it will be noted that, in slots 7, 8, 16, and 17, the effect of one winding is to cancel the effect of the second winding. Therefore, since these conductors mutually cancel one another, the conductors themselves *could be omitted without affecting the operation of the motor.* These conductors are shown canceled in Fig. 12-5*c*. Now then, we can reconnect the conductors in the various slots shown in Fig. 12-5*c*, and we have here a single winding, the distribution

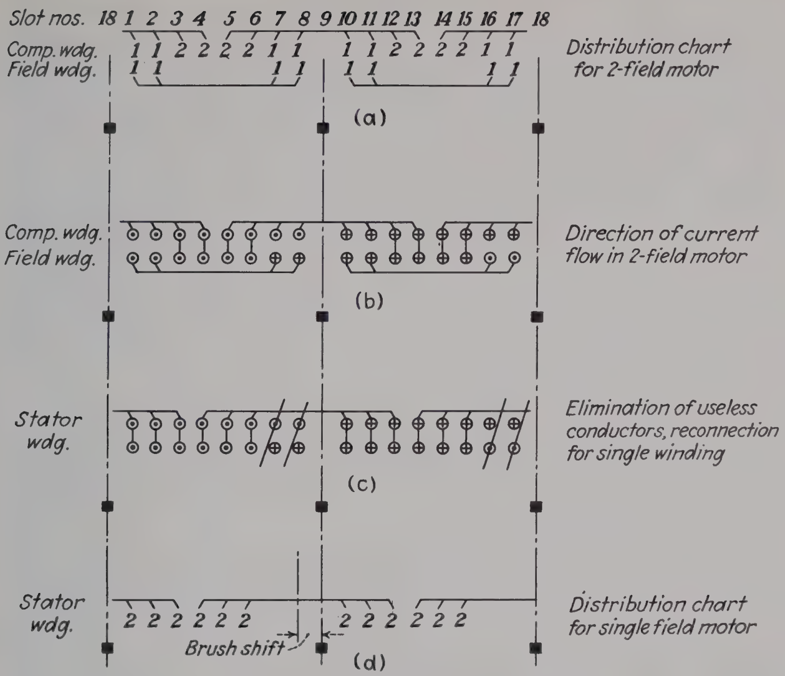

Slot nos. 18 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18
Comp. wdg.
Field wdg.
Distribution chart for 2-field motor
(a)
Comp. wdg.
Field wdg.
Direction of current flow in 2-field motor
(b)
Stator wdg.
Elimination of useless conductors, reconnection for single winding
(c)
Stator wdg.
Distribution chart for single field motor
Brush shift
(d)

Fig. 12-5 The equivalence of a single-field winding with shifted brushes to two separate windings.

chart of which is shown in Fig. 12-5*d*. Now the brushes were not moved, but the flux conditions for the same current in the single winding shown in Fig. 12-5*d* are exactly the same as the flux conditions for that same current in the two windings given in Fig. 12-5*a*. It is to be noted, however, that the center of this new single stator winding is displaced one slot from the brushes. In other words, the one stator winding with shifted brushes is exactly equivalent* to the two windings.

Thus, the net result of all the foregoing is to show that a single winding, as in Fig. 12-5*d, can give the same magnetic fields as the two windings represented in Fig.* 12-5*a, provided that the brushes are shifted one slot from the neutral axis of the stator winding.* The two-field motor, however, can be reversed by changing the connections of the main winding; but, in order to reverse the single-field motor, it is necessary to shift the brushes, just as in the case of a repulsion motor. The single-field motor uses less copper, and has less I^2R losses than its two-field equivalent.

---

* For an explanation of this term, see Art. 3-1.

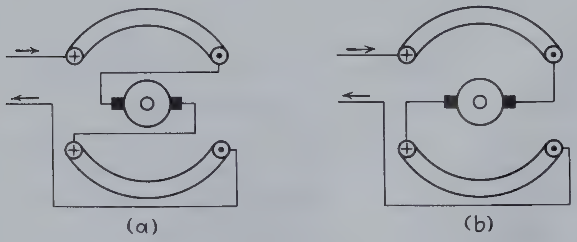
STATOR WINDINGS

12-7. Concentrated-pole Noncompensated Motors. The stator and brush-holder connections of a simple two-lead nonreversible concentrated-pole noncompensated universal motor are given in Fig. 12-6. It will be noted that the brushes are located halfway between the centers of the stator coils. When the brushes are so located, the connections from the armature coils to the commutator cannot be connected *on center,** but they must be either *thrown left** or *thrown right,** i.e., the coil connections are brought straight out to commutator bars approximately opposite one of the two slots in which one of the two sides of the coil lies. In Fig. 12-6, arrows are drawn to assist in tracing the polarity of the stator coils. If the current is assumed to flow in through the upper leads and through the stator coils as indicated by the plus signs and dots and if, further, the armature connections are known, the direction of rotation can be predetermined as indicated in the tabulation of Fig. 12-6.

Caution: *"Off-neutral" Connection.* In Fig. 12-6, it is shown that the armature could be caused to rotate in either direction simply by interchanging the leads on the brush holders. From this, it should not be inferred that any two-lead noncompensated motor can be reversed satisfactorily simply by interchanging the brush-holder leads, for it is a fairly common practice to connect the armature one or two bars or more "off neutral" in order to obtain better commutation, better torque characteristics, and better universal characteristics. Such a motor can

---

* See Fig. 12-11.


(a) (b)

Rotation

Front or back lead winding	Connections are	
	Thrown left	Thrown right
Front	C.C.W.	C.W.
Back	C.W.	C.C.W.

Rotation

Front or back lead winding	Connections are	
	Thrown left	Thrown right
Front	C.W.	C.C.W.
Back	C.C.W.	C.W.

(Progressive windings assumed in all cases)

Fig. 12-6 Motor wiring and brush-holder connection diagrams for a series motor. From these diagrams and the table, the direction of rotation can be predetermined.

be reversed by interchanging brush-holder connections, but the commutation will be much poorer and the torque at any given normal operating speed may be reduced by as much as 50 percent. If a universal motor shows such symptoms, it may be that its brush-holder leads were improperly interchanged!

12-8. Split-series Electrically Reversible (Reversing) Motors. The armature and field connections of a split-series three-wire reversible concentrated-pole universal motor are shown in Fig. 12-7. With this arrangement, one stator coil is used to obtain one direction of rotation, and the other stator coil to obtain the other direction of rotation, only one stator coil being in the circuit at a time. Needless to say, the armature connections must be on neutral in order to obtain satisfactory operation in both directions of rotation. It is interesting to note that the external reversing control of such a motor is identical with the control of a reversible high-torque capacitor motor described in Art. 7-17; the split-series motor is electrically reversible and may be used for plugging service.

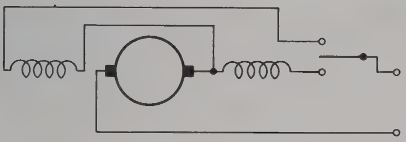


Fig. 12-7 Connections for concentrated-pole noncompensated split-series three-wire reversible universal motors.

12-9. Tapped Field Winding. Speed control of concentrated-pole noncompensated universal motors is sometimes effected by using tapped-field windings. Such an arrangement is represented in Fig. 12-8. There may be three taps as shown there, or simply the two taps 1 and 2. Taps 1, 2, and 3 give *low*, *medium*, and *high* speed, respectively. Sections A and B may comprise one field coil, and section C the other; it is to be noted, however, that the wire sizes in these three sections may all differ from one another.

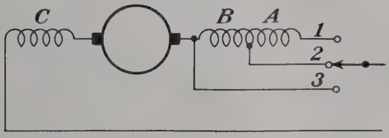


Fig. 12-8 Connections for concentrated-pole noncompensated tapped-field two- or three-speed nonreversible universal motors.

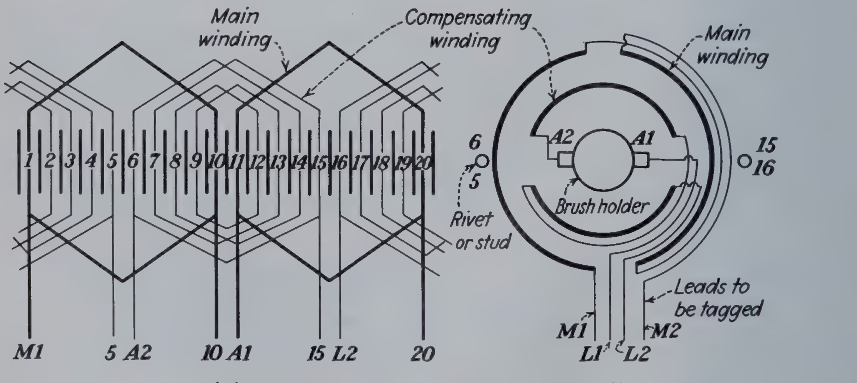
It should be pointed out that the tapped-field universal motor still has *varying-speed* characteristics, regardless of which tap is used; but for fans, blowers, and many other applications, satisfactory control of the speed can be obtained.

Sometimes a tapped field is employed merely to obtain the same speed operating on direct current as on alternating current; for operation on alternating current, tap 2 is used, and for operation on direct current, tap 1. With such a tap properly located, it is possible to make the motor operate at the same speed on 60 hz as it does on direct current for any *one* given torque load; but the speeds on direct and on alternating current may not be the same at any other load, although they will be closer together than if no tap were used.

12-10. Two-field Compensated Windings. The stator and brush-holder connections for a reversible two-winding compensated universal motor are given in Fig. 12-9. It is to be noted that the compensating winding and armature must be reversed as a unit; it is not sufficient to reverse only the armature.

12-11. Two-field Compensated Split-series Windings. Two-field compensated universal motors can be connected as split-series motors. Here again it is to be noted that the compensating winding and armature are permanently connected in series as a single unit, regardless of the direction of rotation.

12-12. Single-field Compensated Motor. In Art. 12-6, it was explained that a single distributed field winding could accomplish the same results as two windings displaced 90° apart, provided that the brush axis is



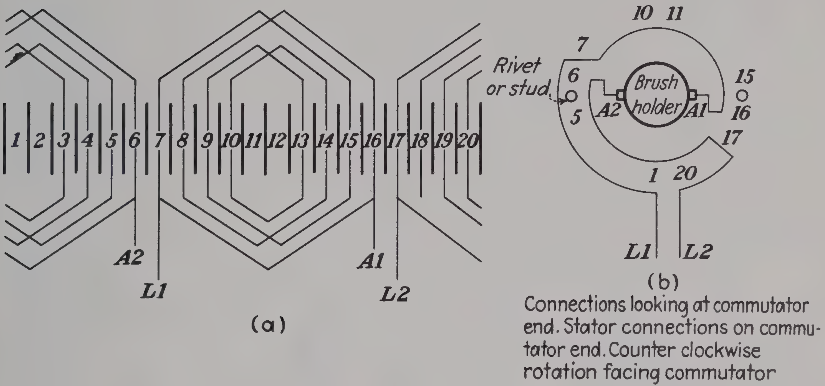
(a) (b)

Connections looking at commutator end.
Stator connections at commutator end.

For clockwise rotation connect *L1* to *M2* and connect *M1* and *L2* to line.
For counter clockwise rotation connect *L1* to *M1* and connect *M2* and *L2* to line

Fig. 12-9 Stator and brush-holder connections for a reversible two-winding compensated universal motor.

shifted slightly from the axis of the stator winding. The stator and brush-holder connections of such a motor are given in Fig. 12-10. In this diagram, the brushes are shown shifted *with rotation.* The armature connections for this motor are on center. The single stator winding corresponds to the compensating winding on a two-field motor, and the normal brush position would be between the coils; but, in this figure, they are shown displaced slightly in a counterclockwise direction because the armature is to rotate counterclockwise. It should be pointed out, however, that the brushes might be located between the centers of the stator coils, and the brush shift obtained by making the armature connections two, three, or four bars off neutral.



(a)

(b) Connections looking at commutator end. Stator connections on commutator end. Counter clockwise rotation facing commutator

Fig. 12-10 Stator and brush-holder connections for a single-field compensated universal motor, counterclockwise rotation.

The single-field compensated motor can be reversed not by changing the connections of the winding but only by shifting the brushes.

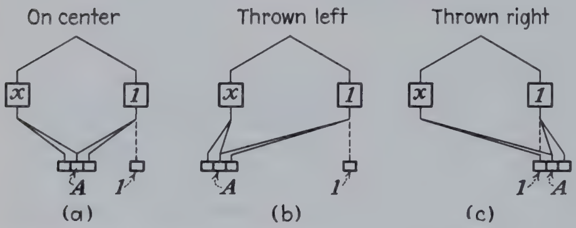
ARMATURE WINDINGS

Armature windings are discussed briefly below. They were treated somewhat more fully in an earlier work.[6]

12-13. General. Universal motors almost invariably are wound for two poles. In principle, the windings are the same as the windings used in a dc or in a repulsion-start motor. But in universal motors (and also in small dc motors) another type of winding, known as the *back-lead winding,* is often used. (See Art. 12-15.)

12-14. Front-lead Windings. In *front-lead windings,* the commutator connections from the armature coils are brought out in front of the armature, i.e., on the commutator side of the laminations. Three methods of making these armature connections to the commutator are illustrated in Fig. 12-11. (Figure 12-11*a* resembles the connection diagrams of Fig. 8-11*a* and *b*.) The winding progresses around the armature in the manner shown in Fig. 8-10.

(1) *Three Main Types of Connections.* Roughly speaking, there are the three main types of connections shown in Fig. 12-11: *on-center*, *thrown-left*, and *thrown-right*. When the connections are on center, the brushes will fall opposite the centers of the poles. When the connections are either thrown left or thrown right, the neutral position for



If the number of slots is even:

Brush position	Opposite centers of poles or opposite main coils	Between poles or opposite centers of compensating coils	Between poles or opposite centers of compensating coils
If brushes are on neutral for CW or CCW rotation	$A = x$	$A = x + \frac{b}{4}$	$A = x + \frac{3}{4}b$
1 bar off neutral for CCW rotation	$A = x + 1$	$A = x + \frac{b}{4} + 1$	$A = x + \frac{3}{4}b + 1$
1 bar off neutral for CW rotation	$A = x - 1$	$A = x + \frac{b}{4} - 1$	$A = x + \frac{3}{4}b - 1$
2 bars off neutral for CCW rotation	$A = x + 2$	$A = x + \frac{b}{4} + 2$	$A = x + \frac{3}{4}b + 2$
2 bars off neutral for CW rotation	$A = x - 2$	$A = x + \frac{b}{4} - 2$	$A = x + \frac{3}{4}b - 2$

NOTE: If, from formula, $A > b$ subtract b from result to find A.

If the number of slots is odd: $b/4$ comes out a fraction—as 5½. In such a case, drop the ½ and locate bar No. 1 to the left of the center line of slot No. 1 so that mica to right of bar No. 1 is opposite center line of slot No. 1. Otherwise follow the formulas above.

Fig. 12-11 Armature connections to the commutator. Front-lead windings, two bars per slot. This figure shows how to lay out an armature connection diagram for any lap-wound armature with two bars per slot and front-lead windings.

the brushes falls between the poles. Direction of rotation depends upon which way the connections are thrown, as shown in tabular form in Fig. 12-6.

(2) *"On-neutral" and "Off-neutral" Connections.* When the armature connections are on neutral, the armature is suitable for rotation in either direction. However, an off-neutral connection is often used, for reasons given in Art. 12-7. The effect may be obtained either by shifting the brushes themselves against rotation, or by moving the armature connections to the commutator with rotation, as illustrated in Fig. 12-11.

(3) *Single-field Compensated Motors.* The neutral position of the brushes with respect to the stator can be determined by use of the diagrams in Fig. 12-11, if the stator winding is considered—for purposes of location of neutral—as the compensating winding. This neutral corresponds to the hard neutral of a repulsion motor (Art. 8-6). The brushes must then be shifted a proper amount with rotation.

(4) *Connection Diagrams for Three Bars per Slot.* The diagrams of Fig. 8-11*c* and *d* show how to lay out the connections on center for three bars per slot. The connections can then be shifted one, two, or three commutator bars to the left or the right for off-neutral operation, as explained in detail in Fig. 12-11.

12-15. Back-lead Windings. In back-lead windings, the wire is started at the back (the end opposite the commutator) of the armature, and all the commutator connections are brought out at that end. The progress of a typical winding around the armature is illustrated in Fig. 12-12. When there are two bars per slot, a short and a long loop are brought out of each slot. Short and long loops are for connections between coils, and the two different lengths identify the first and second coils in each slot. When the winding is complete, the *start* and *finish* wires form another loop. After the armature is completely wound and before wedging, the loops are pulled through the slots and connected to the commutator.

12-16. Notes on Rewinding and Reconnecting. When armature leads are soldered to the commutator bars, it is important to use a good solder, preferably pure tin. Likewise, it is essential that the slots in the commutator necks, and also the ends of the wires, be clean and free from dirt, varnish, or other insulation. A neutral flux, such as rosin and alcohol, should always be used; an acid flux should never be used. Care should be taken during the soldering operation not to overheat the commutator. Commutators can be loosened and ruined if the soldering operation gets them too hot. Moreover, excessive heat can ruin the insulation that is close to the commutator.

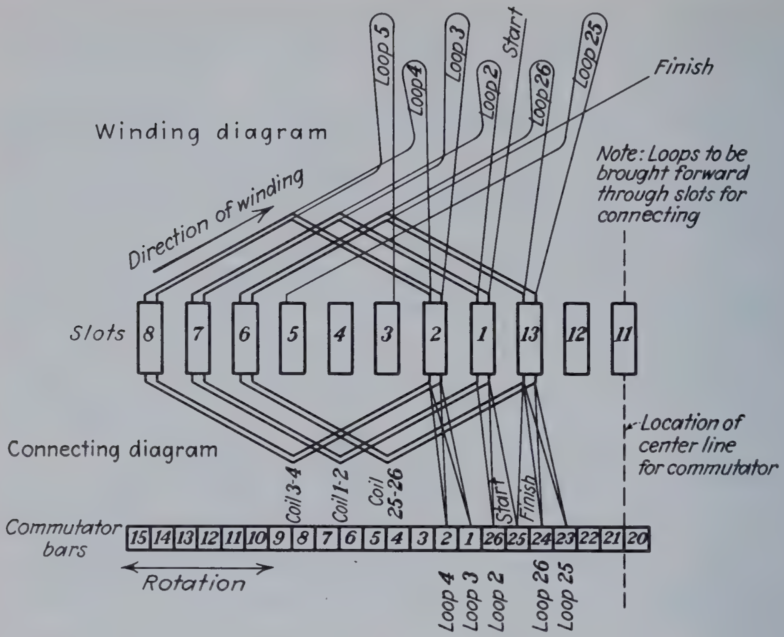


Fig. 12-12 Winding and connection diagram of a back-lead winding. Thirteen slots, 26 bars; connections are *thrown right* and *on neutral.* Reversible.

When the proper equipment and know-how are available, welding the leads to the commutator necks is preferable to soldering.

Because universal motor armatures usually operate at high speeds, special care must be taken to wind and shape the coils so as to obtain a good balance. It is highly desirable to balance the complete armature dynamically after refinishing the commutator surface.

12-17. Refinishing the Commutator. After the dipping and baking process, the ouside of the commutator should be turned on a lathe to true it up, to remove excess solder, to clear short circuits between adjacent bars, and to prepare it for the final finish on the brush surface. Mica insulation between bars should be undercut up to the commutator necks, or to within approximately ⅛ in. (3 mm) from the rear (winding) end of the commutator. This mica can be removed with a hand scraper, but preferably by means of a circular saw. The saw used for this purpose should be about 0.005 in. (0.1 mm) thicker than the mica; a standard thickness is 0.025. It should be from ⅜ to ¾ in. (10 to 20 mm) in diameter, with 12 to 16 teeth per inch (0.5 to 0.6 teeth per millimeter) of circumference, and hollow-ground on both sides. A speed of 7500 rpm or greater is recommended. The cuts should be made to a depth of 0.032 in. (0.8 mm) from the final finished surface of the commutator.

Final finish to the commutator surface should be cut with either a diamond-point or carboloy-point cutting tool. This tool should have a tip rounded off to a radius of approximately 0.005 in. (0.1 mm), and ground for a rake of 5° and a clearance angle of 18°. Tool must be firmly clamped and rigidly held for the turning process, which should be done at a high speed—of the order of 6000 to 7500 rpm. Feed should be adjusted so that the tool does not advance more than 0.0005 in. (0.01 mm) per revolution, nor should the depth of the final cut be more than 0.0005 in. (0.01 mm). If the finish cut is taken in this manner, the burrs in the slots will be few and can easily be removed with a stiff brush.

For good commutation and brush life, it is important that the commutator surface be concentric with the shaft journals. After the finish cut, set the armature up on V blocks and indicate the commutator surface with a dial indicator, preferably one reading 0.0001 in. per division. Rotate the armature slowly and note maximum and minimum readings over a revolution. For high-speed armatures, the total variation in reading should not exceed 0.0005 in. (0.01 mm) (eccentricity of 0.00025). Moreover, the maximum variation from one bar to an adjacent one should not exceed 0.0002 in. (0.005 mm).

12-18. Checking the Rewound Armature. In general, the rewound armature of a universal motor can be tested by the same procedure used for checking the armature of a repulsion-start motor as discussed in Art. 8-14.

SPEED CONTROL OF UNIVERSAL MOTORS

Speed of a universal motor may be controlled by use of tapped field windings (see Art. 12-9), by a mechanical governor, by a series-connected external impedance, or, if used on alternating current, by electronic means. The three last-mentioned methods are discussed below.

12-19. By a Mechanical Governor. Mechanical governors to control the speed of universal motors were widely popular at one time, and a great many of them are undoubtedly still in use. However, for new applications, they have virtually disappeared.

The most popular form of governor was the Lee governor, which used a phenolic disk on which were mounted two contact arms. When the contacts were opened by centrifugal force, a resistance was inserted in series with the motor. Some of the governors operated only at a fixed speed; others were designed so that the speed could be adjusted even while the motor was running. In general, the latter was accomplished by means of a linkage mechanism that adjusted the position of the inner contact, so that more or less centrifugal force would be required to separate the contacts, thereby causing the governor to operate at a higher or lower speed, as desired. Governors for universal motors are discussed in the literature.[3,6] If the resistance, bridged across the contacts of the governor, is not sufficiently high, the no-load speed may be considerably higher than the governed speed.

12-20. By Use of an External Impedance. The speed of a universal motor is often varied by means of an external resistor connected either in series with the motor line or across the brushes. This resistor may be a variable resistor, as in the case of a speed controller for a sewing-machine motor, or it may be a fixed resistor. When an external resistor is connected in series with the motor, the speed torque of the motor is more drooping than it would be without the resistor, and the locked-rotor torque is reduced substantially. The effect is illustrated in Fig. 12-13. With such a drooping torque characteristic, the motor may sometimes fail to start and there will be wider-than-normal variations of speed with changes in load. A choke, connected in series with the motor, can also be used to reduce the speed of a universal motor.

12-21. By a Solid-state Electronic Controller. A number of electronic controllers, using solid-state circuitry, have been developed to control the speed of universal motors. Such circuits are used in electric drills, blenders, and in other applications. Seven circuits for this purpose are described by Adem;[10] the remainder of this article was taken largely from Adem's article and is devoted to a discussion of one of his circuits.

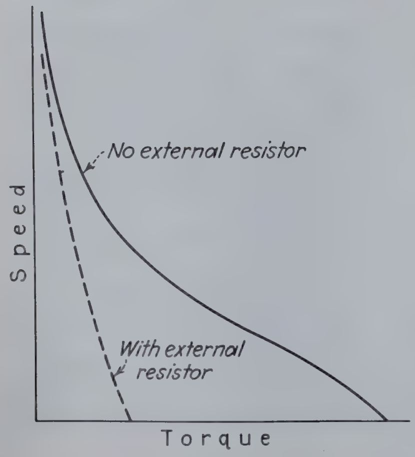
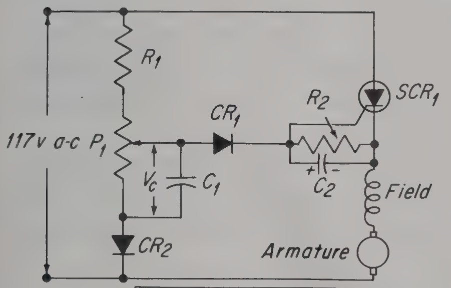


Fig. 12-13 How the speed-torque curve of a universal motor is affected by an external resistor connected in series with the motor windings.

Adem's circuit is reproduced in Fig. 12-14. It uses half-wave rectification, with feedback. Speed is adjusted by the potentiometer P_1. How the circuit works will be described briefly.

The circuit arm, consisting of the resistor R_1, potentiometer P_1, supplied through the diode CR_2, provides an adjustable reference voltage V_c which is smoothed out by capacitor C_1. The motor is supplied with half-wave current through the silicon controlled rectifier CR_1. The SCR is fired when the *IR* drop in resistor R_2 becomes sufficiently great. During the no-current half of the cycle, the voltage induced in the motor, due to its residual flux, is compared with the reference voltage V_c, to determine when to fire the SCR. When the motor is at standstill, no residual voltage is induced so that the SCR fires early in the cycle, causing maximum current to flow through the motor, causing it to accelerate. As the motor attains speed, the voltage induced in the armature by residual flux increases, delaying the firing of the SCR, thereby reducing the current and torque, until the motor ceases accelerating. A heavy load on the motor will cause the motor to slow down, reducing the residual voltage, thereby causing the SCR to fire earlier in the cycle, so that increased current will flow, developing increased torque to take care of the heavier load.



	Nameplate current		
	Low (to 1 amp)	Medium (to 3 amp)	High (to 5 amp)
R_1	47kΩ, ½w	3.3kΩ, 2w	3.3kΩ, 2w
R_2	1kΩ, ½w	150Ω, ½w Optional	150Ω, ½w Optional
P_1	10kΩ, 1w	1kΩ, 2w	1kΩ, 2w
C_1	0.5μf, 10v	10μf, 10v	10μf, 10v
C_2	1μf, 10v	0.1μf, 10v Optional	0.1μf, 10v Optional
CR_1, CR_2	A14B	A14B	A14B
SCR_1	C106B	C22BX70	C33B

Fig. 12-14 A solid-state electronic feedback control circuit for controlling the speed of a universal motor. Half-wave rectification is used. (*Reprinted from Machine Design.*)

The capacitor C_1 plays an important role in the low-speed performance of this circuit. Too much capacitance may cause an unstable operation (hunting) at low speeds because the overall gain would be such that the SCR may skip-fire, delivering power to the motor for one cycle and skipping for several successive cycles. On the other hand, too little capacitance may not give enough phase shift to fire the SCR late in the cycle to obtain slow-speed operation. The capacitor must have sufficient capacitance to provide a sufficient phase shift for low-speed operation, but not enough to cause skip-firing.

If difficulty is experienced at low speed due to hunting, the minimum value of V_c can be limited, either by inserting a fixed resistor between P_1 and CR_2 (with C_1 across both this resistor and P_1), or by means of a mechanical stop on the moving arm of P_1.

Even at the highest speed setting of P_1, only about 85 volts is impressed across the motor because of half-wave rectification, and therefore full power cannot be developed. A simpler way to get around this is to bypass the SCR with a mechanical switch, which can be mechanically ganged with the potentiometer P_1 so that at the highest speed setting the SCR is bypassed.

Not all motors will work successfully with the circuit just described, for not all motors have enough residual flux. Moreover, different motors of the same design will not all run at the same speed for the same setting of the potentiometer. Since this is a feedback control circuit, the characteristics of the motor and circuit have to be carefully matched to ensure satisfactory operation. The constants in Fig. 12-14 were given by Adem as representative.

Also, it should be noted that the circuit of Fig. 12-14 will work only on an ac supply; it will not work with direct current. Electronic control of shunt-wound dc motors, operated from an ac supply, is discussed in Chapter 13.

MISCELLANEOUS SERVICE PROBLEMS

12-22. Setting or Checking Neutral. Most universal motors are operated with the brushes shifted slightly from the true neutral position. If the correct amount of this shift is known, and if the mechanical construction permits adjustment of the brushes, the true neutral position may be found experimentally and the brushes then shifted the *proper amount in the right direction.* For salient-pole motors, the "kick-neutral" method of Art. 13-31 may be used. The same method is also applicable to two-field compensated motors if the field winding is used; perhaps a better method is to use the compensating winding and follow the procedure for finding the hard neutral of a repulsion motor (Art. 8-21). Neutral position of a single-field compensated motor is the hard neutral of a repulsion motor and the brushes are shifted with rotation from this position.

12-23. Rewinding for Different Characteristics. The rewinding of a universal motor for characteristics different from those for which it was designed almost invariably necessitates rewinding both stator and armature windings. In the case of a two-field compensated motor, the compensating winding must always be rewound if the armature is rewound. When a motor is rewound for different characteristics, care must be observed that the resulting armature current does not exceed brush capacity.

(1) *Rewinding for a Different Voltage.* To rewind to obtain the same performance on a circuit of a voltage higher or lower than rated voltage, rewind the stator (including both windings if there are two) with more or fewer turns in direct proportion to the increase or decrease in voltage. Likewise, rewind the armature with more or fewer turns per coil in direct proportion to the increase or decrease in voltage. In general, use in all windings wire of the largest size that will permit the correct number of turns to be put into the slots.

(2) *For Different Torques or Speed.* Before attempting to rewind a universal motor to obtain a different speed with any given device or for a different torque, a careful application test should be made with the original winding. The applied voltage should be adjusted until the desired torque or speed characteristics are obtained. A temperature run should then be taken to determine whether or not the motor can safely operate on the newly found circuit voltage. By this procedure, a new operating voltage will be found; say this new voltage is 150 volts, for purposes of illustration. Consider now the motor as if it had been originally rated for a 150-volt circuit; and, on this basis, rewind for a circuit of the voltage on which it must be operated, say 115, following the rules laid down in the preceding paragraph.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Packer, L. C.: Universal Type of Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, 1925, p. 587.
2. Puchstein, A. F.: Universal Electric Motors, *Ohio State Univ. Eng. Expt. Sta., Bull.* 53, 1930.
3. Groot, R. W.: Governor Controlled Fractional Horsepower Motors, *Product Eng.*, June, 1936, pp. 216–218.
4. Packer, L. C.: Commutation in Universal-type Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 70, pt. I, 1951, pp. 170–178.
5. Wier, W. E.: Iron Loss in Universal Motors, *AIEE Trans.*, vol. 73, pt. III-B, 1954, pp. 1546–1552.

6. Veinott, C. G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., chap. XII, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.
7. Dickin-Zangger, C. W.: Commutation in Fractional Horsepower Universal Motors, *Electro-Technology,* June, 1962, pp. 139–140.
8. ———: Performance Analysis of Universal Motors, *Electro-Technology,* December, 1962, p. 127.
9. Kawada, T.: Analysis of Design Factors of Universal Motors, *Electrical Engineering in Japan,* vol. 85, June, 1965, pp. 1–8.
10. Adem, A. A.: Seven Solid-state Circuits for Controlling Universal-motor Speed, *Machine Design,* Jan. 5, 1967, pp. 118–123.
11. "NEMA Motor and Generator Standards," NEMA Pub. No. MG1-1967, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, New York, 1967.

Chapter 13

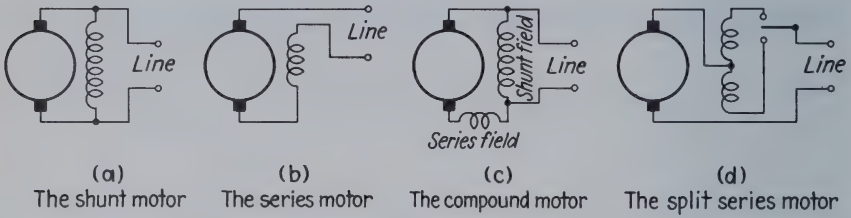
DC Motors and Variable-speed Drive Systems

In fractional- and subfractional-horsepower sizes, dc motors were initially used, for the most part, only where ac power was not available, and they represented only a small part of the small-motor industry. More recently, the use of dc motors has been growing due in part to the growing demands of automation for adjustable-speed drives, and in part to the availability of low-cost silicon rectifiers. Today, most fractional horsepower dc motors operate on rectified power; in subfractional-horsepower sizes, a larger proportion operate directly from battery power, especially permanent-magnet motors.

It should be pointed out that dc motors, unless regulating means of some sort are used, cannot be depended upon to operate so closely to their rated full-load speed as do ac motors. At full load, fractional-horsepower single-phase induction motors will generally operate within 2 percent of their rated speed, whereas similar dc motors may vary as much as 7½ percent above or below their rated speed.

13-1. Types of DC Motors. Major types of dc motors with wound fields are illustrated schematically in Fig. 13-1. Permanent-magnet motors, which are now very popular, have no field windings of any kind.

(1) *Shunt Motors.* *Shunt-wound motors* have the field connected in shunt with the armature, and have essentially constant-speed characteristics similar to the speed characteristics of induction motors. *Stabilized shunt-wound motors* are shunt-wound motors with a light series winding added to stabilize the speed characteristics, i.e., to prevent any rise in speed when load is added. Tendency to rise in speed is due to the field-weakening effect of armature reaction, as explained in Art. 13-3(4). Fractional-horsepower dc motors generally do not require or use a stabilizing winding.



(a) The shunt motor (b) The series motor (c) The compound motor (d) The split series motor

Fig. 13-1 The major types of dc motors.

(2) *Series Motors.* *Series-wound motors* have the field connected in series with the armature and have the varying-speed characteristics of universal series motors, representative curves for which are shown in Figs. 12-1 and 12-2. A modified form of this type is the *split-series motor* shown in Fig. 13-1*d*. Its chief advantage is ease of reversibility, requiring only a single-pole double-throw switch for control; it is discussed further in Art. 13-10.

(3) *Compound Motors.* *Compound-wound motors* employ both a series and a shunt field, and have speed characteristics intermediate between those of shunt and series motors, depending upon the amount of the compounding. The series winding is connected in such a direction as to assist the shunt field, thereby increasing the flux. Compound-wound motors are normally known as varying-speed motors. ("Differentially compounded motors," wherein the series field is connected so as to oppose the shunt field, are seldom used because of their unstable speed characteristics.)

(4) *Permanent-magnet Motors.* *Permanent-magnet motors* have armature windings, but no field windings; a permanent-magnet material is used in the field structure to set up the required flux. These motors are now available in a wide variety of sizes and ratings, and from a number of manufacturers, as shown in Table 1-1. They are discussed in greater detail later in this chapter (Arts. 13-16 to 13-20).

13-2. Essential Parts of a DC Motor. A fractional-horsepower dc motor is illustrated in Fig. 13-2; it has essentially the same parts as an integral-horsepower dc motor.

a. A *field structure* is necessary to provide a magnetic circuit for the flux and to hold the field coils. Basically, the field structure consists of a *yoke, pole bodies* (one per pole), *pole faces* (one per pole), and, sometimes, *interpole*(*s*) to assist commutation. In Fig. 13-2, the entire field assembly is laminated; one interpole (commutating pole) is shown. In some constructions, only the pole bodies and pole faces are laminated; they are bolted to a solid yoke.

b. The *field coils* may consist of (1) shunt coils wound with many turns of small wire, connected in series with each other and across the line, or in parallel with the armature; (2) series coils with fewer turns and larger wire, which are connected in series with the armature and

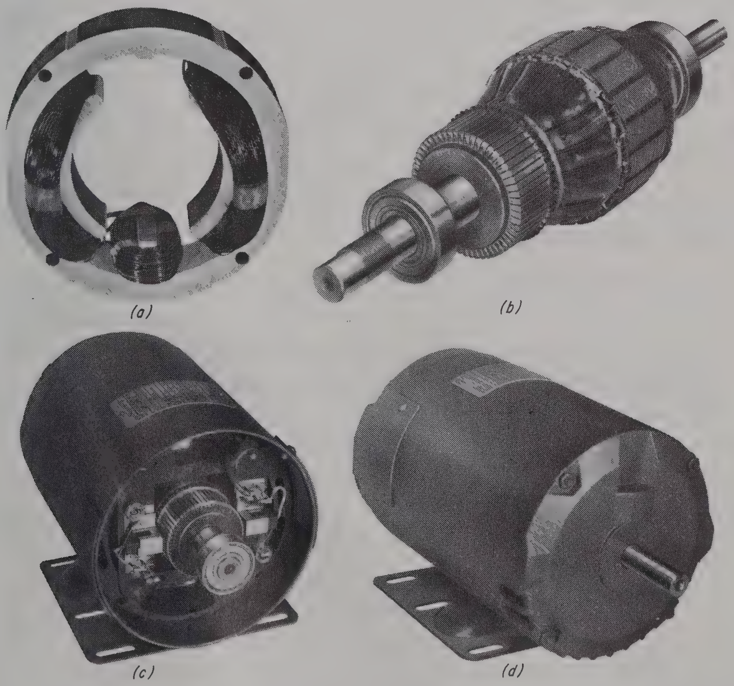


Fig. 13-2 A fractional-horsepower dc motor, designed to operate on rectified ac power or on a generator or battery source. (*a*) Field structure, entirely laminated. (*b*) Armature, Class B insulated. (*c*) Motor, without front end shield, showing external brush-access covers and quick-connect terminals. (*d*) Complete motor, protected enclosure; foot has six slots, permitting alternate mounting dimensions. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

line; (3) both shunt and series coils for a compound motor; (4) sometimes, as in the figure, an interpole.

c. The *armature* is the rotating element, consisting of slotted punchings pressed onto the shaft. These punchings perform the dual purpose of providing a path for the magnetic flux and of carrying the armature winding, which is usually a drum winding of a closed-circuit type such as those illustrated in Figs. 8-10 and 8-12. Ordinarily, fractional-horsepower dc motors built for industrial applications have but two poles. However, aircraft dc motors often use four or more poles. Sometimes the armature is skewed to reduce noise.

d. A *commutator* and *brushes* are necessary to feed the current to the armature. The construction of the brush holders may be similar to that of the brush holders of a repulsion-start motor, except that the brush holders of a dc motor must be insulated. Both cartridge-type and rocker-ring constructions are common.

e. Commutating poles, also called *interpoles,* are occasionally used in fractional-horsepower dc motors to improve commutation. Figure 13-2*a* shows one interpole. These are small auxiliary poles placed halfway between the main poles and connected in series with the armature. There may be as many interpoles as main poles, or only half as many.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

13-3. Basic Principles Common to All Types. In the discussion that follows, it is assumed that the motors are all supplied from a source of steady dc voltage, such as from a battery, or from a generator that has a very low ripple content. Special problems imposed by use of a voltage with a high ripple content, as is obtained from a rectifier, for example, are discussed later (Art. 13-25).

(1) *How Torque Is Developed.* A simple dc motor is represented schematically in Fig. 8-3. Armature windings, together with commutator and brushes, are so arranged that the flow of current is in one direction in all of the conductors on one side of the armature, and in the opposite direction in all of the conductors on the opposite side of the armature. This condition is represented in the figure by the use of dots to indicate current flowing toward the observer, and by plus signs (representing the tail of an arrow) to indicate current flowing away from the observer, perpendicularly to the plane of the paper. The field winding sets up a magnetic field as shown in the figure. It is a simple fundamental law of motor action that, if current is passed through a conductor which is perpendicular to a magnetic field, a mechanical force will be exerted on the conductor, mutually perpendicular to both the

conductor and the direction of the field. A rule for the direction of this force is given in the *left-hand rule* appended as a footnote to Art. 8-4. Application of this rule to Fig. 8-3 gives an upward force on all conductors to the left, and a downward force on all conductors to the right, so that a torque is developed in a clockwise direction.

(2) *Counter EMF.* An understanding of the nature and role of counter electromotive force is absolutely essential to any comprehension of how any type of dc motor works. Again let us refer to Fig. 8-3 and let us assume that the armature is revolving in a clockwise direction, the same direction as the torque developed by the current. Due to rotation, the armature conductors are cutting the lines of force of the field, thus generating voltages in the armature conductors. Application of Fleming's *right-hand rule* (see footnote to Art. 2-10) shows that the direction of this induced voltage is away from the observer on the left, and toward the observer on the right; that is, *the direction of the induced voltage is opposed to the direction of current flow.* In sum then, in any dc motor, rotation of the armature causes a voltage to be induced in the armature circuit which opposes the flow of the current that causes the rotation. Because the direction of the voltage is counter to the current, it is called *counter electromotive force.* Its role will be discussed further in ensuing paragraphs.

(3) *Basic Performance Equations.* Performance characteristics may be succinctly expressed in the form of a few simple equations.

Let E = counter emf generated in the armature
I_a = armature current
N = rpm of the armature
R_a = total resistance in the armature circuit, including all windings in the circuit, and brush-contact resistance
T = torque developed by the armature
V = voltage impressed on the armature circuit
ϕ = flux per pole
K_1, K_2, K_3 = proportionality constants

Now the torque is proportional to both flux and current, or

$$T = K_1 \phi I_a \tag{13-1}$$

Voltage induced is proportional to rate of cutting flux, that is, to the product of speed and flux, giving

$$E = K_2 N \phi \tag{13-2}$$

The counter emf has to be the applied voltage less the IR drop, or

$$E = V - I_a R_a \tag{13-3}$$

Solving the above equation for armature current gives

$$I_a = \frac{V - E}{R_a} \tag{13-4}$$

Speed can be determined from counter emf and flux by rewriting Eq. (13-2)

$$N = \frac{K_3E}{\phi} \tag{13-5}$$

How these equations are interpreted and used for the various types will be discussed separately for each type.

(4) *Armature Reaction.* Consider again the schematic representation of a dc motor in Fig. 8-3. In all the conductors to the left of the brushes the current is flowing out of the paper; in all the conductors to the right, the current is flowing into the paper. This is exactly the effect that would be produced by a coil of wire, wrapped around the armature, with its axis vertical. This coil tends to produce a magnetic field along the brush axis and perpendicular to the main-field axis. In general, that is exactly what the armature current does: it sets up, or tends to set up, a magnetic field which is displaced 90 electrical degrees from the main-field flux. Such an effect is known as *armature reaction.* Armature reaction has at least two harmful effects: it distorts the main field, usually weakening it in the process; it causes a voltage to be induced in the coils undergoing commutation, tending to produce sparking at the brushes. Commutation can be improved by shifting the brushes, if the motor construction permits, *against rotation;* this procedure is limited to motors that operate in only one direction of rotation. If the brush-holder positions are fixed, the effect of shifting the brushes can be obtained by shifting the coil connections to the commutator as illustrated in Fig. 12-11; this procedure is practicable only if the direction of rotation is known before the armature coils are connected to the commutator.

(5) *Interpoles.* Effects of armature reaction may be overcome by use of compensating windings, such as used in some universal motors; in fractional-horsepower sizes, it is done more commonly by the use of interpoles (Art. 13-2*e* and Fig. 13-2*a*). By selecting the proper number of interpole turns, the armature-reaction mmf can be exactly canceled at all load currents, since the interpole coil carries armature current. In practice, the interpole coil is usually made a little stronger than this in order to improve commutation.

Interpole windings of *motors* must be connected so that any armature conductor passes under an interpole that has the same polarity as that of the main pole just left behind. Interpole windings of *generators* are connected in opposite fashion.

13-4. How the Shunt Motor Works. The shunt motor, as shown in Fig. 13-1*a*, has both armature and field connected across the line. Now, let us use the equations in the previous article to deduce the operating characteristics. At no load, armature current I_a *is* negligible so that the counter emf E is substantially equal to the applied voltage V (Eq. 13-3). Then, the no-load speed is fixed since E is fixed (Eq. 13-5). As the motor is loaded, the speed N drops a little, lowering E, allowing more current I_a to flow, thereby increasing the torque. Since the torque is proportional to the current, the IR drop is also proportional to torque, and the speed falls off linearly with an increase in load. In practice, armature reaction may weaken the field so that the speed will not fall off quite so fast as the load, or as suggested by these equations. It is clear that locked-rotor torque will be very high, for E is zero at standstill; hence current drawn and torque developed will both be high.

The operating speed can be adjusted by adjusting the strength of the shunt field, either by insertion of a rheostat in series with it, as shown in Fig. 13-3, or by adjusting the voltage across the field. Weakening the field increases the speed (Eq. 13-5), and strengthening it decreases the speed. Without provisions for field control, a shunt motor is a *constant-speed motor.* With field control, a shunt motor is an *adjustable-speed motor.*

13-5. How the Compound Motor Works. A compound motor is like a shunt motor except that it has a series field as well as a shunt field. The series field is wound on the same poles as the shunt field. As shown in Fig. 13-1 and 13-4, the shunt field is connected across the line while the series field is connected in series with the armature. The series field is so connected that it strengthens the shunt field when armature current is drawn from the line; such a motor is a *cumulative-compound motor.* If the series field is connected so as to oppose the shunt field, it is known as a *differential-compound motor;* the latter is rarely used and it is not recommended, for its speed characteristics tend to be unstable. The compound motor works essentially like, and has operating characteristics similar to those of, a shunt motor except that the speed regulation (change in speed from no load to full load) and locked-rotor torque of the compound motor are greater.

13-6. How the Series Motor Works. The series motor is known as a varying-speed motor and has a very high no-load speed, as can be seen in Figs. 12-1 and 12-2. The speed regulation is very much higher than for a shunt or compound motor. At standstill, the counter emf is zero, and the current is high—as is the field flux—so that the motor accelerates rapidly. As the motor accelerates, the counter emf increases with the speed. Now, in the case of a shunt motor, the counter emf increases directly in proportion to the speed because the flux remains constant. However, in the case of a series motor, as the speed increases, the increased counter emf *decreases* the armature current, and this decreased armature current in turn decreases the field excitation. Therefore, as the motor accelerates, the weakening field makes it necessary that the armature rotate still faster in order to generate sufficient counter emf to limit the armature current. At light loads, the motor literally races—the armature races to develop enough counter emf to limit the armature current, and, as the armature current is limited, the field is weakened, which tends to decrease the counter emf, so that the motor has to run still faster. Large dc motors will usually race to destruction if not loaded, but fractional-horsepower dc series motors, as well as universal motors, generally are designed to withstand these high speeds.

APPLICATION CHARACTERISTICS

In the two immediately following articles, the discussion is centered around conventional dc motors, operated from a conventional power source. Following this discussion, whole sections of this chapter are devoted to special-purpose motors, permanent-magnet motors, and variable-speed drive systems.

13-7. Ratings.

(1) *Voltage.* Standard voltage ratings are 115 and 230 volts. However, standard motors will operate successfully at any voltage within 10 percent of rated, though the operating characteristics will be affected somewhat.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* Fractional-horsepower dc motors are built in the same horsepower and speed ratings as 60-hz single-phase induction motors, which are listed in Table 19-1. Smaller horsepower ratings are also built, but there are no universally accepted standards for these ratings.

Actual full-load operating speeds of individual motors, built in Frame 42 and larger frames, may vary as much as plus or minus 7½ percent because of manufacturing variations. For motors built in smaller frames, the variation may go up to 10 percent.

13-8. Operating Characteristics.

(1) *Change in Speed Due to Load.* Direct-current motors are not nearly so constant in speed as split-phase and capacitor-start motors. Usually, however, the reduction in speed will not be greater

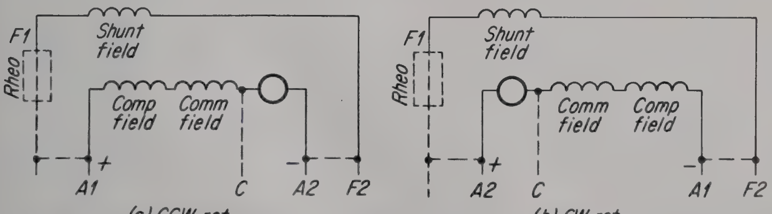
than shown in Table 13-1, taken directly from NEMA standards.[1,*] *Speed regulation* is defined as the change in speed from no load to full load, expressed as a percentage of *full-load speed.*

(2) *Change in Speed Due to Heating.* As a shunt motor warms up, the no-load speed steadily increases because the resistance of the shunt field increases, decreasing the field current and flux. At full load, the speed may either increase or decrease with an increase in temperature because the increase in armature resistance with heating tends to cause the full-load speed to decrease. NEMA standards provide that this change in full-load speed as the motor warms up from ambient to normal operating temperature, expressed as a percent of the latter speed, shall not exceed 15 percent for enclosed motors, or 10 percent for all other types.

TABLE 13-1 Speed Regulation of DC Motors (Maximum Values)[*]

hp	Speed, rpm	Shunt-wound	Compound-wound
1/20 to 1/8, incl.	1725	20%	30%
1/20 to 1/8, incl.	1140	25%	35%
1/6 to 1/3, incl.	1725	15%	25%
1/6 to 1/3, incl.	1140	20%	30%
1/2 to 3/4, incl.	1725	12%	22%
1/2	1140	15%	25%

[*] From NEMA.



(a) CCW rot. (b) CW rot.

Fig. 13-3 Terminal markings and connections for dc shunt motors. (*From NEMA.*)

13-9. Standard Terminal Markings. Standard terminal markings, as developed by NEMA, are given for shunt, compound or stabilized shunt, and series motors in Figs. 13-3, 13-4, and 13-5, respectively. These figures all show compensating-field as well as commutating-field windings

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

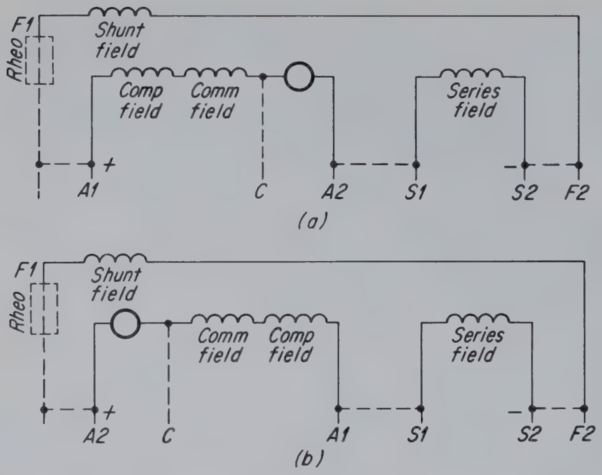
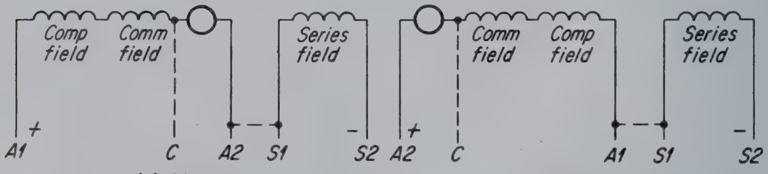


Fig. 13-4 Terminal markings and connections for dc compound, or stabilized shunt motors. (*a*) CCW rotation; (*b*) CW rotation. (*From NEMA.*)

since they are intended to cover both fractional-horsepower and integral-horsepower motors. Fractional-horsepower dc motors do not generally use compensating windings (except some universal motors) and they may or may not use commutating-field (interpole) windings; the motor in Fig. 13-2 does show an interpole.

Guiding principles, used in establishing the terminal markings, may be helpful to the reader in understanding and using the diagrams. The



(a) CCW rot. (b) CW rot.

Fig. 13-5 Terminal markings and connections for dc series motors. (*From NEMA.*)

markings, it will be noted, are combinations of capital letters and arabic numerals; generally, these are as follows:

Armature	A1, A2
Control signal lead, attached to commutating winding	C
Series field	S1, S2
Shunt field	F1, F2

When an armature lead passes through a commutating-field winding (interpole winding) before being brought out to the external circuit, the terminal marking is an "A," as shown in the three figures. However, when an armature lead passes through a series field and all internal connections are permanently made, the lead that is brought out is marked with an "S." (An example would be Fig. 13-5*a*: if the A2 and S1 leads were connected together permanently inside the motor, the S2 lead would still be tagged "S2.")

Direction of rotation is related to the numerals on the lead tags. When the windings are so connected to the line circuit that the current flows from a "1" to a "2" in *both* the armature and field circuits, the motor will rotate counterclockwise, facing the end opposite the shaft extension. When the windings are so connected that current flow is from "1" to "2" in one circuit, and from "2" to "1" in the other, the direction of rotation will be clockwise. This fact can be confirmed by studying the three figures.

SPECIAL-PURPOSE MOTORS

It is, of course, impossible to cover all kinds of special-purpose dc motors, but a few will be discussed.

13-10. Split-series Motors. A split-series motor is represented schematically in Fig. 13-1*d*, which shows the field split into two sections. Sometimes, there are only two field coils, one on each pole; sometimes, two field coils are wound on each pole and half the winding on each pole is then excited for either direction of rotation. The latter arrangement gives somewhat better balanced flux conditions but involves a few extra complications. Split-series motors are usually designed for plugging service. Simplicity of their control makes them ideal for such service.

13-11. Military-service Motors. Very small dc motors are used for a very wide variety of applications on military and civilian aircraft. Such motors are characterized by light weight and are built to meet severe environmental requirements; generally they are for circuits of 28 volts or less.

Two typical motors are illustrated in Fig. 13-6. They are nominally 1⅜ in. in diameter and are usually split-series wound. They may be fitted with a brake capable of stopping the motor in 3 to 5 revolutions from a speed of 10,000 rpm, with a planetary gear reducer or with both. In lieu of a brake, a governor may be supplied. The smaller motor shown (Globe type GJY) has a basic maximum length of 2.5 in., a continuous-duty rating of $\frac{1}{100}$ hp at 10,000 rpm, a locked-rotor torque of 450 percent, an efficiency of 49 percent, and a no-load speed of 25,000 rpm. The larger motor shown (Globe type GJA) has a basic

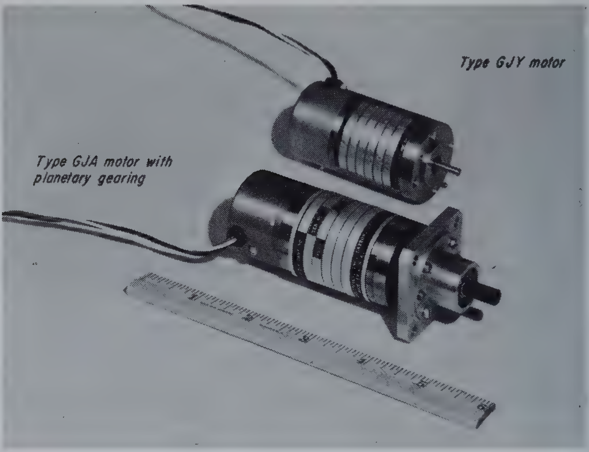


Fig. 13-6 Miniature split-series dc motor, built to military specifications. The GJY motor is rated 0.01 hp at 10,000 rpm and weighs 6.2 oz; it is arranged for face mounting. The GJA motor is rated 0.02 hp at 10,000 rpm, and is shown with a planetary reduction, available in ratios from 18.78 to 21,808; it is arranged for flange mounting. (*Globe Industries Division of TRW, Inc.*)

maximum length of 3 in., a continuous-duty rating of $1/50$ hp at 10,000 rpm, a locked-rotor torque of 325 percent, a full-load efficiency of 50 percent, and a no-load speed of 22,000 rpm.

13-12. Electrically Reversible (Reversing) Motors. Where series characteristics can be used, the split-series motor is ideal because it has only three leads and can be controlled by a simple single-pole double-throw switch as shown in Fig. 13-1*d*. However, there are reversing applications where series characteristics are neither permissible nor desirable; typical of such applications are hoists, machine tools, and electrode feeders for electric furnaces and arc welders. Figure 13-7 shows the

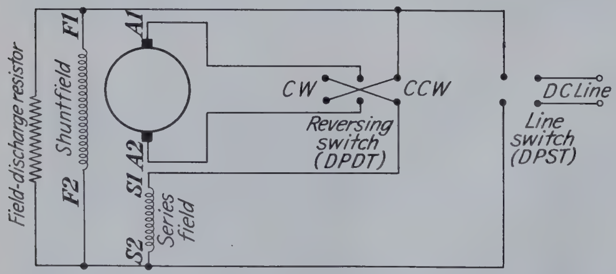


Fig. 13-7 Schematic diagram of connections for an electrically reversible (plug-reversing), compound-wound dc motor. If the line switch is not operated simultaneously with the reversing switch, the field-discharge resistor can be omitted.

schematic connections for a compound motor arranged for this service. (Commutating-pole windings, if used, would be in the armature-winding circuit as shown in Fig. 13-4.) Note that the armature connections are reversed while the shunt field is left connected to the line. It is preferable to leave the shunt field excited during the changing of the reversing switch so as to avoid interrupting the shunt-field circuit (see next paragraph). The line switch is shown as a separate switch, not mechanically coupled to, and preferably not operated simultaneously with, the reversing switch.

Control is simplified if the line switch is made single-pole and combined with the reversing switch; in this case only a three-pole double-throw switch is required. This arrangement has the added advantage that the motor is always deenergized in the open position of the three-pole switch. These advantages have made the use of this arrangement attractive and frequently used. However, this arrangement has the serious disadvantage that the shunt field is opened at each reversal, causing a very high voltage surge across the field and causing a severe spark under the brushes, which may cause flashover between adjacent brushes. Voltage surges of several thousand volts have been measured on fractional-horsepower motors, requiring extra-heavy insulation of the field windings. This difficulty can be minimized by connecting a field-discharge resistor across the field as shown; a 25-watt resistor often serves the purpose. In addition, special insulation of the field windings is required.

Many standard fractional-horsepower dc motors can be used for this service, but it is safest to check the manufacturer to determine: (1) how many reversals the motor can stand per minute, if any; (2) his recommendations on the use of a field-discharge resistor; (3) whether or not special insulation of field windings is required. Upper ratings of 1725- and 3450-rpm motors are more apt to be unsuitable for this service than motors rated lower in speed or horsepower or both. Another factor to be considered is the heavy inrush of current drawn by the motor at the instant of closing the reversing switch; this may be from one and one-half to two times the locked-rotor current.

13-13. Two-speed Motor. An ingenious two-speed dc motor is shown in the schematic wiring and line connection diagram of Fig. 13-8. The motor is designed to operate as a cumulative compound motor on the low-speed connection. For high-speed operation, the motor is connected as a shunt motor, but the series field is connected in series with the shunt field in such a manner that the series field opposes the shunt field, thereby reducing the effective number of turns in the shunt field. As a result, the shunt field is weaker on the high- than on the low-speed connection; moreover, on the low-speed connection, the speed is reduced still more by the cumulative series field. A performance curve of a typical motor of this type is illustrated in Fig. 13-9, which shows a speed change of 2:1 at full load.

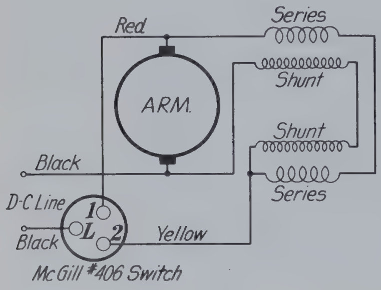


Fig. 13-8 Wiring and line connection diagram for a two-speed dc motor. (*Marathon Electric Manufacturing Company.*)

13-14. Motors for Material-handling Electric Trucks. Figure 13-10 is a wiring and line connection diagram for an electrically reversible dc motor designed and built especially for material-handling trucks operated by storage batteries. It is to be noted that the field coils are connected in two parallel paths. These motors are usually wound for 24 to 30 volts, though they may be wound for a higher voltage. They are equipped with a magnetic brake.

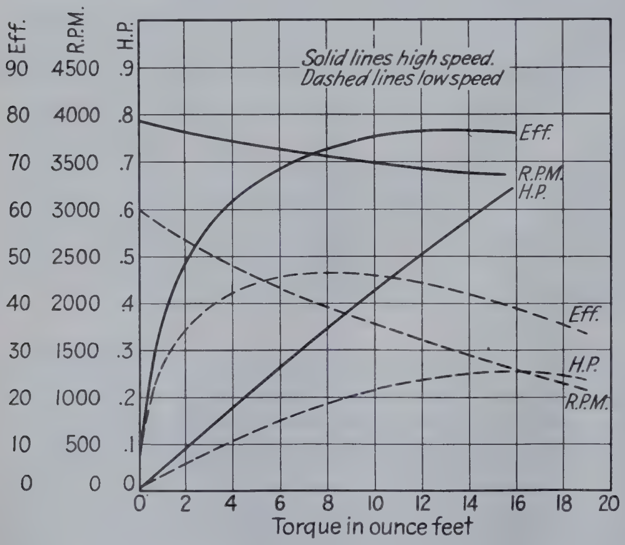
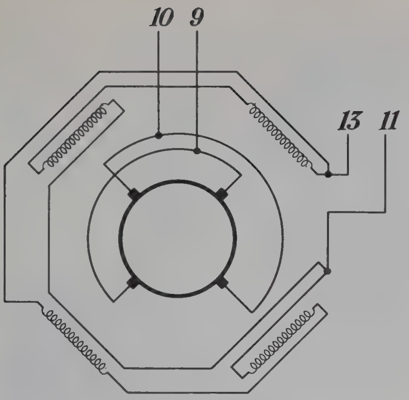


Fig. 13-9 Performance curves of a two-speed dc motor rated ⅓ hp, 115 volts, 3450/1725 rpm. (*Marathon Electric Manufacturing Company.*)



EXTERNAL LINE CONNECTIONS			
ROTATION	LINE 1	LINE 2	CONN. TOGETHER
CCW	9	13	10 TO 11
CW	10	13	9 TO 11

Fig. 13-10 Wiring and line connection diagram for a four-pole electrically reversible dc series motor used on material-handling trucks that are operated by storage batteries. Field winding is two-parallel. (*Electronic Specialty Company.*)

In Fig. 13-11 is illustrated another dc motor built for battery-powered applications, including small trucks and golf-bag carts.

13-15. Motors for Marine Service. A small dc motor especially built for marine service is illustrated in Fig. 13-12. It features a front end shield of fiberglass and a brush assembly molded integral with the end shield. It is about 5 in. in diameter. Horsepower ratings are from $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$; voltage ratings range from 6 to 110; speed ratings are from

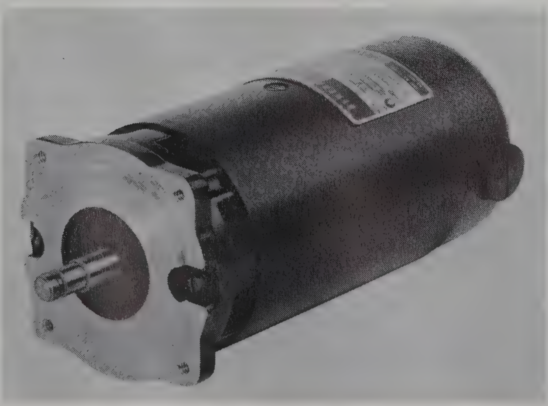


Fig. 13-11 A low-voltage dc motor for battery-powered operation. Horsepower ratings are from $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$, voltages from 12 to 230, rpm from 1725 to 5000. (*General Electric Company.*)

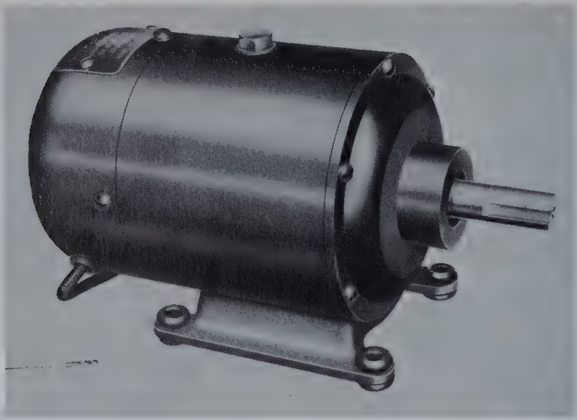


Fig. 13-12 Small dc motor for marine service. It features a molded fiberglass end shield and integral brush-holder system. It is built in ratings up to ¾ hp and speeds up to 4000 rpm. (*Crowell Designs, Inc.*)

500 to 4000 rpm. They may be series- or compound-wound and are used in marine applications such as pumps, blowers, and toilets.

PERMANENT-MAGNET MOTORS

In the last two decades, permanent-magnet dc motors have achieved great progress and have attracted widespread interest and use.

13-16. Permanent-magnet Motor Defined. A permanent-magnet dc motor is a dc motor in which the field excitation is supplied by a permanent magnet or magnets provided in the magnetic circuit of the motor.

13-17. Construction of a Permanent-magnet Motor. One form of construction of a permanent-magnet motor is illustrated in Fig. 13-13. The

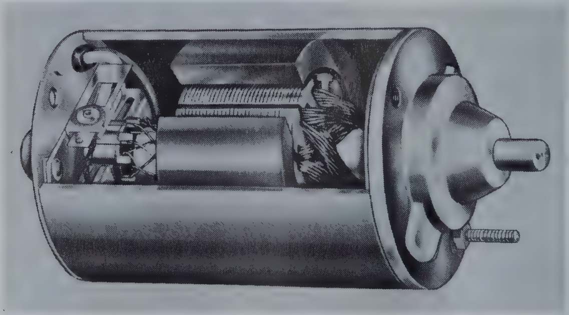


Fig. 13-13 Cutaway view of a permanent-magnet dc motor. Power ratings range from 1 to 40 mhp. Motor outside diameter is 2 in. (*American Bosch Arma Corporation.*)

permanent-magnet poles, which are barium ferrite ceramic magnets, are bonded by an epoxy adhesive to the outer field frame which is fabricated from steel tubing. The steel frame is a part of the magnetic circuit, serving as the yoke; it also serves as the structural frame of the motor.

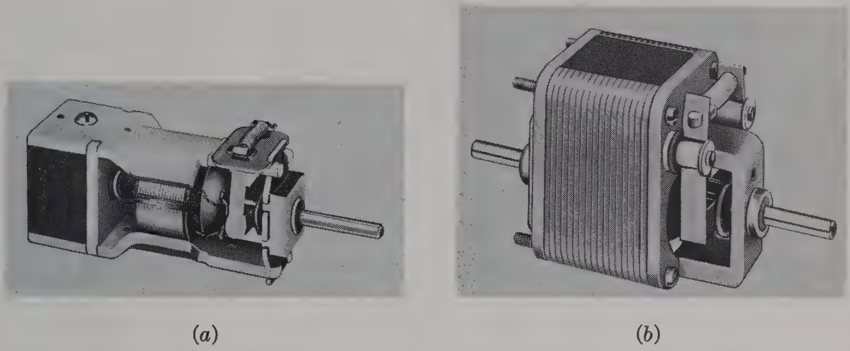

(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 13-14 Subfractional-horsepower permanent-magnet dc motors. (*a*) Five-slot armature, ¾ in. diameter; Alnico V; 5.5 mhp at 7000 rpm; 12 volts; Model DC81. (*b*) Similar to (*a*) but longer armature and different field construction; Alnico VI field; 12 mhp at 8000 rpm; 12 volts; Model DC86. (*Pittman Corporation.*)

Another form of construction is quite similar to the one just described, except that the permanent-magnet material is cast in the form of a continuous ring, instead of in two pieces as shown.

The motor of Fig. 13-13 shows the magnets having the same axial length as the armature. In some motors, the magnets are made axially longer than the armature, in order to deliver more flux to the latter. In some of these motors, the alnico poles are provided with soft-iron pole pieces to carry the flux axially from the overhang to a point directly over the armature.

Two other constructions are illustrated in Fig. 13-14. Both motors are two-pole and there is but a single block of Alnico V or Alnico VI to set up the magnetic field. These motors are wound for 12 volts and use copper graphite brushes and self-lubricating powdered-bronze bearings.

13-18. Ratings, Performance, and Torque Characteristics. Permanent-magnet dc motors are generally offered in horsepower ratings from about 1 mhp up to ⅓ hp, though there are no technical limitations to building them in the entire range of fractional-horsepower ratings. Usually they are high-speed, with rated speeds from 2000 to 20,000. Mostly they are built for low-voltage operation, such as 6, 12, or 24 volts. A performance curve for the motor of Fig. 13-13 is given

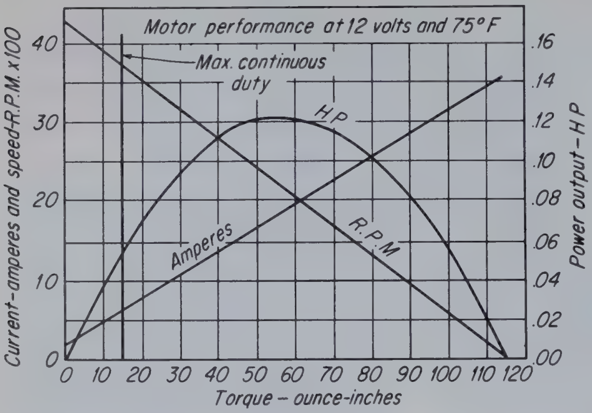


Fig. 13-15 Performance curves for a small permanent-magnet dc motor of the construction shown in Fig. 13-13. (*American Bosch Arma Corporation.*)

in Fig. 13-15. Note that the speed-torque curve is a straight line, which is generally characteristic of this type of motor. This type of speed-torque curve is, of course, ideal for a servomotor. Note, too, that the current increases linearly with output torque.

Efficiencies in excess of 60 percent are not uncommon for the permanent-magnet motor because it has no field-excitation losses, and it has less loss and heating and greater efficiency than a comparable dc motor with a wound field.

13-19. Timing Motors. Small dc timing motors are offered with or without governors, depending upon the accuracy of speed required by the application.

(1) *Basic Timing Motor.* An ungoverned, basic timing motor is illustrated in Fig. 13-16. The construction of this motor is quite unlike that of any motor previously discussed in this chapter, as can be seen by reference to the figure. The armature consists of a hollow aluminum (or inconel) cage, on which the coils are wound directly. An alnico field magnet is mounted on the bearing structure, *inside the hollow revolving armature.* The magnetic circuit is completed by the motor housing itself. Thus, there are no armature laminations, with their projecting teeth as in conventional motors, to cause cogging. When the motor is running, eddy currents are generated in the non-ferrous-metal cage. The effect of these eddy currents is to impose a dynamic load on the motor, substantially reducing its speed, but making the speed less sensitive to changes due to variations in applied load, because the dynamic loading due to eddy currents varies as the cube of the operating speed. In addition, the eddy-current loading of the rotor cage also

affords an appreciable degree of temperature compensation, because the tendency for the motor speed to increase due to reduced copper resistance in the windings at reduced temperatures is offset by an increased eddy-current drag, since the resistance of the cup is also decreased by the reduced temperature. The rotor cage may be of aluminum or inconel, depending upon the characteristics desired.

Such motors are applied where the required speed regulation is of the order of plus or minus 10 percent *at rated voltage;* in addition, changes in the impressed voltage will cause an additional variation in speed which is proportional to the change in impressed voltage.

(2) *Governed Timing Motor.* A governed timing motor is illustrated in Fig. 13-17. The motor itself is the motor shown in Fig. 13-16. The governor, mounted outside the motor, has a balance wheel and hairspring which beat 15 times per second. The armature rotates at 2700 rpm, and is so designed that it would normally operate faster than this for all normal loads. A speed-regulating resistor, when in series with the armature circuit, is of such value as to make light-load speeds less than 2700 rpm. Contacts are provided so that this resistor can be cut in and out of the circuit to control the speed. In operation, these contacts

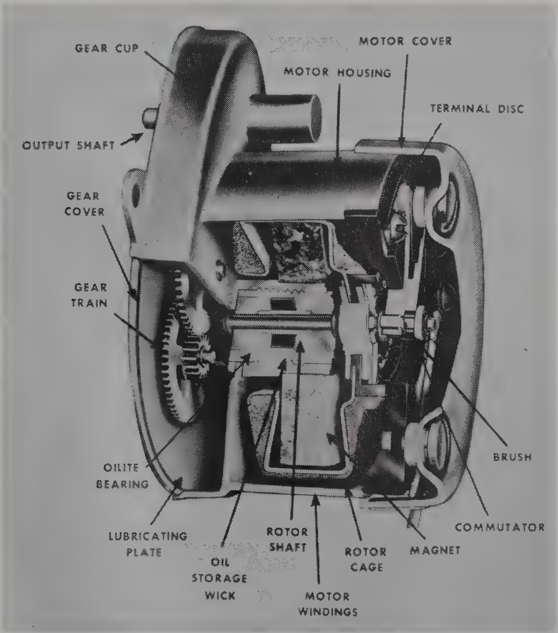


Fig. 13-16 A dc timing motor. Note unconventional construction. Output shaft speeds: 3000 rpm to ½ rph. Voltage ratings: 4.5 to 45. (*The A. W. Haydon Company.*)

are made by the escapement, initiating a pulse of current; the contacts are broken by a cam on the motor shaft. Thus the duration of the pulse of current depends upon the actual armature position with respect to the balance wheel. This corrective pulse occurs at every beat of the escapement, or 15 times per second, or once for every third revolution of the armature.

Speed regulation, with a voltage change up to plus or minus 20 percent, is plus or minus 0.1 percent at 65°F. For a temperature range of —65°F to +165°F, speed regulation is only plus or minus 0.3 percent.

13-20. Transistor-commutated Motors. Solid-state electronic circuitry is used in lieu of commutators in some small dc motors. Such motors are truly "brushless dc motors." They should not be confused with so-called brushless dc motors which are ac motors, operated on alternating current obtained from an inverter or oscillator; one such motor is discussed in Art. 10-17. The essential feature of a transistor-commutated motor is that the current flow in the various armature coils is controlled by the position of the rotor, just as it is in a conventional dc motor. Three arrangements of transistor-commutated dc motors are discussed below. For an explanation of how transistors work, the reader is referred to an elementary text on electronics.[14,15]

(1) *Brailsford Motor.* Figure 13-18 shows the schematic arrangement of a transistor-commutated dc motor. The rotor consists of a permanent magnet which induces alternating voltages in the stator coils, causing a triggering of the transistors. Thus, the transistors become conductive at a frequency determined by the rotational speed of the rotor. However, if an alternating voltage is applied to the two extreme bottom terminals shown in the sketch, the rotor will synchronize with this voltage. A 3- to 5-watt motor can be controlled with as little as 5 mw.

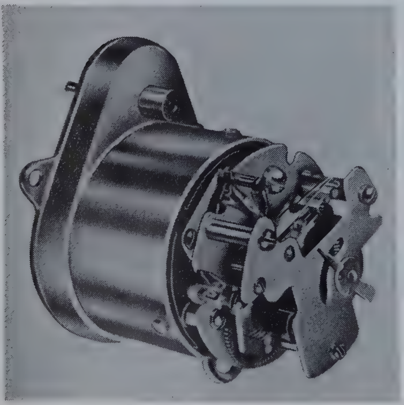


Fig. 13-17 A chronometrically governed dc timing motor; governor holds speeds to within 0.1 percent. (*The A. W. Haydon Company.*)

Conversely, when the motor is running at its own speed, an ac voltage appears at these terminals; this voltage can be used as a speed-measuring indicator, or to synchronize some other device with the motor.

In Fig. 13-18 the motor is shown in its starting position. Stationary parts are identified by numbers and rotating parts by letters. The rotor assembly includes a four-pole cylindrical magnet together with a starter switch. The starter switch consists of two brass members A and B, individually pivoted at points D and C, respectively. A spring, not shown, maintains tension between members A and B, keeping them in the positions shown, when the rotor is at rest. Four stationary flexible contact springs 1, 2, 3, and 4 are attached to the motor frame. When the rotor is at rest its magnetic field, as indicated by the letters N-S-N-S, will align with the extended portions of the stator poles in one of four positions. In the figure, the south poles are aligned with poles 5 and 7. When battery voltage is applied, a circuit is completed through springs 3 and 4 to shunt the base of T2 with its collector, making T2 conductive, so that stator coils 5 and 7 become energized, with poles 6 and 8 becoming north poles and poles 5 and 7 becoming south poles. The rotor poles are repelled and turn one-quarter turn clockwise. In this position, contact is made through springs 1 and 2 which shunt the base of T1 with its collector, causing stator coils 6 and 8 to be energized, thus causing the rotor to turn another quarter turn clockwise. When the rotor has accelerated sufficiently, centrifugal

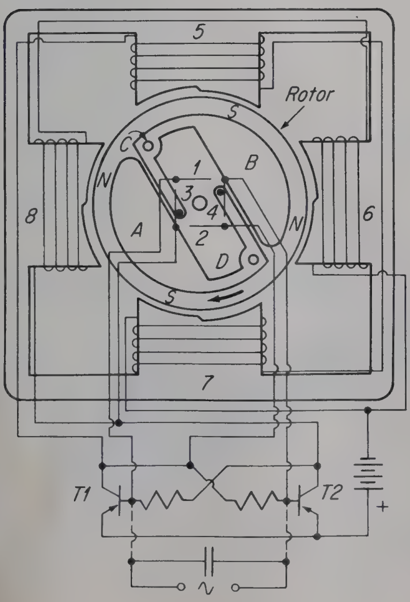


Fig. 13-18 Schematic diagram of a transistor-commutated small dc motor with permanent-magnet rotor. Contact pins engage springs only during starting. (*Brailsford and Company.*)

force, acting on members A and B, causes them to pivot outwardly, withdrawing the contact pins from engagement with the springs, and the motor continues to run under transistor commutation. (Note that the pin contacting spring 4 is attached to member A, and the other pin to B, so that when the weights A and B move outward, the pins move inward.) Note that heavy duty contacts are not required, since the switch serves only to trigger the transistor circuit. When the motor is running, the voltages induced in the stator coils trigger the transistors at the correct times, so that the contacts are no longer needed.

These motors are made for very low power consumption, ranging from 20 mw to just a few watts. For such low power inputs, the manufacturer reports exceptional efficiencies, ranging from 35 to 76 percent.

(2) *Hall-effect Motor.* A transistor-commutated brushless dc motor, which uses Hall generators to steer the transistors, has been announced by Siemens America, Inc., 230 Ferris Ave., White Plains, N.Y. 10603. It is shown in Fig. 13-19. The rotor is a two-pole permanent magnet of cylindrical shape. The stator has a two-phase winding with one coil per phase per pole, or four coils in all; these coils are labeled *W* in the figure. We saw, in Chap. 2, how a rotating field could be set up by two windings, spaced 90° apart, when excited by currents out

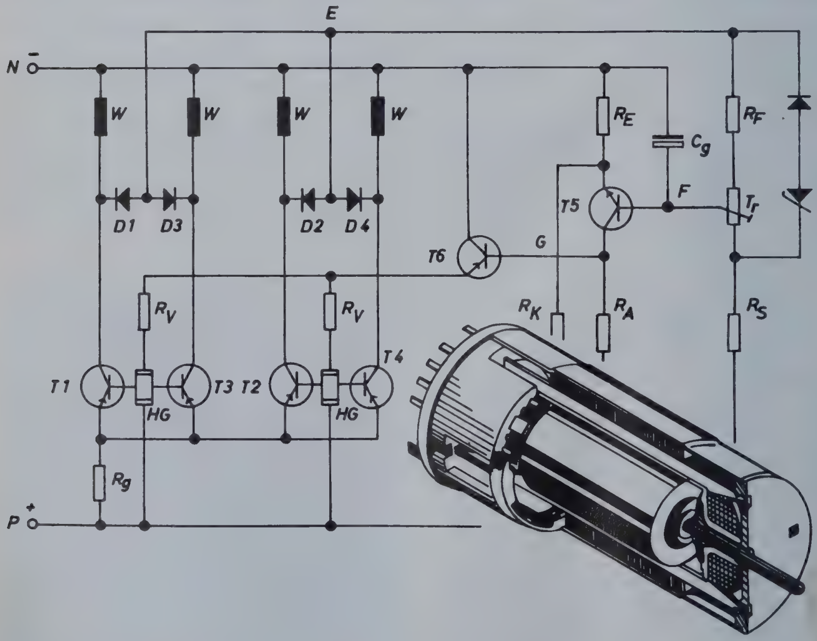


Fig. 13-19 A brushless dc motor, commutated by transistors steered by Hall generators. (*Siemens America, Inc.*)

of time phase by 90°. The four windings of this motor are connected to the operating voltage through transistors T1 to T4. Two Hall generators* are mounted in the stator 90° apart; in Fig. 13-19 they are marked HG. When current is passed through the left-hand generator from transistor T6, a Hall-effect voltage appears across the edges of the generator when the latter is in a magnetic field; no voltage appears unless a magnetic field is passing through the generator. The Hall voltage is applied to the bases of transistors T1 and T3, biasing them in opposite directions. When the position of the rotor is such that one Hall generator has maximum flux passing through it, the other Hall generator has no flux, and hence no voltage to bias the pair of transistors to which it is connected. The electronic circuit is so arranged that the net effect is for the stator windings to set up a magnetic field at right angles to the rotor field, independent of the rotor position. Thus, torque is produced in all positions of the rotor. By means of the transistor T6 the control current through the Hall generators, and hence the torque, can be varied. At a constant load torque, an increase in control current would raise the motor speed. The base of transistor T6 is thus a suitable input for a speed controller. The motor represented in Fig. 13-19 was designed for 6.3 volts input, consumes about 1 watt of power, and runs at 3000 rpm.

(3) *Cramer Motor.* Still another kind of transistor-commutated dc motor was announced in *Product Engineering.*[13] The motor has a two-pole permanent-magnet rotor and a three-coil stator. The stator coils get power in timed pulses from a transistorized switching circuit. Timing of these pulses is controlled by a three-lobed vane on the motor shaft, passing stationary pick-up coils. Each pick-up coil consists of a primary coil fed by a 100-khz oscillator and a secondary coil connected to the transistors. As a vane passes a pick-up coil, it couples the two windings, producing a pulse that triggers the transistor to pass current to the correct motor field coil. This motor was produced by the Cramer Div., Old Saybrook, Conn.

VARIABLE-SPEED DRIVE SYSTEMS

Fractional-horsepower variable-speed drive systems have grown enormously in popularity over the last few years, primarily because of the development and use of electronic devices for power-conversion and control functions. The market for such systems is now of the order of several million dollars annually. While there are many ways of obtaining an adjustable-speed motor which operates from an ac power supply, we shall limit our discussion here to those systems that use a dc shunt motor to drive the load; ac power is drawn from the mains and converted and controlled to make the dc drive motor perform in the desired manner. All such systems use essentially a Ward Leonard system, or some derivative or variation of it: hence we shall start our discussion by examining the basic Ward Leonard system itself.

---

* The Hall effect may be described briefly as follows. When current is passed through a thin slab of semiconductor material while a magnetic field is passing through the slab, a "Hall-effect" voltage is generated across the slab, perpendicular to the direction of current flow.

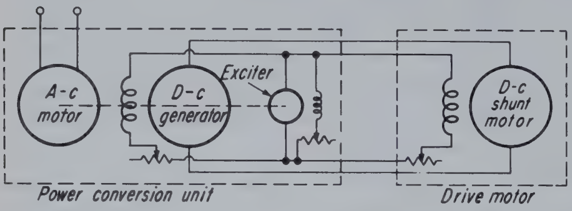


Fig. 13-20 Schematic representation of a Ward Leonard variable-speed drive system.

13-21. The Ward Leonard System. A basic Ward Leonard system is represented schematically in Fig. 13-20. The drive motor, which drives the load, is a dc shunt motor. The power conversion unit consists of an ac motor, a dc generator, and a dc exciter. The armature of the drive motor is paralleled with the armature of the dc generator, and the field of the drive motor is excited directly by the constant-voltage dc exciter that supplies the field of both the drive motor and the generator. Thus, the system provides means for independently adjusting either the armature voltage or the field excitation of the drive motor.

(1) *Basic Principles Involved.* *Base speed* of the motor is defined as the speed of the motor with full rated armature voltage and full rated field excitation applied. Two kinds of speed adjustment are available: variation of armature voltage, and variation of field current. Reducing the armature voltage *reduces* the speed. Reducing the field excitation *increases* the speed.

(2) *Armature-voltage-control Speed Range.* Speed can be reduced to a very low value by reducing the armature voltage. Over this speed range, from base speed downward, the torque output can be essentially constant, for this represents constant armature current, constant losses in the armature, and constant heating. (If the cooling falls off too much at reduced speed, the output torque may have to be decreased slightly.) Thus, the *horsepower* output available varies directly as the speed, while the *torque* output is essentially constant over the speed range. This range gives the widest speed variation and is the one most commonly used.

(3) *Field-control Speed Range.* Reducing the excitation current of the drive motor reduces its field flux ϕ. As we can see from Eq. (13-5), the speed is inversely proportional to the flux ϕ. Also, from Eq. (13-1) we can see that, for a constant armature current, the torque output is proportional to the flux. Hence, for constant armature current and constant armature heating, in the field-control speed range the available *torque* output is inversely proportional to the speed, but the available *horsepower* output is essentially constant. The field-control range is not always made available in certain packaged drives, and when it is, it is often referred to as the *extended speed range.*

(4) *Regulation, IR Drop, and IR-drop Compensation. Regulation* is ordinarily defined as the change in speed from no load to full load, expressed as a percentage of full-load speed. In an adjustable-speed drive system, this drop in speed is more often expressed as a percent of the base speed. As a motor is loaded, it has to draw more current to develop the necessary torque. This increase in armature current tends to affect the motor speed in at least three ways: by armature reaction, which tends to weaken the field and thereby to increase the speed [Art. 13-3(4)]; if the machine has a series field, by strengthening the field, thereby reducing the speed; by the *IR* drop, which reduces the counter emf, thereby reducing the speed. The effect of armature *IR* drop, at different speed settings, is illustrated in Fig. 13-21, in which the effect has been exaggerated for purposes of illustration. Note that the *IR* drop, for the same armature current, is the same at all speeds, but the relative importance of this drop increases at the lower speed settings. Consequently, to obtain good speed regulation at all speed settings, *IR-drop compensation* is incorporated into many speed-regulating systems. (Not shown in the illustration.) Briefly stated, *IR*-drop compensation increases the impressed armature voltage by an amount

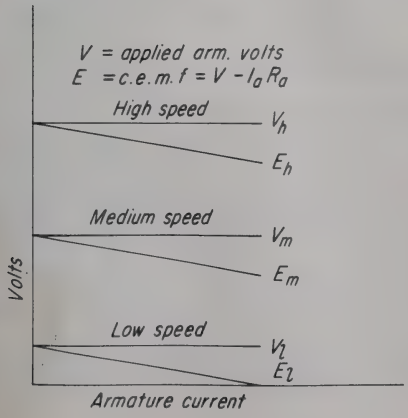


Fig. 13-21 Effect of armature *IR* drop on the counter emf, at different speed settings (Ward Leonard System).

just sufficient to compensate for the IR drop in the armature circuit, thus giving flatter speed regulation.

(5) *Reverse Power Flow.* In the Ward Leonard system of Fig. 13-20, power can flow in either direction. Suppose that the drive motor is driving a heavy flywheel at base speed; now, let the excitation on the generator be reduced to, say, about half voltage. The drive motor suddenly becomes a generator; the generator in the power-conversion unit becomes a motor which carries the ac motor up above synchronous speed, making it an induction generator and pumping power back into the line. Or, this can occur if the load on the drive motor is an overhauling one, such as lowering a load on a hoist, for example.

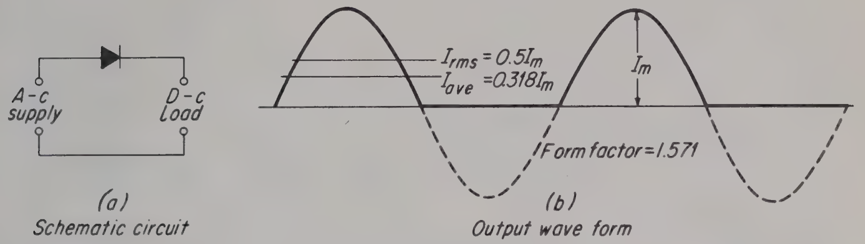
(6) *Constant-torque Drives.* If the field of the drive motor is held constant and a constant value of current is passed through its armature, the motor will develop a constant torque, independent of speed, within its range. By incorporating a current-sensitive regulator in the armature circuit to regulate the generator field, the Ward Leonard system of Fig. 13-20 can be made to produce a constant-torque output. Further, by changing the setting of the current regulator, different values of constant torque can be obtained.

(7) *Feedback Control.* In Fig. 13-20 the speed of the drive motor depends upon the inherent regulation of the system. Suppose, however, that attached to the drive motor shaft was a tachometer which delivered a voltage proportional to the speed; now, suppose that this voltage signal from the tachometer were compared with some constant reference voltage such as a battery. If this difference in voltages, usually called the "error signal," were amplified and used in such a manner that it raised the armature voltage when the speed was low, and lowered the armature voltage when the speed was too high, then the speed of the motor could be made independent of the inherent regulation of the machines; instead, it would depend upon how well this error signal corrected the speed error that caused it. Such a system is known as a *closed-loop feedback control system.*

(8) *Electronic Power-conversion Units for Ward Leonard Variable-speed Drive Systems.* The rotating-machine power-conversion unit of Fig. 13-20 has, at different times, been replaced in whole or in part by electronic power-conversion units, making use of devices such as thyratron tubes, magnetic amplifiers, autotransformers, rectifiers, both controlled and uncontrolled, etc. How some of these are used forms the basis of the discussion that follows. But first, the discussion starts with rectifiers.

13-22. Simple Rectifiers. A *diode* is a simple two-terminal semiconductor device that has the property of being conducting in one direction only. Most popular today because of their small size for their rating, and low cost, are silicon diodes. There are many ways to use them.

(1) *Half-wave Rectifier.* The simplest way to rectify is to connect a rectifying element in series between the ac line and the dc load, as shown in Fig. 13-22. Since the diode will pass current only in one direction, the output wave form takes the shape shown in Fig. 13-22*b*; the negative halves of the sine waves are simply suppressed, leaving the wave form shown by the solid line.

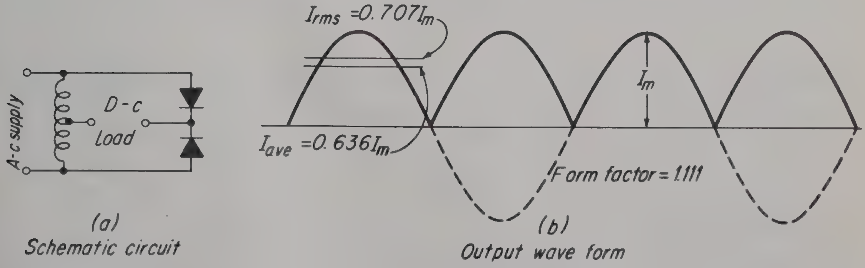


(a) Schematic circuit

(b) Output wave form

Fig. 13-22 A simple half-wave rectifier (uncontrolled).

(2) *Full-wave Rectifier.* To obtain full-wave rectification, two diodes and a center tap in the ac power supply, as shown in Fig. 13-23, are used. The schematic circuit is given in *a* and the resultant wave form in *b*. This arrangement simply flops over the negative halves of the sine wave, eliminating the long "off" period. Note that this arrangement requires a center-tapped ac source, or an autotransformer with center tap has to be provided.



(a) Schematic circuit

(b) Output wave form

Fig. 13-23 A single-phase full-wave rectifier (uncontrolled).

(3) *Bridge-type Rectifier.* The autotransformer with its center tap can be eliminated by using four rectifying elements, connected in a bridge arrangement as shown in Fig. 13-24. Such a bridge connection gives a full-wave output, as shown in Fig. 13-23*b*.

13-23. Single-phase Controlled Rectifiers. Controlled rectifiers use triodes, that is, three-electrode devices. Such a device may be a *thyratron* (a three-electrode gaseous tube) or a *thyristor,* also called an *SCR* (silicon controlled rectifier). Both of these devices have the property that they will carry current in but one direction, like the diodes described above. However, the thyratron has an important distinguishing characteristic; so long as the grid is maintained at a sufficiently high negative potential, current cannot flow; once the negative grid potential has been reduced below its critical value, the tube becomes conducting in the forward direction. Once the tube has started to conduct, the grid has no further control over the plate current. By contolling the grid voltage, the initial firing of the tube can be controlled; conduction continues until the current ceases to flow. An SCR or thyristor is a semiconductor which normally blocks current flow in both directions, but it can be triggered or fired into forward conduction by feeding a small current pulse into a third electrode, called the *gate.*

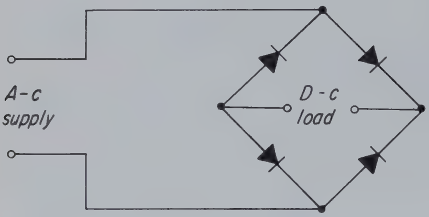
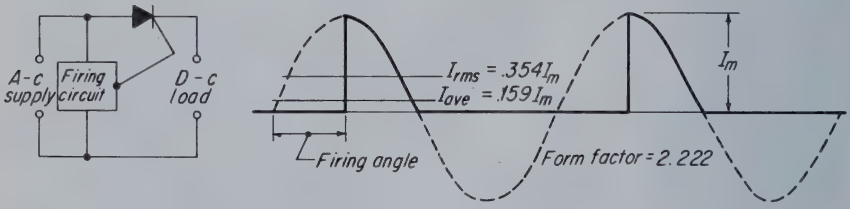


Fig. 13-24 A single-phase bridge rectifier, giving full-wave rectification.



(a) Schematic circuit

(b) Output wave form

Fig. 13-25 A single-phase half-wave controlled rectifier, using a thyristor (SCR) and firing angle of 90°.

(1) *A Half-wave Controlled Rectifier.* The schematic circuit of a half-wave firing-angle-controlled rectifier is shown in Fig. 13-25*a*. This is similar to the half-wave circuit in Fig. 13-22*a* except that the rectifying element is a thyristor or controlled rectifier, to which a firing

circuit has been added. This firing circuit is arranged so as to delay the actual firing of the thyristor until a certain time angle after the zero point of the voltage wave has elapsed. This time angle is known as the firing angle. The resultant wave form of the output will be of the general form of Fig. 13-25*b*, wherein the firing angle is 90°. The heavy black line shows the output wave, and the dotted line the sine-wave input.

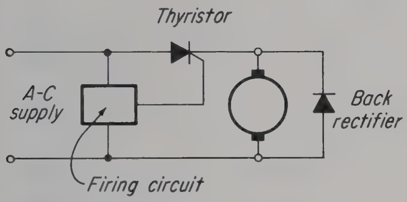


Fig. 13-26 A single-phase half-wave controlled rectifier, with back rectifier.

(2) *Half-wave Controlled Rectifier, with Back Rectifier.* When dc motors are operated from a rectified power source, it is common practice to add a back rectifier, as shown in Fig. 13-26. The back rectifier is bridged across the armature or the field of the motor in such a way that current can continue to flow even after the main rectifier has ceased to supply current. The inductance of the armature tries to make the current continue flowing, and the back rectifier provides a path for this current to continue flowing. The back rectifier protects the main rectifier from dangerous back voltages and provides a more uniform flow of armature current.

(3) *Full-wave Controlled Rectifier.* It is obvious that controlled rectifiers could be used in the circuit of Fig. 13-23 or 13-24, with appropriate firing circuits. Such an arrangement would give an output wave form similar to that of Fig. 13-25*b*, except that there would be twice as many pulses.

13-24. Form Factor. The *form factor* of a current wave is defined as the ratio of the root-mean-square value of the current to the average value of the current. The average and rms values, together with their ratios, were calculated for the output wave form of Fig. 13-25*b* for a number of different firing angles. They were also calculated for full-wave controlled rectifiers, which give twice as many pulses, each of the same shape, as those of Fig. 13-25*b*. The results are summarized in Table 13-2. The intermediate calculations were carried out to four places, but the results are rounded off to three places, and so the form factors given are not always the same as would be obtained by dividing the rms values in the table by the average values.

It should be pointed out that the values given in the table are the results of mathematical calculations on waves of the shapes shown in

TABLE 13-2 Currents and Form Factors for Single-phase Controlled Rectifiers
(Currents are expressed as a fraction of the peak value)

Firing angle	Full wave			Half wave		
	I_{av}	I_{rms}	Form factor	I_{av}	I_{rms}	Form factor
0	0.637	0.707	1.111	0.318	0.500	1.571
30	0.594	0.697	1.173	0.298	0.493	1.659
60	0.478	0.634	1.328	0.239	0.449	1.879
90	0.318	0.500	1.571	0.159	0.354	2.222
120	0.159	0.313	1.964	0.080	0.221	2.778
150	0.043	0.120	2.815	0.021	0.085	3.982

Fig. 13-25. In practice, the circuit constants may modify the actual form factors from the table values.

Measurement of Form Factor. Form factor of a rectifier-supplied load can be determined experimentally. The current is measured with a thermal or an electrodynamic ammeter, such as that used for measuring alternating current, and it is also measured with a permanent-magnet moving-coil (D'Arsonval) instrument. The form factor is simply the ratio of these two current readings.

13-25. Operation of DC Motors on Rectified Alternating Current. Dc motors are likely to perform quite differently on rectified power than on conventional dc power, such as that supplied by a dc generator or by a battery.

(1) *Effect on I^2R Losses.* Since it is average current that produces torque, and rms current that produces heating, it follows that I^2R losses are increased by use of rectified power by an amount equal to $(I_{rms}/I_{av})^2$, that is, by an *amount equal to the square of the form factor.* This can be considerable; for example, from Table 13-2, the form factor for a full-wave unfiltered rectifier is 1.111, and this will increase the I^2R losses by a factor of $1.111^2 = 1.23$. For a half-wave rectifier, the form factor is 1.571 and the increase in losses is by the factor $1.571^2 = 2.47$. With controlled rectifiers, the increase in losses can be even greater, as can be seen by reference to the table. Proper filtering can reduce, but not eliminate, these extra I^2R losses, which can be considerable.

(2) *Effect on Commutation.* Coils undergoing commutation are inductively coupled with the main field. If the latter is subject to a pulsating voltage, so that a pulsating flux is produced, a voltage will be induced in the coils undergoing commutation. Hence, operation on

rectified ac power produces poorer commutation and more sparking at the brushes.

(3) *Other Effects.* The extra I^2R losses produce extra heating. The pulsations in field flux generate additional eddy-current losses in the iron. Ripple currents may create bearing currents which, though feeble in magnitude, have been known to damage the bearings.

Before a dc motor is used with a solid-state power source, it is best to check to see if the motor was intended for use on such a power supply. Good filtering can reduce all the effects discussed above.

13-26. DC Motors Intended for Use on Adjustable-voltage Electronic Power Supplies. Such motors are usually shunt wound, with or without a stabilizing series-field winding. Nameplates for such motors may carry, in addition to the usual information, rated armature voltage, rated field voltage, armature rated-load amperes at rated speed, and rated form factor. The voltage and current ratings are based on *average* values. According to NEMA,[1] standard ratings for fractional-horsepower dc motors for use on rectified power are the following:

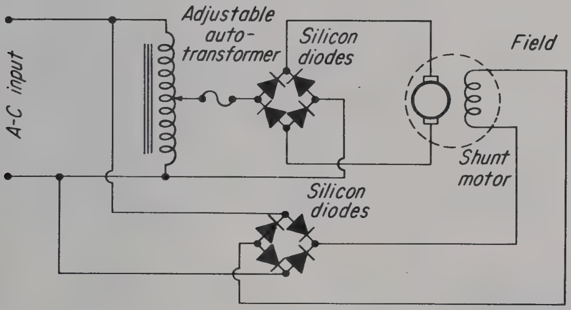


Fig. 13-27 A Ward Leonard variable-speed drive system, using an autotransformer and two bridge-type simple diode rectifiers for the power-conversion unit. (*Servo-Tek Products Company.*)

Horsepower ratings: $\frac{1}{20}$, $\frac{1}{15}$, $\frac{1}{12}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, and 1
Speed ratings: 3450, 2500, 1725, 1140
Armature voltages: 75, 90, 150, 180, 240
Field voltages: 50, 100, 150, or 200
Form factors: 2, 1.85, 1.7, 1.5, 1.4, 1.3, 1.2, or 1.1
Momentary overload capacity: 150 percent rated current for 1 min

When such motors are tested, they should be tested on a power supply that will provide rated voltage and rated form factor at rated load.

13-27. Variable-speed Systems, Using Electronic Power Conversion. There are on the market a number of variable-speed drive systems, modeled after the classic Ward Leonard system, with various modifications, which use some form of electronic power conversion unit. The four discussed briefly below may be considered representative.

(1) *Servo-Tek System.* One Servo-Tek drive is represented schematically in Fig. 13-27. Power for the drive-motor armature is obtained from the ac source through a bridge-type rectifier; by adjusting the autotransformer, the dc voltage impressed on the drive-motor armature is adjusted. The shunt field is supplied directly from the source through another bridge-type rectifier, so that its voltage remains constant, unaffected by adjustments of the armature voltage. This system is built in the full range of fractional-horsepower ratings.

(2) *Bodine Motor-control System.* Figure 13-28 shows a solid-state controller for a fractional-horsepower dc shunt motor. It is built in ratings from $\frac{1}{50}$ hp to $\frac{1}{4}$ hp and a speed range of 60 to 2200 rpm; the extended-range option [Art. 13-21(3)] provides speeds to 3200 rpm. Some units are designed for adjustable torque. Typical speed-torque curves are shown in Fig. 13-29. Dynamic braking is also provided.

(3) *Reliance Compak V-S Drive.* Figure 13-30 shows a controller and electronic power supply, all self-contained in the unit shown. The motor field is supplied through a thyristor and back rectifier. Speed control is effected by controlling the firing angle of the thyristor. Units

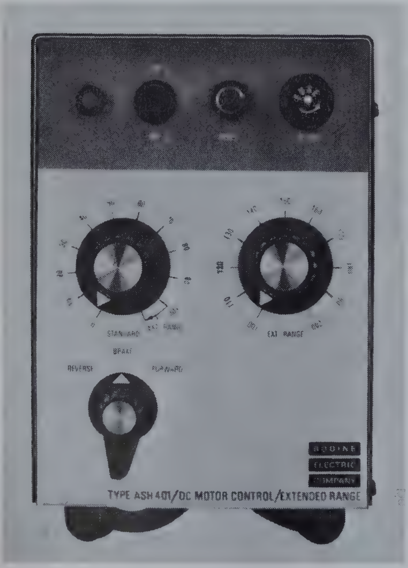


Fig. 13-28 A solid-state electronic controller for a fractional-horsepower variable-speed drive system. (*Bodine Electric Company.*)

rated ⅙, ¼, and ½ hp use half-wave rectification. During each half cycle when the armature current is shut off, a signal is picked up from the counter emf of the armature and used as a feedback signal to hold the speed constant. Regulation is 5 percent from no load to full load over a 20:1 speed range. With reduced load or intermittent duty, a speed range of as much as 100:1 can be achieved. Standard base speed is 1725 rpm. Units above ½ hp use full-wave rectification.

(4) *Dodge Speedsetter Drive.* Figure 13-31 shows still another solid-state drive. It uses full-wave rectification and has a 20:1 speed range. The same unit can be used to control a ⅙-, ¼-, or ½-hp motor.

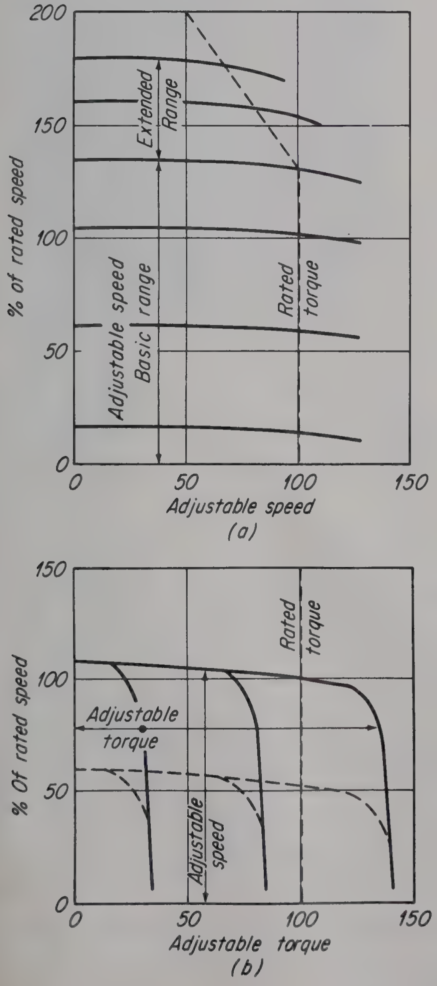


Fig. 13-29 Speed-torque curves for adjustable-speed and adjustable-torque variable-speed dc drive systems. (*Bodine Electric Company.*)

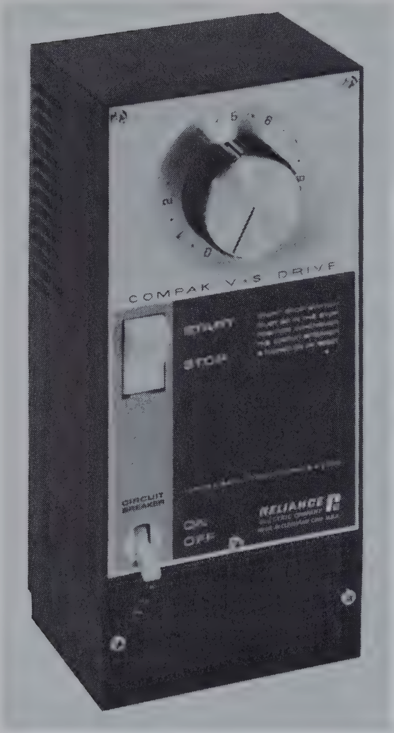


Fig. 13-30 A Compak V-S adjustable-speed controller for dc fractional-horsepower motors. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

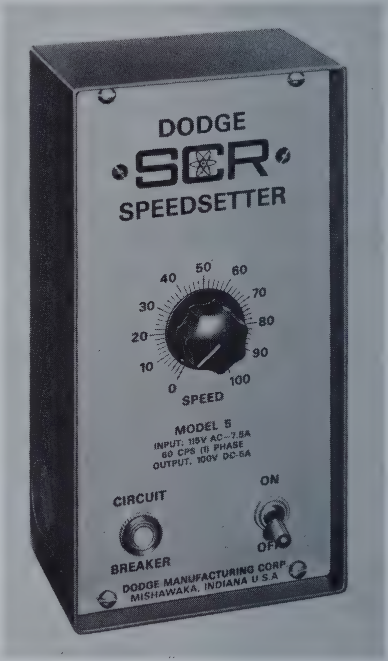


Fig. 13-31 A Dodge Speedsetter solid-state electronic speed controller for fractional-horsepower dc motors. (*Dodge Manufacturing, Division of Reliance Electric Company.*)

SERVICE PROBLEMS

The following articles were written generally to apply to dc motors of fractional-horsepower rating, whether for conventional or for electronic power supplies. To lesser extent do the remarks apply to subfractional-horsepower motors.

13-28. Armature Windings. Armature windings are discussed in Chaps. 8 and 12, and space considerations prevent additional treatment here.

13-29. How to Change the Speed without Rewinding. The speed of a dc motor can be increased without rewinding

1. By inserting resistance in the field circuit (shunt or compound motors only).
2. By increasing the air gap. The air gap can be increased by grind-

ing down the outside diameter of the armature, by grinding out the stator bore, or, if the poles are separate from the yoke, by grinding off a part of the poles, either from the face or from the body next to the yoke.

3. If the poles are separate from the yoke, by putting shims of *nonmagnetic* material between the poles and the yoke.

The speed of a dc motor can be *decreased* without rewinding

1. If the poles are separate from the yoke, by putting shims of magnetic material between the poles and the yoke. Shims may be made from any convenient shim stock of iron or steel (do not use brass, copper, or lead). Cut out a shim that is approximately ⅛ in. larger than the body of the pole at the yoke, and put a hole in this shim for the pole bolt.
2. By inserting resistance in the armature circuit. This procedure increases the speed regulation and makes the speed vary more with changes in load. Insertion of armature resistance does not affect the no-load speed appreciably.

13-30. How to Reverse a DC Motor. Electrically reversible motors are discussed in Art. 13-12. To connect a series, shunt, or compound motor for a definite direction of rotation, or to change the direction of rotation, refer to the diagrams of Fig. 13-3, 13-4, or 13-5. Permanent-magnet motors are reversed simply by changing the polarity of the voltage applied to their terminals.

13-31. Finding the Neutral Position. A satisfactory way of finding the neutral position in a dc motor is by means of the *kick neutral method.* Connect a 15-volt voltmeter across the brushes, and make and break the field circuit; if the brushes are off neutral, a deflection of the voltmeter needle will be observed. Shift the brushes until no deflection can be observed when the field circuit is made or broken. For more accurate results, it may be necessary to repeat this process, using a voltmeter having a full-scale reading of 1.5 volts. Wedge-shaped brushes such as are shown in Fig. 8-17 will contribute further to the accuracy of the setting.

If the motor is to operate in either direction of rotation or if it has a commutating pole, the brushes should be left in the neutral position. If the motor operates only in one direction, and if it has no commutating pole, the brushes may be shifted approximately 10° *against* the direction of rotation of the armature.

13-32. Brushes. The brushes usually selected for dc motors are those found best suited for the particular designs after exhaustive tests have been made of motors operating under conditions duplicating as nearly as possible those expected in actual service. For replacement, the serviceman should obtain duplicates of the original brushes, securing the same make and grade, if possible. If the original type of brush cannot be obtained, one having as nearly as possible the same characteristics should be selected.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. "NEMA Motor and Generator Standards," Pub. No. MG1—1967, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, 155 E. 44th St., New York.
2. "American Standard Terminal Markings for Electrical Apparatus," ASA C6.1—1944, American Standards Association.
3. Gerlach, F. H.: Better Commutators for Small Motors, *Elec. Manufacturing,* December, 1944, p. 124.
4. Merrill, F. W.: Alnico Material for Small Motor and Generator Fields, *Elec. Manufacturing,* March, 1947, p. 78.
5. Hershberger, D. D.: Design Considerations of Fractional Horsepower Size Permanent-magnet Motors and Generators, *Trans. AIEE,* vol. 69, pt. II, 1950, pp. 1274–1280.
6. Goss, W. R.: Evolution of Permanent-magnet Fractional Horsepower Size Motors and Generators, *Trans. AIEE,* vol. 72, pt. III, April, 1953, pp. 81–84.
7. Puchstein, A. F.: "The Design of Small Direct-current Motors," John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1961.
8. Pfaff, R. W.: Characteristics of Phase-controlled Bridge Rectifiers with D-c Shunt Motor Load, *AIEE Trans.,* 1958, vol. 77, pt. II, pp. 47–53.
9. Kubler, E. F.: The Armature Current Form Factor of a D-c Motor Connected to a Controlled Rectifier, *AIEE Trans.,* 1959. vol. 79, pt. III-B, pp. 764–770.
10. Product Engineering: Small Motors of New Design Get the Most from Batteries, *Product Engineering,* Aug. 29, 1966, p. 57.
11. Ireland, James R.: Ceramic PM Motor Design, *Electro-Technology,* February, 1966, pp. 48–51.
12. Editorial Staff: Solid-state D-c Drives, *Electro-Technology,* March, 1967, pp. 97–101.
13. Editorial Staff: Small Brushless D-c Motor Holds a Set Speed within 0.5%, *Product Engineering,* Sept. 11, 1967 p. 102.
14. Jacobowitz, Henry: "Electronics Made Simple," Garden City Books, New York, 1958, 192 pp.
15. Hibberd, Robert G.: "Solid State Electronics, a Basic Course for Engineers and Technicians, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1968, 170 pp.
16. Ireland, James R.: "Ceramic Permanent-magnet Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1968, 188 pp.

Chapter 14

Polyphase Induction Motors

In integral-horsepower sizes, induction motors are almost all polyphase. In fractional-horsepower sizes, the reverse is true, for most of them are single-phase. The principal reason is simply that, in most installations where fractional-horsepower motors are used, polyphase alternating current is not available. If polyphase power does happen to be available, single-phase motors can always be used, but the converse is not true. (There are on the market static devices designed to operate polyphase motors on single-phase circuits but, in spite of claims to the contrary, polyphase motors operated from single-phase lines with such devices generally give a performance markedly inferior to that of comparable polyphase or single-phase motors, and at a higher overall cost.)

In general, in fractional-horsepower sizes, single-phase induction motors sell at lower prices than polyphase induction motors, principally because of their larger activity; and price is another reason why single-phase motors are often used even in some cases where polyphase motors could be used. On the other hand, in many military applications, polyphase motors are used in small sizes in order to gain minimum weight and maximum reliability.

14-1. Essential Parts of a Polyphase Induction Motor. Essential parts of a polyphase induction motor are:

1. A *primary winding,* usually placed on the stator, but sometimes on the rotor. The primary winding is the one connected directly to the source of power, regardless of whether it is on the stator or on the rotor. A two-phase motor has two electrically distinct windings, displaced by 90 electrical degrees. In the three-phase induction motor, there are three windings, or phases, displaced 120 electrical degrees from each other. These three phases may be connected in the circuit by any one of the common connections discussed in Art. 1-7 and illustrated in Fig. 1-7.
2. A *secondary winding,* usually placed on the rotor, which may (*a*) be of squirrel-cage construction, or (*b*) have phase windings like the primary (such windings are rare in fractional-horsepower sizes).
3. There are no switches, short-circuiters, or other mechanisms required, except that collector rings and brushes are required for wound-rotor induction motors.

14-2. Principles and Characteristics of the Polyphase Induction Motor. The principle of operation of a polyphase induction motor is discussed in Chap. 2, wherein it was shown that polyphase windings, excited by polyphase currents, set up a rotating magnetic field which causes the rotor to follow it and thereby act as a motor. The speed of this rotating field is known as the *synchronous speed.* The motor always

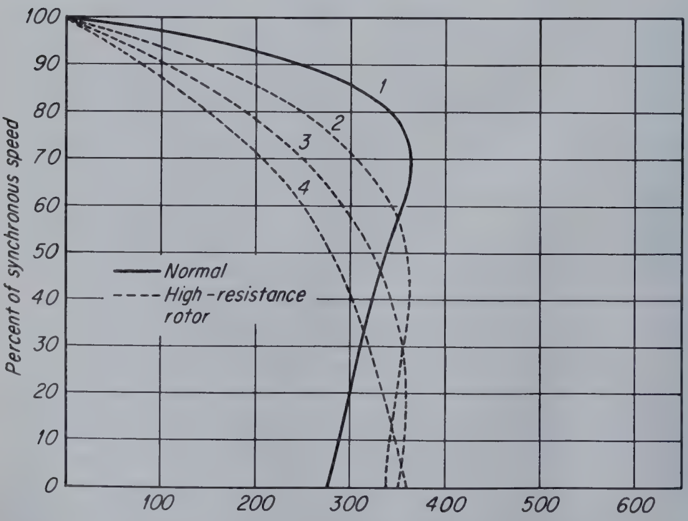


Fig. 14-1 Typical speed-torque curves of a fractional-horsepower polyphase induction motor. Dashed curves represent high-resistance rotors.

runs slower than synchronous speed, and the difference between the actual operating speed and synchronous speed is known as the *slip*. The slip is usually expressed as a percentage of the synchronous speed.

A typical speed-torque curve for a fractional-horsepower polyphase induction motor is shown in Fig. 14-1 by the solid-line curve. When higher resistance rotors are used, the speed-torque curves take on shapes such as curves 2, 3, or 4. Breakdown torques are usually about 40 percent higher than the higher figure for each rating in Table 1-2. Polyphase induction motors, in fractional-horsepower sizes, are provided with 40 percent more breakdown torque than single-phase motors, primarily in order to keep full-load slip within reasonable limits and to provide more locked-rotor torque. Locked-rotor torque is about 75 percent of breakdown torque. Torque characteristics are summarized in Table 19-1. Thermal protection of polyphase motors is discussed in Art. 17-19.

WINDINGS AND CONNECTIONS

Many small polyphase motors today are machine-wound in the factory, for reasons of cost. Such windings generally resemble in appearance single-phase concentric windings such as those discussed in Chap. 3, except that there are three windings, displaced 120 electrical degrees apart, instead of two windings 90° apart. Even skein windings are sometimes used on small polyphase motors. In the repair shop, where winding machines are not usually available, the conventional lap windings are easier to use. For that reason, the discussion that follows is confined almost entirely to such lap windings. If a machine-wound motor has to be rewound in the repair shop, an equivalent lap winding can usually be used to replace it.

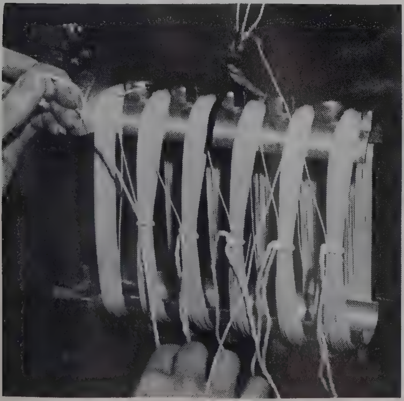


Fig. 14-2 Coils for a polyphase motor wound on a collapsible mold of light weight which permits fast winding. Six coils, enough for two groups in this case, are wound from a continuous strand of wire. Start and finish leads of each group are marked by dark- and light-colored sleeves threaded onto the wire before winding. (*Westinghouse Electric Corporation.*)

14-3. Lap Winding for Polyphase Motors. A lap winding consists of a number of identical coils. For fractional-horsepower motors, the coils are wound from insulated magnet wire, and are later manually inserted in the slots and connected. If wound on a collapsible mold, such as in Fig. 14-2, they are shaped like a racetrack; wound on other molds, they may be diamond-shaped. Usually there are as many stator coils as there are slots, or, in other words, two coil sides per slot, making what is known as a two-layer winding. All the coils usually are identical in number of turns and size of wire, and the phase coils are generally better insulated than the other coils. (A *phase coil* is a coil adjacent to a coil of a different phase.) The typical way in which such a winding progresses is shown in Fig. 3-1. The coils are connected in groups; e.g., in Fig. 3-1 there are four coils per group. A *group* is simply a given number of individual coils connected in series, with only two leads brought out, and the stator winding is then connected from these groups. So far as the winding itself is concerned, the lap winding used in a polyphase motor is very similar to the lap winding used in a dc armature. However, in the dc winding all the coils are connected in series, and a closed winding is formed, whereas in polyphase motors the coils are connected in a number of groups.

In the mush-wound coils used in fractional-horsepower motors, it is a fairly common practice to wind all the coils of a single group from a continuous strand of wire (see Fig. 14-2). If there are the same number of coils in all groups, this is a very desirable practice because it eliminates a number of connections and simplifies the final connections of a wound stator. If, however, the number of coils is not the same in all groups (see Art. 14-9), it may be less confusing to bring out the connections from each individual coil and to connect them in groups after the stator is wound.

14-4. Number of Groups and Number of Coils per Group. In the ordinary winding (as distinguished from a consequent-pole winding), there is one group per phase per pole. Therefore,

$$\text{Number of groups} = \text{number of poles} \times \text{number of phases} \tag{14-1}$$

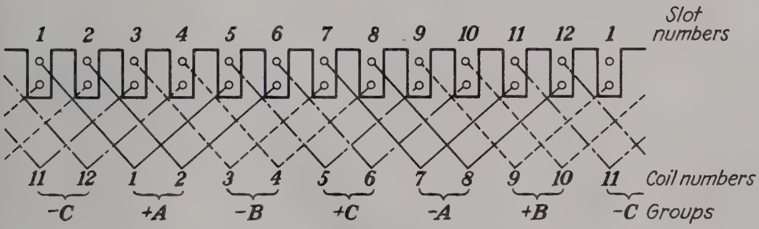
$$\text{Number of coils per group} = \frac{\text{total number of coils}}{\text{number of groups}} \tag{14-2}$$

If the number of coils per group works out to be a whole number, each group has this number of coils—but if a fractional number is obtained, an unequal grouping of the coils must be used, as explained in Art. 14-9 and shown in Tables 14-1 and 14-2. Windings that have an integral number of coils per group are often referred to as *integral-slot* *windings.* Similarly, windings with a fractional number of coils per group are often called *fractional-slot windings.*

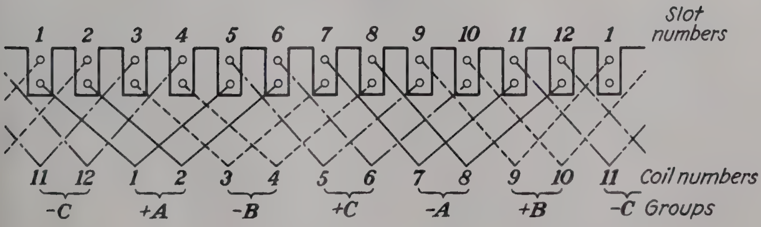
Consequent-pole windings have half as many groups as the corresponding conventional windings.

14-5. "Throw-up" and "Throw-down" Windings.

In the usual two-layer lap winding, each and every coil has one side in the bottom of a slot and the other side in the top of some other slot. This means that when the first coils are inserted, only the bottom coil side can be placed in the slot, and the top coil side must be left inside the stator bore, but not in a slot, until the winding is nearly completed. In the case of two-pole induction motors, where the throw is large, there would normally be a large number of these coil sides in the bore. As the bore of a two-pole motor is relatively small, the large number of coil sides interferes with the winding process so that it is a fairly common practice to wind the coils *throw down.* In the throw-down winding, both coil sides of all the first coils are inserted in the slots, which means that the first coils wound have both sides in the bottoms of the slots. This point is illustrated in Fig. 14-3*b*. As a result, the last coils wound have both coil sides in the tops of the slots. This throw-down winding is compared with the conventional, or throw-up, winding, which is shown in Fig. 14-3*a*.



(a)
"Throw-up" winding



(b)
"Throw-down" winding

Fig. 14-3 Two types of polyphase windings.

The throw-down winding does cause a slight electrical unbalance but usually not enough to have serious consequences.

14-6. "Short-throw" and "Long-throw" Connections. Two types of connections between the groups are recognized:

1. Short throw
2. Long throw

In the short-throw connection, each group is connected to another group displaced 180 electrical degrees. In the long-throw connection, a group is connected to another group displaced 360 electrical degrees away. In single-phase windings, there are similarly two such connections, as discussed in Art. 4-12.

When parallel connections are used, it is desirable to use the long throw if possible, in order to balance the magnetic pull on the rotor. However, in the case of unequal grouping of coils (Arts. 14-9 and 14-10), it is usually necessary to use the short throw. If the stator is series-connected, it makes no difference whether the long or short

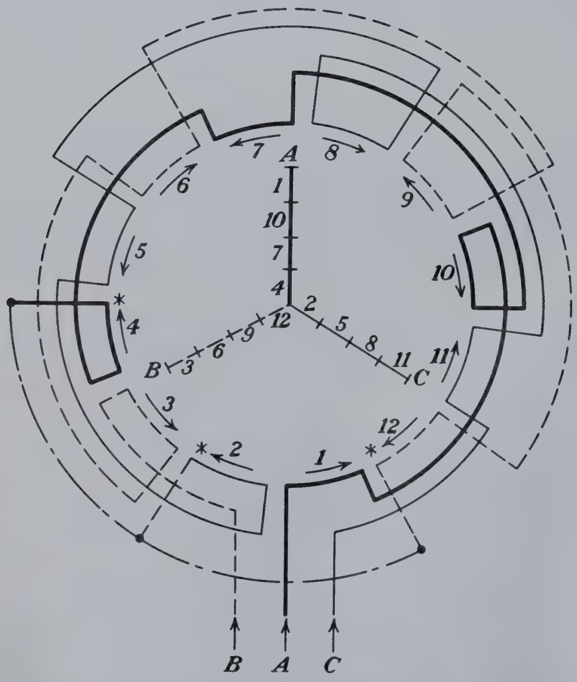


Fig. 14-4 Stator connection diagram, four poles, three-phase, series Y, short-throw. (*After Dudley.*)

throw is used; whichever is the more convenient connection may be employed.

14-7. Stator (or Rotor) Connection Diagrams, Single-voltage, Three-phase. Typical stator connection diagrams for windings used in fractional-horsepower polyphase motors are given in Figs. 14-4 and 14-5. These diagrams are reproduced, by permission, from Dudley's book "Connecting Induction Motors."[1,*] Many other connection diagrams for polyphase induction motors are given by Dudley,[2] by Braymer and Roe,[3] and also by the author.[8]

14-8. How to Check a Diagram or Winding. There are so many possible methods of connecting polyphase induction motors that it is impossible to give them all in a book of this scope. It is, therefore, desirable that the serviceman know how to check the correctness of a diagram, for he may often be called upon to make up his own connection diagrams.

A method for checking the correctness of a three-phase stator connection diagram for a conventional winding is illustrated in Fig. 14-4. Current is assumed to flow *into* each of the three leads, as shown by the arrows. The winding is traced three times, once from each lead to the

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

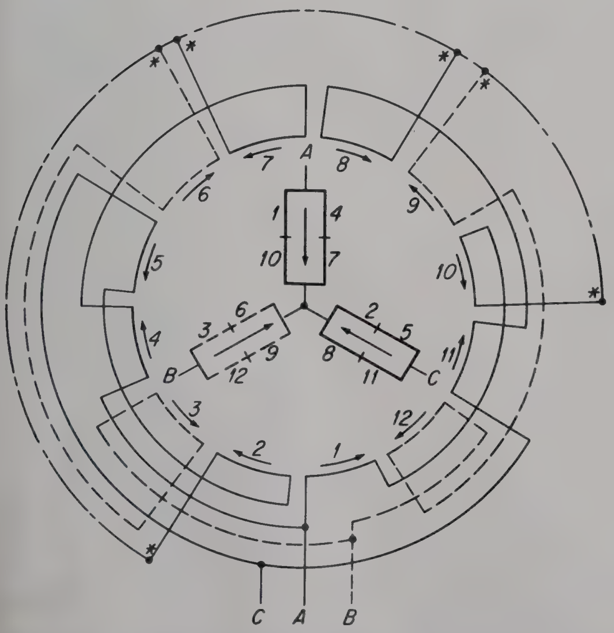


Fig. 14-5 Stator connection diagram, four poles, three-phase, parallel Y, short-throw. *(After Dudley.)*

star point; as we trace through each group, an arrow is marked beside the group to indicate the direction in which the pencil traced when going through that group. Now, if the three-phase diagram is correct—as it is in the figure—no two adjacent arrows will point in the same direction. Unless this direction does so alternate with every group, the diagram is not correct.

Diagrams for consequent-pole windings can be checked by following the procedure outlined above. However, in this case, all arrows must point in the *same* direction.

14-9. Windings with Unequal Coil Grouping. In Table 14-1 are shown the possibilities for balanced three-phase lap windings for windings of from 2 to 12 poles, inclusive, for 6 to 48 slots or coils. In each case where a balanced winding is possible, the number of coils per group has been figured and given, and in a large number of cases this number comes out a fractional number. For the latter cases, Table 14-2 is given

TABLE 14-1 Balanced Three-phase Lap Windings
(Maximum number of parallel circuits, number of coils per group, for equal and unequal groupings)

Number of slots or coils	2 poles		4 poles		6 poles		8 poles		10 poles		12 poles	
	Circuits	Coils per group	Circuits	Coils per group	Circuits	Coils per group	Circuits	Coils per group	Circuits	Coils per group	Circuits	Coils per group
6	2	1										
9	1	1½										
12	2	2	4	1								
15	1	2½	1	1¼								
18	2	3	2	1½	6	1						
21	1	3½	1	1¾	0							
24	2	4	4	2	0	...	8	1				
27	1	4½	1	2¼	3	1½	1	1⅛				
30	2	5	2	2½	0	...	2	1¼	10	1		
33	1	5½	1	2¾	0	...	1	1⅜	1	1⅒		
36	2	6	4	3	6	2	4	1½	2	1⅕	12	1
39	1	6½	1	3¼	0	....	1	1⅝	1	1 3⁄10	0	
42	2	7	2	3½	0	...	2	1¾	2	1⅖	0	
45	1	7½	1	3¾	3	2½	1	1⅞	5	1½	3	1¼
48	2	8	4	4	0	...	8	2	2	1⅗	0	

0 indicates no balanced winding is possible.

If the coils per group is a whole number, all groups have the indicated number of coils.

If the coils per group is not a whole number, refer to Table 14-2 for the grouping.

to show how the coils may be grouped. To illustrate: assume that it is desired to put a four-pole winding into 15 stator slots (a common arrangement for synchros). The number of coils per group is 1¼, from Table 14-1. In Table 14-2 we find that with 1¼ coils per group, the grouping is 2-1-1-1-2-1-1-1-2-1-1-1. This means that the first group in phase *A* has 2 coils per group; then, progressing around the stator, the next three groups have 1 coil each; the next group, 2 coils; the next three groups, 1 coil each; and so on, progressing completely around the stator. If there are 1¼ coils per group, this grouping is the same whether the winding is 4 poles in 15 slots, 8 poles in 30 slots, or 12 poles in 45 slots.

TABLE 14-2 Balanced Three-phase Lap Windings with Unequal Coil Grouping

Average number of coils per group	Group number																													
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
1⅒	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1⅛	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1						
1⅕	2	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1															
1¼	2	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	2	1	1	1																		
1³⁄₁₀	2	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	1
1⅜	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	1						
1⅖	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	1	1															
1½	2	1	2	1	2	1																								
1⅗	2	2	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	1															
1⅝	2	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	2	1	2	1						
1¾	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	1																		
1⅞	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1						
2¼	3	2	2	2	3	2	2	2	3	2	2	2																		
2½	3	2	3	2	3	2																								
2¾	3	3	3	2	3	3	3	2	3	3	3	2																		
3¼	4	3	3	3	4	3	3	3	4	3	3	3																		
3½	4	3	4	3	4	3																								
3¾	4	4	4	3	4	4	4	3	4	4	4	3																		
4½	5	4	5	4	5	4																								
5½	6	5	6	5	6	5																								
6½	7	6	7	6	7	6																								
7½	8	7	8	7	8	7																								

If a parallel connection is used, the short-throw or top-to-top connection must be used with the grouping given in the table.

In Table 14-1 under Circuits is given the maximum number of parallel circuits into which it is possible to divide a balanced winding for the combination shown. If a parallel winding is used, it is not necessary to connect into so many parallel paths as the maximum number indicates, but the number of parallel paths used may be any factor of the maximum number of possible parallels. For example, if 6 parallels are possible, 6, 3, or 2 parallel paths may be used. If 10 parallels are possible, 10, 5, or 2 parallels may be used.

In general, when the coil grouping is unequal, the short-throw connection must be used for parallel-connected windings.

An explanation of how the coil groupings given in Table 14-2 were determined is explained in Art. 14-10 of a previous work[8] for the benefit of those who may have occasion to work out combinations that are not listed.

14-10. Irregular Lap Windings. In Table 14-1 it was shown by a 0 that balanced windings are not possible with certain numbers of slots, notably for 6- and 12-pole motors. In many cases, however, there is a possible winding arrangement which is nearly enough balanced to use. Three such arrangements are given below:

Slots or coils	Poles	Grouping
24	6	2-1-1-1-1-2-1-2-1 and repeat
48	6	2-3-3-3-3-2-3-2-3 and repeat
48	12	2-1-1-1-1-2-1-2-1 and repeat

These winding arrangements are satisfactory for ordinary squirrel-cage motors. However, if an irregular winding arrangement such as one of these is used for either the primary or secondary winding of a wound-rotor induction motor, a serious loss in torque may be encountered, due to this irregular winding. This reduction may be as much as 25 percent, as reported by Hellmund and Veinott.[5] An analysis of the harmonic content of this winding has since been published.[7]

14-11. Dual-voltage Motors. A stator connection diagram for a four-pole dual-voltage motor is given in Fig. 14-6. A schematic vector diagram is included with the figure. The terminal markings of all of these diagrams are in conformance with the latest standards.[6]

It is to be noted here that there are certain combinations of slots and poles into which it is not possible to put a dual-voltage winding; these arrangements are those in which only one circuit per phase is

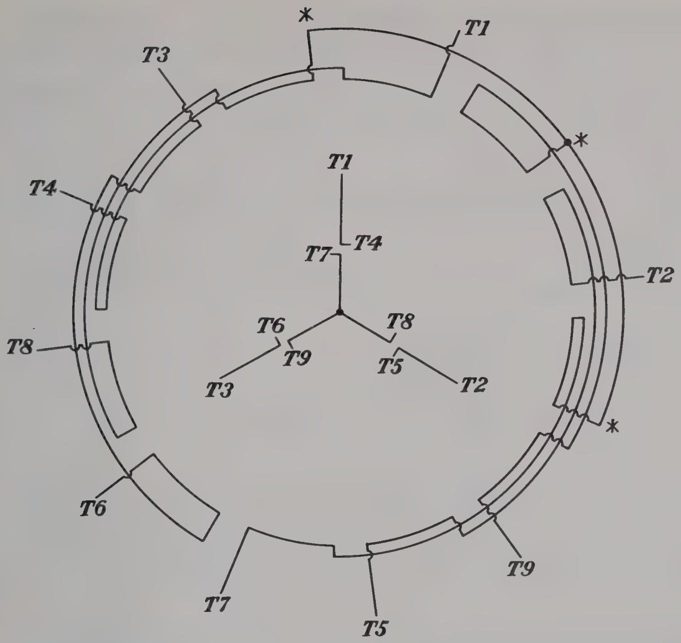


Fig. 14-6 Stator connection diagram, dual-voltage, four poles, three-phase, short-throw, series and parallel star.

possible and these combinations are shown in Table 14-1. For example, a two-pole winding in 9, 15, 21, 27, etc., slots, or any other combination in which the maximum number of circuits is one, cannot be connected for dual voltage.

14-12. Effective Series Conductors per Phase. The total number of effective series conductors per phase in a polyphase lap winding is given by the expression

$$C_e = \frac{S_c \times 2 \times T}{m \times q} \times k_p \times k_d \tag{14-3}$$

where S_c = total number of stator coils
T = number of turns per coil
m = number of phases
q = number of parallel circuits
k_p = chord factor (pitch factor)
k_d = distribution factor (breadth factor)

Chord factor is the ratio of the voltage generated in a coil to the voltage that would be generated in a full-pitch coil of the same number

TABLE 14-3 Chord Factors for Polyphase Windings

Throw	Slots per pole												
	24	18	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6
1–25	1.000	0.866											
1–24	0.998	0.906											
1–23	0.991	0.940	0.831										
1–22	0.981	0.966	0.882										
1–21	0.966	0.985	0.924	0.866									
1–20	0.947	0.996	0.956	0.914	0.847								
1–19	0.924	1.000	0.981	0.951	0.901	0.833							
1–18	0.897	0.996	0.995	0.978	0.944	0.884	0.793						
1–17	0.866	0.985	1.000	0.995	0.975	0.935	0.866	0.756					
1–16	0.832	0.966	0.995	1.000	0.994	0.971	0.924	0.841	0.707				
1–15	0.793	0.940	0.981	0.995	1.000	0.993	0.966	0.910	0.809				
1–14	0.752	0.906	0.956	0.978	0.994	1.000	0.991	0.960	0.891	0.766			
1–13	0.707	0.866	0.924	0.951	0.975	0.993	1.000	0.990	0.951	0.866	0.707		
1–12	0.659	0.819	0.882	0.914	0.944	0.971	0.991	1.000	0.988	0.940	0.831		
1–11	0.609	0.766	0.831	0.866	0.901	0.935	0.966	0.990	1.000	0.985	0.924	0.782	
1–10	.....	0.707	0.773	0.809	0.847	0.884	0.924	0.960	0.988	1.000	0.981	0.901	
1– 9	.....	0.643	0.707	0.743	0.782	0.833	0.866	0.910	0.951	0.985	1.000	0.975	0.866
1– 8	.....	.....	0.698	0.669	0.707	0.749	0.793	0.841	0.891	0.940	0.981	1.000	0.966
1– 7	.....	.....	0.570	0.616	0.624	0.663	0.707	0.756	0.809	0.866	0.924	0.975	1.000
1– 6	.....	.....	.....	0.530	0.532	0.566	0.609	0.655	0.707	0.766	0.831	0.901	0.966
1– 5	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	0.588	0.643	0.707	0.782	0.866
1– 4	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	0.570	0.624	0.707

of turns. Usually it can be found in Table 14-3, or it can be calculated from the expression

$$k_p = \sin\left(\frac{\text{slots throw} \times 90}{\text{slots per pole}}\right) \tag{14-4}$$

The above expression is valid even when the number of slots per pole is a fractional number, such as 6.75, for example.

Distribution factor takes into account the fact that the voltages generated in all coils of a group are not in time phase with each other because they are displaced in space from one another. It can be found for nearly all practical cases by reference to Table 14-4. How these factors were developed and how to compute them for more general cases is covered in another work.[9]

14-13. Machine-wound Concentric Windings. For reasons of economy, many fractional-horsepower polyphase induction motors are machine-wound in the factory. In general, such windings are limited to integral-slot windings, that is, to cases where the number of slots per pole per phase is an integer number. Usually they are wound as concentric windings. A wide variety of arrangements is possible, more than can be discussed here. When such a motor has to be rewound, it is usually practicable to rewind the motor by developing concentric coils, just as for a single-phase motor, using identical wire sizes and turns; this, of course, is the safest procedure. Often, however, it may be more economical and feasible to replace the original winding with a conventional lap winding. In some cases, it is possible to find a lap winding that is *exactly equivalent* (in the sense that these words are used in Art. 3-1); in other cases, this is not possible. In the latter case, the replacing lap winding should at least have the same number of effective series conductors per phase and the same wire size as the concentric winding it replaces. How to figure the distribution factor and number of effective conductors of a concentric winding is explained in Art. 4-37; the procedure described is equally applicable to the concentric windings used in polyphase motors. How to figure the effective conductors of a polyphase lap winding is explained in Art. 14-12.

TABLE 14-4 Distribution Factors for Polyphase Windings

Slots per pole per phase, or number of coils per group	Two-phase	Three-phase
1	1.000	1.000
2	0.924	0.966
3	0.911	0.960
4	0.906	0.958
5	0.904	0.957
6	0.903	0.956
Infinity	0.900	0.955
1½	0.911	0.960
All other fractional-slot windings	0.900	0.955

Three examples of polyphase concentric windings are illustrated in Figs. 14-7 to 14-9.

(1) *Chain Winding.* Figure 14-7 shows an arrangement which is very popular and very economical to wind. It is the "chain winding" which has been used on large machines, almost ever since large induction motors have been built. NOTE: there is only one coil side per slot; there are only six groups, as in a consequent-pole winding, and not twelve, as there are in a conventional four-pole three-phase winding. While the winding itself is single-layer, there are two layers or levels of coil-end

connections. In practice, a machine with three needles, spaced 120° apart, first winds three coils 120 (mechanical) degrees apart. The next operation is to wind three more coils, making the coil-end connections just outside the ends of the three coils wound before.

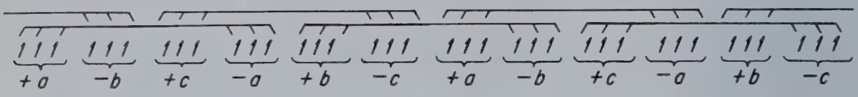


Fig. 14-7 Chain winding for a 4-pole 36-slot 3-phase stator. Slots are uniformly filled. No slot contains coils connected to different phases.

The distribution factor of this arrangement is

$$k_d = \frac{\sin 70° + \sin 90° + \sin 110°}{3} = \frac{0.940 + 1.000 + 0.940}{3} = 0.960$$

This winding is *exactly equivalent* to a full-pitch two-layer lap winding which has half as many turns per coil as there are turns per slot in the chain winding.

This arrangement is suitable for four-pole motors, but not for two- or six-pole motors.

(2) *Conventional Concentric Winding.* Figure 14-8 illustrates a general concentric winding of conventional arrangement, that is, one which has one group per pole per phase—12 groups for the winding shown. Each phase has four groups, one per pole, which are wound, or inserted, one phase at a time, giving three layers or levels of coil-end connections. Slots are uniformly filled, but every third slot contains coils connected to different phases.

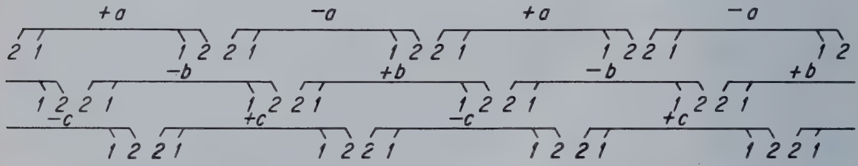


Fig. 14-8 Concentric winding for a 4-pole 36-slot 3-phase stator. Slots are uniformly filled. Every third slot contains coils connected to different phases.

The distribution factor of this arrangement is

$$k_d = \frac{\sin 60° + 2 \sin 80°}{3} = \frac{0.866 + 2 \times 0.985}{3} = 0.945$$

This winding is *exactly equivalent* to a two-layer lap winding of 8/9 the pitch and a number of turns per coil equal to the number of turns corresponding to "1" in the figure. This type of arrangement is suitable for any number of poles.

(3) *Full-pitch Equivalent Concentric Winding.* Figure 14-9 shows an arrangement for a two-pole motor which is exactly equivalent to a full-pitch two-layer lap winding. It has, like a conventional winding, six groups, or one per phase per pole. Slots are uniformly filled and no slot contains coils connected to different phases. This arrangement is applicable to any number of poles. The distribution factor of this arrangement is

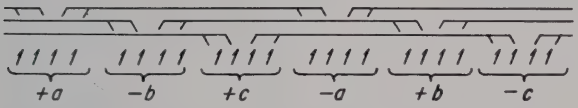


Fig. 14-9 Concentric winding for a 2-pole 24-slot 3-phase stator. Slots are uniformly filled. No slot contains coils connected to different phases.

$$k_d = \frac{\sin 67.5° + \sin 82.5°}{2} = \frac{0.924 + 0.991}{2} = 0.957$$

14-14. Rewinding or Reconnecting Polyphase Motors. Many possibilities exist for rewinding or reconnecting a polyphase motor for changes in one or more of the following: voltage, number of phases, frequency, number of poles, torques, and horsepower rating. Readers interested in this subject are referred to an earlier work where some 13 pages were devoted to this subject.[8]

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Dudley, A. M., and Henderson S. F.: "Connecting Induction Motors," 4th ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1960.
2. Braymer, Daniel E., and Roe, A. C.: "Repair Shop Diagrams and Connecting Tables for Induction Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1927.
3. ——— and ———: "Rewinding and Connecting Alternating-current Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1932.
4. Riker, C. R., and Dudley, A. M.: Lap Windings with Unequal Coil Groups, *Elec. J.*, January, 1925, pp. 25–39.
5. Hellmund, R. E.. and Veinott, C. G.: Irregular Windings in Wound-rotor Induction Motors, *Elec. Eng.*, February, 1934, pp. 342–346.
6. "NEMA Motor and Generator Standards," Publication No. MG1—1967, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, 155 E. 44th St., New York 10017.
7. Veinott, C. G.: Spatial Harmonic Magnetomotive Forces in Irregular Windings and Special Connections of Polyphase Windings, *IEEE Trans. on Power Apparatus and Systems*, vol. 83, 1964, pp. 1246–1253.
8. ———: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.
9. ———: "Theory and Design of Small Induction Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1959. (Out of print, but available from University Microfilms, Inc., Div. of Xerox, Ann Arbor, Mich.)

Chapter 15

Stepper Motors

Sensational strides in the field of automatic control have generated a great demand for a number of small rotating electrical machines, built in subfractional- and fractional-horsepower sizes. In general, such machines may be different applications of a familiar type, modifications or adaptations of a familiar type, or a novel and hitherto more-or-less unfamiliar new type. This chapter and the next one are devoted to an examination and discussion of many such machines. Varieties and availabilities of a number of such machines are shown in Table 15-1. Stepper motors, a popular innovation, afford simple means for controlled remote positioning of many devices; they have wide application. Since industry standards do not exist for them, several specific types are described and discussed in this chapter.

15-1. Stepper Motor Defined. A stepper motor might be defined as follows: A stepper motor is an electromagnetic device, designed to convert a series of input power pulses into discrete angular movements, one for each power pulse. Depending upon the design of the motor and its intended use, the power pulses may consist of current pulses of the same polarity, or alternate pulses of opposite polarity. The se-

TABLE 15-1 Rotating Machines for Control Systems

Manufacturer	Stepper motors	Servo-motors	Timing motors
Amphenol Controls Div.*	...	x	
Barber-Colman Co.*	...	x	
Brailsford & Company*	...	...	x
Bristol Motors, Div. of Vocaline Old Saybrook, Conn. 06475	...	...	x
Clifton Div. of Litton Industries Clifton Heights, Pa. 19018	x	x	
Craig Corporation 350–360 Mystic Ave. Somerville, Mass. 02145	...	x	x
Electric Indicator Co.*	...	x	
Electro-Craft Corp. Hopkins, Minn. 55343	...	x	
Electronic Specialty Co.*	...	x	
Ford Instrument, Div., Sperry Rand Corp. 31-10 Thomson Ave. Long Island City, N.Y. 11101	...	x	
General Electric Company*	x	x	
General Time Corp., Ind. Controls Torrington, Conn. 06790	...	...	x
Globe Industries, Inc.*	...	x	x
Haydon, The A. W., Co. 232 N. Elm Waterbury, Conn. 06720	x	...	x
Holtzer-Cabot Corp.*	...	x	
Honeywell, Inc. Grenier Field Manchester, N.H. 03104	...	x	
Hurst Mfg. Co. Princeton, Ind. 47570	...	...	x
Ingraham Industries, Div. of McGraw-Edison P. O. Box 608 Elizabethtown, Ky. 42701	...	...	x
Inland Motor Corp. 501 1st St. Radford, Va. 24141	...	x	
Kearfott Products Div., Gen. Precision Systems, Inc.*	x	x	
Mallory Timers Co., Div. of P. R. Mallory & Co. Indianapolis, Ind. 46206	...	...	x
Mechatrol Div., Teledyne*	x	x	
Muirhead Instruments, Inc. Mountainside, N.J. 07092	x	x	
Printed Motors, Inc. 33 Sea Cliff Glen Cove, N.Y. 11542	...	x	
Rotating Components, Inc.*	...	x	
Sigma Instruments, Inc. Braintree, Mass. 02185	x		
Singer, The, Co., Diehl Div.*	x	x	
Small Motors, Inc.*	x		
Sunbeam Electronics Div.*	...	x	
Superior Electric Co. Bristol, Conn. 06010	x		
Vernitron Corp. 50 Gazza Blvd. Farmingdale, Long Island, N.Y. 11735	...	x	
Yaskawa Electric America, Inc. 100 Bliss Drive Oakbrook, Ill. 60521	...	x	

* For manufacturer's address, see Table 1-1.

quential pulses may all be delivered to the same motor winding, or successively to different coils in the motor. Pulses do not have to be delivered at any fixed rate. The machine is capable of continuous rotation.

15-2. Types of Stepper Motors. Many stepper motors, especially those with many poles, are constructed basically like a synchronous inductor motor, such as described in Chap. 11. Such motors use a permanent magnet in the rotor; the stator may use a shading coil to fix direction of rotation, or it may actually use two coils, mutually displaced 90 electrical degrees. Some permanent-magnet stepper motors use a rotor consisting simply of a solid alnico cylinder, magnetized for two or for four poles; such motors use a more-or-less conventional stator winding. Some stepper motors use the variable reluctance principle. A somewhat different type is offered under the trade name of CYCLONOME, a registered trademark of Sigma Instruments, Inc. This motor is essentially an inductor motor with permanent magnets in the stator structure. All these types are discussed in this chapter.

SHADED-POLE STEPPER MOTORS

15-3. Unidirectional Motors. The A. W. Haydon Company, of Waterbury, Conn., offers a commercial-industrial stepper motor, identified as their 45100-series stepper motor, which is essentially a timing motor of the inductor type, with permanent-magnet rotor. It uses a single center-tapped coil, plus a shading coil to fix direction of rotation. The basic control circuit for this motor is shown in Fig. 15-1; the negative side of the battery is connected to the center terminal, and a pulse switch connects the positive terminal alternately from one outside terminal to the other. The pulse switch is shown in the figure as mechanical, but it could be any form of switching circuit.

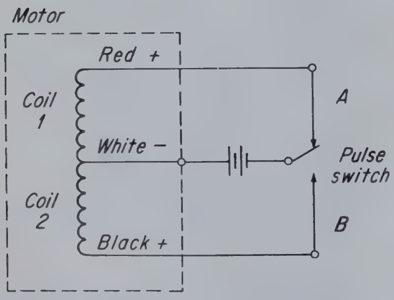


Fig. 15-1 Basic control circuit for a unidirectional shaded-pole stepper motor. (*The A. W. Haydon Company.*)

The motor has 24 poles, and each pulse advances the rotor one pole pitch, or 15 mechanical degrees, requiring 24 pulses per revolution. Pulses may be applied at any rate up to a maximum of 80 per second, which would give a maximum speed of 200 rpm; each pulse must have a minimum duration of 12.5 msec. A running torque of 0.2 oz-in. is developed. Some holding torque is provided by the permanent magnets when the stator coil is not energized, somewhat more if it is. This motor is also supplied with integral gear reductions, giving various reductions up to 100:1.

For high-speed slewing or homing, the center tap can be disconnected and an ac voltage of any frequency up to 40 hz may be applied to the outer terminals of the coil.

Another mode of energizing such a motor is given by Kavanaugh and Perkins:[1,*] a steady dc signal is applied continuously to one-half of the coil; stepping is accomplished by applying a pulse across the other half of the winding, of the opposite polarity, and of double the strength of the steady pulse. One step is achieved when the pulse is applied and one when it is removed. One revolution is thus achieved for each 12 pulses.

15-4. Bidirectional Motors. The A. W. Haydon Company produces a bidirectional stepper motor which is essentially the same as the one described in the preceding article, except that two motors are built in the same housing. One stator is used for one direction of rotation, and the other stator for the opposite direction of rotation.

PERMANENT-MAGNET STEPPER MOTORS WITH TWO-PHASE WINDINGS

Most permanent-magnet stepper motors use the popular synchronous-inductor construction, which was described in Chap. 11 (q.v.). These are characterized by a rotor employing a permanent magnet, and two stator phases, effectively displaced 90 electrical degrees. Because of their construction, there may actually be only two physical coils, but the motors are so arranged that the two coils produce mmf fields displaced 90 electrical degrees from each other. Motors of this type are readily bidirectional. The A. W. Haydon Company refers to stepper motors of this type as *logic stepper motors,* whereas they refer to their shaded-pole stepper motors as *pulse steppers.*

15-5. SLO-SYN Stepper Motors. SLO-SYN is a registered trademark of the Superior Electric Company. The construction of these motors is

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of the chapter.

generally like that shown in Fig. 11-10, and their principles of operation, since they are a type of ac motor, are generally as described in Art. 11-16.

(1) *AC Operation.* The motor may be operated from a two-phase supply, or from a single-phase source, using the circuit shown in Fig. 15-2. The motor has 100 poles, and hence operates at 72 rpm on a 60-hz source. Like any other synchronous inductor motor, it can accelerate and synchronize only a limited amount of inertia.

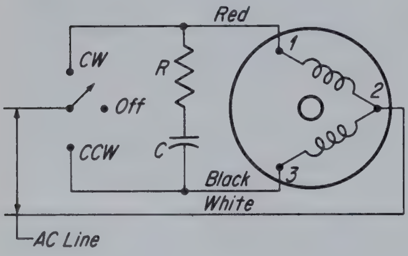
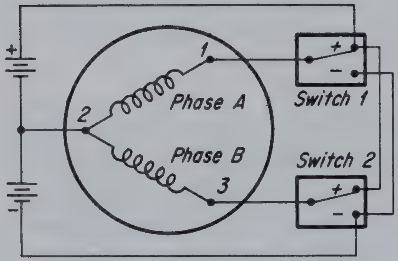


Fig. 15-2 Schematic connections for a three-wire SLO-SYN motor, operated as an electrically reversible synchronous motor. (*Superior Electric Company.*)

(2) *DC Stepping—200 Steps per Revolution.* Figure 15-3 shows how two batteries and switches may be used to step the motor with dc pulses. Each step advances the rotor one-half a pole pitch, or 90 electrical degrees. (For a more complete explanation, the reader is invited to refer to Art. 2-6 and to Fig. 2-4. There, phases A and B correspond to phases A and B in Fig. 15-3, and steps 1 and 2 in Fig. 15-3 to



Switching sequence *

Step	Switch *1	Switch *2
1	+	+
2	−	+
3	−	−
4	+	−
1	+	+

* *To reverse direction, read chart up from bottom.*

Fig. 15-3 Schematic connections and switching sequence for a three-wire SLO-SYN motor, operated as a stepper motor; there are 200 steps per revolution. (*Superior Electric Company.*)

times 2 and 4, respectively, in Fig. 2-4, which shows clearly how the magnetic field advances 90 electrical degrees with this change.) Each step advances the rotor 1.8 mechanical degrees. It should be noted that the motor circuits are inductive, and it may be necessary to use supplemental means to prevent destructive arcing at the switches. The motor can stop, start, reverse, or step at varying speeds, without losing any steps. At low stepping rates, the available torque will be approximately the rated torque of the motor, but the available torque drops off as the stepping rate is increased, as illustrated in Fig. 15-4.

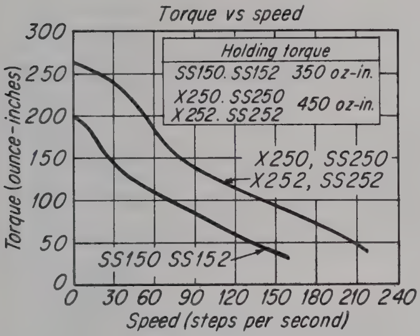
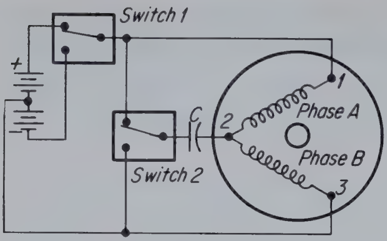


Fig. 15-4 Effect of stepping rate on available torque of typical stepper motors. (*Superior Electric Company.*)

(3) *DC Stepping—100 Steps per Revolution.* In the preceding paragraph, one phase was reversed for each step, thus requiring two steps to advance the magnetic field—and rotor—one pole pitch; hence, since the motor has 100 poles, 200 steps were required to advance the rotor one complete revolution. Proper direction of rotation is assured, since the field only advances 90 electrical degrees per step. If the direction of current in a single winding is reversed, the magnetic field moves 180 electrical degrees, or one pole pitch, but the *direction* of travel would be uncertain, unless auxiliary means were used to predetermine it. Shaded-pole stepping motors, discussed in Arts. 15-3 and 15-4, reverse a single coil and the rotor advances a pole pitch for every pulse; the shading coil establishes the direction of rotation. Figure 15-5 shows an arrangement in which both phase windings are kept in series and each step supplies alternate polarity pulses, thus advancing the rotor one pole pitch per pulse, or 100 pulses per revolution. Direction of rotation is provided by shunting a capacitor across one of the two phases. For example, with switch 2 in the position shown, at the start of the pulse, B receives the initial current through the capacitor until the latter becomes charged, when the currents in A and B become equal; however, the initial pulse through B provides a directional starting torque. Switch 2 is used only to predetermine direction of rotation; if



Switching sequence

Step	Switch #1
1	+
2	−
3	+
4	−

Fig. 15-5 Schematic connections and switching sequence for 100 steps per revolution. (*Superior Electric Company.*)

only a single direction of rotation is needed, switch 2 can be omitted entirely. Note that the pulsing circuit for this arrangement is much simpler than that of Fig. 15-3. An alternate method, requiring 100 steps per revolution, is to connect the motor for ac operation, as in Fig. 15-2 (resistor is unnecessary), and supply pulses of alternate polarity where the "AC Line" is shown. In this case, the no-load positions at the end of each pulse are not the same for CW rotation as for CCW rotation; this is because, after the initial transient dies out, only one phase carries current, and the phase that carries current is different for the two different directions of rotation.

(4) *Transient Voltage Suppression.* Since motor circuits are inductive, with dc stepping, it may be necessary to protect the stepping switches from the inductive surges. Figure 15-6 illustrates one way

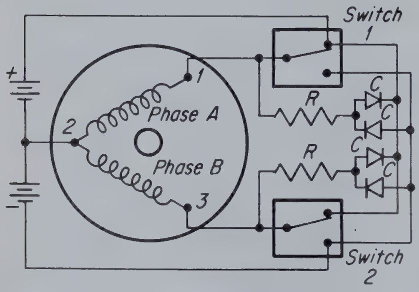


Fig. 15-6 Protection of stepping switches from inductive surges. (*Superior Electric Company.*)

of using diodes (Art. 13-22) and resistors to protect the stepping switches which are connected otherwise the same as in Fig. 15-3.

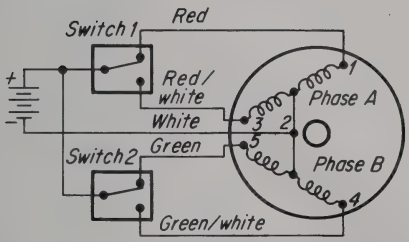
(5) *Four-lead Motors.* Motors similar in principle to the ones just discussed are sometimes furnished with four leads, that is, with both

leads brought out from each of the two phases. Such an arrangement permits electrical isolation of the two phases, and the motor can be operated from a two-lead power source (note that the arrangements previously shown used a center-tapped power supply). However, the switching connections are a bit more complicated.

(6) *Bifilar Motors.* If the two phase windings are both center-tapped, the current can be sent through alternate halves of a phase, to obtain alternate magnetic polarities, in the same fashion as illustrated in Fig. 15-1. The connections and switching sequence of such a motor are illustrated in Fig. 15-7. Note that a single two-lead power supply is used; note also that each step provides for switching from one outside end to the other outside end of one phase; thus, the field—and rotor—advance one-half pole pitch per step, or 200 steps are required for each revolution of the shaft.

(7) *Performance Characteristics and Sizes.* SLO-SYN motors, for ac motor applications, are built in various sizes, with rated torque ranging from 25 to 1,800 oz-in. Weights range from 1¼ to 45 lb. At low stepping rates (30 steps per second or less), the stepping torque may be equal to or greater than rated torque, but the holding torque is substantially greater; see Fig. 15-4. Planetary gear assemblies are also available, with step-down ratios ranging from 4:1 to 2,708:1.

(8) *Power Supplies (Translators).* Prepackaged power supplies are available for SLO-SYN motors. The translator supplies power to pulse



*Switching sequence**

Step	Switch #1	Switch #2
1	1	5
2	1	4
3	3	4
4	3	5
1	1	5

*To reverse direction, read chart up from bottom.

Fig. 15-7 Schematic connections for a bifilar SLO-SYN stepper motor for 200 steps per revolution. (*Superior Electric Company.*)

a bifilar motor, each time a signal pulse is sensed, and the stepping motor advances 1.8 mechanical degrees for each pulse received.

15-6. Haydon Logic Stepper Motors. The A. W. Haydon Company makes inductor-type stepper motors with two phase windings, very similar in principle to the motors described in the previous article. They refer to them as "Logic Stepper Motors." These are made in three sizes: miniature, general-duty, and high-torque. All of them have two phase windings, center-tapped, like the motor shown in Fig. 15-7; however, in practice, leads are brought out at each end of each half coil in each phase, making four leads per phase, or a total of eight leads. When the center taps are joined, the winding is, in effect, a four-phase winding. The motor can be stepped by applying pulses successively to the four half coils, or the arrangement shown in Fig. 15-7, wherein two coils are always energized, can be used. In either case, the magnetic field and rotor advance one-half a pole pitch with each pulse. The motors are all made 24-pole; hence 48 steps are required for each revolution, or 7.5 mechanical degrees per step. Motors are electrically reversible, the direction of rotation being determined by the pulsing sequence. For the three sizes, stepping torques range from 0.5 to 4.7 oz-in., but the holding torques are double these values. Maximum stepping rate ranges from 360 steps per second for the smallest unit to 160 for the largest.

The A. W. Haydon Co. also supplies a logic drive circuit for its logic stepper motors. All the necessary resistors, diodes, and other components are mounted on a single card and connected together by means of a printed circuit.

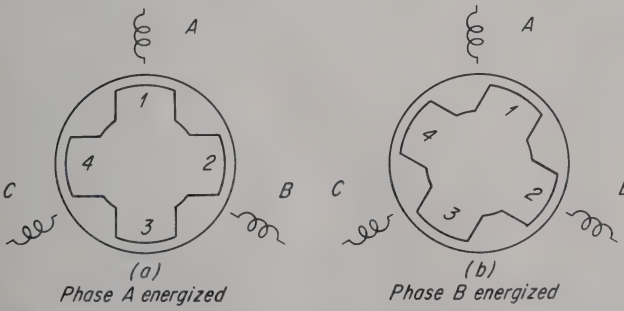
15-7. Kearfott Permanent-magnet Stepper Motors. Kearfott makes permanent-magnet stepper motors in military frame sizes 5, 8, 11, and 15. They have two-pole permanent-magnet synchronous rotor, and two wound stator phases, center-tapped. They may be pulsed two half coils at a time—as in Fig. 15-7, for example—or one half coil at a time. Direction of rotation is controlled by the sequencing of the pulses. Each step advances the rotor 90° (since this is a two-pole motor, mechanical and electrical degrees are the same), thus requiring four pulses per revolution. Maximum stepping rates range from 190 to 320 pulses per second giving a maximum speed of from 2050 to 4800 rpm. Holding torques range from 0.2 to 5.5 oz-in. Running torques are, of course, substantially less, and fall off as the stepping rate is increased.

They also make four-pole motors in military frame sizes 11, 15, and 18. Each step advances the rotor 45 mechanical degrees, or eight pulses per revolution. Maximum stepping rates are from 260 to 400 pulses per second, giving maximum speeds of 1950 to 3000 rpm. Holding torques are from 1.5 to 8.0 oz-in.

VARIABLE-RELUCTANCE STEPPER MOTORS

15-8. Principle of the Variable-reluctance Stepper Motor. A variable-reluctance stepper motor is represented schematically in Fig. 15-8. There are three stator coils, or phases, located 120° apart, that is, equally spaced around the circumference. The rotor is of soft iron, with four salient poles, as shown. When phase A is excited, rotor teeth 1 and 3 line up with the axis of phase A, as shown in (*a*). If, now, coil B is excited and the excitation removed from coil A, the rotor will move 30° clockwise to assume the position shown in (*b*). While coil B exerts a pull on both 2 and 3, the attraction is much greater for 2, which is but 30° away, than for 3, which is 60° away; thus, the direction of rotation is assured. If, now, coil C is energized while the current is taken away from B, the coil will move another 30° clockwise. Hence, if we supply current pulses to phases A, B, C, A, etc., the rotor will step 30° with each current pulse, requiring 12 pulses to complete a revolution.

It should be obvious that the variable-reluctance motor just described has no holding torque at all unless current is flowing through at least one of the coils; this characteristic is in contrast to that of a permanent-magnet stepper motor which does have a definite holding torque with no excitation, because of the holding power of the permanent magnet.



(a)
Phase A energized

(b)
Phase B energized

Fig. 15-8 Principle of the variable-reluctance stepper motor.

To assure no loss or gain in position, coil B must be energized before the excitation is removed from coil A, and coil C must likewise be energized before the excitation is removed from B. If coil A is deenergized before power is applied to B, torsion in the load coupling could turn the rotor counterclockwise just enough (16° would suffice) so that when current was supplied to coil B it would attract poles 3 and 1, thus turning CCW.

It should be clear that if the pulses are applied to phases A, C, B, A, etc., the rotor will run counterclockwise.

It can also be shown that if the rotor in Fig. 15-8 had had 8 equally spaced teeth, the rotor would move 15° for each pulse. For a pulsing sequence of A, B, C, A, etc., rotation would be CCW, or CW for a pulsing sequence of A, C, B, A, etc. Thus, with 8 rotor teeth and 3 stator coils, 24 steps would be required per revolution.

15-9. Small Motors' Stepper Motors. Small Motors, Inc., makes variable-reluctance stepper motors in two sizes, weighing 3 and 10 lb, respectively. They take 30° per step, or 12 steps per revolution. They have four leads, one for each phase, plus a common lead. The motor rotates CCW looking at the shaft end when the pulses are applied to leads 1, 2, and 3. Stall torques are 20 oz-in. and 55 oz-in., respectively. They may be wound for various dc voltages from 10 to 120. Maximum stepping rate was not given.

15-10. Kearfott Variable-reluctance Stepper Motors. The Kearfott Division of General Precision, Inc., makes variable-reluctance stepper motors in military frame sizes 8, 11, 15, and 18. (See Art. 15-7.) These turn 15° per step, or 24 steps per revolution. Maximum stepping rate (at no load) is from 800 to 1,000 pulses per second, giving a maximum rpm of 2000 to 2500. Holding torque is from 0.5 to 1.1 oz-in. They also make four-winding variable-reluctance motors with six rotor teeth.

The size-11 unit features a design which eliminates resonant frequencies in the operating speed range. For the size-8 unit, the manufacturer recommends a damping circuit, as shown in Fig. 15.9. The values of resistance given therein are for the case where there is no external inertia connected to the shaft; they may have to be adjusted to accommodate any given inertial and friction load.

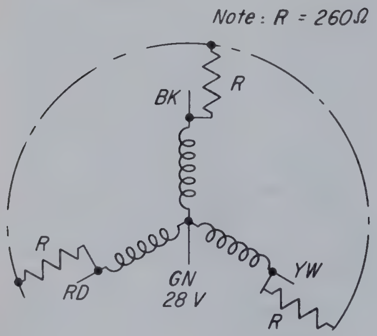


Fig. 15-9 Circuit for damping a size-8 variable-reluctance stepper motor. (*Kearfott Products Division, General Precision Systems, Inc.*)

CYCLONOME STEPPER MOTORS

15-11. Principles of Operation. CYCLONOME is the trademark for a stepper motor made by Sigma Instruments, Inc., which differs in construction and principles of operation from the stepper motors already described in this chapter. The construction is represented schematically in Fig. 15-10. The magnetic circuit of the stator consists of three poles of stacked, soft-iron laminations which are precisely spaced around the rotor. Pole A is the *detent* pole, and poles B and C are the drive poles. Two large-area saturated alnico magnets, each marked N and S in the figure, are in the magnetic circuit of the stator. A rectangular stack of laminations, shown surrounded by the coil at the bottom of the figure, connects the lower magnetic circuit between the drive poles B and C. A solid ten-toothed rotor is mounted on a stainless steel shaft and positioned centrally in the air gap as shown, by means of two preloaded ball bearings.

In the figure, the rotor is in one of the "quiescent" positions, with one tooth of the rotor opposite one of the projections of the detent pole A, and a pair of diametrically opposite teeth positioned opposite drive pole B. The path of ϕ_p, the flux produced by the permanent magnets, is shown; this flux provides a holding or "detent" torque, even when the coil is not excited. Figure 15-11 shows the rotor in another quiescent state, with the rotor displaced one-half tooth pitch, or $\frac{1}{20}$th of a revolution from the previous position. As before, one rotor tooth is positioned opposite a projection of the detent pole and two diametrically

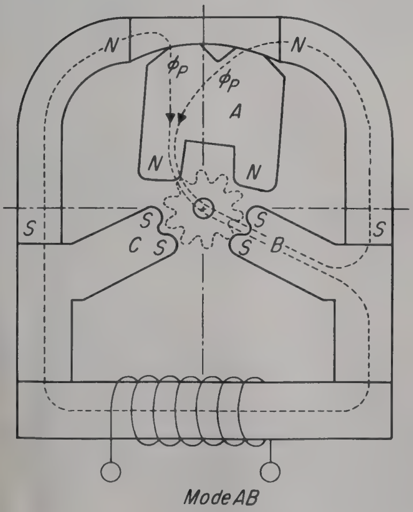


Fig. 15-10 A CYCLONOME stepper motor, in one of its quiescent states, mode AB. (*Sigma Instruments, Incorporated.*)

opposite teeth are opposite two projections of drive pole C. The permanent-magnet flux ϕ_p now returns through drive pole C, instead of B; again, the rotor is held in this position by the permanent-magnet flux.

Suppose the rotor is in the position shown in Fig. 15-10. Now, let the coil carry current in at the + terminal in Fig. 15-12. This mmf destroys the south-pole flux in pole B, and makes C a south pole, effectively switching the flux from detent pole A so that it returns by way of pole C instead. The net effect of switching the flux from A so that it returns by C instead of B is to cause the rotor to turn one-half tooth pitch clockwise, so that it takes up the quiescent position shown in Fig. 15-11. Once the flux is switched, the current is no longer needed. Now, another pulse, this time in the opposite direction, will

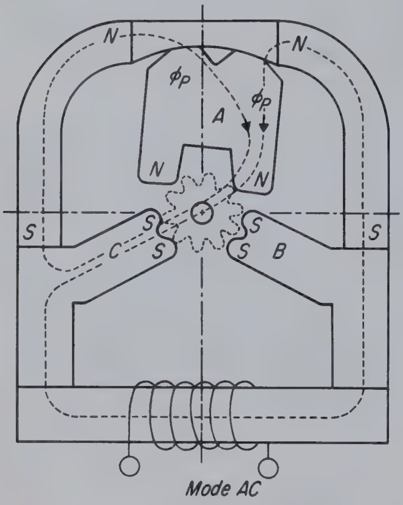


Fig. 15-11 A CYCLONOME stepper motor, in its other quiescent state, mode AC. (*Sigma Instruments Incorporated.*)

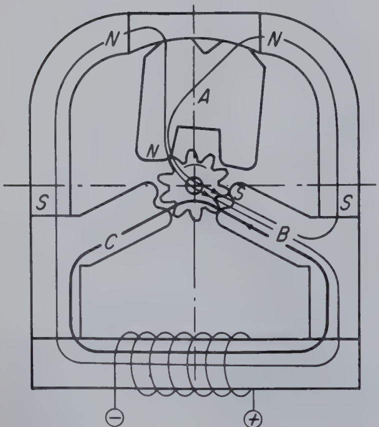


Fig. 15-12 Use of a current pulse to switch the stepper motor from mode AB to mode AC. (*Sigma Instruments, Incorporated.*)

switch the flux back to B and cause the rotor to turn one-half tooth pitch clockwise. Thus, by applying pulses of alternating polarity and of sufficient magnitude, the motor is made to step continuously, 18° per step or 20 steps per revolution.

15-12. Basic Drive Circuits. In practice, there are actually two coils on the stator, so that the pulsing can be done by pulsing alternate coils, in preference to reversing the polarity. Three basic drive circuits are illustrated in Fig. 15-13: (1) the motor can be operated directly on alternating current as a synchronous motor, at 360 rpm on 60 hz; (2) the two coils can be connected in parallel and connected to a center-tapped power supply; or, (3) the two coils can be connected in series and connected to a two-lead power supply which is alternating pulsed, first through one coil, then through the other. Under the trade name of Cyclopulser, Sigma offers a solid-state drive unit providing circuitry necessary for operating a CYCLONOME stepper motor directly from a 24-volt dc power source.

15-13. Performance Characteristics and Sizes. CYCLONOME stepper motors are built in a range of sizes, weighing from 3 to 18 oz. All make 20 steps per revolution. Driving torques range from 1.1 oz-in. (80 g-cm) to 5.0 oz-in. (350 g-cm). Holding torques range from 2.0 oz-in. (150 g-cm) to 7.0 oz-in. (500 g-cm). Stepping rates, un-

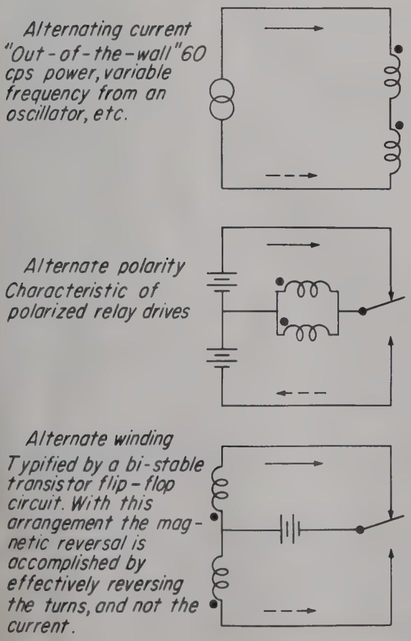

Alternating current "Out-of-the-wall" 60 cps power, variable frequency from an oscillator, etc.
Alternate polarity Characteristic of polarized relay drives
Alternate winding Typified by a bi-stable transistor flip-flop circuit. With this arrangement the magnetic reversal is accomplished by effectively reversing the turns, and not the current.

Fig. 15-13 Schematic circuit arrangements for energizing a CYCLONOME stepper motor. (*Sigma Instruments, Incorporated.*)

damped, are from 50 to 200 steps per second. By the addition of damping, stepping rates can be increased to 300 to 1,000 steps per second. For intermediate speeds, copper slugging the rotor permits eddy current damping to just about double the stepping rate. For higher speeds, a pneumatic damper permits increasing the stepping speed four to six times.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Kavanaugh, Richard J., and Perkins, Robert W.: Timing and Stepper Motors, *Machine Design,* Dec. 16, 1965, pp. 102–105.
2. Fredriksen, T. R.: Closed-loop Stepping Motor, *Machine Design,* Sept. 16, 1965, p. 202.
3. Dailey, Jack R.: Computer Simulation of Stepping-motor Performance, *Electro-Technology,* March, 1967, p. 60.
4. Henry-Baudot, J.: "Les Machines électriques en automatique appliquée," Dunod, Paris, 1967, 310 pp.
5. Baty, Gordon: Automating Production Operations with Stepping Motors, *Automation,* February, 1968, pp. 74–77.

Chapter 16

Servomotors

Servomotors, sometimes called control motors, are motors which are specially designed and built primarily for use in feedback control systems; all have a high speed of response. They may be used for self-balancing recorders, remote-positioning devices, tracking and guidance systems, process controllers, or for a host of other applications of a similar nature. They are made for dc as well as for ac operation; often rather special and unconventional constructions are used. Frequently, other devices are built integral with them. Such devices may include: tachometers of many types and descriptions, damping devices of one kind or another, brakes, and, of course, reduction gears. Manufacturers of servomotors are listed in Table 15-1. At least two different types of ac servomotors are readily recognizable: standard and damped.

STANDARD LOW-INERTIA AC SERVOMOTORS

16-1. AC Servomotor Defined. An ac servomotor might well be defined in the following manner: An ac servomotor is an induction motor with two primary windings, mutually displaced in magnetic position from one another by 90 electrical degrees, and a low-inertia high-resistance rotor, giving a speed-torque curve substantially linear in shape from no-load speed to standstill. It is designed for operation with a constant voltage applied to one of the windings, called the *fixed phase,* while a time-displaced adjustable voltage is impressed on the other winding, which is called the *control phase.* For operation on single-phase circuits, a capacitor is normally connected in series with the fixed phase.

16-2. Essential Parts of a Servomotor. Essential parts of a standard ac servomotor are virtually the same as those of a permanent-split capacitor motor (see Art. 7-2), except that a capacitor is not needed when the motor is operated from a two-phase supply. There are two primary windings, called the *fixed phase* and the *control phase,* respectively. These windings are displaced from one another in space by 90 electrical degrees. The squirrel-cage rotor is usually small in diameter, to keep the mechanical inertia as low as possible, and of high resistance in order to obtain the ideal of a linear speed-torque curve as closely as possible. The fixed phase is usually a winding with two leads, while the control phase may be a two-lead winding, a center-tapped three-lead winding, or a four-lead winding in two sections, like a dual-voltage winding. When used on single-phase circuits, a capacitor is connected in series with the *fixed phase.* A cutaway view of a typical motor is shown in Fig. 16-1. To the basic motor itself may be attached one or more of the following as needed by the particular application: reduction gears, tachometer, damper, and holding brake.

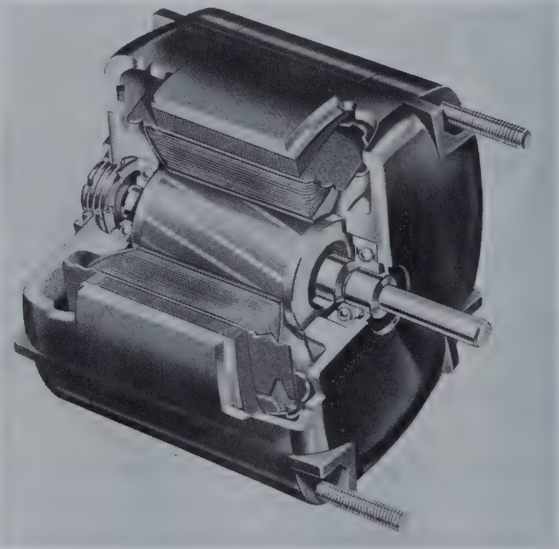


Fig. 16-1 Cutaway view of a standard ac servomotor. (*Amphenol Controls Division. Amphenol-Borg Electronics Corporation.*)

16-3. Principles of Operation. A servomotor may be operated as a two-phase or as a permanent-split capacitor motor; in either case, the voltage is held constant on the fixed phase, while it is varied on the control phase. When the voltage impressed on the control phase is zero, while the fixed phase is excited, the control-phase winding should be short-circuited in order to keep the motor from starting and operating as a single-phase motor, in case the motor is given a sudden displacement by external means.

(1) *As a Two-phase Motor.* Principles of operation of a polyphase induction motor were discussed quite fully in Chap. 2. Typical speed-torque curves were presented in Fig. 14-1; this figure also shows the effect of high rotor resistance on the shape of the speed-torque curve. Servomotors are usually designed to have even more rotor resistance than shown by curve 4 of Fig. 14-1, so that the breakdown torque occurs at a slip well in excess of unity (standstill condition), and the speed-torque curve for speeds from no-load to standstill approaches the ideal of a straight line more closely. Practical examples of such speed-torque curves are given in Figs. 16-2 and 16-6.

Now, if the voltage impressed on both phases of a two-phase motor is varied, the torque, at any slip, varies as the square of the voltage. If, however, the voltage impressed on only *one* phase (the control phase) is varied, while the voltage impressed on the other phase (the fixed phase) is held constant, the torque, at any slip, varies as the *first power* of the voltage. In general, this is the way an ac servomotor is used: voltage is held constant on one phase while it is varied on the other. The effect of varying the control-phase voltage is illustrated graphically in Fig. 16-2.

(2) *As a Single-phase Motor.* When two-phase power is not available, a suitable capacitor is connected in series with the *fixed phase,*

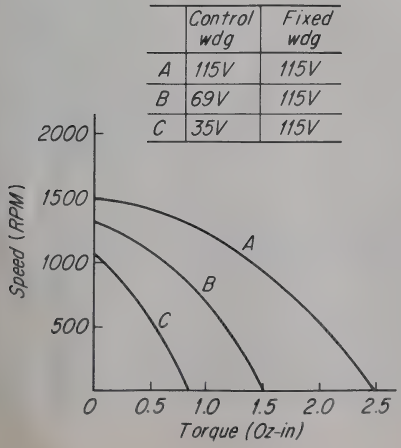


Fig. 16-2 Speed-torque curves for a typical low-inertia 60-hz servomotor, with three different control voltages applied. (*Electronic Specialty Company.*)

and the combination is connected to a constant voltage. Output is controlled by applying a variable voltage to the control phase. (It was pointed out in several places in Chap. 7 that it is preferable to adjust the voltage on the main phase rather than on the auxiliary phase.) At any slip, torque varies approximately as the first power of the voltage applied to the control phase, as illustrated in Fig. 16-2.

16-4. Certain Performance Characteristics Explained. There are certain performance characteristics, beyond the usual ones for conventional motors, that are of particular interest to users of servomotors. A few of these are explained below, though the list is by no means complete. Proper application of servomotors is a science in itself, beyond the scope of this book; many references on this subject are given in the bibliography at the end of this chapter.

(1) *No-load Speed.* Usually given in rpm; denoted by N_0.

(2) *Stall Torque.* Locked-rotor torque, usually given in oz-in. If it is given in g-cm, divide by 72 to obtain torque in oz-in. (See Table A-3 for conversion factors for other units of torque.)

(3) *Rotor Inertia.* This is the rotational moment of inertia about the shaft, usually given in g-cm^2 for ac motors, and in g-cm-sec^2 for dc motors. If it is given in oz-in.^{2}, multiply by 182.9 to obtain the inertia in g-cm^2.

(4) *Theoretical Acceleration.* This is the acceleration at standstill, expressed in radians per second per second, or simply radians/sec^2. It is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Acceleration} = \frac{\text{stall torque (oz-in.)}}{\text{inertia (g-cm}^2\text{)}} \times 70{,}620 \qquad \text{radians/sec}^2 \tag{16-1}$$

(5) *Mechanical Time Constant.* The mechanical time constant is the time for the rotor to accelerate from standstill up to 63.2 percent of no-load speed with full voltage suddenly applied to the control phase, and with no external load. It is usually expressed in seconds or milliseconds. In calculating this constant, it is assumed that the torque decreases linearly from zero speed to no-load speed, causing the speed of the motor to rise exponentially with time. This mechanical time constant is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Mech. time const.} = \frac{\text{inertia} \times \text{no-load speed} \times 1.485}{\text{stall torque} \times 1{,}000{,}000} \qquad \text{sec} \tag{16-2}$$

where inertia is given in g-cm^2 and stall torque in oz-in.

(6) *Reversing Time Constant.* This is the time required to go from no-load speed in one direction to 63.2 percent of no-load speed in the

opposite direction, when the control-phase voltage is suddenly reversed in time phase by 180°, and there is no external load or inertia. In general, it is approximately 1.7 × the mechanical time constant.

16-5. Performance Characteristics of Standard Servomotors. NEMA has developed standards for 60-hz and 50-hz standard servomotors.[1,*] Table 16-1 gives the performance characteristics of motors built in accordance with these standards. The inertia values given in the table are maximum, and it should be pointed out that motors that are commercially available have from one-half to one-third of the values shown, so that such motors have accelerations two to three times the values in the table, and time constants only one-half to one-third as great. Speed-torque curves for one such commercially available motor are given in Fig. 16-2.

Many servomotors are equipped with built-in reduction gearing. NEMA standards show gear ratios of from 6:1 to 1,800:1; some manufacturers go to even higher ratios.

NEMA motors are nearly square in shape, with a bolt-circle diameter of $2\frac{11}{16}$ in. Mea[7] shows servomotors ranging in sizes up to as large as 7 in. in diameter, with locked-rotor torques up to as high as 1,700 oz-in.

There are probably more servomotors made to MIL specifications for 400-hz operation than for 60-hz. Performance characteristics of a typical line of such motors are tabulated in Table 16-2. These motors are also offered with integral reduction gears, with ratios up to as much as 3,000:1.

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

TABLE 16-1 Characteristics of 60- and 50-hz Standard Servomotors*

Freq., hz*	Voltage			No-load speed, rpm*	Locked-rotor				Rotor inertia, g-cm^2†	Theoretical accel., rad/sec^2†	Time constant, sec†
	Fixed phase*	Control phase*	Min. stg.*		Torque, oz-in.*	Watts per phase†	Z, ohms				
							Fixed†	Control†			
60	115	165	16.5	1500	2.5	4.0	2,625	5,250	25.5	6,924	0.023
	115	115	11.5	1500	2.5	4.0	2,625	2,625	25.5	6,924	0.023
	115	15	1.5	1500	2.5	4.0	2,625	42	25.5	6,924	0.023
50	115	165	16.5	1250	3.0	5.0	2,190	4,320	25.5	6,924	0.016
	115	115	11.5	1250	3.0	5.0	2,190	2,190	25.5	6,924	0.016
	115	15	1.5	1250	3.0	5.0	2,190	35	25.5	6,924	0.016

[*] Taken directly from NEMA standards.

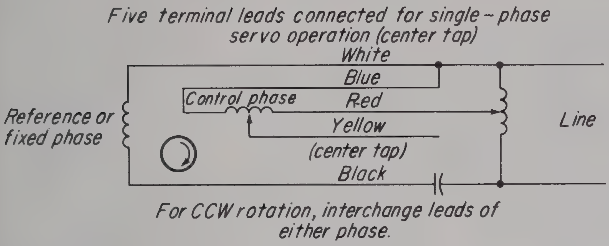
[†] Calculated, or estimated, from NEMA values.

TABLE 16-2 Characteristics of 400- and 60-hz Standard Servomotors*

Size	Nominal, OD, in.	Freq., hz	Voltage			No-load speed, rpm	Locked-rotor				Rotor inertia, g-cm²	Theoretical accel., rad/sec²	Time constant, sec	Weight, oz
			Fixed phase	Control phase	Min. stg.		Torque, oz-in.	Watts per phase	Z, ohms					
									Fixed	Control				
5	½	400	26	26	0.6	9,500	0.10	1.7	335	335	0.175	40,500	0.020	0.68
8	¾	400	26	26	0.7	6,900+	0.18	2.1	273	273	0.46	29,300	0.04	0.95
	¾	400	26	26	0.7	10,000+	0.205	2.1	222	222	0.18	86,000	0.013	1.5
	¾	400	26	33	0.9	6,600+	0.316	3.6	116	203	0.18	133,800	0.005	1.5
10	15/16	400	26	26	0.9	6,500+	0.30	3.1	157	157	0.46	49,000	0.015	1.5
	15/16	400	26	26	1.5	3,500+	0.34	3.75	148	148	0.46	52,000	0.009	1.5
	15/16	400	115	115	2.5	10,000+	0.28	2.5	3,500	3,500	0.46	44,000	0.024	1.7
11	1 1/16	400	115	115	3	6,200+	0.60	3.5	2,175	2,175	1.07	39,450	0.017	4.5
	1 1/16	60	115	115	3	3,000+	0.80	3.5	3,108	3,108	0.76	74,300	0.004	3
15	1 ½	400	115	115	3	5,300	1.53	6.1	1,030	1,030	3.3	32,600	0.017	7.3
	1 ½	60	115	36	1.1	3,000+	1.5	6.1	1,950	192	3.3	37,500	0.010	7.1
18	1 ¾	400	115	115	3	5,250	2.35	9.2	640	640	4	39,700	0.012	12.2
	1 ¾	400	115	115	1.5	9,800	2.8	15.8	510	510	4	47,800	0.021	12.2
	1 ¾	400	115	115	1.5	9,800	5	30	250	250	6	58,800	0.017	20
	1 ¾	400	115	36	0.94	20,000	0.6	8.3	1,210	118	4	10,600	0.016	14
	1 ¾	60	115	115	3	3,400	3.8	8.3	1,130	1,130	4	61,500	0.006	12.2
	1 ¾	60	115	115	3	3,200	8	28	479	479	6	94,140	0.004	20
23	2 ¼	400	115	115	3	10,000	6.5	40	275	275	12	36,000	0.003	29
	2 ¼	400	115	115	3	10,000	9	45	228	228	12	53,000	0.002	29

* From Kearfott Products Div., General Precision Systems, Inc.

16-6. Wiring Diagrams and Terminal Markings. NEMA standard terminal markings and lead connections for a five-lead servomotor with a center-tapped control phase, operated from a single-phase supply, are shown in Fig. 16-3. In the figure, the center tap is not used, though it is available. In practice, means are needed for adjusting the voltage applied to the control phase; when this voltage is zero, the phase should be short-circuited, to keep the motor from starting and running as a single-phase motor, in case the motor is given a sudden displacement. The autotransformer, represented schematically in Fig. 16-3, serves both purposes.


Five terminal leads connected for single-phase servo operation (center tap)

For CCW rotation, interchange leads of either phase.

Fig. 16-3 Schematic wiring and line connection diagram for a single-phase low-inertia servomotor with center-tapped control phase and five leads. (*From NEMA MG*1-18.012.)

For two-phase operation, the connections are the same as just discussed, except that the capacitor is omitted, while the fixed phase is connected to one of the supply phases, and the control phase to the other through voltage-adjusting means.

MIL S-22432a and SAE ARP 497 identify the leads as follows:

Fixed phase: yellow, white
Control phase:
  2-lead windings: black, red
  3-lead windings: black, black/red, red
  4-lead windings: black, green; red/black, red

16-7. Drag-cup Servomotors. Another form of "standard servomotor" uses a drag-cup construction, as illustrated in Fig. 16-4. The stator is of conventional construction, like that of any of the motors so far discussed in this chapter. However, the rotor element consists of a cup of a nonmagnetic conducting material such as copper, or an alloy of it. The magnetic circuit is completed through stationary laminated disks, held centrally within the stator bore, as shown in the figure. One could describe the drag-cup rotor as a special form of squirrel-cage rotor in which the rotor teeth are removed, the rotor core or yoke section is held stationary, and the squirrel-cage bars and end rings are replaced by a cylindrical cup. Initially, this was the popular form of construction for servomotors, until high-performance motors of more conventional rotor construction were later developed.

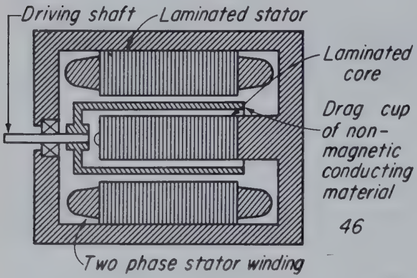


Fig. 16-4 Cross-sectional representation of a drag-cup ac servomotor. (*Product Engineering.*)

Performance characteristics of three typical designs of drag-cup motors are given in Table 16-3. Drag-cup motors do have the advantage of being free from all cogging effects, and do have a low starting voltage.

DAMPED AC SERVOMOTORS

Servomotors, described previously, have a certain amount of inherent damping which is enough for many applications, but not enough for others, so that additional damping has to be supplied. The additional damping may be in the form of a viscous damper, an inertial damper, or a tachometer, most of whose damping effect is due to the tachometer voltage fed into the control system. Before explaining specific types of dampers, we shall first discuss what is meant by damping and why it is needed.

16-8. Damping, and Why It Is Needed. Servomotors are used in feedback control systems. Essentially, any feedback control system is designed to regulate some desired output, in accordance with some reference quantity which may be fixed or varying in magnitude. The servomotors are used to actuate something directly or indirectly that influences the output being regulated by the system. Now, for successful operation of a control system, of which the servomotor is a most vital link, at least two things are of major importance:

1. The motor must respond rapidly to changes in control-phase voltage.
2. The motor must be stable, that is, it must not oscillate or overshoot.

TABLE 16-3 Characteristics of Drag-cup Servomotors*

Size	Nominal OD, in.	Freq., hz	Voltage			No-load speed, rpm	Locked-rotor				Rotor inertia, g-cm^2	Theoretical accel., rad/sec^2	Time constant, sec	Weight, oz
			Fixed phase	Control phase	Min. stg.		Torque, oz-in.	Watts per phase	Z, ohms					
									Fixed	Control				
10†	.937	400	10	20		Variable		0.25	370	1144	0.12			3.0
18	1¾	60	115	115	5	2875	0.41	3.65	2740	2770	3.7	7800	0.037	7.6
24	1⅞	400	55	115	2	4750	0.45	2.85	1360	1835	2.5	12,700	0.044	11.8

* From Rotating Components Div., Instrument Systems Corp.

† Special design, powered by the output of two size-8 synchros.

Rapid response is obtained by having a high ratio of torque to inertia in order to give an initial rapid acceleration [Art. 16-4(4)]. Overshooting is minimized and stability achieved by the use of a damping or retarding torque that increases with rotational speed. That is, the damping torque exerts no retarding torque at standstill, and so the motor can get away to a fast start, but the motor is not permitted to run away or to overshoot because of the damping torque which gets progressively higher as the speed increases. How such damping torque can be developed, either by the motor itself or by external means, forms the subject of the articles that follow immediately.

16-9. Internal Damping of a Servomotor. How internal damping of a servomotor is effected can perhaps best be understood by reference to Fig. 16-5. Suppose the motor developed the same torque at all speeds, as shown by curve *a*. In this case, when the motor is given a signal to start, it starts to accelerate at a high rate which, if maintained, would quickly carry the motor and its connected load up to destructively high speeds; the system would have to depend upon reducing the control-phase voltage to zero quickly enough to prevent the motor from running away. However, the speed torque of the actual motor is more like the straight line *b* in Fig. 16-5. Note that *b* is exactly the same curve that would be obtained by subtracting from *a*, at every speed, a torque proportional to the speed of the motor. With a speed torque such as shown in *b*, the motor *starts* just as fast as it would without damping, but as it comes up to speed, the net torque decreases, as if reduced by a viscous damper (viscous damping is explained in Art. 16-10), so that the acceleration decreases also and the speed rises more slowly; when a speed is reached at which the damping torque equals the motor torque, the acceleration vanishes and the motor runs at a

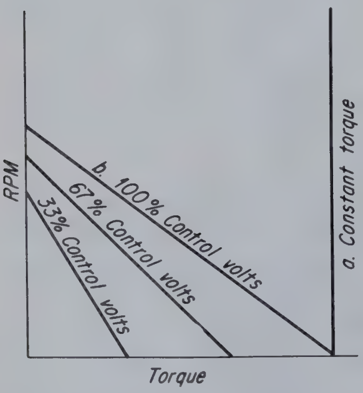


Fig. 16-5 Speed-torque curves of an "ideal" servomotor, showing effect of control phase voltage on the internal damping.

constant speed. Thus the shape of the speed-torque curve b makes the motor act as if it were damped; this damping is known as *internal* or *inherent damping.*

(1) *Internal Damping Constant.* The internal damping coefficient (or viscous-friction coefficient) F of a servomotor, assuming a linear speed-torque curve, is given by

$$F = \frac{\text{stall torque (oz-in.)} \times 6.74 \times 10^5}{\text{no-load rpm}} \qquad \text{dyne-cm-sec/rad} \tag{16-3}$$

(2) *Effect of Control-phase Voltage on Internal Damping.* As the control-phase voltage is reduced, the locked-rotor torque decreases faster than the no-load speed, as shown in Figs. 16-2 and 16-5, so that the internal damping coefficient decreases with decreasing control-phase voltage. This means that the system is inherently less stable at reduced control-phase voltages.

(3) *Speed of Response.* Sidney Davis[2] says that the maximum frequency to which a servomotor can respond is given by

$$\text{Frequency} = \frac{1}{2\pi \times \text{time constant (sec)}} \qquad \text{hz} \tag{16-4}$$

This means that a motor with a time constant of 0.01 sec could respond to signal frequencies up to $1/(0.01 \times 2\pi) = 15.9$ cps.

16-10. Viscous-damped Servomotors. *Viscous-damped servomotors* are servomotors to which a viscous damper has been added. The damper is usually a drag-cup generator operating in a constant field set up by a permanent magnet. In such a generator, the voltage induced in the drag cup, and hence the drag-cup current, is directly proportional to the speed. Thus, the retarding torque developed by the generator is directly proportional to the speed, and the energy absorbed by the damper is proportional to the square of the speed. This kind of damping is called viscous damping because it is like the damping effect of a viscous liquid, which exerts a force on a body being moved through it which is proportional to the velocity of the moving body.

Performance curves for a typical viscous-damped 400-hz servomotor are given in Fig. 16-6. The amount of damping can be adjusted by means of an adjusting screw on the front end of the motor. Note that three speed-torque curves are shown in Fig. 16-6: (1) no damping, (2) minimum damping, and (3) maximum damping.

While the viscous damper adds an important measure of stability to the system, it does absorb energy, so that the available torque and power output is thereby reduced, as is the efficiency.

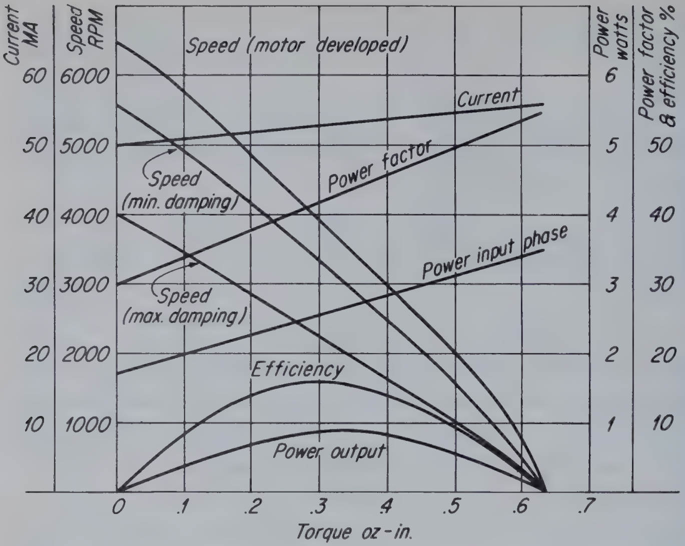


Fig. 16-6 Performance curves of a viscous-damped 400-hz servomotor. (*Mechatrol Division, Teledyne, Incorporated.*)

16-11. Inertial-damped Servomotors. *Inertial-damped* (also called *inertially damped*) *servomotors* are now used in many high-performance servo control systems. A sectional view of one is given in Fig. 16-7. Stator and rotor are the same as for a standard servomotor, but the motor has a double shaft extension. A high-inertia permanent-magnet flywheel is mounted on its own bearings on the shaft; it is coupled to the shaft through the drag cup which is mounted rigidly

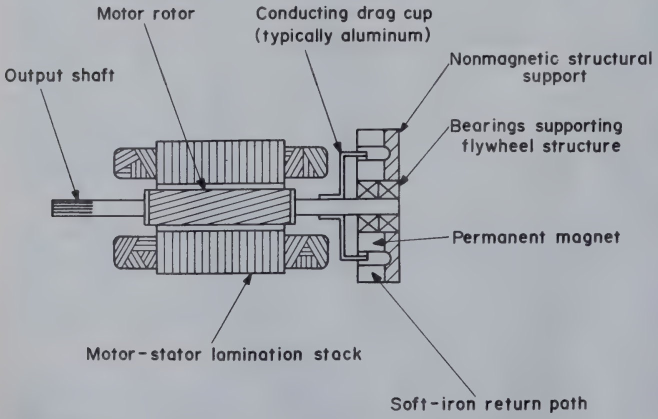

Motor rotor
Conducting drag cup (typically aluminum)
Output shaft
Nonmagnetic structural support
Bearings supporting flywheel structure
Permanent magnet
Motor-stator lamination stack
Soft-iron return path

Fig. 16-7 A cross-sectional representation of an inertial-damped ac servomotor showing essential parts. (*Vernitron Corporation.*)

on the shaft and positioned in the field of the permanent magnet on the flywheel. To understand the action, consider the rotor and flywheel at rest, with the fixed phase excited. Now, let power be applied suddenly to the control phase; the rotor starts instantly but the flywheel, due to its inertia, remains motionless momentarily. Since the drag cup is moving through a magnetic field, a drag torque, proportional to speed, tends to restrain the rotor and to accelerate the flywheel. In other words, at this instant, the rotor senses an external viscous damper. This same damping torque is, meanwhile, accelerating the flywheel; as it comes up to speed, the relative velocity of the rotor, with respect to the flywheel, falls off, as does the damping torque as a result. When the motor is operating at any constant speed for a period of time, the flywheel will run at nearly the same speed, and there will be no damping. But, for every change in speed of the servomotor, in either direction from normal, a damping torque will be developed until the flywheel is brought to the new speed; the direction of this damping torque will always be in the direction that opposes the *change* in rotor speed, and the magnitude of this torque will be proportional to the relative speed of the rotor with respect to the flywheel. An inertial-damped servomotor is illustrated in Fig. 16-8. An analysis of the performance of such a motor is given by Diamond.[6]

16-12. Tachometer Damping. Tachometers, of one type or another, are sometimes built integral with servomotors. The load of the tachometer itself acts to some extent as a viscous damper. In addition, the output of the tachometer, which is proportional to the speed of the servomotor, is generally fed back into the feedback control system in such a way as to achieve a damping effect upon the system as a whole.

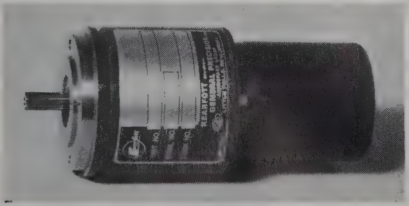


Fig. 16-8 A 60-hz inertial-damped servomotor, size 11. Unit has a no-load rpm of 3000, a stall torque of 0.60 oz-in., and requires 3.5 watts input. (*Kearfott Products Division, General Precision Systems, Incorporated.*)

DC SERVOMOTORS

Some interesting innovations in dc motor construction have been developed in order to make them more suitable for servo applications.

16-13. Printed-circuit Motors. In France, in the late fifties, a new and novel form of construction for dc motors was developed: the printed motor, an exploded view of one of which is shown in Fig. 16-9. The

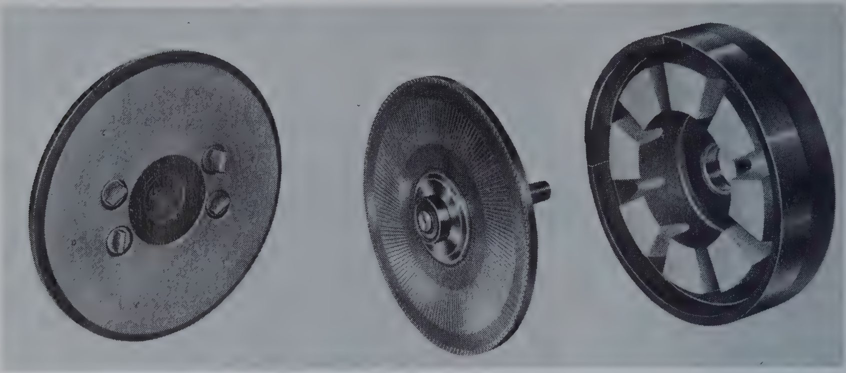


Fig. 16-9 Exploded view of a printed-circuit motor showing, from right to left, the magnet structure, disklike armature, and flux-return plate. Brushes bear directly on the winding through the return-plate structure. (*Printed Motors, Incorporated.*)

field structure is an eight-pole permanent magnet, as shown. The magnetic circuit is completed through the flux-return plate, which also provides the additional function of supporting the brushes. The armature is disk-shaped, contains no iron, and armature conductors are produced on both sides of the disk by printed-circuit techniques; connections from side to side are made by plated-through holes. Brushes bear directly on the armature conductors which thus serve as a commutator. Because there are no armature slots or teeth, there are no cogging effects due to variations in magnetic reluctance; torque irregularities due to a finite number of conductors are virtually eliminated by skewing the conductors. Since the armature conductors are not surrounded by iron, as in conventional construction, the armature inductance is very small indeed, giving a very small electrical time constant. Because there are no rotating magnetic parts, the inertia of the armature is very small, giving a low mechanical time constant. The exposed construction of the armature conductors gives them excellent heat-dissipation characteristics.

(1) *Standard Printed Motors.* Standard printed motors are built with the following range of characteristics:

Rated continuous torque	3–2,000 oz-in.
Pulse torque	10 × rated torque
Rated speed	1000–4000 rpm
Rated voltage	4–210 volts
Rated outputs	0.04–5.0 hp
Mechanical time constant	0.003–0.023 sec
Diameter	2¾–12.5 in.
Weight	1.1–76 lb

(2) *Applications.* Printed motors are used in one type of application where intermittent motion is required, such as in a paper-tape reader, for example. They are also used as positioning servomotors, where the lack of any preferred armature position and smoothness of torque are an advantage. They are also used as velocity servos, where speed variations have to be controlled, either within a single revolution, or over several revolutions. Some of them are designed to be operated in ambient temperatures up to as much as 750°F. Also, because of their flatness of shape, low-cost versions of them are used to open and close windows in automobile doors.

16-14. Motors with Surface-wound Armatures. Another interesting and significant development in dc servomotors is the use of surface-wound slotless armatures, where the armature coils are secured to the outer surface of round armature laminations. (It is a curious fact that this is one of the very earliest forms of armature construction which was abandoned many years ago. Now, it is being revived to obtain optimum performance for servomotors.) Motors of this construction are now built by the Yaskawa Electric Manufacturing Company of Japan and marketed under the trade name Minertia motors. The General Electric Company also build dc servomotors with this form of construction which they call Hyper Servo Motors.

(1) *Minertia Motors.* In fractional-horsepower sizes, the Minertia motor uses a permanent-magnet stator, though shunt fields are used for larger servomotors. The rotor is very long and of small diameter, to keep down mechanical inertia and centrifugal stresses on the conductors. Coils are affixed to the outer surface of the armature laminations, as illustrated in Fig. 16-10, by use of epoxy resins and glass banding tape. This construction gives a smooth torque, free of cogging variations, low armature inductance, low armature inertia, and excellent heat-transfer characteristics.

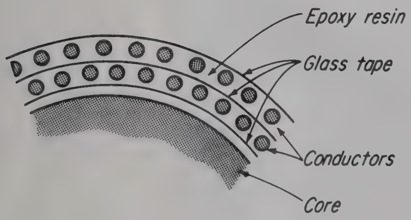


Fig. 16-10 Schematic sectional view of a surface-wound armature. (*Yaskawa Electric Manufacturing Company.*)

Fractional-horsepower Minertia motors are offered with the following characteristics:

Rated torque	3–27 oz-ft
Maximum torque	10 × rated torque
Rated speed	3000 rpm
Rated voltage	25–83 volts
Rated outputs	⅛–1 hp
Electrical time constant	0.00015–0.0005 sec
Mechanical time constant	0.005 sec
Armature inertia	0.003–0.044 oz-in.-sec^2

(2) *General Electric Hyper Servo Motors.*[11] Hyper Servo motors are of surface-wound armature construction, with long armatures of small diameters. In fractional-horsepower sizes, they have the following range of characteristics:

Rated torque	32–326 oz-in.
Maximum torque	10 × rated torque
Rated speed	2700–2800 rpm
Rated voltage	12–30 volts
Rated output	0.089–0.89 hp
Electrical time constant	0.00019–0.00043 sec
Mechanical time constant	0.009–0.00147 sec
Motor diameter	3.35–4.75 in.
Motor length	4.28–8.9 in.
Motor weight	5.1–26 lb

16-15. Direct-drive Frameless Torque Motors (Inland). Another interesting construction, exemplified in Fig. 16-11, is frameless and is designed to be directly attached to the load it drives. It features a large-diameter armature of short axial length, commutator of the same diameter, and a permanent-magnet field assembly. It is offered in a wide range of sizes and ratings:

Peak torque at stall	0.034–3,000 lb-ft
Continuous stall torque	0.007–1,565 lb-ft
No-load speed	12,400–17.2 rpm
Electrical time constant	22–0.3 msec
Outside diameter	1.12–45.0 in.
Inside diameter	0.18–25.68 in.
Axial length	0.56–10.25 in.
Weight	1.6 oz–1,360 lb

16-16. Moving-coil Motors. Still another construction to reduce mechanical inertia and to improve speed of response is exemplified in the moving-coil motor, in which the only moving part of the armature is the coils themselves. Two such armatures are illustrated in Fig. 16-12. The armature coils are "basket-wound" to form a cup-shaped iron-free armature. Excitation is supplied by a high-flux permanent-

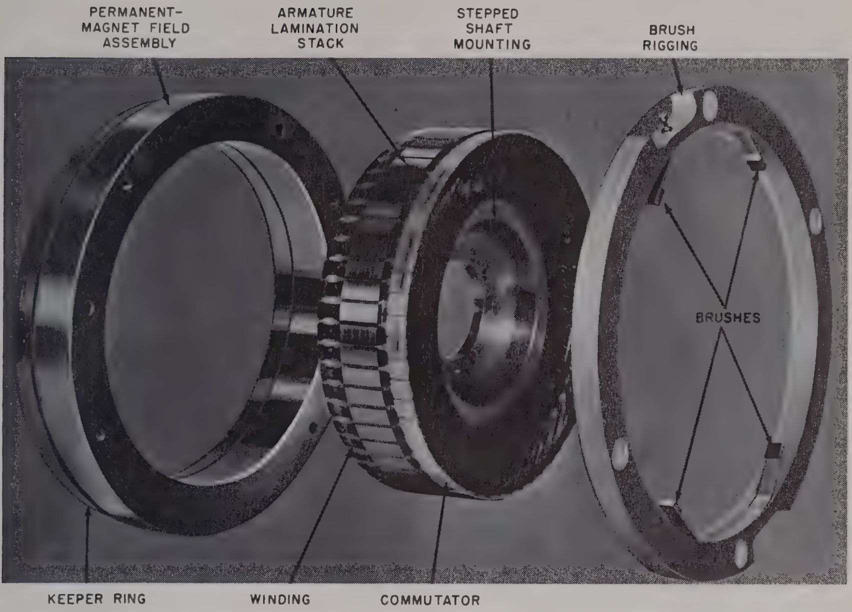


Fig. 16-11 A direct-drive frameless torque motor with a permanent-magnet field assembly. (*Inland Motor Corporation.*)

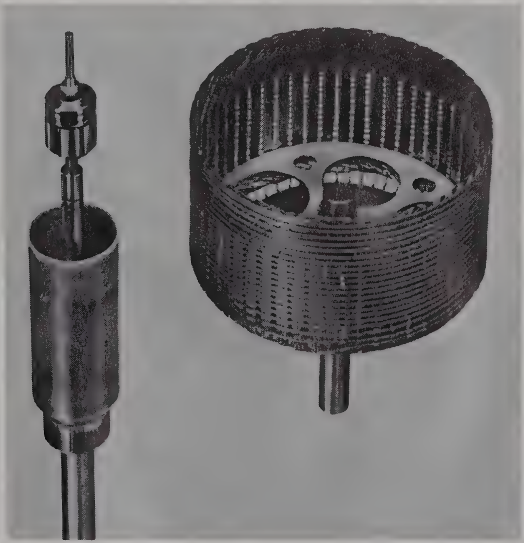


Fig. 16-12 Two iron-free moving-coil armatures for servomotors. At left, a slim resin-molded moving-coil winding and integrally coupled tachometer-generator armature. At right, an open "basket-type" construction designed for high power dissipation when air-cooled. (*Electro-Craft Corporation.*)

magnet stator. Low armature inductance, high acceleration rate, and smooth cogging-free torque are design features of the motor.

The armature of another moving-coil servomotor is illustrated in Fig. 16-13. The coils are encapsulated in a hollow-cylindrical shell as shown. The manufacturer states that the motor will accelerate from a dead stop to 1200 rpm in 1 msec.

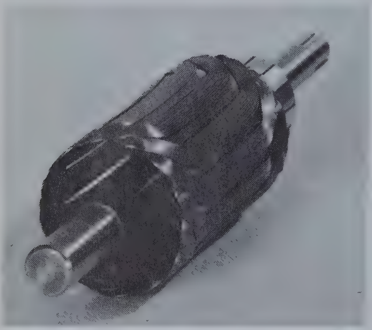


Fig. 16-13 A moving-coil iron-free low-inertia armature for a high-response servomotor. Coils are encapsulated in a hollow cylindrical shell. (*Honeywell, Incorporated.*)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. NEMA: Motors and Generators, Pub. No. MG1-1967, Pt. 18, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, 155 E. 44th Street, New York, 10017.
2. Davis, Sidney: Rotating Components for Automatic Control, *Product Engineering,* November, 1953, pp. 129–160.
3. Savant, C. J., Jr.: "Control System Design," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1964, 457 pp.
4. Kearfott Div.: Motors, Motor Generators, Synchros, Resolvers, 9th ed., Kearfott Div., General Precision, Inc., Little Falls, N.J., 1964, 55 pp.
5. Lowitt, P. M., and Shinners, S. M.: Optimum Design of High-power Servos, *Electro-Technology,* January, 1965, pp. 41–47.
6. Diamond, Al: Inertially Damped Servo Motors, Performance Analysis, *Electro-Technology,* July, 1965, pp. 28–32.
7. Mea, Anthony M.: Servomotors, *Machine Design,* Dec. 16, 1965, pp. 94–97.
8. Thaler, G. J., and Stein, W. A.: Transfer Function and Parameter Evaluation for D-c Servo Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 74, pt. II. 1955, p. 410.
9. Aherne, John M: The Direct-drive D-c Servo, *Electro-Technology,* April, 1963, p. 54.
10. Lifschitz, Joshua: Ripple in D-c Servo Motors, *Electro-Technology,* May, 1965, p. 37.
11. Blake, Bond M.: Meet a Brand-new Servo Motor with Startling Performance, *Control Engineering,* May, 1966, p. 81.
12. Kelling, Leroy U. C.: Servo Components for Numerical Control, *Machine Design,* Oct. 14, 1965, p. 234.
13. Anderson, R. L., and Duté, J. C.: Precision Velocity Servo, *Electro-Technology,* March, 1967, p. 56.
14. Henry-Baudot, J.: "Les Machines électriques en automatique appliquée," Dunod, Paris, 1967, 310 pp.

Chapter 17

General Constructional Features

Many constructional features of small electric motors are often common to more than one type of motor. Some of such constructional features are discussed in this chapter.

BEARINGS

Volumes have been written about bearings, a very large subject in itself. A whole issue of *Machine Design* was devoted to this subject.[12,*] In the four articles that follow, we shall limit the discussion to those arrangements commonly used in fractional- and subfractional-horsepower motors.

17-1. Sleeve Bearings—Constructions. Bearings are one of the most vital parts of the motor and, except for the starting switch, are the only wearing parts in most types of fractional-horsepower electric motors. Typical constructions are discussed below.

(1) *Wagner Electric Corp.* A typical sleeve-bearing construction is illustrated in Fig. 17-1. The bearing itself is a short babbitt-lined steel

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

tube, formed from a flat strip by rolling. It is provided with a hole to admit oil, and with grooves radiating from this hole to distribute the lubricant. The bearing is pressed into the end shield and turned or bored to size. The bearing cavity in the end shield is filled with wool yarn which serves as a wick; a small coil spring in the top of the cavity presses the wicking through the hole in the bearing and against the shaft journal. Rotation of the shaft causes the journal to wipe oil from the wick and pump it through the grooves, out to both ends of the bearing, where it drops into the oil return holes (plainly visible in the picture) down into the oil reservoir, and back up through the wick to the journal, completing the cycle.

(2) *General Electric, Form G.* Figure 17-2 illustrates the sleeve-bearing construction of Form G motors. The bearing itself is babbitt-lined, machined after being pressed into the end shield, and provided with wide-angle oil grooves to distribute the lubricant evenly over the entire bearing surface. The construction was designed to permit continuous operation of the motor with the shaft in any position; hence the maker refers to it as designed for "all-angle operation."

An important factor in the all-angle operation is its washering arrangement. Interlocking thrust-washer assemblies are located at each side of the switch-end bearing, and there are no washers at the pulley end; they are held in place by a spring-steel locking device. Each washer assembly consists of three basic parts, each with its separate function: (1) a metal-cup washer holds a Textolite washer and a rubber washer, and by means of a slotted edge causes the three to turn as one, the

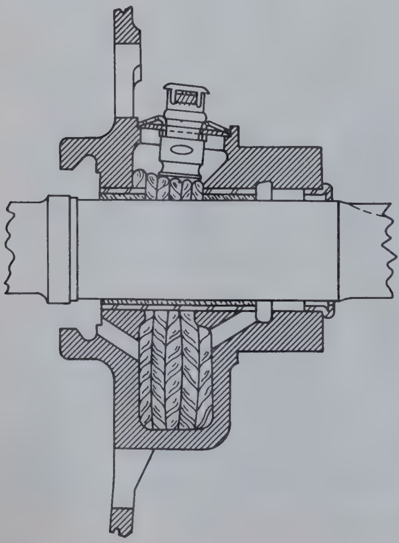


Fig. 17-1 Sectional drawing of a sleeve bearing, using wool-yarn wicking. (*Wagner Electric Corporation.*)

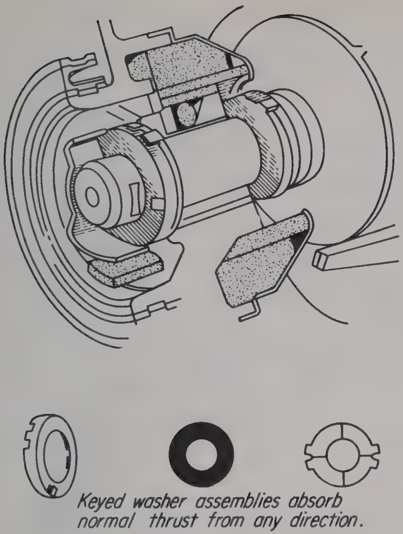

Keyed washer assemblies absorb normal thrust from any direction.

Fig. 17-2 Sleeve-bearing construction for Form G motors, all-angle operation. (*General Electric Company.*)

three turning with the shaft because the metal cup is keyed to turn with the shaft; (2) a resilient rubber washer between the metal cup and Textolite washer causes the latter to bear evenly against the shaft and cushions endwise bumping; (3) a Textolite washer, provided with four small oil grooves on its surface, is the working surface of the entire assembly.

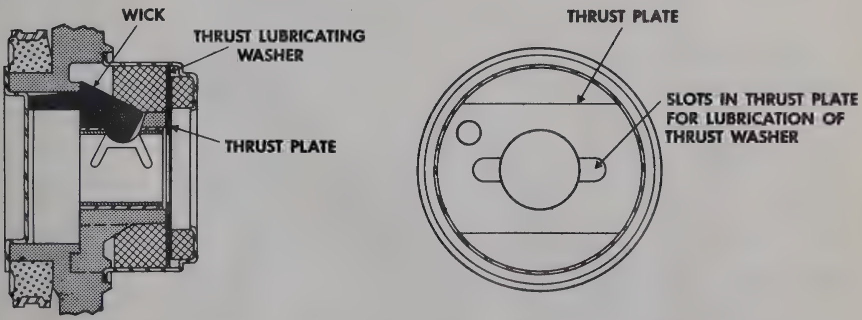

WICK
THRUST LUBRICATING WASHER
THRUST PLATE
THRUST PLATE
SLOTS IN THRUST PLATE FOR LUBRICATION OF THRUST WASHER

Fig. 17-3 Sleeve-bearing construction for all-angle operation. (*Emerson Electric Company.*)

(3) *Emerson Electric Co.* Another all-angle bearing construction is illustrated in Fig. 17-3. The bearing is babbitt-lined, and provided with a window and grooves. A wick bears against the shaft journal through this window, as shown. The inside bearing cap has a lip to retain oil when the shaft is in a vertical position.

TABLE 17-1 Construction Details for Permawick-lubricated Sleeve Bearings (Recommendations of the Permawick Company)

Component	Wick-fed bearing design		
Load	Up to 25 psi	25–125 psi	125–250 psi
Bushings, type	Porous bushing	Steel-backed window bushing	
Material	Bronze or iron	Tin-babbitt SAE-12	Lead-bronze, 25% lead SAE-794
Length-to-diameter ratio	1.0–2.5 to give load not over 25 psi	0.9–1.2 regardless of load	
Window size	None	6–8% of developed area*	10–12% of developed area*
Journal finish	A critical feature is the surface finish of the journal: ideally, it should be under 12 microinches, but never more than 16 microinches		
Thrust plate	A spring-steel thrust plate, with a minimum hardness of 55 Rockwell C, which butts against the bushing, is always recommended		
Thrust washer	Under 20 lb thrust, the following materials are recommended: 1. Moly-disulphide-impregnated nylon 2. Nylon 3. Phenolic-impregnated linen with rubber on one side Above 20 lb thrust, lead-bronze (25% lead) should be used		

* Dependent upon the type of Permawick used.

(4) *Permawick Lubrication.* In recent years a new wicking material, composed of a blend of cellulose fibers and oil, has been developed and marketed under the trade name of *Permawick*. Careful selection of fiber material and size, combined with appropriate oils, alters the wicking characteristics to suit the bearing conditions for which the motor is designed. The ability of Permawick to be extruded, without oil separation, directly into the end-shield cavity surrounding the bearing permits automation of assembly operations. It is now widely accepted and used by the fractional-horsepower motor industry. Construction details, recommended by the Permawick Company, are given in Table 17-1, and illustrated in Fig. 17-4.

(5) *Reliance Electric Company.* A cutaway view of a sleeve bearing, using Permawick, is illustrated in Fig. 17-5. Oil in the reservoir can readily be replenished when necessary through the oil cup in the top of the bearing housing. It is designed for all-angle operation.

(6) *Self-aligning Bearings.* Some small motors in the lower horsepower ranges use self-aligning bearings. One such construction is illus-

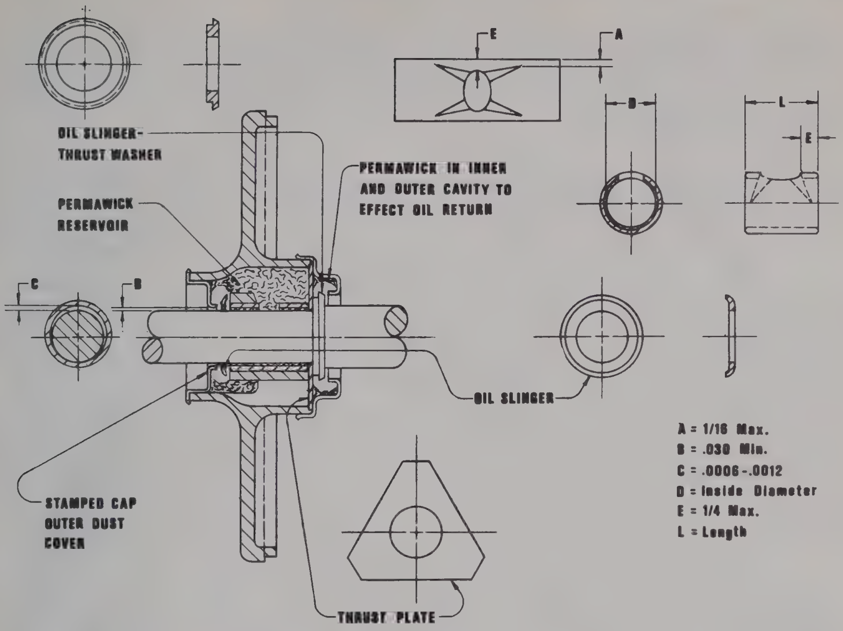


Fig. 17-4 Permawick-lubricated sleeve-bearing construction. (*Permawick Company.*)

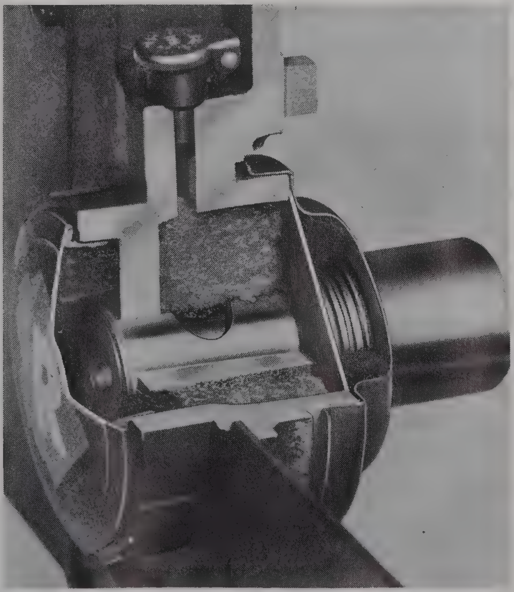


Fig. 17-5 Sectional view of an all-angle sleeve bearing, using a Permawick lubrication system. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

trated in Fig. 10-11. A porous bronze bearing, surrounded by an oil-soaked wick, has an outer surface approximately spherical in shape, permitting it to turn in its socket to line up with the shaft. Misalignment is thus impossible.

17-2. Sleeve Bearings—Service and Maintenance. Most sleeve-bearing motors are provided with means for reoiling. Frequency of reoiling varies a great deal, and it is generally best to obtain the recommendations of the motor manufacturer. Most sleeve-bearing motors will run for a long time without reoiling, of the order of one to three years. The motor should be so installed that the pressure of the belt pull does not come against the bearing window, lest excessive bearing wear result.

It is important not to pull the belt up too tight or excessive bearing pressures will develop, causing abnormal wear, perhaps "seizing," and early failure of the bearing. In general, the belt should be made only tight enough to prevent slipping. It is easier than commonly supposed to overload a motor severely and to cause premature bearing failure by excessive belt tension. In this connection, a wattmeter measuring the input to the motor can be helpful; the belt tension can be reduced until it begins slipping and the minimum watts noted, after which the belt can be tightened until the watts input starts to go up noticeably.

When replacing a sleeve bearing, unless it is of the oil-impregnated porous type, one should be obtained which has a press fit in the housing of about 0.0005 in. (0.01 mm). Usually the bore is slightly undersize and has to be reamed. This operation generally is best done by means of a line reamer. The shaft journal should be trued and smoothed if necessary and then carefully measured for size. A line reamer should be chosen to give a bearing clearance of 0.0006 (0.015 mm) to 0.0012 in. (0.03 mm) (total diametral clearance). Porous oil-impregnated bearings may require a slightly larger clearance. When the end shields are bolted onto the motor for the line-reaming process, the rabbet fits should be carefully cleaned to make certain there is no dirt in them, as otherwise the new bearings will be reamed out of line. Porous bearings should be bought to size and not reamed.

Similarly, when reassembling a motor, it is also important that the end-shield fits be clean, as otherwise the bearings will be out of line and will bind. It is also important that there be a little free end play; if not, the bearings might seize at the thrust surfaces. If end-bumping noise is to be held to a minimum, this free end play must be small—say 0.002 to 0.010 in. (0.05 to 0.25 mm). If the motor is cushioned against end bumping, a free end play of $\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) may not cause objectionable noise.

If the motor uses a wool wicking, it may be relubricated with a light grade of machine oil, popularly sold in gasoline filling stations as household oil. Only petroleum oils should be used, and lubricants containing any animal or vegetable oils should be carefully avoided.

If the end shields were packed with Permawick, it is best to obtain from the motor manufacturer his recommendations for replacing the Permawick material itself, or for replenishing the oil, for there are different grades of the Permawick fiber, and different oils are used in different cases.

17-3. Ball Bearings—Construction. Ball-bearing fractional-horsepower motors are generally used for those applications where heavy axial and radial thrust loads are encountered. Many types of ball bearings have been developed to fulfill the requirements of a wide variety of applications. For most fractional-horsepower-motor applications, the single-row radial bearing is adequate and, therefore, the most popular. Such bearings are capable of handling the radial and *axial-thrust* loads usually encountered. For operating speeds of 1725 rpm and below, grease-lubricated ball bearings are generally used. Bearings now commonly use either a shield or a felt seal to retain the lubricant inserted by the manufacturer and to exclude dirt and other foreign matter. A *shield* is a thin steel disk affixed to the outer race and arranged to cover all the space between the inner and outer races; it fits into a labyrinth or semilabyrinth on the inner race with very narrow clearances but no rubbing contact. Either one or both sides of the bearing may be shielded. A bearing with a single shield is illustrated in Fig. 17-6. Shielded bearings are the same length (along the shaft) as unshielded bearings and are generally interchangeable with plain bearings. *Sealed* bearings generally use a felt seal of some sort which retains the lubricant and excludes dirt better than shields do. Because

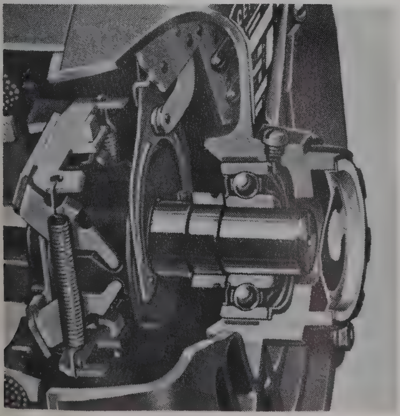


Fig. 17-6 Sectional view of the front end of a motor, showing a single-shielded ball bearing and both members of the starting switch. (*Century Electric Company.*)

of the space occupied by the felt seal, sealed bearings are usually longer than either plain or shielded bearings; hence, *sealed* bearings are not generally interchangeable with either *plain* or *shielded* bearings. The additional length required for the seal may be added only to the inner race, or it may be added to both races. Seals may be provided on one or both sides of the bearing.

Shaft journals are ground to such a diameter as to give a light press fit between the inner race and the shaft. *When pressing a bearing on the shaft, the pressure must always be applied to the inner race directly, never to the outer race, lest the balls or the races, or both, be damaged.* The outer race fits into the recess in the end shield snugly, but loosely enough that only light hand pressure is required to insert it. For general-purpose motors, an *opposed-mounting construction* is extensively used. With this construction, the inner races are secured to the shaft by light press fits, and the outer races are free to slide axially in the end shields; rearward end play is limited by a shoulder in the rear end shield, and forward end play by a similar shoulder in the front end shield. This end play is commonly of the order of $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.6 mm), but as a rule it is taken up by a steel finger spring inserted in the bearing cavity of one end shield. This spring presses against the outer race, preloads both bearings and takes up all the end play. In general, this spring is strong enough that it takes a force of several pounds to move the shaft against it. In Fig. 17-6, a sectional view of the front end of a motor using opposed-mounting construction is illustrated. The bearing is single-shielded (on the inside of the motor) and is preloaded with spring washers to take end play out of the bearing and to contribute to quieter operation.

If axial motion of the shaft cannot be permitted, a *locked-bearing construction* is used. Either the front or the rear bearing can be locked, but both must not be, because differential expansion between the rotor and the housing can set up destructive axial forces. The shaft is threaded and the inner race is locked in position by means of a thin nut and lock washer; the outer race then has to be clamped securely in the end shield by some suitable means. With *locked-bearing* construction, there is no endwise movement of the shaft except for the small movements due to thermal expansion and the slight axial freedom in the bearing due to clearances between the balls and the races. *Tight fit-up* bearings have less of this freedom than *loose fit-up* bearings.

Ball-bearing motors are capable of withstanding considerable endwise thrusts and are generally suitable for operation in any position. How much thrust load a particular motor can handle safely should be obtained directly from the recommendations of the motor manufacturer, or from the ball-bearing manufacturer.

Some motors use *noise-damped* ball bearings. A thin rubber ring is bonded to the outside of the outer race, and a steel ring is bonded to the outside of the rubber ring. Since any compression of the rubber tends to make the rotor eccentric in the gap, this construction is better suited to coupled than to belted loads. Pros and cons of such a construction are discussed by Stark.[9]

17-4. Ball Bearings—Service and Maintenance. Lubrication of ball bearings is most important. If the bearings are open at one or both ends, they should be lubricated annually; moreover, it is a desirable practice to wash the bearings and bearing housings thoroughly approximately every two years, with alcohol or carbon tetrachloride. (If the motor has a commutator and brushes, take care that the tetrachloride does not come in contact with either.) The bearings themselves and all grease used in them must be scrupulously clean; it is even more important to keep all dirt and foreign matter out of ball bearings than it is to keep it out of sleeve bearings. For a general-purpose lubricant, a neutral soda-base soap grease is recommended in preference to other kinds. Ordinary cup greases are frequently compounded with a calcium soap and have a melting point too close to motor operating temperatures. Greases compounded from very heavy or very light oils should be avoided. Viscosities between 200 and 500 sec Saybolt at 100°F give good results. *Ball bearings should not be overgreased.*

Ball bearings that are sealed at both ends generally require less attention. The claim that these have enough lubricant sealed in them for the life of the bearing can be somewhat ambiguous, for obviously the bearing would not last long after all the oil had evaporated from the grease! *Operating temperature* is a major factor in the life of any ball bearing. At a bearing temperature of 40°C (104°F), the life of sealed ball bearings operating 24 hours per day may be from 3 to 5 years or more. However, the life halves for each 10° (centigrade) increase in operating temperature. Application of this rule indicates that if the bearing operates at a temperature of 80°C (176°F), the life on a 24-hour day basis may be reduced to as little as 2 or 3 months. Opinion is divided as to whether it is desirable to pack grease around the outside of a shielded bearing. But one rule is certain: The higher the operating temperature, the more frequent must be the attention to lubrication.

When removing ball bearings from a shaft, it is desirable to press against the inner race; if pressure is applied to the outer race to remove the bearing, the latter must not be used again in the motor because the races are likely to become ball-dented during their removal.

Some motors, such as sump-pump motors, use one ball bearing and one sleeve bearing. When the ball bearing of such a motor is replaced, use of a tight fit-up bearing is recommended.

STARTING SWITCHES

Some form of starting arrangement is necessary to all single-phase induction motors, as explained in Chap. 2. Split-phase and capacitor-start motors, by far the most popular types in fractional-horsepower sizes, use an auxiliary winding which has to be disconnected when the motor is up to speed, as discussed in Arts. 4-4 and 5-5. The auxiliary winding is disconnected by means of a starting switch, which may be a centrifugal switch, magnetic relay, or a thermal relay. By a wide margin, the centrifugal switch is the most popular starting device used in fractional-horsepower motors.

17-5. Centrifugal Starting Switch—General. A centrifugal switch consists of two basic parts: a *stationary* member and a *rotating* member, sometimes called an *actuator*. The rotating member is a centrifugal device, mounted on the motor shaft; as the motor comes up to speed, centrifugal force causes an element to move, usually in an axial direction, and this motion actuates the circuit-interrupting means provided on the stator member. All of the electrical contacts and current-carrying parts are a part of the stator member. To avoid wear due to prolonged rubbing between the stator and rotor members, the centrifugal switch is designed so that rubbing takes place only during the starting period. A modern centrifugal starting switch usually has a life of over a million cycles.

(1) *Necessity for Snap Action.* Starting switches must be snap-acting; that is, they must break the circuit quickly and positively and must not flutter. Fluttering or prolonged arcing of the switch can cause excessive burning and pitting of the contacts; a serious loss in torque, so serious that the motor may not be able to bring its load up to speed; and damaging overvoltages on the capacitor, if one is used. This snap action could be built into either the rotor or the stator member. Today's switches generally achieve the snap action by incorporating some form of toggle action in the rotor member, although for years, Westinghouse put it into the stator member. (For example, see Fig. 18-11, types CAH and FT, illustrated in the author's earlier work.[10])

(2) *Switching Arrangements.* Most starting switches simply open a single circuit; such is the case for the usual split-phase or capacitor-start motor. A back contact was required in some types of two-value capacitor motors (Figs. 6-1 and 6-6). Additional circuits or contacts may be required for two-speed pole-changing motors (Arts. 4-23 to 4-26 and 5-24).

(3) *Operating Speeds.* *Opening speed* of a centrifugal switch should generally be around 75 to 80 percent of synchronous speed, for reasons illustrated in the typical speed-torque curves of Figs. 4-3, 4-4, and 5-4. The *reclosing speed,* for a capacitor-start motor, should generally be below half speed, to avoid problems of regeneration (Art. 5-31).

(4) *Switches for Pole-changing Motors.* Starting switches for pole-changing (multispeed) motors have special requirements, both as to operating speeds and as to circuit arrangements and connections. Some of these requirements are discussed in Chaps. 4 and 5.

17-6. Torq Starting Switches. The starting switch used by a large number of motor manufacturers is one made by Torq Engineered Products, Inc., of Bedford, Ohio, under the trade name of Syncro-Snap. A typical Syncro-Snap switch is illustrated in Fig. 17-7. Referring to this figure, actuating weights *a* are riveted to the periphery of the conically formed disk *b* of spring steel. The spring-steel disk is riveted to the retaining plate *c* in such a way as not to restrain the normal motion of the disk. At rest, the disk is concave on the side where the weights are. Running, centrifugal force causes the weights to move radially outward, snapping the conical disk to its opposite conformation. Fingers formed on the disk carry the insulating spool *d*; when the steel spring is snapped to its opposite conformation by the weights, the insulating spool is drawn toward the retaining plate, that is, away from the stationary member of the starting switch. At standstill, the insulating spool

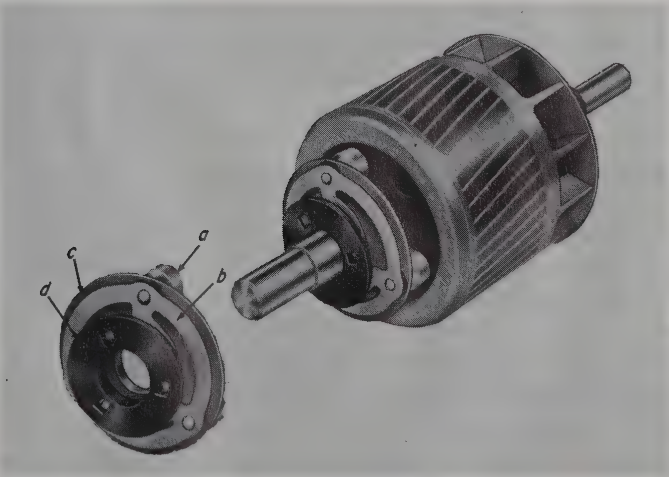


Fig. 17-7 Rotating member of a centrifugal starting switch for a single-phase motor. (*a*) Weight. (*b*) Spring-steel conically formed disk. (*c*) Retaining plate. (*d*) Insulating spool. (*Torq Engineered Products, Incorporated.*)

is out away from the retaining plate, pressing against a contact arm of the stationary switch, closing the starting circuit. When the spool snaps in toward the retaining plate, it releases the pressure that held the contact arm closed, allowing the natural spring action of the latter to open the contacts.

Syncro-Snap switches are made for a wide variety of operating speeds in each of three physical sizes, namely $2\frac{1}{4}$, $2\frac{5}{8}$, and $3\frac{1}{4}$ OD.

Stationary members come in an almost limitless variety of sizes and arrangements; some of them are made by Torq, and some by the motor manufacturer himself. Some have but a single contact arm, bearing against only one side of the spool; some have two arms, bearing on diametrically opposite sides of the spool, which are usually connected in series; some of the stationary members have enclosed contacts to keep dust and dirt away from the contacts; some stationary members are designed as an integral part of the motor terminal board.

17-7. Other Starting Switches. Many forms of *centrifugal* starting switches have been developed and used. One form, developed by the Ohio Electric Company, had a stationary member consisting of two stationary slip rings, secured to the front end shield and connected in series with the auxiliary winding; the rotor carried a single brush which spanned the two rings, closing the circuit when the motor was at standstill; as the rotor came up to speed, centrifugal force caused the brush to move radially outward, away from the slip rings, thereby opening the starting-winding circuit. Another quite different arrangement was the skillet type, developed by Delco: the stationary member carried a skillet-shaped arm which bore the stationary switch contacts; the governor weight was washer-shaped and slid along a radial switch pin, against a coil-restraining spring; in earlier models, the switch pin was mounted in a hole in the shaft, but in later models it is supported by a boss or projection which is cast integral with the aluminum end ring of the rotor. Westinghouse has used many forms of starting switches. A number of motor manufacturers still use their own design of centrifugal switches; most of these designs use a phenolic spool, arranged to slide along the shaft to actuate the stator member; the spool is caused to move by weights, moving outward due to centrifugal force, acting through a toggle linkage; the toggle idea, of course, is to make the rotor member snap-acting, for reasons already explained. One such switch is illustrated in Fig. 17-6. Many of the above-mentioned switches were discussed in greater detail in Chap. XVIII of an earlier work.[10]

Thermally actuated starting switches have been used. The principle involved here is to use the heat generated by the auxiliary-winding current to open the auxiliary-winding circuit, and to use the heat generated by main-winding current to keep the auxiliary-winding circuit open so long as the motor is running; after the motor stops due to removal of excitation, the thermal relay cools, its contacts reset, and the motor is ready to start again. An inherent limitation of this arrangement is that the motor cannot be restarted immediately after it is stopped, for it is necessary to allow enough time for the thermal relay to cool and reset.

17-8. Service and Maintenance of Centrifugal Switches. Whenever a fractional-horsepower motor is serviced, for whatever reason, it is a good idea to examine and inspect the centrifugal starting switch, if the motor has one. When possible, the serviceman should obtain whatever instructions and advice he can from the motor manufacturer, and he should be guided by them. In the absence of definite instructions to the contrary, the information that follows may be helpful.

(1) *Before Dismantling the Motor.* Check and measure the actual amount of free end play of the assembled motor, as this must be taken into account later in checking the action of the starting switch. Keep the same end-play washers in both front and back end shields. If the motor will start and come up to speed, it is a good idea to start it up several times, observing the action of the switch, to see if it is opening and closing in a normal manner.

(2) *General Inspection.* Dismantle the motor, taking care not to lose the end-play washers. Remove the rotor from the front end shield and inspect the stator member to see that it works freely and that the contacts are neither burned nor pitted nor likely to stick. Examine it also for any evidence of loss of temper of the spring, deformation, or anything that limits normal contact pressure in the closed position. A defective stator member should be replaced by a new one. Now, inspect the action of the rotating member. Caution: do not push against the spool-type slider, but pull the actuating weights out, as if they were being acted upon by centrifugal force; with many spool-type rotating members, it is possible to damage the switch by pressing in on the spool slider, for often it takes considerable force to start the spool. The best technique is to pull out the actuating weights while pressing lightly against the spool; once weights are out, even partially, it usually does no harm and often is easier to hold the switch in the running position by holding the spool depressed. Work the switch several times to see that it works freely, and that there is no binding or sticking. If there is a close clearance between the spool and the shaft, make sure that there is no dust, dirt, or corrosion product that can impede the intended free movement of the spool slider along the shaft. If any part of the

rotating element is in need of replacement, such as a spring or spool, for example, replace the entire rotating assembly; *do not replace only a part of the rotating assembly.*

(3) *Checking Axial Location of Rotating Member.* It is a good idea to check to see if the switch is properly located axially, especially if a new rotating member was installed. The instructions that follow are for spool-type switches that have a slider moving along the shaft. First check the location with the rotor in the *extreme near* position. To do this, assemble the rotor in the front end shield, using only the end-play washers that were in the front end before disassembly. The switch should be tested in two positions, closed and open. With the rotor shaft preferably in a vertical position in order to ensure its location, turn the rotor slowly by hand for two or three revolutions, while observing the stator member to see that a solid pressure is maintained at the switch contacts; if an ohmmeter is available, it is helpful to connect it across the switch contacts and to watch that the observed resistance does not vary significantly while the rotor is turned. Next, check the running axial clearance between the slider and the stator switch element. To do this, move the rotating member to its running position by pulling the actuating weights outward while lightly pressing against the spool or slider (Do not do it all by pressing against the slider, for you could damage the switch!), and hold or lock it temporarily in this position. Now, measure the axial clearance between the slider and the stator member by use of a scale, feeler, or other appropriate gauge. Torq Engineered Products gives the following recommended running clearances, which depend upon the size of the switch involved:

Outside diameter	*Clearance*
2¼ in. (57 mm)	0.040 in. (1 mm)
2⅝ in. (67 mm)	0.060 in. (1.5 mm)
3¼ in. (83 mm)	0.100 in. (2.5 mm)

Now, if the above checks give satisfactory results, remove the rotor from the end shield and add end-play washers having a total thickness equal to the total end play, measured before the motor was disassembled, and replace the rotor; this puts the rotor in the *extreme far* position. Now, repeat the test described above, checking for solid contact in the closed position; of course, if the running clearance was adequate in the extreme near position, it will also be ample in the extreme far position. *To recapitulate what is important: in the extreme near position of the rotor, make sure that the rotating member, in its starting position, does not press so heavily against the stator member as to cause damage to the latter, and that there is sufficient clearance in the running position; in the extreme far position of the rotor, make sure that the* *rotating member exerts ample pressure on the stationary member to ensure a good, solid circuit through the switch contacts.*

(4) *Check of Operating Speeds.* Switch-operating speeds are best checked in the completely assembled motor. A convenient method for doing this is to connect the motor to an adjustable low-voltage source, such as a VARIAC. Provide means for applying a light friction load on the shaft. Connect a suitable ammeter in the motor circuit. With a low voltage applied, of the order of one-fourth rated voltage, and a tachometer held against the shaft extension, let the motor slowly come up in speed until the switch opens; the contact opening should be clean and decisive, and may be noted visually, or indicated by a positive movement of the needle of the ammeter, without hanging. Let the motor coast and note the speed at which the switch recloses. This operation should be repeated several times, to see that the operating speeds are consistent. It should be done several times, first with the shaft at one limit of axial end play and then at the other limit. For usual single-speed motors, the opening speed should be between 70 and 80 percent of synchronous; the reclosing speed should be, for capacitor-type motors, less than half of synchronous, but is not so important for split-phase motors, except as an indication as to the probable health of the switch. If the motor is a two-speed motor, arranged to start on the high-speed connection, the opening speed of the starting switch must be below the lower synchronous speed; otherwise, if the motor is set for the low-speed condition when it is started, it will come up to a speed above synchronous and then, when the starting switch operates, there will be a sudden braking of the motor, accompanied by an unpleasant jerk.

(5) *Replacement of a Stator Member.* In general, if any part of a stator switch assembly is defective, it is recommended that it be replaced in its entirety by a new one, obtained from the motor manufacturer. Care should be taken in installing the new member, especially when soldering the leads to it. Most such switches use phosphor bronze, beryllium copper, brass, and steel for various parts, which are generally assembled in phenolic plates or bases. Riveted joints must not be allowed to become overheated, or they may loosen, or damage the phenolic material. Acid solder or fluxes are to be avoided. Rosin flux of a type that will spread and splatter over the surface of the base and onto contacts, leaving a gummy deposit, is to be avoided, since dirt will accumulate on such deposits. Rosin fluxes of various brands are available which leave remaining excess flux in a passive hard insulating state, preventing the just-mentioned condition. Soldering operations are simpler when the switches have parts tinned where connections are to be soldered.

17-9. Magnetic Starting Relays. It was pointed out in Art. 5-25 that magnetic starting relays are sometimes used instead of centrifugal switches. It was also noted there that starting relays may be either current-operated or voltage-operated, and advantages and disadvantages of both kinds were therein discussed. A typical relay, designed for motor starting service, is illustrated in Fig. 17-8. A sectional view of this relay is shown in Fig. 17-9. This relay utilizes a steel armature centered in a solenoid coil and a bridging-type contact arm which is closed by movement of the armature. Weight of the armature parts and number of turns in the coil are closely controlled at the factory in order to hold pick-up and drop-out currents to close limits. All moving parts are enclosed in a phenolic case and the unit is provided with "quick-connect" terminals, as shown in the photograph. This design is available with pick-up ratings ranging from 6.3 to 35.7 amp; drop-out current is approximately 82 percent of pick-up current. Other designs are available with pick-up currents down to 1 amp. The unit is also available as a part of a combined unit which includes a motor overload protector. This particular unit is gravity-opened and must, therefore, always be mounted in a vertical position with the coil up. (Not all relays are gravity-operated, however.) The unit illustrated is used ex-

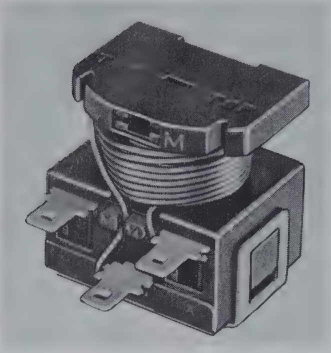


Fig. 17-8 A current-operated motor-starting relay. Models are available with pick-up currents from 6 to 36 amp. Gravity-opening, the unit must be mounted vertically as shown. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)

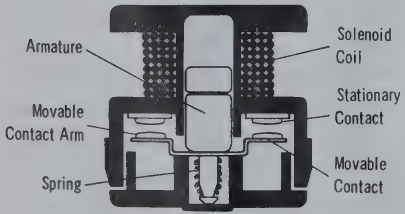


Fig. 17-9 Cross-sectional view of the motor-starting relay of Fig. 17-8. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)

tensively for food waste disposers, hermetic refrigeration compressors, dishwashers, and pumps.

RIGID AND RESILIENT MOUNTINGS AND COUPLINGS

Almost limitless is the number of different mounting and drive arrangements that have been used for fractional-horsepower motors. Only a few of the most common variations are discussed in the following paragraphs.

17-10. Types of Mounting. Common and still popular mounting arrangements are

(1) *Rigid-foot.* A foot rigidly attached to, or an integral part of, the motor frame is probably the earliest form of mounting arrangement. It is still widely used where noise is not a major factor.

(2) *Resilient-foot.* Resilient mounting arrangements are used extensively in the interest of quiet operation. These are discussed in Arts. 17-11 and 17-12.

(3) *Round-frame.* Round-frame motors, i.e., motors without a foot, may be held in place by means of a band clamped around the body of the motor, or as discussed below.

(4) *Face-mounting.* One form of face-mounting, used for oil-burner motors, is shown in Fig. 19-4. The rear end shield is provided with a rabbet fit machined concentric with the shaft; the motor is bolted to the oil burner by means of bolts passing through the extended lugs in the rear end shield. In another variation of face-mounting, shown in Fig. 19-6, the extended lugs are omitted, and the motor is held in place by means of bolts projecting from the driven apparatus into the four tapped holes shown in the rear end shield. This mounting arrangement is used for a number of pump applications; it is generally called "C-face mounting."

(5) *Extended Through Bolts.* Round-frame motors are often mounted by means of extended through bolts. Such an arrangement does not center the shaft so accurately as the machined rabbet fit of a face-mounted motor, but this method of mounting is often satisfactory and convenient for fan applications.

17-11. Torque Pulsations in Single-phase Motors. Polyphase induction motors supply a steady and smooth flow of power to the shaft. Torque developed by electromagnetic action of the windings is steady, like the torque developed by a turbine. Single-phase motors supply the torque in a series of pulses, just like a reciprocating engine. These torque pulsations, inherent in any single-phase motor, are a major source of noise in many applications, particularly when the motor is mounted rigidly to any sheet-metal cabinet or structure capable of radiating sound. Fortunately, the effect of this major source of noise can be virtually eliminated by use of an effective resilient mounting. In order to understand the source of these torque pulsations, it is first necessary to understand the pulsating nature of single-phase power.

(1) *Pulsating Nature of Single-phase Power.* In Art. 1-3 the nature of alternating current was pointed out; the current at any instant in time was shown to vary in accordance with the sine wave in Fig. 1-2. A similar curve of *instantaneous amperes* vs. time is given in Fig. 17-10. Likewise, a curve of *instantaneous volts* vs. time, also a sine wave, is shown. In this figure, the current wave is shown displaced 45 electrical degrees in time behind the voltage, which is the case when the power factor is 70.7 percent. The instantaneous power—or watts—in a single-phase circuit is equal to the product of the voltage at that instant by the current at that same instant. Therefore, to obtain the instantaneous watts at a number of points in time, we multiply the instantaneous volts by the instantaneous amperes, taking care to observe the plus and minus signs of both current and voltage. A curve obtained in this fashion is also shown in Fig. 17-10. Studying this curve of *instantaneous watts,* it is interesting to note that

1. The instantaneous watts vary, the same as do the volts and amperes.
2. The frequency of this variation is *twice* the supply-circuit frequency; i.e., in a 60-hz circuit, the power frequency is 120 hz.

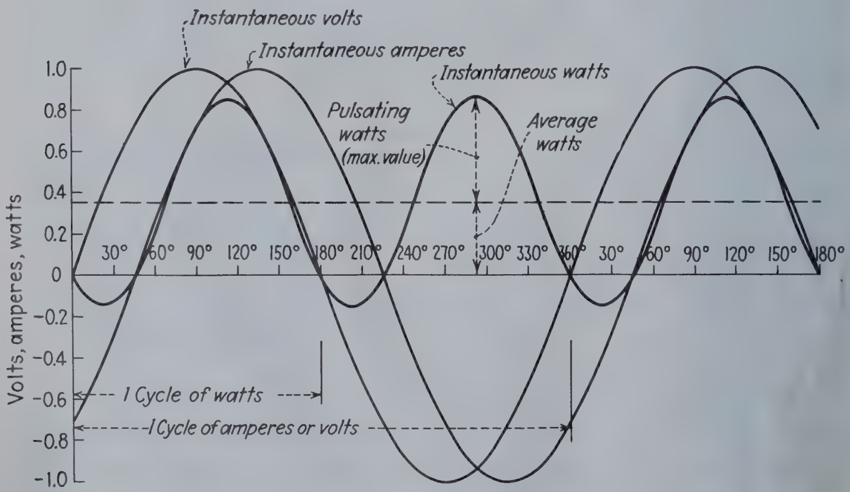


Fig. 17-10 Voltage, current, and power relations in a single-phase circuit of 70.7 percent lagging power factor.

3. The power is not always positive but is negative at certain portions of the cycle; negative power indicates a reversal in direction of power flow; e.g., if the power input to a motor is taken as positive, the power is said to be negative when the motor is feeding power back to the line.

4. It will be noted that the power can be thought of as consisting of two components: the first component is the steady power, or *average watts,* which remains constant in value, as in a dc circuit; the second component is the *pulsating watts* which vary sinusoidally with time at a frequency double the frequency of the applied voltage; the *pulsating watts* are superimposed upon the *average watts.*

5. *Pulsating* power is greater than the *average* power, showing that the former is of major importance.

(2) *Pulsations in Torque.* In any single-phase motor, the torque produced by the electromagnetic forces consists of two components: (*a*) an *average torque* and (*b*) a *pulsating torque,* alternating at twice line frequency. Since the power input to the motor, by the very nature of single-phase power, varies over a wide range, the torque developed by the electromagnetic forces must also vary over a wide range. This point becomes obvious when the fundamental law of conservation of energy is considered: when the power input is zero or negative, there can be no power output, and hence no torque. Readers interested in pursuing this subject of torque pulsations further are referred to an article on the subject by Kimball and Alger[1] and also to Arts. 10-7 and 12-8 in another book by the author;[2] Art. 10-7 tells how to calculate this torque when the main winding only is energized, and Art. 12-8 when both windings are energized. In addition, P. C. Krause has published an interesting study of this phenomenon.[3] Although the flywheel effect of the rotor smooths out variations in speed and permits the motor to carry the load steadily, it must be remembered that the torques due to electromagnetic forces contain a strong component of *pulsating* torque. If the stator is rigidly attached to the driven device, this double-frequency torque pulsation and its harmonics are likely to be the principal source of noise and vibration by the motor. This statement is particularly true if the motor is mounted on any structure capable of vibrating and radiating sound. Dominant pitch, for 60-hz motors, is 120 hz, a note about one octave below middle C on the piano. It is primarily to eliminate this 120-hz hum that resilient mountings are used. How this is done forms the subject of the following article.

17-12. How Resilient Mounting Eliminates Noise due to Torque Pulsations.

We saw, in the preceding article, that the torque developed in a single-phase motor consists of two components: (*a*) an average torque, and (*b*) a pulsating torque, alternating at twice line frequency. An ideal resilient mounting transmits the *average torque* to the stator, but absorbs the *pulsating torque* without transmitting any of it to the motor-mounting supports. The most common, and most effective, arrangement uses two neoprene mounting rings, one on each end of the motor. In one form of construction, each mounting ring consists of two concentric steel rings, between which the actual neoprene ring is bonded. The inner steel ring is pressed onto a machined fit on the end shield, and the outer ring is clamped in a mounting cradle. The stator is thus free to move, but the principal freedom of motion is about the center of the shaft; motion about the center of the shaft stresses the rubber in shear, the most effective way to use rubber to isolate noise and vibration, because the modulus of elasticity of rubber is much less in shear than in compression or in tension. Since the whole motor is free to vibrate about the center of the shaft, the double-frequency torque pulsation is not transmitted to the base. For best results, the center of gravity of the movable stator should coincide with the center of the shaft; a capacitor, or any other substantial weight, mounted on the frame of the motor brings the center of gravity of the stator slightly above the center line of the shaft and this causes a slight translational force to be exerted on the cradle base, because the stator tries to oscillate around its own center of gravity. However, a capacitor is usually light enough that the effect is small. One should not, however, mount a heavy weight on the stator of a resiliently mounted motor if one wants it to be quiet.

Variations on the neoprene-ring mounting are numerous. Sometimes the inner steel ring is omitted entirely; slipping is prevented by using lands, a spline, or a hexagonal shape on the nose of the end shield, and molding the inside of the neoprene ring to fit. Sometimes, too, the outer steel ring is not bonded to the neoprene; it is held from slipping by friction. Often the neoprene is molded with hollows in it, to provide greater torsional resiliency. Actual use of neoprene rings is illustrated in Fig. 17-3. A mounting arrangement using the neoprene rings is commonly referred to as "rubber mounting," because these rings were once molded from natural rubber.

Polyphase and dc motors do not have the same inherent double-frequency torque pulsation as single-phase motors, but they are frequently made rubber-mounted because the companion single-phase motor is rubber-mounted. Resilient mounting does help, though it is not so necessary as it is for the single-phase motor. A permanent-split capacitor motor tends to have less torque pulsation than a single-phase motor without the capacitor, but the capacitor cannot entirely dispense with the need for resilient mounting.

17-13. Flexible Couplings. Flexible couplings may be used either to allow for misalignment between shafts or to provide torsional flexibility between the motor and its load. A coupling may take care of misalignment and still provide no torsional flexibility, but the latter feature is quite essential in many applications. It has been brought out that single-phase motors have very pronounced double-frequency torque pulsations set up by the electromagnetic forces in the motor. Resilient mounting isolates the effect of this pulsating force from being transmitted through the *stator* to the frame of the driven device. However, it must be remembered that the pulsating torque is exerted on the *rotor* as well as on the stator. Therefore, 60-hz motors will have a 120-hz vibration in the rotor as well as in the stator. If the motor is belted to the load, the belt will usually isolate this vibration from the driven load. However, if no torsional flexibility is provided, this 120-hz vibration can be transmitted to the driven member of the load and is, in some cases, objectionable. One example is that of a large fan mounted directly on the motor shaft. When, on one application, it was found that a large fan rigidly mounted on the motor shaft emitted an objectionable 120-hz hum, a special hub was designed to provide torsional flexibility; the construction used for this purpose is shown in Fig. 17-11.

Another interesting application is that of hot-water circulating pumps used for residences. Couplings used to connect the pump impeller to the motor are provided with torsional flexibility in order to prevent the 120-hz hum from getting into the hot-water system and setting up objectionable noises in the radiators.

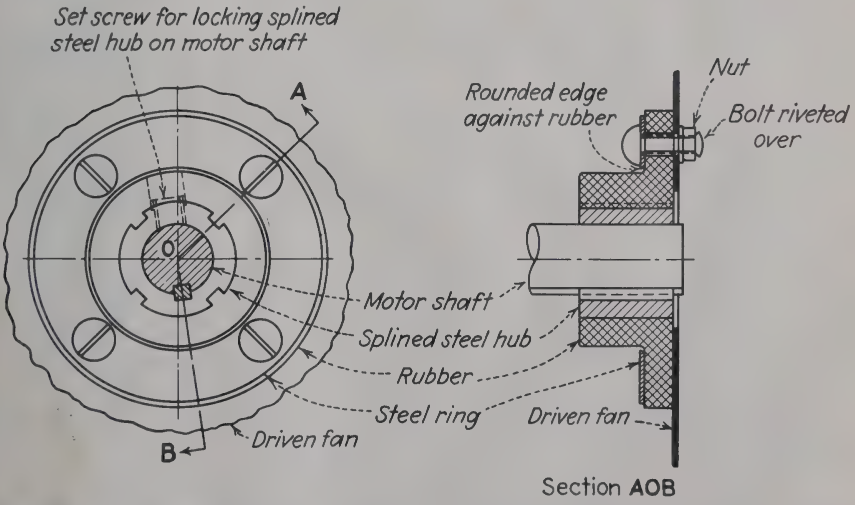


Fig. 17-11 Construction for resiliently mounting a fan on a motor shaft. (*Carrier Corporation.*)

No amount of elastic suspension of the stator will prevent transmission of the torque pulsation from the rotor to the rotating member of the driven device; only a coupling device with torsional flexibility will help in this respect.

THERMAL PROTECTORS

Need for some form of thermal protection for fractional-horsepower electric motors has long been recognized and a wide variety of devices to achieve that end have been developed and used. First to be used were current-responsive thermal relays, located remotely from the motor; but, in the early thirties, thermal devices responsive to both current and temperature began to be used. Nowadays most fractional-horsepower motors are being supplied with a built-in thermal protector, sensitive to both current and temperature. One important reason for such protectors is the prevention of fires due to motor burnouts, whatever the reason for the burnout conditions. Another important function of the protector is to prevent damage to or burnout of the motor during abnormal conditions that may later be remedied automatically or by human intervention. An example of the first case is to protect the motor from overheating during a temporary period of prolonged undervoltage; an example of the second case would be a motor stalled by a jamming of the driven device which was later cleared by human intervention.

17-14. General—Definitions. Definitions of some commonly used terms follow:

A *thermal protector* is a protective device for assembly as an integral part of the machine and which, when properly applied, protects the machine against dangerous overheating due to overload and, in a motor, failure to start. (NEMA definition.)

The words "Thermally Protected" appearing on the nameplate of a motor indicate that the motor is provided with a thermal protector. (NEMA definition.)

Inherent-overheating protective device is a term that has been widely used to designate a device, built integral with the motor, which is responsive to motor temperature *and to motor current.* The term has subsequently been so loosely used that it is now neither precise in meaning nor so popular in use as it once was.

An *automatic-reset thermal protector* is a thermal protector that resets automatically after its parts have cooled sufficiently.

A *manual-reset thermal protector* is a thermal protector that, once it has tripped, stays open until it is reset manually, usually by means of an external reset button. Normally, the device is "trip-free"; that is, it will trip automatically regardless of the position of the reset button and, further, it cannot be reset until the protector parts have cooled somewhat.

Thermally protected motors and how they are marked are discussed in Art. 1-12. Many connection diagrams for such motors are discussed in Chaps. 4 and 5. In the following paragraphs we shall discuss the more popular devices currently being used, and we will provide a qualitative discussion of their principles of operation, passing by a whole host of older and now less popular devices, many of which were discussed in "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors."[10] We shall start by discussing what the Underwriters' Laboratories expect of such devices.

17-15. Underwriters' Laboratories Standards for Thermal Protectors. What is expected of a properly applied thermal protector in a fractional-horsepower electric motor is very well spelled out in UL 547,[5] from which most of the material in this article was extracted.

The *scope* of the standard is limited to dc and ac single-phase motors rated 1 hp or less and 600 volts or less. It does not include devices that require an external contactor or other component, nor does it include requirements for hazardous locations.

Design and construction requirements provide the following: no operating part other than the reset button shall be exposed; no uninsulated live parts shall be exposed; automatic-reset protectors shall be trip-free; it shall be difficult to substitute a protector or thermal element of higher rating; and the protector must be resistant to corrosion. Minimum electrical *spacings* through air and over surface are also specified.

Protector *performance tests* for a 110- or 115-volt motor are taken at 120 to 125 volts; for a 220- or 230-volt motor, they are taken at 240 to 250 volts. For any other voltage rating, the tests are taken at 100 to 105 percent of rated voltage.

Temperature Limits. When the motor is running with the maximum load it can carry without causing the protector to trip, the total temperature shall be not more than 140°C (284°F) for a motor employing Class A insulation, or more than 165°C (329°F) for a motor employing Class B insulation. Locked-rotor temperature tests are taken at full voltage, with the protector cycling. Temperatures are measured by iron-constantan thermocouples of No. 30 Awg, applied to the winding, and a potentiometer type of instrument. The tests are conducted for a period of 72 hours. The maximum temperatures permitted by the standard are given in Table 17-2. If a manual-reset protector is being tested, it is operated for 10 cycles, with the protector being reset as quickly as possible after it has opened the circuit.

Locked-rotor Endurance Test. An automatic-reset protector shall operate for 15 days with the motor for which it is designed, without

TABLE 17-2 Limiting Temperatures during Locked-rotor Cycling Tests on Thermally Protected Motors*

Type of protector	Maximum temperature		Average temperature	
	Class A insulation	Class B insulation	Class A insulation	Class B insulation
Automatically Reset:				
1. During first hour of operation	200°C (392°F)	225°C (437°F)		
2. After first hour of operation	175°C (347°F)	200°C (392°F)	150°C (302°F)	175°C (347°F)
Manually Reset:				
1. During first hour of operation, or during the ten cycles of operation mentioned in the accompanying text above, whichever is the shorter interval	200°C (392°F)	225°C (437°F)		
2. After first hour of operation, if the ten cycles of operation mentioned in the accompanying text above require more than one hour for completion	175°C (347°F)	200°C (392°F)		

* From Underwriters' Laboratories Standard UL 547.

permanent injury to the motor or excessive deterioration of the insulation. However, it may permanently open the circuit prior to the expiration of the above period if it is specifically designed to do so, and if testing of three samples shows that it will do so consistently and reliably without grounding to the motor frame, injury to the motor, or any evidence of fire hazard. A manual-reset protector must open the circuit for 50 times without damage to itself or permanent injury to the motor; for this test, the protector is reset as soon after each opening as it can be made to do so.

The above gives a fair idea of what is expected of a thermal protector, but for the latest complete details of UL requirements in this regard, reference should be made to the latest issue of their standard.[5]

17-16. Essential Parts of a Thermal Protector. While many different types of thermal protectors have been developed and used over the years, there is now no doubt that the most popular and most widely used type today is the disk type, produced by Texas Instruments Incorporated, who report that over 300 million of them have been put into fractional-horsepower motors. A sectional drawing of one form of automatic- and manual-reset disk-type protector is shown in Fig. 17-12, where the essential parts are labeled:

(1) *Bimetal Disk.* This is the only moving part, a bimetallic disk, invented by J. A. Spencer. The disk has a dished shape, with the high-expansive side of the bimetal on the concave side of the disk at normal temperature. As the disk is heated, the bimetal on the inside of the disk tries to expand but is restrained from doing so by the concave shape of the disk, for the outer side, being of low-expansive metal, does not expand similarly; as the temperature of the disk is increased, stresses are set up in the disk tending to buckle it, and as soon as the temperature has reached a predetermined value, the disk snaps suddenly over to its other position. When the disk cools down to a definite temperature, it will snap back to its original shape. It is to be noted that this disk operates when, and only when, it reaches a certain fixed temperature; depending upon application requirements, this fixed temperature setting may be varied over a range of 60°C or better.

(2) *Auxiliary Heater.* This is a small preformed heating element, of an alloy of resistance wire such as nichrome, placed close to the bimetallic disk.

(3) *Mounting Cup or Base.* All of the parts are mounted on a phenolic cup which, in the illustration, is provided with mounting ears for attaching the protector to a recessed surface, such as an end shield of a

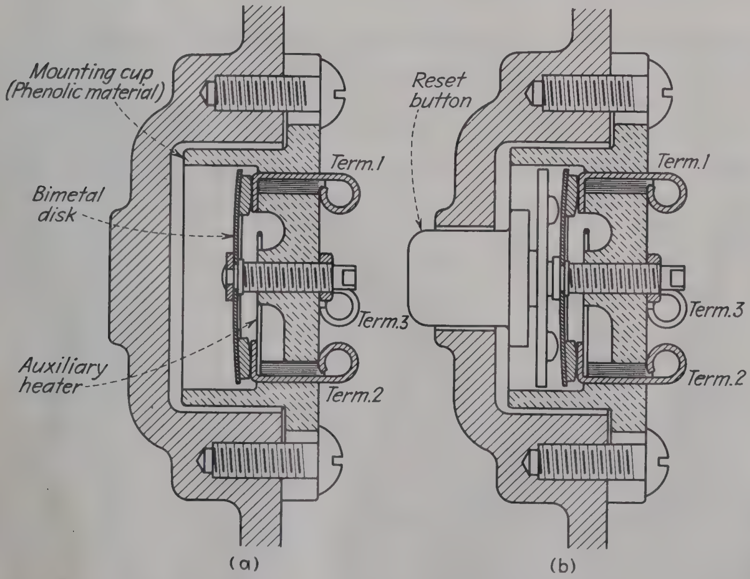


Fig. 17-12 Sectional view of typical disk-type thermal protectors. (*a*) Automatic-reset. (*b*) Manual-reset. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)

motor. The bimetal disk is held in place by a single central screw, shown in the figure; the opening temperature of the disk is adjusted by this screw, which is then locked in place and sealed. The mounting cup also positions and supports the terminals which pass through it as shown and connect to the silver stationary contacts inside the cup. The silver moving terminals are welded to the disk as shown in the drawing.

(4) *Reset Button.* Figure 17-12*b* shows a *reset button,* made of bright red nylon. It is spring-biased away from the disk. When pressed inwards, it pushes a metal plate, carrying two or more coined dimples, against the outside of the disk, tending to reset the latter. Now, the disk of a manual-reset protector is normally designed so that, once it has tripped, it goes so far over center that it will not reset at any ordinary room temperature likely to be encountered. However, by pressing against the outer side of the disk, the resetting temperature can be increased. The motion of the reset button is limited mechanically so that it always stops short of pressing the disk over center and closing it. Actually the travel of the reset button is set so that when it is against its inward limit of travel (as it would be if clamped, for example), the resetting temperature is raised to a value normal to that of an automatic-reset protector; hence this manual-reset protector would cycle as if it were an automatic-reset protector. Thus, the protector shown is a "trip-free" protector.

17-17. Elementary Principles of Operation of Thermal Protectors. For the purpose of understanding the elementary principles of operation of a thermal protector, let us consider one of the type shown in Fig. **17-12**, mounted in the motor end shield. Let us first consider what happens under locked-rotor conditions, and then under running conditions. Finally, let us make some comparisons with overcurrent devices.

(1) *Locked-rotor Conditions.* Under locked-rotor conditions, the windings of a split-phase or capacitor-start motor heat very rapidly, especially those of the former. The auxiliary winding of a split-phase motor may approach dangerous temperatures in 7 seconds or less, and those of a capacitor-start motor in perhaps 20 to 40 seconds, depending upon the design. During this time, the temperature of the end shield would not change sensibly. In short, the windings could burn out while the end shield was still cool. Hence, if the protector mounted in the end shield responded only to temperature, it would not protect the motor windings from burnout under locked-rotor conditions. For this reason, motor current is passed through the auxiliary heater, and the heat generated therein radiates directly to the disk, causing it to heat up and trip in a time sufficiently short to protect the motor windings. Since

the bimetallic disk itself carries current and is of finite resistance, heat is generated directly in the disk itself, accelerating its tripping. Thus, under locked-rotor conditions, the protector is caused to trip by heat generated within the protector itself, not by heat received from the motor.

Now, what happens after the first tripping of the protector? The end shield is cool, and starts immediately to absorb heat from the disk and heater of the protector, both of which cool rapidly and cause the disk to reset, energizing the windings and causing current to flow through the protector again. This time, the tripping time is much shorter than for the first trip because it is necessary to heat the disk up from its reclosing to its opening temperature, a matter of 25 to 50°C, rather than from room temperature, as it did the first time. The protector will cycle, at first relatively rapidly; then as the end shield heats up and approaches the reclosing temperature of the protector disk, the "off" time increases, markedly decreasing the cycling rate. All of these considerations are shown graphically in Fig. 17-13; for example, the protector is seen to cycle 6 times in the first 15 minutes, but only 3 times in the last 15 minutes.

(2) *Running Loads.* The purpose of the protector is to prevent the windings from reaching a dangerous temperature, regardless of how they might arrive at this temperature. If it were possible to make the protector infinitely small and insert it inside the winding at the hottest

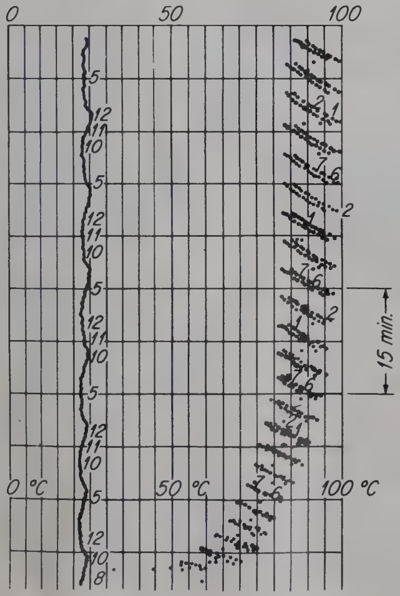


Fig. 17-13 Winding temperatures in a thermally protected motor, using an automatic-reset thermal protector; rotor is blocked, and the protector is cycling automatically. Temperature readings were taken automatically by a Leeds and Northrup Micromax recording instrument. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

spot, ideal protection could be obtained by a device that was only temperature-sensitive. A temperature-sensitive protector, attached to the frame or end shield, would not be sufficient, because the windings are hotter than the end shield *by a varying amount which depends mainly upon the amount of current flowing through them.* In any given motor, the temperature rise of the winding above the frame (not above ambient) tends to be proportional to the I^2R losses in them, that is, to the square of the current. If a disk-type thermal protector is mounted in the end shield, the temperature of the disk, when no current is flowing through the protector, will be the same as that of the end shield. When current flows through the protector, the disk becomes heated and the temperature rise of the disk above the end shield will be approximately proportional to the I^2R losses in the protector, that is, to the square of the current. Since the end shield will generally approximate the temperature of the frame, we can sum up the situation of the end-shield-mounted protector in the following terms:

The end-shield temperature is lower than that of the windings being protected by an amount proportional to the square of the current, but the temperature of the disk is higher than that of the end shield by an amount also proportional to the square of the current; hence, by a proper selection of protector characteristics, the temperature of the disk can be made to approximate very closely the temperature of the windings for a wide range of load currents. In such a case, the disk is set to open at the limiting winding temperature desired. These principles are discussed more fully in a paper by Veinott and Schaefer.[7]

Thus it is clear that the auxiliary heater, so necessary for locked-rotor protection, serves a useful purpose in obtaining running protection. In selecting a protector, it is sometimes found that the one that gives ideal running protection does not give adequate locked-rotor protection, and vice versa, so that a compromise has to be made. There is available such a wide variety of protectors of differing characteristics that a protector can usually be found that gives protection closely approximating the ideal requirements discussed above.

(3) *Thermal Protector Compared with Overcurrent Device.* An external overcurrent device operates on the theory that the winding temperature depends upon only the motor current, so it is set to operate at a certain current, usually of the order of 115 to 125 percent of full-load current. Now, it is not overcurrent that damages the windings, but overtemperature. Many factors other than current can elevate the winding temperature: location of the motor in a high ambient, as sometimes occurs in appliances; partial or complete blocking of the supply of ventilating air; dust or dirt accumulations on the windings themselves, or in air passages; proximity to hot surfaces or bodies; operation

on overvoltage, etc. The thermal protector, located inside the motor, operates on motor temperature as well as motor current. It protects against dangerous temperatures at small currents, where an overcurrent protector would not trip, and permits the motor to carry more overload at low ambient temperatures, which it can safely do without overheating. In short, a properly applied thermal protector affords more positive protection, and permits fuller utilization of overload capabilities of the motor, than does the remote overcurrent protector.

17-18. Thermal Protectors for Single-phase Motors. Thermal protectors, manufactured by Texas Instruments Incorporated, come in a very wide assortment of designs and characteristics. Two broad classifications are end-shield-mounted and on-winding protectors.

(1) *End-shield-mounted Protectors.* Figure 17-12 shows sectional views of automatic-reset and manual-reset thermal protectors, designed for end-shield mounting. Other varieties, sizes and kinds of similar protectors are illustrated in Fig. 17-14. The eared-base type is generally used in motor end shields, while the round-base type is often mounted directly on the dome of refrigerator compressors. There are five sizes of disk, ranging from ½ in. to 1½ in. Both automatic- and manual-reset are available. Some of them have two heaters.

(2) *On-winding Protectors.* As motors have progressively been packed into less and less space, temperature-protection problems have increased, as well as the problem of how to find room enough for the protector. To meet this demand, a line of on-winding protectors was developed. The general appearance of these devices is illustrated in Fig. 17-15. The cases are live and, in practice, the devices are supplied with a 0.005-in. or an 0.008-in. mylar insulating sleeve, extending $^3\!/_{16}$ in.

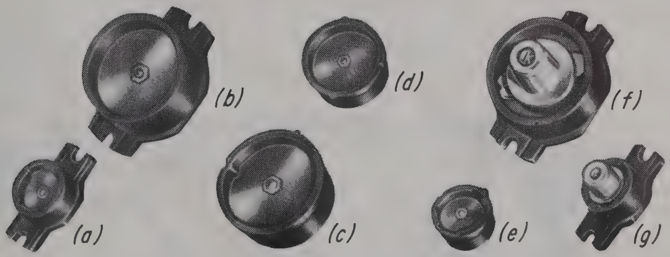


Fig. 17-14 Types and sizes of thermal protectors used in fractional-horsepower electric motors. (*a*) Ear-type, ½-in. disk, automatic-reset. (*b*) Ear-type, 1-in. disk, automatic-reset. (*c*) Round base, 1-in. disk, automatic-reset. (*d*) Round base, ¾-in. disk, automatic-reset. (*e*) Round-base, ½-in. disk, automatic reset. (*f*) Ear-type, 1-in. disk, manual-reset. (*g*) Ear-type, ½-in. disk, manual-reset. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)

beyond the metal case. A sectional view of such a protector is shown in Fig. 17-16. The principles of how they protect the motor windings are essentially the same as those discussed in Art. 17-17, except that less heater effect is needed than for end-shield-mounted protectors because they are mounted in a closer heat-receiving relationship with the windings they are protecting. There are two standard heater-and-lead arrangements: (1) two leads, with a single heater; (2) three leads, with two heaters (a separate heater for main and auxiliary windings, or separate heaters for the two speeds of a two-speed motor). In general, heater sizes and contact ratings are available for almost all sizes and ratings of fractional-horsepower motors.

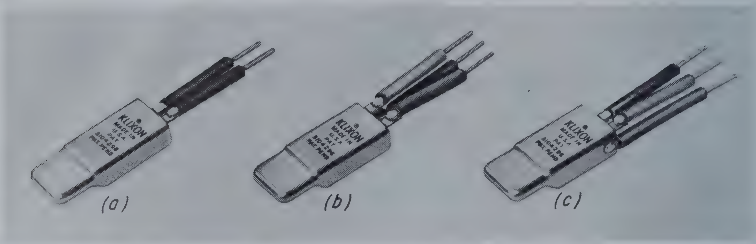


Fig. 17-15 On-winding type thermal protectors. (*a*) 2 AM single heater. (*b*) 2 AM two-heater. (*c*) 4 AM. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)

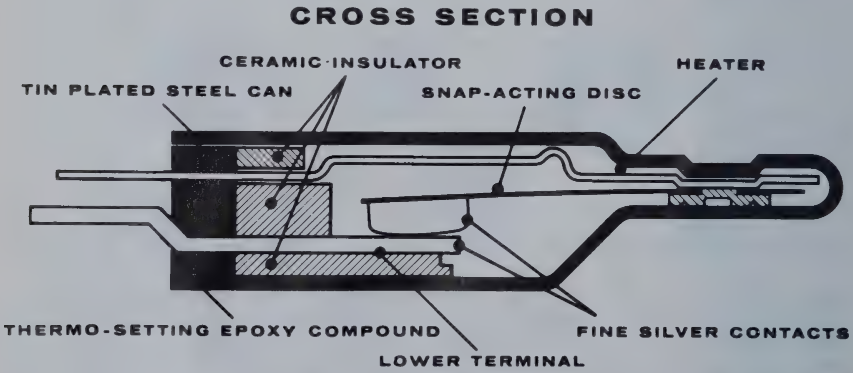


Fig. 17-16 Cross-sectional view of an on-winding thermal protector for fractional-horsepower motors. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)

For shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors, generally in the subfractional-horsepower ranges, a smaller version of the on-winding protector has been developed by Texas Instruments and designated as their 9700 series. In general, these are two-lead devices, with no auxiliary heater (the disk itself carries current and has some heater effect in itself), and protective mylar sleeves are used because the case is live.

Unfortunately, this construction does not lend itself to manual resetting. Partly for this reason, end-shield-mounted protectors are still used where the on-winding protectors might otherwise be used.

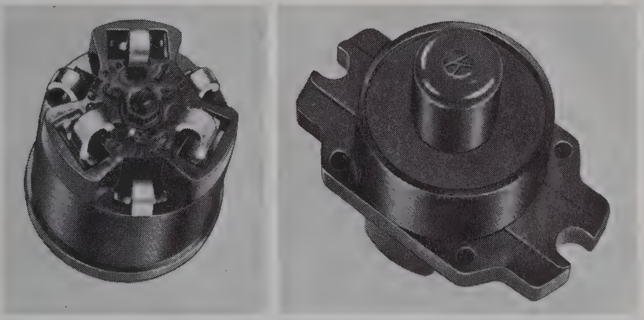
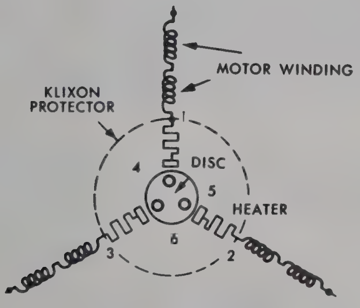
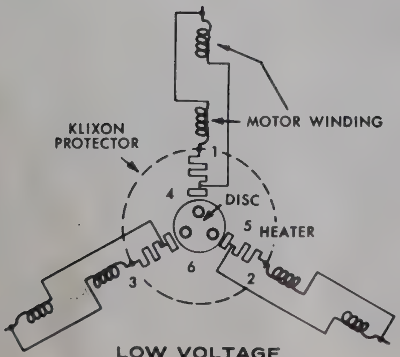


Fig. 17-17 Thermal protectors for three-phase motors. These are designed to open the neutral or star point of a Y-connected motor. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)



HIGH VOLTAGE



LOW VOLTAGE

Fig. 17-18 Connections for dual-voltage neutral-opening three-phase thermal protectors. (*Texas Instruments Incorporated.*)

17-19. Thermal Protectors for Three-phase Motors. Thermal protectors for three-phase motors are illustrated in Fig. 17-17. These are similar to the end-shield-mounted protectors discussed earlier, except that they have three heaters, and three or six terminals, depending upon whether they are to be used with single- or dual-voltage motors. They are *neutral-opening protectors;* that is, the disk itself forms the star point. This means that they are suitable only for Y-connected motors, not for delta-connected motors. But, since most fractional-horsepower motors can be designed for star connection, this poses no serious limitation. Since the star point is at ground potential in most cases, a neutral-opening protector leaves all three windings "hot" when the protector opens as one phase is left connected to each line. Connections for a dual-voltage arrangement are shown in Fig. 17-18.

GEARMOTORS

Since most machines that are driven by electric motors operate at speeds well below normal motor speeds, some form of speed reducer is usually needed. Gears are extensively used for such purposes. The speed-reducing gears may be built into the driven machine, or the gear reduction unit may be made a part of the motor. Sometimes, the speed reducer is a separate unit. Gearmotors, having the motor and reducer built as an integral unit, are frequently used both for economy and for saving space.

17-20. Fractional-horsepower Gearmotors. There are two basic types of gearmotors commonly used in fractional-horsepower sizes: (1) right-angle gearmotors, where the output shaft is at right angles to the motor shaft; (2) parallel gearmotors, which have an output shaft parallel to the motor shaft, but not generally in line with it.

(1) *Right-angle Gearmotors.* These are the most compact and economical construction for speed reductions of 6:1 or more. For speed ratios between 5:1 and 70:1, a single worm stage is employed. Such an arrangement is illustrated in Fig. 17-19, where a portion of the gear case has been removed to show the worm and its mating gear. For speed ratios between 70:1 and 300:1, a two-stage construction is used, combining a worm stage with a parallel stage. A typical arrangement is illustrated in Fig. 17-20, where the housing has been cut away enough to show all four gears of the two stages; it will be noted that the final output stage uses helical gears. Mechanical efficiency of the gears could be as high as 90 percent for a 5:1 reduction, but may be as low as 40 percent for a 70:1 reduction. A similar range of 90 percent efficiency down to 40 percent efficiency would apply to the combination units at ratios progressing upward from 70:1 to 300:1.

Lubrication is very important. The gear case should be flushed out and a fresh supply of the lubricant recommended by the manufacturer added every 750 hours of operation.

(2) *Parallel Gearmotors.* These units are more efficient but less compact than right-angle units. They sometimes adapt more readily to the driven machine because the output shaft is in line with, or at least parallel to, the motor shaft. They may be built with one, two, or three stages, commonly known as single parallel, double parallel, or triple parallel. Generally there is a loss of about 3 percent in each stage, so that the efficiencies are, approximately, 97 percent for single parallel,

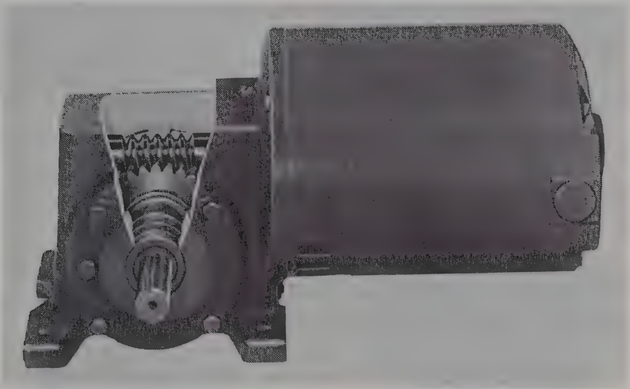


Fig. 17-19 A right-angle single-stage gearmotor. Worm is cut on the steel worm shaft, then carburized and ground. The worm shaft has its two bearings and is driven by the motor shaft through a splined coupling. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

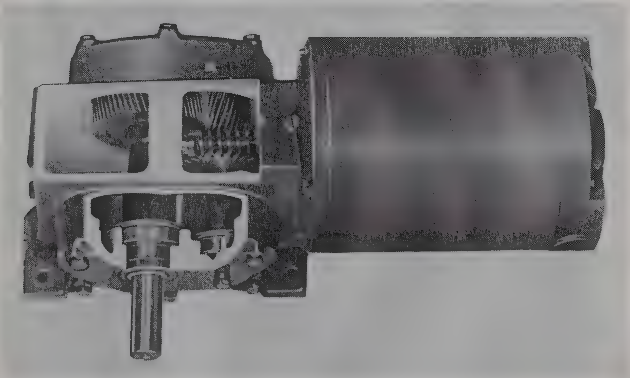


Fig. 17-20 A right-angle two-stage combination gearmotor. First stage is same as shown in Fig. 17-19. Second stage uses helical gears cut from steel, which are then hardened and honed. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

94 percent for double parallel, or 91 percent for triple parallel. The gears can be either spur, helical, or herringbone. Spur gears are generally not used, except in the slowest speed stage of a triple parallel unit, because they are inherently noisier at high speeds. Helical gears are rapidly replacing herringbone gears in the lower horsepower gearmotors because they can be made with greater accuracy at a reasonable cost.

Lubrication is also important for parallel units. In most cases, any good grade of motor oil or turbine oil is satisfactory. Under normal operating conditions, an oil change should be made at 1,500-hour intervals of operation. With single parallel gearmotors, the mounting feet may be a part of the motor, leaving the gear unit overhanging, or a part of the gear housing, with the motor overhanging. A typical example is illustrated in Fig. 17-21.

17-21. Gear Reducers for Fractional-horsepower Motors. Sometimes convenience is best served by using a separate gear-reducer unit. This gives the user a wider range of choice in selecting the driving motor. Examples of some of the available arrangements are shown in Fig. 17-22.

17-22. Subfractional-horsepower Gearmotors. A number of subfractional-horsepower gearmotors were discussed and shown in Chaps. 10, 11, and 13. There are, perhaps, three basic types of such motors: (1)

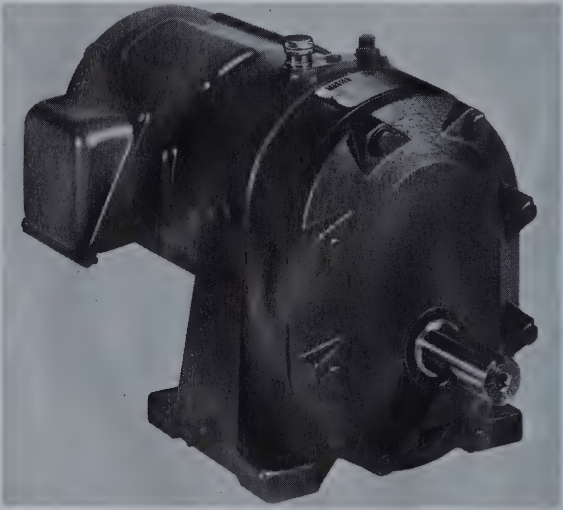


Fig. 17-21 A parallel gearmotor. Gear ratios are from 2.25:1 to 129.7:1. The gear case has its own feet and the motor is bolted to it. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

right-angle gearmotors, (2) parallel gearmotors, and (3) planetary gearmotors.

(1) *Right-angle Gearmotors.* A right-angle gearmotor with two worm-gear stages is illustrated in Fig. 17-23. Single-reduction gearing may be had for ratios from 2:1 to as high as 60:1; with a 1725-rpm

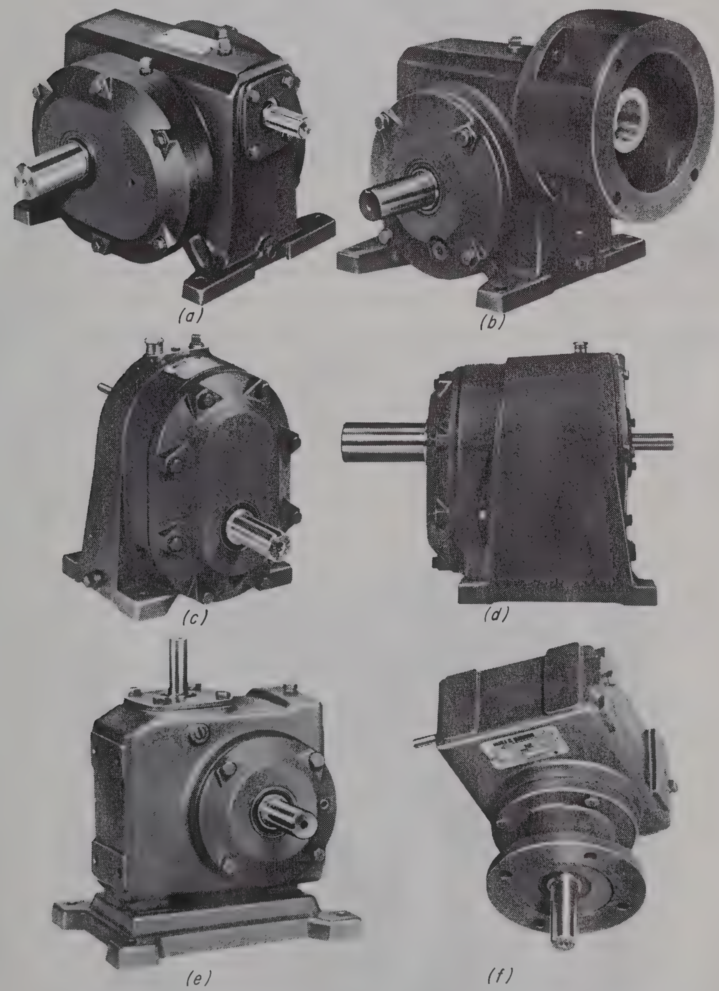


Fig. 17-22 Different forms of gear reducers for fractional-horsepower motors. (*a*) Right-angle combination MASTEReducer. Available ratios: 25:1 to 336:1. (*b*) Single-reduction C-face MASTEReducer. Available ratios: 5:1 to 70:1. (*c*) Parallel single-reduction MASTEReducer. Available ratios: 2.25:1 to 6:1. (*d*) Parallel double- or triple-reduction MASTEReducer. Available ratios: 7:6 to 129:7. (*e*) J-mount MASTEReducer for vertical input when horizontal space is limited. (*f*) Flange-mount MASTEReducer. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

motor, this means output speeds of 900 to 30 rpm. Double-reduction gearing is used for ratios from 36:1 to 2880:1, giving, for 1725-rpm motors, output speeds from 50 to 0.6 rpm. Universal motors operate at higher speeds.

Caution: most worm-gear reducers are irreversible, i.e., the motor cannot be turned from the slow-speed shaft. Care must be taken not to connect high-inertia loads directly to the output shaft, because the momentum of the load during stopping or starting may damage the gears. Many of these motors, particularly double-reduction universal motors, can deliver more torque than the gears can handle continuously. Care should, therefore, be exercised to avoid applying these motors to devices that can become jammed—lest the gears be damaged. For such applications, a safety clutch or shear pin between the motor and its load is recommended.

(2) *Parallel Gearmotors.* A compact-design four-parallel gearmotor is illustrated in Fig. 17-24. The spur gears are of case-hardened steel; the primary stage uses helical gears of heavy-duty phenolic for quietness. Grease-lubricated ball bearings are used on the motor shaft. Needle bearings are used on the final output shaft to obtain a high overhung-load capacity. Two screw plugs in the gear housing provide means for relubrication and the maintaining of a proper lubricant level. The motors are normally shipped without oil in the gear case.

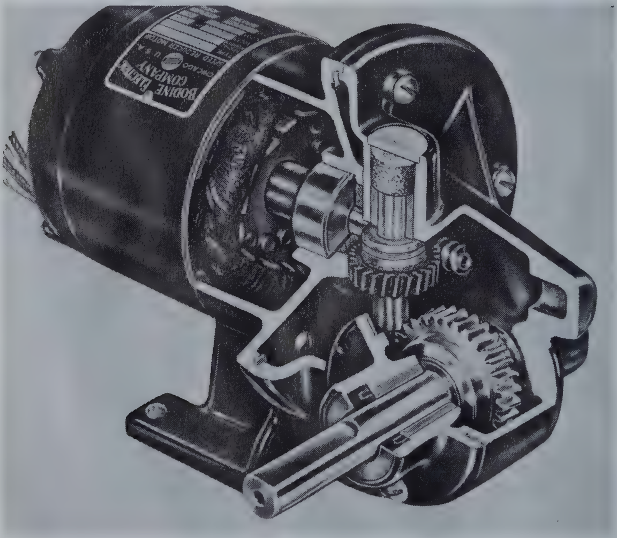


Fig. 17-23 Fractional-horsepower motor with double-reduction worm gear. May be used with shunt, universal, induction, or synchronous motors. (*Bodine Electric Company.*)

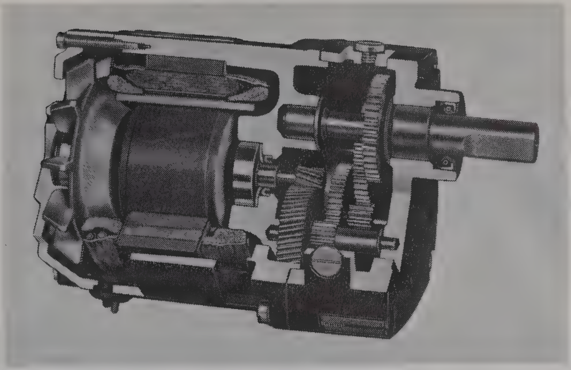


Fig. 17-24 A four-stage parallel gearmotor of compact design. The primary stage is helical and of heavy-duty phenolic for quietness. Other gears of case-hardened steel. Thirteen standard gear ratios for 60-hz motors offer output speeds of 300 to 2 rpm. Output torque ratings are from 1.5 to 25 lb-in. (*Bodine Electric Company.*)

(3) *Planetary Gearmotors.* For very high gear ratios, especially in very small motors, planetary gears are often used. One such motor is illustrated in Fig. 13-6; as stated in the caption, this motor is available in ratios up to 21,808:1. Even higher ratios can be obtained.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Kimball, A. L., and Alger, P. L.: Single-phase Motor Torque Pulsations, *AIEE Trans.,* June, 1924, p. 730.
2. Veinott, Cyril G.: "Theory and Design of Small Induction Motors," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1959, 477 pp. (Out of print, but available from University Microfilms, Inc., Div. of Xerox, Ann Arbor, Mich.)
3. Krause, P. C.: Simulation of Unsymmetrical 2-phase Induction Machines, *IEEE Trans. on Power Apparatus and Systems,* vol. 84, 1965, pp. 1025–1037.
4. Bremer, E. B., and Veinott, C. G.: Refrigerator Motors Need Thermal Protection, *Elec. Refrigeration News,* Oct. 11, 1933.
5. UL 547: Thermal Protectors for Motors, UL 547, Underwriters' Laboratories, 207 E. Ohio St., Chicago, Ill.
6. Potter, C. P.: The Inherent Overheating Protection of Single-phase Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 60, 1941, pp. 993–996.
7. Veinott, C. G., and Schaefer, L. C.: Fundamental Theory of Inherent Overheating Protection under Running Overhead Conditions, *AIEE Trans.,* vol. 68, 1949, p. 266.
8. Pesek, S. J., and Weinkamer, W. A.: Strip-type Bearings, *Machine Design,* Mar. 10, 1965, pp. 35–39.
9. Stark, J. H.: Elastic Girdles for Ball Bearings, *Product Engineering,* September, 1951, pp. 188–192.
10. Veinott, C. G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.
11. Agnoff, Charles: Multipurpose Bearings, *Machine Design,* Aug. 31, 1967.
12. Selected authors: Bearings Reference Issue, *Machine Design,* Mar. 10, 1966.

Chapter 18

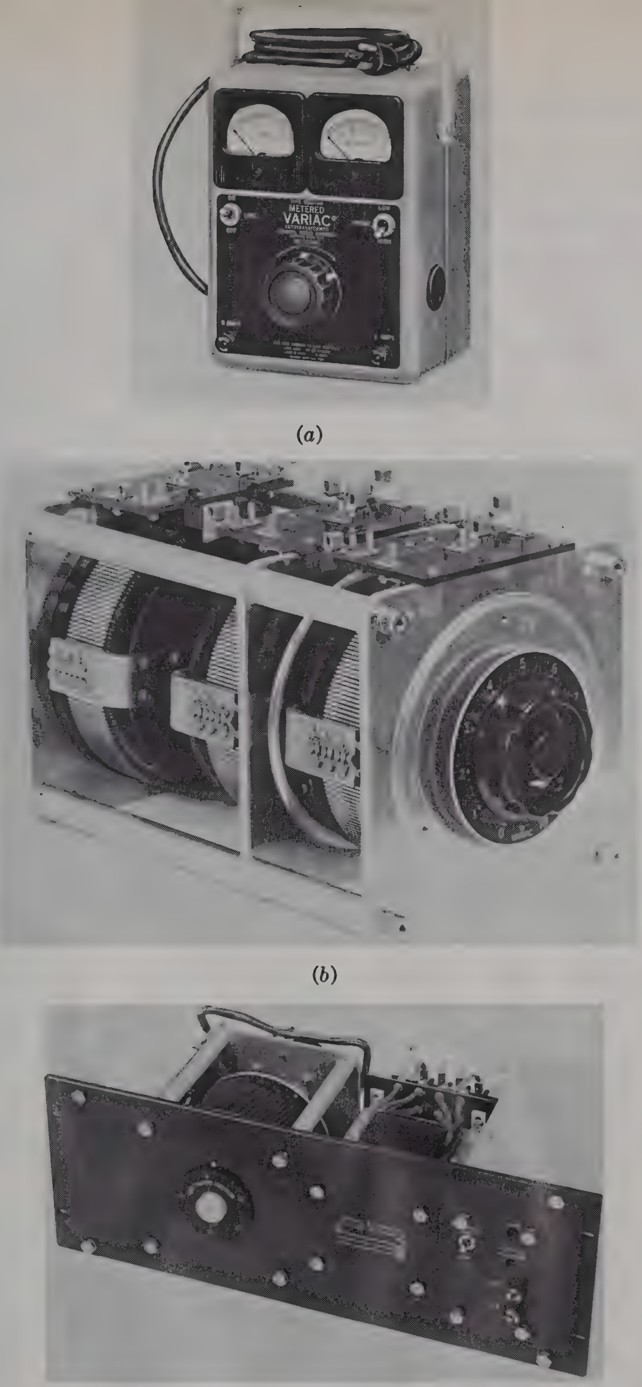
Test Equipment and Procedures

Tests, properly taken and properly evaluated, may be used as a quality-control check on a motor to verify whether or not the motor was correctly made, whether in a factory or in a service shop. The design engineer runs a number of tests to make a thorough evaluation of his design. The application engineer runs tests to help him decide what motor he should use for any particular application. Space does not permit us to treat comprehensively this subject, which is covered in considerable detail in IEEE publications. However, we shall treat the subject briefly and refer the reader to more detailed publications.

METERS AND EQUIPMENT

18-1. Power Source. For accurate and reliable testing it is absolutely essential to use a good source of adjustable-voltage power that holds reasonably steady during the tests.

(1) *For AC Motors.* An adjustable autotransformer, connected to a source of voltage of good wave form, is recommended. Figure 18-1 illustrates typical autotransformers used for such purposes; they are marketed by the General Radio Company under their registered trade



(a)

(b)

(c)

Fig. 18-1 Adjustable autotransformers for controlling ac voltage. (*a*) Type W5MT3W Variac, consisting of the variable autotransformer and two meters built into a portable carrying case; for single-phase applications. (*b*) Type W5OG3 is a ganged assembly of three variac autotransformers, used for three-phase circuits. (*c*) Type 1581-A Variac automatic voltage regulator. (*General Radio Company.*)

name of Variac. The Variac autotransformer consists of a single-layer winding on a toroidal silicon-steel core. As the control knob is rotated, a graphitic brush traverses the winding, tapping a portion of the total voltage across the winding. The volts per turn range from 0.3 up to 1.0, depending upon the size of the unit. Uncased models are offered for panel mounting, and cased models with carrying handle, cord, and built-in overload protector are available for portable use. Portable models are also available with one, two, or three meters built integrally. For polyphase circuits, two or three units are ganged and operated by the same control knob, as shown in Fig. 18-1*b*. An automatic voltage regulator is shown in Fig. 18-1*c*; a solid-state control circuit and servomotor automatically position the autotransformer brush to hold the output voltage constant.

Not recommended for general testing are solid-state rectifiers or inverters, which generally have poor wave forms.

(2) *For DC Motors.* For conventional dc motors, use of a motor-generator set with field control is recommended; batteries, of course, may also be used. Use of rectified alternating current is not recommended unless the motor being tested was designed to be used with such a source. (See Arts. 13-22 to 13-27.)

18-2. Measurement of Voltage. For ac circuits, use of commercial, low-loss, dynamometer-type instruments is suggested. For 115- and 230-volt circuits, scales needed are 0-150 and 0-300, respectively. Such meters are usually readable down to about half voltage. Generally they are calibrated for 60 hz; if readings on 400 hz are to be taken, specially calibrated meters should be used.

For dc circuits, dc voltmeters of the d'Arsonval moving-coil type are recommended. For measuring form factor, the voltage needs to be measured with both ac and dc meters (Art. 13-24). But do not use a dc voltmeter on an ac circuit!

For more details on various kinds of electrical measurements, see the relevant IEEE Master Test Code.[6,*]

18-3. Measurement of Current.

(1) *AC Motors.* For measuring 60-hz currents commercial ammeters, preferably of the dynamometer type, are usually suitable; for 400-hz circuits, specially calibrated meters are usually needed. Maximum scale values generally needed for tests on fractional-horsepower motors are the following: for full-load currents, 15; for locked-rotor currents, 65. For testing subfractional-horsepower motors, much lower scales are needed.

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

(2) *DC Motors.* Dc ammeters usually use a d'Arsonval moving-coil element; often they use external shunts so that a wide range of currents can be measured by the same instrument. Such an instrument reads *average current.* When the current is supplied from a rectified ac source, the current may have considerable ripple; in such a case, the current should usually be measured both with a dc ammeter that reads average current, and with an ac ammeter that reads rms current: the ratio of these two readings is the *form factor* of the current.

18-4. Measurement of Power Input (Watts). Low-loss meters are recommended; even so, corrections should be made for these losses, as pointed out in Art. 18-11. Potential and current scales should correspond to the scales of the voltmeter and ammeter being used in the test. For checking the power factor of electrolytic capacitors (Art. 5-10), low-power-factor meters are essential.

Polyphase wattmeters are essentially two single-phase instruments with both moving elements mounted on the same shaft. They are not necessary for measuring polyphase power, which can always be measured with two single-phase wattmeters; some find them more convenient, however.

For dc power measurements, wattmeters are unnecessary.

18-5. Measurement of Power Factor. It is recommended that the power factor be computed from the readings of volts, amperes, and watts, rather than from a direct reading on a power-factor meter. In a single-phase circuit,

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{\text{watts}}{\text{volts} \times \text{amperes}} \tag{18-1}$$

In a two-phase circuit,

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{\text{total watts}}{2 \times \text{volts} \times \text{amperes}} \tag{18-2}$$

In a three-phase circuit,

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{\text{total watts}}{\sqrt{3} \times \text{line-to-line volts} \times \text{line amperes}} \tag{18-3}$$

18-6. Measurement of Frequency. For usual tests, it is not necessary to measure the frequency of a commercial 60-hz circuit, because the frequency is usually held very closely. A vibrating-reed instrument can give an approximate indication of frequency. More accurate results can be obtained with an indicating instrument with the normal-frequency point in the middle of the scale, and calibrated to hundredths of a hertz. An alternative method is to measure the speed of a small synchronous motor, operated on the same circuit.

18-7. Measurement of Speed. Close and accurate measurement of speed is usually essential to good test results. The subject is discussed in an IEEE Recommended Guide.[7] Several instruments and methods are available.

(1) *Revolution Counter and Stopwatch.* A *revolution counter* is used to count the revolutions in a period of time, measured by a stopwatch.

(2) *Speed Indicator (Integrating Tachometer).* This instrument combines a revolution counter and stopwatch in a single case. Pressing the button automatically starts the counter and the stopwatch, which automatically stops the counter at the end of a predetermined interval of time, of the order of three to five seconds. Such an instrument has been called an *integrating tachometer.*

(3) *Centrifugal Tachometer (Horn).* As the name implies, this instrument has a centrifugal mechanism and gives an instantaneous reading of speed.

(4) *Eddy-current-drag Tachometer (Smith).* This instrument indicates speed by measuring the force exerted on a drag cup by a rotating permanent magnet.

(5) *Stroboscopic Tachometer.* By this method, a rotating pattern is illuminated by periodic flashes of light of very short duration (of the order of 10 to 50 μsec). The frequency of the flashes is adjusted until the pattern appears to stand still; rpm is read directly from a scale on the instrument. This method is particularly valuable for measuring speed of subfractional-horsepower motors, many of which would be overloaded by a conventional tachometer.

(6) *General.* Tachometers should be checked frequently; a small synchronous motor is most convenient for this purpose. Stroboscopic tachometers often have a vibrating reed for calibration purposes; the timing of the flashes is adjusted to make the reed appear to stand still. Rubber tachometer tips need to be kept free of oil and grease so that they will not slip; dipping them in powdered chalk occasionally is helpful.

18-8. Measurement of Slip. *Slip* of an induction motor is the difference between the actual speed and the synchronous speed. When the slip is less than 100 rpm, it is usually more accurate to measure it directly than it is to measure the speed and calculate the slip. A convenient way to do this is to use a stroboscopic tachometer, adjusted to flash at line frequency, to view a pattern on the shaft of the motor; the apparent backward rpm of the pattern is counted, giving the slip revolutions directly. The flashing light source can be either a neon bulb or an arc lamp. Slips in excess of 100 rpm become difficult to count; they can be determined by subtracting the actual measured speed from the synchronous speed.

18-9. Measurement of Resistance.

(1) *Resistance of Windings.* For measurements of resistance of windings which are 5 ohms or more, use of a Wheatstone bridge is recommended. Kelvin double bridges are recommended if the resistance is less than 5 ohms. A Wheatstone bridge has two leads and the resistance of the bridge leads themselves is included in the reading. The Kelvin double bridge has two current leads and two potential leads; the latter are applied directly to the winding being measured, and the resistance of the bridge leads is not a factor. Circuit checkers, containing a battery, afford a convenient means for quickly measuring the approximate resistance of a winding, but bridge methods are considerably more accurate and reliable. Further information on the techniques of resistance measurement is given in an IEEE Test Code.[4]

Regardless of how winding resistance is measured, the room temperature should be noted and the resistance corrected to 25°C. [See Art. 18-16(1).]

(2) *Insulation Resistance.* Insulation resistance readings are generally of less interest to users of small machines than to users of very large machines. Insulation resistance can be measured by means of a megger, or by other means, described by the IEEE.[11]

18-10 Measurement of Temperature. Three methods of measuring the temperatures of fractional-horsepower motors are (1) by thermometer, (2) by thermocouples, and (3) by rise of resistance. The latter two are the most popular and convenient. Thermocouples can be cemented or attached to the windings by modeling clay or by other means. Temperature of the thermocouples can be indicated directly by a potentiometer, calibrated for the kind of thermocouple used.

Temperature rise by resistance is taken by measuring the cold resistance of the winding, and then the hot resistance of the winding, measured *immediately* at the conclusion of the heat run, before the windings have time to cool sensibly. The temperature rise of copper windings is computed by

$$T = \left(\frac{R_h}{r_t} - 1\right)(235 + t) \tag{18-4}$$

where T = total temperature rise, °C above temperature t
R_h = hot resistance
r_t = cold resistance, at temperature t
t = temperature of winding, in °C, when r_t was measured

More information on temperature measurements in rotating machines can be found in an IEEE Master Test Code,[5] supplemented by additional information in the Test Codes for specific kinds of machines.

Seely has developed an ingenious method which makes it possible to measure the resistance of an ac winding while the motor is running thus permitting measurement of the winding temperature by the resistance methods, without shutting down the motor.[16] He does this by means of a potential transformer that keeps the ac line voltage off the bridge and by a capacitor that keeps the bridge from measuring the resistance of the ac power supply.

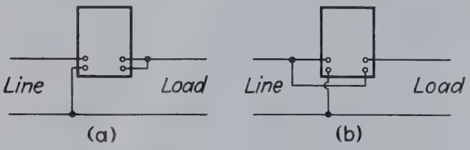


Fig. 18-2 Two ways of connecting a wattmeter in a single-phase circuit.

18-11. Meter Loss Corrections. A wattmeter can be connected in either of the two ways shown in Fig. 18-2. With either connection, part of the internal losses in the wattmeter will be read by the wattmeter: in Fig. 18-2*a*, the loss in the potential coil is included; in Fig. 18-2*b*, the loss in the current coil is included. In neither case does the wattmeter give the true reading. In general, it is recommended that the connections of Fig. 18-2*a* be used and that the loss in the potential coil be subtracted from the wattmeter reading to obtain the power absorbed by the load.

The loss in the potential coil is given by

$$\text{Loss} = \frac{E^2}{R_p} \tag{18-5}$$

where E = actual voltage being measured
R_p = total resistance in the potential-coil circuit, including that of an external multiplier, if used

It is possible to read the loss on the wattmeter itself by exciting *line* connections shown in Fig. 18-2*a*, leaving open the *load* connections. Some wattmeters are provided with internal compensation for the loss in the potential coil; such an instrument must be connected as in Fig. 18-2*a*, with no correction made for potential-coil losses.

18-12. Meter Connections for Single-phase Circuits. Recommended connections for testing single-phase motors are shown in Fig. 18-3. With this connection, it is necessary to subtract the loss in the potential coil of the wattmeter (unless the wattmeter has internal compensation therefor), and also the loss in the voltmeter, from the actual wattmeter reading in order to obtain true watts. The potential-circuit loss can be read directly on the wattmeter by leaving the *load* and *ammeter short-circuiting* switches open and closing the *line* and *potential* switches. The *po-*

tential switch shown should be opened when currents are being read. The *ammeter short-circuiting* switch is to protect the current coils of the ammeter and wattmeter; *it should be left closed at all times except when reading amperes or watts.*

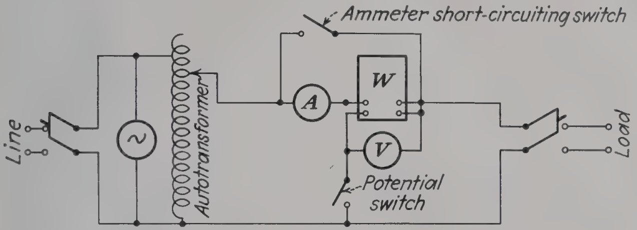


Fig. 18-3 Instrument connections for metering single-phase power.

18-13. Meter Connections for Polyphase Circuits.

(1) *Three-phase Circuits.* Recommended connections for testing three-phase motors are shown in Fig. 18-4. In this figure, W_1 and W_2 may be two single-phase wattmeters, or the two parts of a polyphase wattmeter. While the figure shows two wattmeters, three voltmeters, and three ammeters, it is more customary to use only a single instrument of each kind, switching them around by special switches arranged for this purpose. When testing motors, these two wattmeters will never read the same; when the power factor of the motor is less than 50 percent, the smaller wattmeter will read negatively. The problem, in any given set of readings, is to determine the sign of the smaller wattmeter reading.

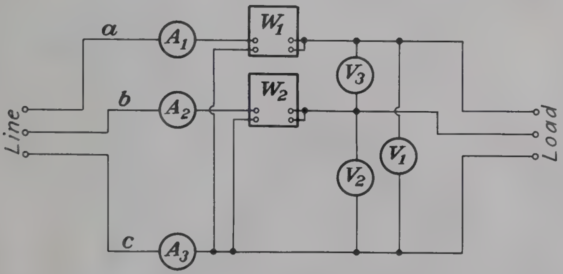


Fig. 18-4 Instrument connections for metering three-phase circuits.

(2) *Determination of the Sign of the Smaller Wattmeter Reading.* Provision has to be made to reverse the connections to the potential coil of the wattmeter that reads the lesser. The problem is to know which position of this reversing switch indicates a positive sign and which indicates a negative sign. There are several ways to determine

this. Run the motor at no load and open line *a* momentarily; in this case, the motor will be running on single-phase power, and so this wattmeter will have to read positively. The position of the reversing switch that makes the wattmeter read positively should be marked as the positive position; the other, of course, is the negative position. To check this, run the motor at no load on all three phases; W_2 should be negative, a fact indicated by the negative position of the switch. As the motor load is increased, the reading of W_2 should decrease and, finally, reverse, so that the reversing switch has to be thrown over to the positive position. When the sign of the smaller reading is negative, it is subtracted from the larger reading; when it is positive, it is added. If a permanent or semipermanent test setup is made, the two positions of the potential-coil reversing switch should have the + and — positions marked.

If the test setup has been torn down and there is reason to doubt whether the sign of the smaller reading is correct, a simple test is afforded by the following relations:

If $W_1 < 0.866\ EI$, then W_2 is $-$.
If $W_1 > 0.866\ EI$, then W_2 is $+$.

(3) *Meter Losses in Three-phase Circuits.* The best way to make the meter-loss corrections is to total the wattmeter readings algebraically, and then to subtract from this total the sum of the losses in the potential circuits of both wattmeters. This is probably safer than correcting each wattmeter reading individually, for when the sign of the smaller wattmeter reading is negative, the potential loss is numerically added to the reading.

18-14. Measurement of Mechanical Output. There are a number of ways to measure the mechanical output of a fractional-horsepower motor, some of which are described below. The first three are discussed in much greater detail in an IEEE Test Procedure.[3]

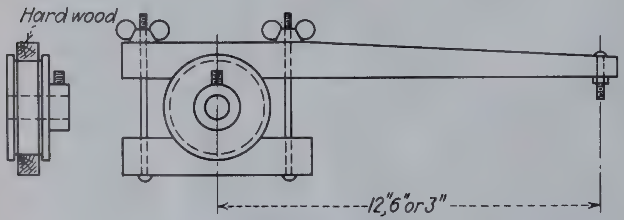


Fig. 18-5 A prony brake for testing small motors.

(1) *Prony Brake.* For many test purposes, the prony brake offers a convenient and economical way of loading a motor. A typical brake

is shown in Fig. 18-5. The diameter of the pulley wheel is not important, but the *length of the arm is.* Accurate scales, preferably of the gravity-balance type, should be used. When determining the tare, the thumb nuts should be loosened and the arm must be loose on the pulley. When load readings are being taken, there must be no hand pressure on the wing nuts.

(2) *Dynamometer.* A dynamometer is illustrated in Fig. 18-6. It is a dc machine, capable of both armature and field control. By connecting load resistors across the armature, the unit can absorb power whether separately or self-excited, though it is generally more stable when it is separately excited. If paralleled with a dc bus, it can pump power back into the dc bus (an especially desirable feature when taking heat runs), and by proper adjustment of the field current can be made to develop either motoring or generating torque, a necessary feature when speed-torque curves are taken. Dynamometer windage loss does not show up in the developed torque and so, for accuracy, a correction for it needs to be made.

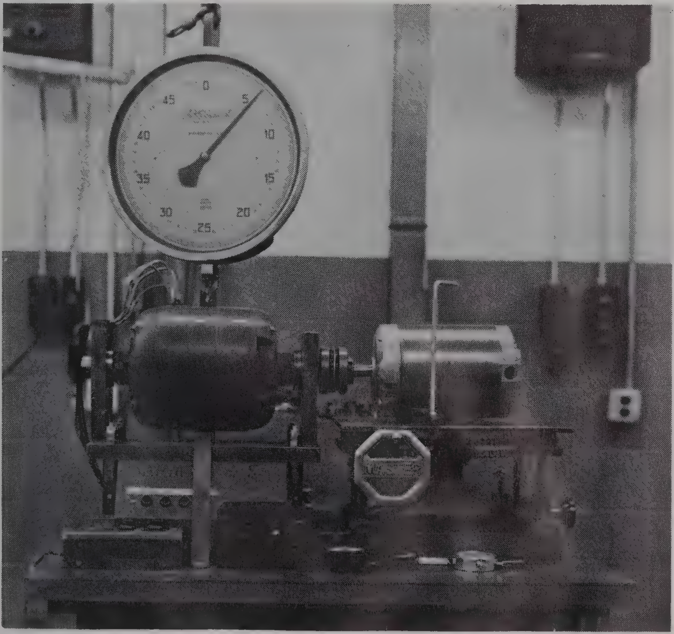


Fig. 18-6 A dynamometer for testing fractional-horsepower electric motors. The dynamometer unit (*left*) is mounted in cradle bearings, and a torque arm, attached to the back side, is hooked to the scales which therefore measure the torque developed by the dynamometer. The motor being tested (*right*) is mounted on a platform, the height of which is adjustable to facilitate shaft alignment; the test motor drives the dynamometer through the flexible coupling shown. (*Reliance Electric Company.*)

(3) *Rope and Pulley.* This method is particularly useful in testing subfractional-horsepower motors, but it is often used for testing larger motors. A small cord, suspended from a spring scale, is wrapped around a smooth pulley on the motor shaft; it is wrapped around the pulley enough times that, when the cord is tightened by a virtually negligible pull on the free end, the scale will measure the motor's pull. A distinct curvature in the free end of the cord as it leaves the pulley is the only conclusive evidence that there is no force on the free end. The pulley face should be wide enough that all the turns required can be in a single layer, but if this is not so, at least the first two turns nearest the scale end of the cords should be in the first layer. In calculating torque, the radius is taken as the radius of the pulley plus the radius of the cord under tension. The cord should pull directly against the scale, not obliquely.

(4) *Torque Table.* Torque Table is a registered trademark of Lebow Associates, Inc., of Oak Park, Michigan. One of their devices is illustrated in Fig. 18-7; it is a reaction-torque-measuring structure which does not require cradle or trunnion bearings as do dynamometers. The unit consists of a plate supported from a fixed mounting base by means of four torque-sensitive flexure straps. Foil-type strain gauges are bonded to these flexures, one to each, and connected electrically to a four-arm bridge circuit, from which an electrical signal, proportional to torque, is developed. The Torque Table is calibrated by hanging

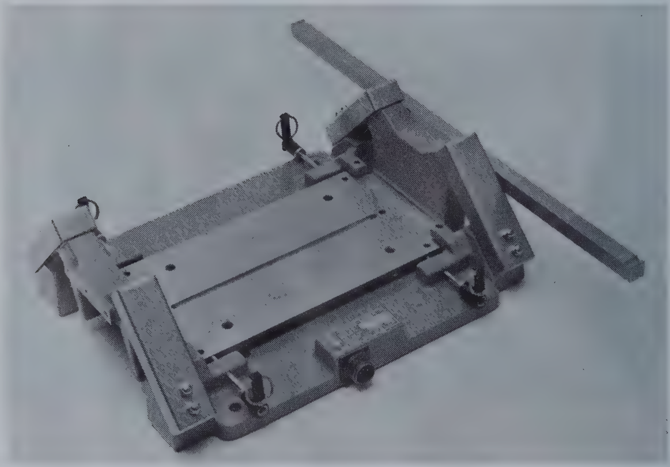


Fig. 18-7 A Torque Table, a device for measuring the torque reaction developed by the stator of a motor undergoing test. The unit shown accommodates NEMA frames 56 and 66 and has a capacity of 50 in.-lb. Other similar units have torque capacities from 5 to 2,000 in.-lb. (*Lebow Associates, Incorporated.*)

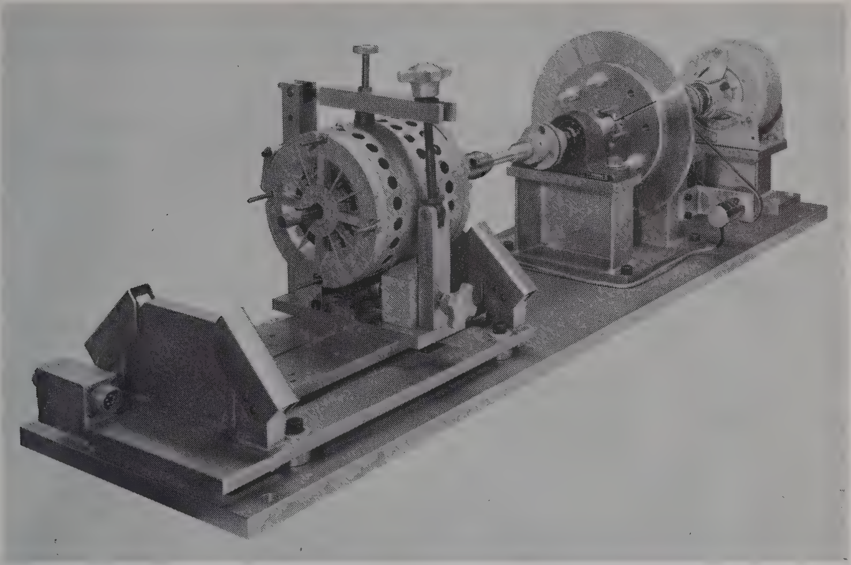


Fig. 18-8 A small motor undergoing a test on a Torque Table. It is held by a cradle fixture, mounted on the plate, in such a position that the center of the shaft is located at the intersection of the projections of the torque-measuring flexible straps. Load is applied by means of the eddy-current brake and speed measured by the connected tachometer. (*Lebow Associates. Incorporated.*)

known weights to the calibrating arm which is shown in the figure; this arm is removable.

Use of this Torque Table is illustrated in Fig. 18-8; note that the motor is so mounted that the center of the motor shaft passes through the points in space formed by the intersections of lines drawn through the four flexure straps—a necessary feature, because the cradle pivots about this axis. The motor is loaded by means of the eddy-current absorption brake shown in the figure. Since the Torque Table itself does not rotate, motors of any speed can be tested on it.

The torque indicated by the Torque Table is the torque developed by the magnetic field, less the friction torque of the motor bearings. At a steady speed, this torque is the same as that at the shaft; during accleration, the Torque Table measures the torque output of the shaft plus the torque consumed in accelerating the internal inertia of the rotor.

TESTS TO TAKE—SINGLE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

Small electric motors are normally given some sort of routine test before they leave the factory, and service shops should do likewise on a rebuilt motor. A complete engineering test is less often required, but both types of tests are described below, as well as in the IEEE Test Procedure.[3]

18-15. Routine Test. A routine test may consist of the following:

(1) *No-load Readings.* After the motor has run at no load long enough for the bearings to warm up, readings of watts and amperes at rated voltage are taken. While the motor is running, it should be observed for unusual noises and for end play.

(2) *Full-load Readings (Optional).* Holding the motor output at rated value, and applying rated voltage and frequency, measure watts, amperes, and rpm.

(3) *Locked-rotor Readings.* With rotor locked and full voltage applied, measure the input watts and amperes and, when possible, torque. These readings should all be taken in not over four or five seconds, for the motor heats rapidly.

18-16. A Complete Engineering Test. Those who wish to take a complete engineering test should consult the IEEE Test Procedure for Single-phase Induction Motors.[3] The more common tests taken, with a few of the necessary precautions, are given below.

(1) *Cold Resistances.* Resistances of both main and auxiliary windings should be measured at room temperature and corrected to a standard temperature of 25°C, which can be done by using the following equation:

$$R_{25°\mathrm{C}} = \frac{260}{235 + t} r_t \tag{18-6}$$

where $R_{25°\mathrm{C}}$ = resistance at 25°C
r_t = resistance at temperature t

The resistance of the auxiliary winding should not include the switch resistance.

(2) *Locked-rotor Readings.* Make connections as shown in Fig. 18-3, impress approximate rated voltage on the main winding, and read, within three or four seconds, watts, amperes, and volts; measure the resistance of the winding immediately afterward. (Do not take time to adjust the voltage if it is within five percent of rated value.) Repeat these readings with the auxiliary winding, with capacitor, if any, in the circuit; also measure the voltages across the auxiliary winding and across the capacitor. If the motor is of the repulsion type, raise all the brushes and wrap the commutator with several turns of fine copper wire.

(3) *Breakdown Torques.* Breakdown torque is the maximum torque the motor can carry without an abrupt drop in speed. (See Fig. 18-9.) It is taken by increasing the torque load on the motor until the motor "breaks down," that is, the speed suddenly falls off. This

test needs to be taken as rapidly as possible so that the motor will not overheat during the process, but not so rapidly as to introduce inertia errors into the readings.

(4) *Switching and Pull-up Torques.* The nature of switching and breakdown torques is illustrated in Fig. 18-9. Switching torque of a capacitor-start motor can be measured with the help of a prony brake. Start with a light load and increase it by tightening the wing nuts until the motor falls off in speed abruptly and drops down onto the starting connection; since the torque on the starting connection is generally greater than the breakdown torque, the motor will accelerate and transfer back to the running connection, cycling back and forth from one connection to the other. Now, decrease the torque gradually until the motor ceases cycling; that torque will be the switching torque. The switching-torque test of a repulsion-start motor is begun with the motor on the starting connection; the brake-arm torque is adjusted to a very high value and then slowly decreased, allowing the motor to come up to speed; at a certain value of torque, viz., at the switching torque, the short-circuiter will operate and then the motor will come up to full speed.

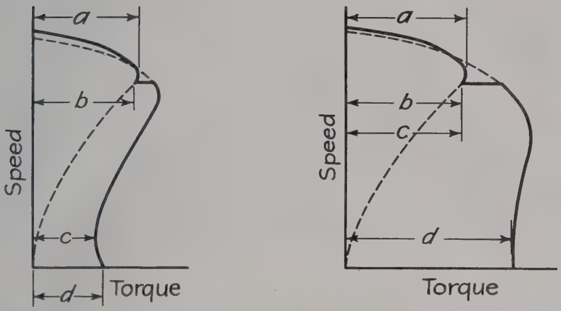


Fig. 18-9 Typical speed-torque curves of single-phase motors illustrating definitions of the various kinds of torque. (*a*) Breakdown torque. (*b*) Switching torque. (*c*) Pull-up torque. (*d*) Locked-rotor torque.

(5) *Locked-rotor Torque and Current.* Locked-rotor torque varies with rotor position, and so the actual torque developed has to be measured in a number of positions to take this effect into account. One way to do this is to use a brake arm, and turn the motor over onto the round part. Then, roll the motor slowly away from the scales, watching the latter for its minimum reading. The test must be performed rapidly, because the motor will heat too much otherwise. Line current can be observed during this test.

(6) *No-load Saturation—Friction and Windage Losses.* The purpose

of this test is to be able to segregate losses; it permits the separate determination of the friction and windage, and also the core losses. With the motor running at no load, take a series of readings of volts, amperes, and watts, starting at 130 percent of rated voltage and varying the voltage downward until the motor loses speed rapidly or until the current starts to increase. If it is a capacitor motor, only the main winding should be energized for this test. Amperes and net watts should be plotted against voltage and the net watts curve extrapolated to zero volts to give the value of friction and windage. (Art. 18-24.)

An alternative method of measuring friction and windage is to measure, by means of a stroboscopic tachometer and stop watch, the rate at which the speed decreases when power is suddenly removed. The weight of the rotor and its radius of gyration must be known. Then friction and windage are

$$F \text{ and } W = K\,wk^2\,S\,\frac{dS}{dt} \tag{18-7}$$

where S = speed at which deceleration rate was measured
dS/dt = rate of deceleration, rpm per sec
k = radius of gyration, ft or in.
w = weight of rotor, lb
$K = 4{,}622 \times 10^{-7}$ if k is in ft
$= 32.1 \times 10^{-7}$ if k is in in.

(7) *Load-performance Test.* This test is taken to obtain performance at various loads, giving a typical set of performance curves as illustrated in Fig. 18-12. Starting at a heavy load and holding rated voltage, a set of readings of current, power and rpm are taken; the load is reduced by steps and the readings repeated. Horsepower, efficiency, and power factor are calculated from these readings and plotted. If a capacitor-run motor is being tested, connect it up as in Fig. 18-4, except that both *a* and *b* line leads should be connected to the same side of the line. The *a* and *b* load leads should be connected to the main and auxiliary windings, respectively, and *c* to the common motor lead. In this way readings are obtained of main and auxiliary phases, independently of one another. Capacitor voltage, and also auxiliary winding voltage, at each load point should be measured and recorded.

(8) *Full-load Saturation.* The purpose of this test is to determine how the full-load performance of the motor is affected by changes in line voltage. Holding torque constant at rated value, take readings of input and rpm at seven different impressed voltages in steps of 10 percent; three voltages should be above, three below, and one at rated voltage. Reading are plotted against voltage.

(9) *Temperature Test.* Temperature tests are taken to determine the temperature rise of the windings above ambient when the motor is carrying rated output. During these tests, the motor must be shielded from drafts, especially if the motor is enclosed. The motor should be mounted on wood, rather than on metal which can, sometimes, conduct away enough heat to affect the readings. It is preferable to hold mechanical output constant, but often it is more convenient to hold the input current or watts constant. Temperatures are measured as described in Art. 18-10. Readings should generally be taken every 15 minutes until temperatures become constant, unless the motor carries an intermittent rating, in which case readings should be taken more frequently and for only as long as indicated by the time rating.

(10) *Speed-torque Tests.* A speed-torque test may be taken to determine the accelerating characteristics of the motor, to look for possible cusps, or to diagnose the action of the starting switch. One method of taking such a test is to use a dynamometer; the dynamometer field should be adjustable, and the dynamometer armature should be connected to a separate dc bus, the voltage of which is adjustable. Torque readings are taken at enough points to plot the speed-torque curve. Each reading should be taken as quickly as possible, for the motor heats rapidly on this test, and it is usually necessary to pause between readings to keep the motor from overheating.

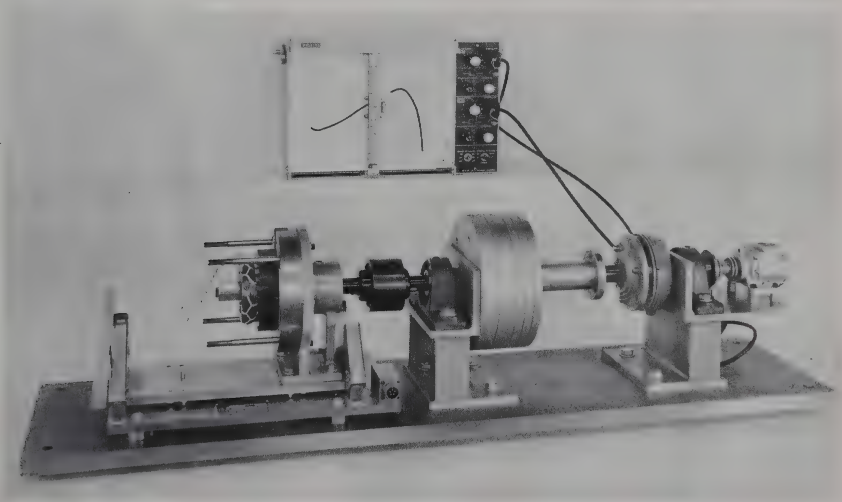


Fig. 18-10 Test setup for taking a speed-torque test. Stator is mounted on a torque table (Fig. 18-7) which furnishes the signal to the Y axis of the X-Y recorder. The speed signal which activates the X axis is furnished by the tachometer at the far right. The flywheel in the center provides slow acceleration. (*Lebow Associates, Incorporated.*)

An alternate method is illustrated in Fig. 18-10. Here, the motor brings a large flywheel up to speed, while the speed torque is automatically plotted on the X-Y recorder. The complete speed-torque curve is traced during a single acceleration of the motor.

(11) *Winding-ratio Test.* This test is needed only for capacitor-run motors when it is desired to segregate the losses; if the winding ratio is known from design data, it is not necessary to take the test. Run the motor with rated voltage E_m impressed on the main winding only, and measure E'_a, the auxiliary-winding voltage (there should be no load on the shaft). Impress E_a, arbitrarily chosen as approximately 18 percent more than E'_a (the underlying idea is to operate the motor at normal flux), upon the auxiliary winding, letting the motor run at no load; then measure the voltage induced in the main winding which we shall call E'_m. The winding ratio is

$$a = \sqrt{\frac{E'_a}{E_m}\frac{E_a}{E'_m}} \tag{18-8}$$

where $a = \dfrac{\text{effective conductors in auxiliary winding}}{\text{effective conductors in main winding}}$

TESTS TO TAKE—OTHER TYPES

18-17. Adjustable Varying-speed Fan-duty Motors. Fan-duty adjustable-speed motors should, in addition to other tests, also be checked for *minimum starting volts* when connected for the lowest operating speed; in general, these motors are either permanent-split capacitor or shaded-pole motors. The motor ought to be able to start, with the rotor in any position, on a voltage of not over 90 percent of rated.

18-18. Polyphase Induction Motors. A routine test on a polyphase motor comprises the same tests as on a single-phase motor. (Art. 18-15.)

Likewise, a complete engineering test comprises the same tests as for a single-phase motor with minor exceptions. When locked-rotor readings are taken on a three-phase motor, all three phases must be simultaneously excited. Also, a polyphase motor does not have switching torque, nor is a winding-ratio test applicable.

More detailed information is available in IEEE Test Procedures.[1,9]

18-19. DC Motors. Testing procedures for dc motors are covered in considerable depth by IEEE.[2,8] Briefly, such tests fall into four broad categories: preliminary, performance-determination, temperature, and miscellaneous.

(1) *Preliminary Tests.* Such tests generally include:

a. Verification of terminal markings and rotation
b. Resistance measurements of all windings
c. Air-gap measurement
d. Potential drop and polarity of field coils
e. Vibration
f. Brush setting
g. Dielectric tests

(2) *Performance-determination Tests.* These tests include:

a. Magnetic saturation (no-load saturation curve)
b. Commutation
c. Speed regulation
d. Efficiency, by input-output method
e. Losses: field, armature, brush-contact, stray-load
f. Load performance, from 250–300 percent down

(3) *Temperature Tests.* At rated load.

(4) *Miscellaneous Tests.* Miscellaneous tests include: audio noise, telephone-influence factor, voltage wave shape, response, winding inductance, and shaft currents.

18-20. Universal Motors. In general, the techniques for testing universal motors are about the same as for testing dc series motors, except as these tests may be modified by higher operating speeds. When taking a performance test, it may be more convenient to take readings at selected intervals of speed, rather than torque, as done for constant-speed motors. A complete engineering test should include performance tests at 60 hz, 25 hz, and on direct current.

18-21. Synchronous Motors. Reluctance-type synchronous motors, both single-phase and polyphase, can generally be tested pretty much the same way as their induction counterparts, except that there are two additional torques of interest: pull-in and pull-out. Pull-in torque is greatly affected by the inertia of the connected load, but is often measured with no external inertia; for this reason, either a brake or a rope and pulley may be used, but not a dynamometer or external flywheel. However, if the external inertia the motor has to drive is known, it may be more useful to measure the pull-in torque with this amount of external inertia connected. Pull-out torque can be measured in much the same fashion as breakdown torque is taken.

Hysteresis-type motors can be tested much the same way as reluctance motors, except that their pull-in torque is not affected by external inertia. Inductor motors have to start and synchronize in a fraction of a cycle, and can handle but little external inertia.

TABLE 18-1 Dielectric Test Voltages for Fractional-horsepower Motors

	Duration of application of test voltage	
	1 min	1 sec
Universal motors, all ratings	900	1,080
Ac and dc motors:		
½ hp and larger, all voltages	2E + 1,000	2.4E + 1,200
Less than ½ hp, but rated more than 250 volts	2E + 1,000	2.4E + 1,200
Less than ½ hp, 250 volts or less	900	1,080
Armature or rotors of ac motors with insulated windings not connected to the line (repulsion types):		
½ hp and larger	1,000	1,200
Less than ½ hp, but rated more than 250 volts	1,000	1,200
Less than ½ hp, 250 volts or less	900	900

NOTE: Voltages given in this table are for clean, dry, new machines tested at the factory. When testing machines that have been in service for some time, the author recommends reducing these voltages by at least 25 percent.

18-22. High-potential Test (Dielectric Test). High-potential tests are taken primarily to determine if the windings are adequately insulated from ground and from one another, and to ensure the adequacy of clearance distances. These tests are for new or like-new machines only since the accumulation of dirt and moisture on machines in service will decrease the dielectric properties.

The high-potential test voltage should be applied successively between each electric circuit and the frame, with those windings not under test and other metal parts connected electrically to the frame. As used here, an *electric circuit* consists of all windings and other live parts which are conductively connected to one power supply when starting or running. No leads should be left unconnected. Capacitors should be left connected to their associated windings.

Table 18-1 gives high-potential test voltages, established by NEMA, for clean, new, dry machines tested at the factory. When tested later, the test voltage should not be over 85 percent of the values given. Repeated application of the test voltage is not recommended, for such a practice may damage otherwise good insulation.

SEGREGATION OF LOSSES

Segregation of losses means the breaking down of the total losses in a motor into their several components. A knowledge of the components of loss affords a means for checking the accuracy of input-output tests; also it is often of material aid to the design or application engineer.

18-23. Polyphase Induction Motors. Methods for segregating the losses of a polyphase induction motor are covered in detail by IEEE[1] and are generally so well known that they are not covered here. The components of loss are:

1. *Friction and windage*
2. *Core loss,* which is the loss in the magnetic-circuit iron at no load
3. *Stator I^2R losses* in the primary winding
4. *Rotor I^2R* losses in the secondary winding; these are equal to

$$\text{Slip} \times (\text{stator input} - \text{stator } I^2R \text{ loss} - \text{core loss})$$

5. *Stray-load losses* are those losses not otherwise accounted for. Total losses are taken as the difference between the input to the motor and its output; that part of the total loss not accounted for by (1), (2), (3), and (4) is considered to be stray-load loss. However, stray-load losses may be measured directly by a reverse-rotation test described in the IEEE Test Procedure.[1]

18-24. Single-phase Induction Motors. Segregation of losses is more difficult in a single-phase than in a polyphase induction motor and is not covered in the IEEE Test Procedure. It was discussed by the author in *Electrical Engineering*[13] and in Chap. XIX of a previous work,[12] as well as in a work by Suhr.[15] Space here permits explaining only how and not why.

A practical form for recording and analyzing the necessary tests is given in Fig. 18-11, which is applicable both to motors that do use a running capacitor and to those that do not. Use of this form is illustrated by analyses of tests taken on a two-value capacitor motor, both with and without the running capacitor in the circuit. The numbers in this figure that are underlined with a dotted line represent values taken directly from test without computation, as follows:

$\underline{E_m}$, $\underline{I_m}$, $\underline{W_m}$ and line 5 are taken from the locked reading on the main winding.

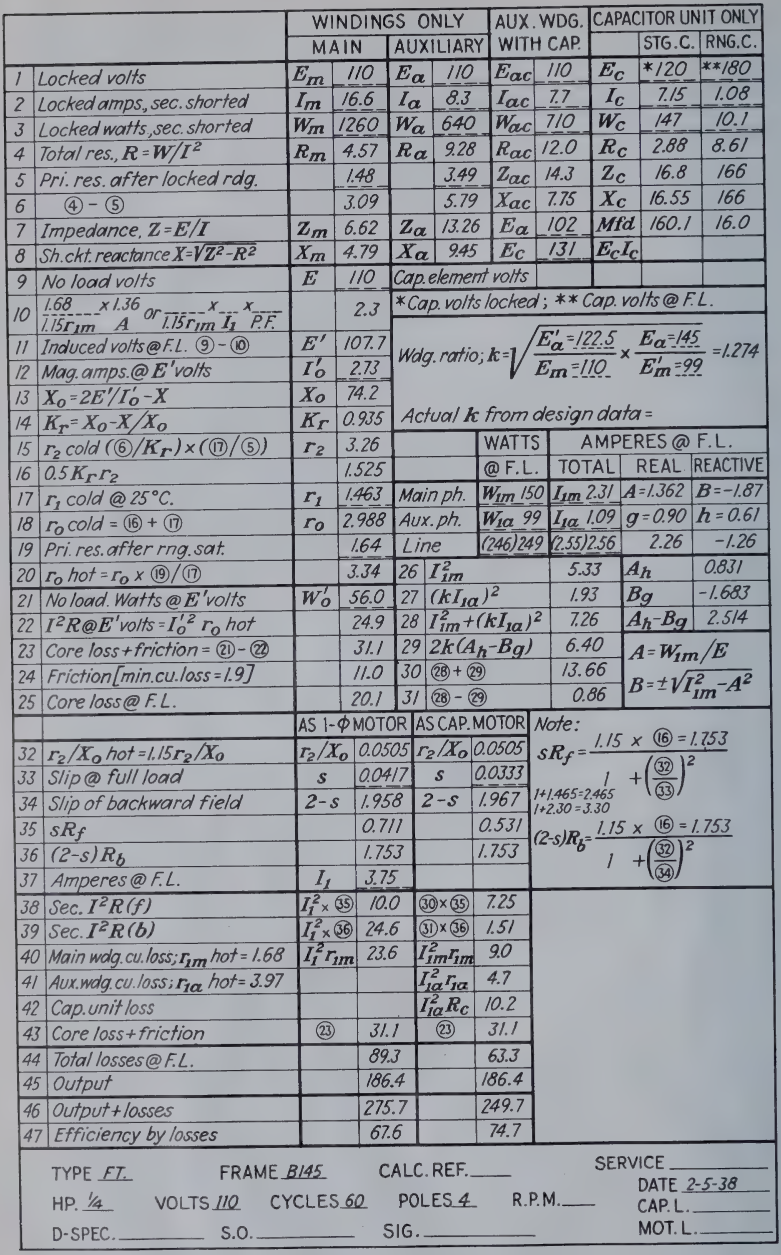
$\underline{E}$ (line 9) is the rated voltage.

$\underline{I_o'}$ is the current from the no-load saturation curve at E' volts.

Lines 17 and 19 are measured by bridge as indicated.

$\underline{W_o'}$ is the number of watts read from the no-load saturation curve at $\underline{E'}$ volts.

$\underline{s}$, $\underline{I_1}$ are from the load-performance test, at the full-load point, taken when the motor was operating without the running capacitor.



		WINDINGS ONLY				AUX. WDG. WITH CAP.		CAPACITOR UNIT ONLY		
		MAIN		AUXILIARY					STG.C.	RNG.C.
1	Locked volts	E_m	110	E_a	110	E_{ac}	110	E_c	*120	**180
2	Locked amps., sec. shorted	I_m	16.6	I_a	8.3	I_{ac}	7.7	I_c	7.15	1.08
3	Locked watts., sec. shorted	W_m	1260	W_a	640	W_{ac}	710	W_c	147	10.1
4	Total res., $R = W/I^2$	R_m	4.57	R_a	9.28	R_{ac}	12.0	R_c	2.88	8.61
5	Pri. res. after locked rdg.		1.48		3.49	Z_{ac}	14.3	Z_c	16.8	166
6	④ − ⑤		3.09		5.79	X_{ac}	7.75	X_c	16.55	166
7	Impedance, $Z = E/I$	Z_m	6.62	Z_a	13.26	E_a	102	Mfd	160.1	16.0
8	Sh.ckt. reactance $X = \sqrt{Z^2 - R^2}$	X_m	4.79	X_a	9.45	E_c	131	E_cI_c		
9	No load volts	E	110	Cap. element volts						
10	$\frac{1.68}{1.15r_{1m}} \times \frac{1.36}{A}$ or $\frac{\quad}{1.15r_{1m}} \times \frac{\quad}{I_1} \times \frac{\quad}{P.F.}$		2.3	*Cap. volts locked; ** Cap. volts @ F.L.						

11	Induced volts @ F.L. ⑨ − ⑩	E'	107.7
12	Mag. amps. @ E' volts	I'_o	2.73
13	$X_o = 2E'/I'_o - X$	X_o	74.2
14	$K_r = X_o - X/X_o$	K_r	0.935
15	r_2 cold (⑥$/K_r$) × (⑰/⑤)	r_2	3.26
16	$0.5 K_r r_2$		1.525
17	r_1 cold @ 25°C.	r_1	1.463
18	r_o cold = ⑯ + ⑰	r_o	2.988
19	Pri. res. after rng. sat.		1.64
20	r_o hot = r_o × ⑲/⑰		3.34
21	No load. Watts @ E' volts	W'_o	56.0
22	I^2R @ E' volts = $I_o'^2\ r_o$ hot		24.9
23	Core loss + friction = ㉑ − ㉒		31.1
24	Friction [min. cu. loss = 1.9]		11.0
25	Core loss @ F.L.		20.1

$$\text{Wdg. ratio; } k = \sqrt{\frac{E'_a = 122.5}{E_m = 110} \times \frac{E_a = 145}{E'_m = 99}} = 1.274$$

Actual k from design data =

	WATTS @ F.L.	AMPERES @ F.L.		
		TOTAL	REAL	REACTIVE
Main ph.	W_{1m} 150	I_{1m} 2.31	$A = 1.362$	$B = -1.87$
Aux. ph.	W_{1a} 99	I_{1a} 1.09	$g = 0.90$	$h = 0.61$
Line	(246) 249	(2.55) 2.56	2.26	−1.26

26	I_{1m}^2	5.33	A_h	0.831
27	$(kI_{1a})^2$	1.93	Bg	−1.683
28	$I_{1m}^2 + (kI_{1a})^2$	7.26	$A_h - Bg$	2.514
29	$2k(A_h - Bg)$	6.40		
30	㉘ + ㉙	13.66		
31	㉘ − ㉙	0.86		

$A = W_{1m}/E$

$B = \pm\sqrt{I_{1m}^2 - A^2}$

		AS 1-φ MOTOR		AS CAP. MOTOR	
32	r_2/X_o hot = $1.15 r_2/X_o$	r_2/X_o	0.0505	r_2/X_o	0.0505
33	Slip @ full load	s	0.0417	s	0.0333
34	Slip of backward field	$2-s$	1.958	$2-s$	1.967
35	sR_f		0.711		0.531
36	$(2-s)R_b$		1.753		1.753
37	Amperes @ F.L.	I_1	3.75		
38	Sec. $I^2R(f)$	I_1^2 × ㉟	10.0	㉚ × ㉟	7.25
39	Sec. $I^2R(b)$	I_1^2 × ㊱	24.6	㉛ × ㊱	1.51
40	Main wdg. cu. loss; r_{1m} hot = 1.68	$I_1^2 r_{1m}$	23.6	$I_{1m}^2 r_{1m}$	9.0
41	Aux. wdg. cu. loss; r_{1a} hot = 3.97			$I_{1a}^2 r_{1a}$	4.7
42	Cap. unit loss			$I_{1a}^2 R_c$	10.2
43	Core loss + friction	㉓	31.1	㉓	31.1
44	Total losses @ F.L.		89.3		63.3
45	Output		186.4		186.4
46	Output + losses		275.7		249.7
47	Efficiency by losses		67.6		74.7

Note:

$$sR_f = \frac{1.15 \times \text{⑯} = 1.753}{1 + \left(\frac{\text{㉜}}{\text{㉝}}\right)^2}$$

1 + 1.465 = 2.465

1 + 2.30 = 3.30

$$(2-s)R_b = \frac{1.15 \times \text{⑯} = 1.753}{1 + \left(\frac{\text{㉜}}{\text{㉞}}\right)^2}$$

TYPE FT. FRAME B145 CALC. REF.____ SERVICE____

HP. ¼ VOLTS 110 CYCLES 60 POLES 4 R.P.M.____ DATE 2-5-38

CAP. L.____

D-SPEC.____ S.O.____ SIG.____ MOT. L.____

Fig. 18-11 A form for analyzing the test results and segregating the losses of either a single-phase induction motor or a capacitor motor.

How to fill out the rest of the form is more or less self-explanatory. In line 10, if the motor is not a capacitor-run motor, use

$$1.15 \times r_{1m} \times I_1 \times \text{power factor}$$

If it is a capacitor-run motor, for line 10 use

$$1.15 r_{1m} \times A$$

The friction (line 24) is determined from the no-load saturation curve which is extended to zero volts, and the watts input at zero volts is read from the curve; from this value is subtracted the

$$\text{Min. cu. loss} = (\text{minimum current})^2 \times (\text{item 20})$$

The remainder of the analysis of losses is given in lines 32 to 47, inclusive, under "As 1-ϕ motor." It is to be noted that the scratchwork calculations for lines 35 and 36 are carried out at the right under Note.

The foregoing method of analysis is directly applicable to split-phase motors, reactor-start motors, capacitor-start motors, or repulsion-start motors.

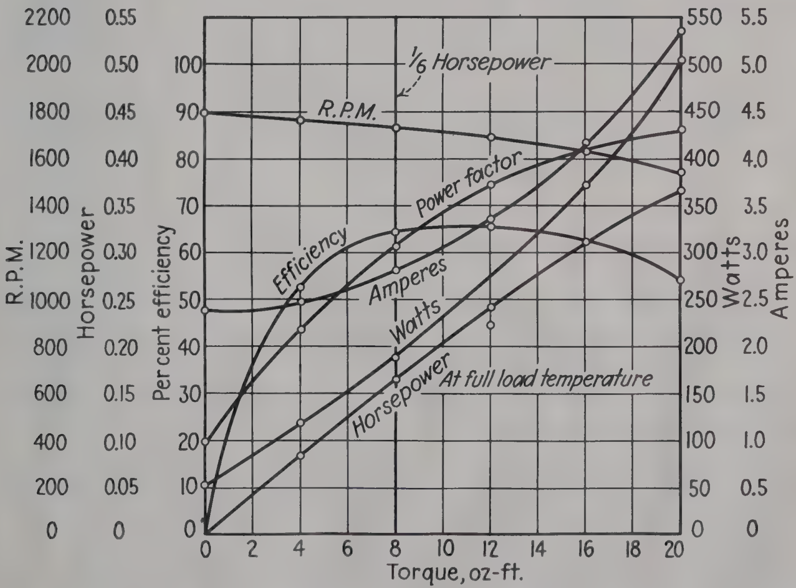


Fig. 18-12 A load-performance test on a single-phase induction motor rated at ⅙ hp, 110 volts, 60 hz, 1725 rpm.

18-25. Capacitor-run Motors. The test analysis form of Fig. 18-11 is generally applicable to conventional capacitor-run motors, but not to tapped-winding motors, such as those illustrated in Figs. 7-12 to 7-14, for example. In general, Fig. 18-11 applies where, on the running connection, the main winding is used only as a main winding, and not also as an autotransformer. In using the form, items 1 to 25, except for item 10 as previously noted, are determined exactly as described in Art. 18-24, as if the motor had no running capacitor. The winding ratio a (called k in the figure) is determined from the winding-ratio test. W_{1m}, W_{1a}, I_{1m}, and I_{1a} are read from the load-performance test as a capacitor motor. Main-winding current I_{1m} is broken up into its real and reactive components A and B by the formulas given. The auxiliary-winding current is similarly resolved into g and h. The measured value of watts, 246, is entered in parentheses to compare with 249, which is the sum of the two wattmeter readings. The measured line amperes, 2.55, is compared with the value 2.56, computed from

$$\text{Line amperes} = \sqrt{(A + g)^2 + (B + h)^2}$$

The close agreement between the two figures of watts, and also between the two figures of current, is a good check on the accuracy of the tests.

Items 26 to 31 are self-explanatory. The remainder of the analysis of losses is given in lines 32 to 47, under "As cap. motor." The scratch-work calculations for items 35 and 36 are shown in the blank space under "Note," together with the similar previous calculations.

The effect of the running capacitor is strikingly illustrated in the figure. Rotor and stator I^2R losses are greatly reduced, improving efficiency; this comparison was noted in Art. 6-3.

VIBRATION AND NOISE MEASUREMENTS

Vibration measurements may be made on a motor to determine how well the rotor is balanced. Noise measurements may be made for an objective comparison of the relative noisiness of different motors. Noise measurements are the more difficult of the two to make, and the results are even more difficult to interpret.

18-26. Vibration Measurement. To ensure that the vibrations measured are due to rotor unbalance, and are not influenced by the mounting, the motor should be mounted on an elastic mounting so chosen that the up-and-down natural frequency of the motor on the base is not over one-quarter of the rotational speed of the motor. To accomplish this, it is necessary that the mounting be deflected downwards, due to the weight of the motor, by as much or more than the amount given in the following table

rpm	Compression	
	in.	mm
900	1	25
1800	¼	6
3600	1⁄16	1.6

If a flexible pad is used, it should not be compressed more than half its thickness, lest the supports become too stiff.

A common instrument used is the Davy vibrometer which measures motions down to 0.0001 in. A half key should be securely fastened in the keyway. With the motor running at normal speed, the amplitude of vibration (total excursion) should be measured on each bearing housing. Normal speed for induction motors is no-load speed; for dc motors it is the highest rated speed; for series and universal motors, it is the normal operating speed.

In general, for fractional-horsepower motors, the total amplitude of vibration of either bearing housing, in any direction, when measured as described above, should not exceed 0.001 in. For some applications, even less vibration is permissible.

18-27. Nature of Sound—Certain Terms Explained. Some terms commonly used in discussing noise problems are the following:

Noise has been defined as any unwanted sound.

Sound (in air) consists of a series of minute compressions and rarefactions of the air pressure, often called sound waves, traveling at a speed of approximately 1,200 feet per second. When these sound waves strike a surface, they tend to make the latter vibrate. A given sound may consist of but a single pure tone, or it may contain many tones.

Sound pressure is the root-mean-square variation of the air pressure. Because the range of audible sound pressure is more than a million to one, and because we are usually more interested in percent changes in sound pressure, the term sound-pressure level is used almost exclusively.

Sound-pressure level is 20 times the logarithm to base 10 of the ratio of actual sound pressure to a standard reference level of 0.0002 microbars for airborne sound. Sound-pressure level is expressed in decibels, abbreviated db. Each db increase in level means an increase in sound pressure of approximately 13 percent; each 6 db means a doubling of the sound pressure; and each 20 db increase represents a tenfold increase in sound pressure. One db represents about as small a change in noise as the average human ear can notice.

A *pure tone* is sound of a single frequency.

Frequency is the total number of cycles of variation of pressure per second, expressed in hertz. *Pitch* is often used synonymously with frequency. Most sounds contain many frequency components.

A *white noise* is sound containing all possible frequency components in the audible range, all of them being substantially equal in magnitude.

Sound level is an overall sound pressure where the different components of frequency are weighted differently. Sound-level meters generally have three weighting networks, called A, B, and C. The A network has the most weighting, the C the least; the weighting reduces the low-frequency components of sound.

An *octave band* is a band of frequencies with a total range of one octave; that is, the top of the band has a frequency twice that of the bottom. Similarly a *one-third-octave band* is a band of frequencies having a width of one-third of an octave; the highest frequency is 26 percent greater than the lowest.

Sound power is a term applied to the total power radiated acoustically by a noise source. It may be expressed in watts or microwatts. More commonly, it is expressed in db where the reference level is 1 picowatt (10^{-12} watt). *Sound power level* is 10 times the logarithm to the base 10 of the ratio of the acoustic power to 1 picowatt. Each db increase represents an increase in power of 26 percent, 3 db represents a doubling of the sound power, and each 10 db represents a tenfold increase in sound power. Sound power level is commonly used when integral-horsepower motors are involved, but less commonly when only fractional-horsepower motors are under consideration.

18-28. Instrumentation and Noise Testing Procedures.

Space does not permit covering this subject in any depth here; it is covered much more fully in an IEEE Test Procedure.[10]

(1) *Sound-level Meter.* A sound-level meter consists of a microphone, an amplifier and weighting networks A, B, and C. The A network weights the frequencies so that the meter reads a number more nearly correlated to what the human ear would sense at a 40-db level than it would without weighting. The C network gives virtually no weighting at all. When a network is used, the fact should be so noted in reporting the reading.

A small, portable, sound-level meter is illustrated in Fig. 18-13. Regular laboratory instruments are usually somewhat larger.

(2) *Bandpass Analyzer.* A bandpass analyzer is an instrument usually associated with the sound-level meter that passes only a selected

band of frequencies. This band may have a width of one octave, one-half an octave, or one-third of an octave.

(3) *Narrowband Analyzer.* A narrowband analyzer measures discrete components of sound and is often useful in tracking down the source of a troublesome noise by identifying the troublesome frequency component. There are two types in use: with one of them, the band width, expressed in hertz, is the same for all frequencies; with the other, the band width is a constant percentage of the center frequency at all frequencies. The latter type is generally more convenient for testing rotating electrical machines.

(4) *Test Procedure.* The motor to be tested is mounted on a resilient suspension, like the one described in Art. 18-26 and the whole put in a quiet environment, preferably quiet enough that the meter reads 10 db or more higher with the motor running than with it idle.

For fractional-horsepower motors, position the microphone 12 in. (0.3 m) from the major surfaces; for subfractional-horsepower motors, 6 in. (0.15 m) may be a more convenient distance. A single reading in one position may suffice, but it is better to take readings in a number of positions; four at shaft height around the motor and one directly above the motor have often been used. For most purposes, it is satisfactory to average the readings, taken in the different positions. Also, for most purposes, the A network is to be preferred. Readings can be taken with both A and C networks; if there is no difference between these readings, the noise is concentrated in frequencies of 1,000 hz or higher, but a larger difference would indicate a concentration of the noise in

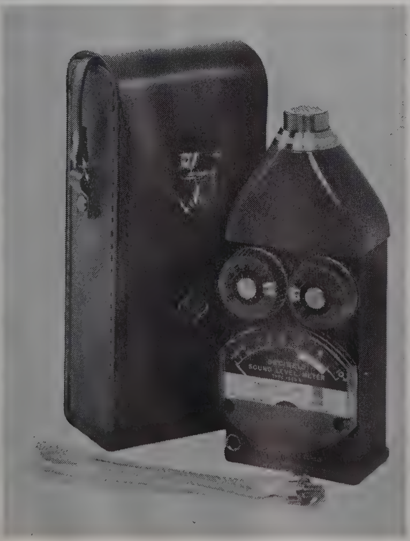


Fig. 18-13 A pocket-sized lightweight sound-level meter, Type 1565-A. (*General Radio Company.*)

the lower frequencies. Readings should be taken with motor running and with motor not energized; the latter are ambient readings. A correction can be made for the effect of ambient, as follows:

Difference in readings	*Correction db*
Less than 3	Reading invalid
3	3
4	2
5	1.6
6	1.2
8	0.7
10	0.4
Over 10	0

"Difference" above is the difference between the motor-plus-ambient and the ambient readings. The correction should be subtracted from the motor-plus-ambient reading to obtain the motor noise.

APPLICATION TESTS

How to select the proper motor for any specific application is the principal subject of Chap. 19. After a preliminary choice has been made, it is a good idea to verify the selection by running an application test. When possible, it is desirable to run these tests on a new stiff machine, *and* on one that is well worn in.

18-29 Determination of Power Requirements. The test motor should be installed on the machine or appliance it is to drive and connected to a source of power through meters, connected as shown in Fig. 18-3. The load on the motor should be varied, subjecting the machine to all possible and conceivable operating conditions likely to be encountered in service; for each different load, the motor voltage should be adjusted to rated value, and readings taken of watts, amperes, and rpm. If a load-performance test on the test motor is available, the above reading can be converted to horsepower or torque output. If no such load-performance test is available, one should be taken, or the output measured at the same inputs observed when testing the machine. It should be noted here that watts input is a much more reliable indicator of output than amperes. *In no case should one attempt to estimate the power output by comparing observed amperes under load with the amperes figure stamped on the nameplate.* (A careful study of Fig. 18-12, for example, will show that the output goes up much faster than the current input.)

If a torque table, such as the one described in Art. 18-14(4), is available, the torque required to drive the appliance can be measured directly without making electrical measurements on the motor itself.

18-30. Determination of Torque Requirements. Locked-rotor torque is almost never a problem with universal or with dc motors, and so this discussion is intended mainly for induction-type motors. With such motors, switching, pull-up, locked-rotor, and breakdown torques are often of importance. To find out what the machine requires, use a selected test motor and run tests to determine

1. Minimum voltage to start the load, in any position
2. Minimum voltage to bring the machine up above half speed
3. Minimum voltage at which the motor will transfer from the starting to the running connection
4. Minimum voltage at which the motor will carry the required load without an abrupt drop in speed

The driven machine, or appliance, should, of course, be adjusted for severe conditions, and the locked-rotor, switching, pull-up, and breakdown torques of the test motor must be known. Now, assuming that torque varies as the square of the voltage, the results of tests 1, 2, 3, and 4 give, respectively, the locked-rotor, pull-up, switching, and breakdown torques actually required by the appliance or device.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. "Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators," IEEE No. 112-A, September, 1964.*
2. "Test Code for Direct-current Machines," IEEE No. 113, December, 1962.*
3. "Test Procedure for Single-phase Induction Motors," IEEE No. 114, March, 1958.*
3a. "Guide for Measurement of Rapidly Changing Temperatures," IEEE No. 114A, May, 1962.*
4. "Master Test Code for Resistance Measurements," IEEE No. 118, May, 1949.* (AIEE 550.)
5. "Master Test Code for Temperature Measurement," IEEE No. 119, August, 1950.* (AIEE 551.)
6. "Master Test Code for Electrical Measurements in Power Circuits," IEEE No. 120, November, 1955.* (AIEE 552.)
7. "Proposed Guide for Measurement of Rotary Speed," IEEE No. 121, April, 1959.* (AIEE 553.)
8. "Test Code for Direct-current Aircraft Machines," IEEE No. 132, January, 1953.* (AIEE 800.)

* Available from Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 345 E. 47th St., New York, N.Y. 10017.

9. "Proposed Test Procedure for A-c 400-cycle-per-second Aircraft Induction Motors," January, 1960.* (AIEE 805.)
10. "Test Procedure for Airborne Noise Measurements on Rotating Electric Machinery," IEEE No. 85, February, 1965.*
11. "Recommended Practice for Testing Insulation Resistance of Rotating Machinery, IEEE No. 43, March, 1961.*
12. Veinott, C. G.: "Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors," 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1948, 554 pp.
13. ———: Segregation of Losses in Single-phase Induction Motors, *AIEE Trans.,* 1935, p. 1302.
14. ———: "Theory and Design of Small Induction Motors." McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1959, 477 pp. (Out of print, but available from University Microfilms, Inc., Div. of Xerox, Ann Arbor, Mich.)
15. Suhr, F. W.: Toward an Accurate Evaluation of Single-phase Induction-motor Constants, *Trans. AIEE,* 1952, pt. III, p. 221.
16. Seely, R. E.: A Circuit for Measuring the Resistance of Energized A-c Windings, AIEE Paper No. 55-23.

* Available from Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 345 E. 47th St., New York, N.Y. 10017.

Chapter 19

Selecting the Right Motor for the Job

Selection of the best and most suitable motor for any particular job can involve a whole host of considerations, many of which conflict more or less with one another. Many questions need to be raised and answered; many of the answers are simple and obvious, but many are not. Often, a lot of the questions are best answered by the experience of others who have had a similar application problem, and a simple answer is to follow their lead. In this chapter, we shall review a number of the more important factors and considerations involved in the application of fractional-horsepower electric motors. The discussion will be mainly devoted to the more-or-less conventional types such as those discussed in the first 14 chapters; application considerations pertaining to the more special kinds of machines, such as those discussed in Chaps. 15 and 16, are discussed in their respective chapters.

Perhaps it should here be emphasized that the various factors discussed in the following pages have to be considered *in parallel* rather than *in series;* that is, it is not usually possible to go through each question and answer it once and for all and arrive at the end with a single pat answer to the selection problem. Rather, one has to make tentative or multiple-choice answers to each question as encountered, and then go back and review them all. In short, application considerations have to be taken into account collectively and simultaneously, rather than serially or sequentially.

CLASSIFICATION OF MOTORS ACCORDING TO APPLICATION

Motors may be said to fall into three broad classes, according to the application for which they were designed: *general-purpose, definite-purpose,* and *special-purpose.* Although the use of a special motor is sometimes justified, first consideration should be given to the use of a general-purpose motor, or a definite-purpose motor. By so doing, the user usually obtains a lower cost, greater ease in obtaining new motors, more sources of supply, and more general all-round satisfaction.

19-1. General-purpose Motors. A general-purpose ac motor is one which is built in standard ratings, with standard operating characteristics, a standard mechanical construction, and offered for general use without restriction to any particular application. It is of open construction, continuously rated, and has a service factor. Standard split-phase motors are sometimes referred to as general-purpose motors, as they have many of the characteristics of general-purpose motors, though they do not meet all of NEMA requirements for general-purpose motors. As a rule, first consideration should be given to the possibility of using a general-purpose or standard split-phase motor, before other varieties are considered.

19-2. Definite-purpose Motors. A definite-purpose motor is one designed in certain standard ratings, with standard operating characteristics or mechanical construction to make it particularly suitable for a given application. That is, it is usually designed to meet the special requirements of a particular industry or type of application. NEMA standards cover not only general-purpose motors, but also a considerable variety of definite-purpose motors for a number of industries.[5,*] Such motors are described in some detail later in this chapter; in each of these particular industries, it is often preferable and more satisfactory to use the definite-purpose than a general-purpose motor. If neither fills the need, it may be necessary to have a special-purpose motor designed and built.

19-3. Special-purpose Motors. A special-purpose motor is one especially designed and built to suit a combination of requirements not filled by a general-purpose or by any definite-purpose motor. The requirements can involve almost anything special: torques, enclosures, bearings, severe environmental requirements, quietness, built-in brakes, clutches or other mechanical or electrical devices. All we can do here is to point out that such special-purpose motors do exist.

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

19-4. Standard Ratings and Performance.

(1) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* Horsepower and speed ratings for ac fractional- and subfractional-horsepower motors are given in Table 1-4. In general, these also apply to dc motors.

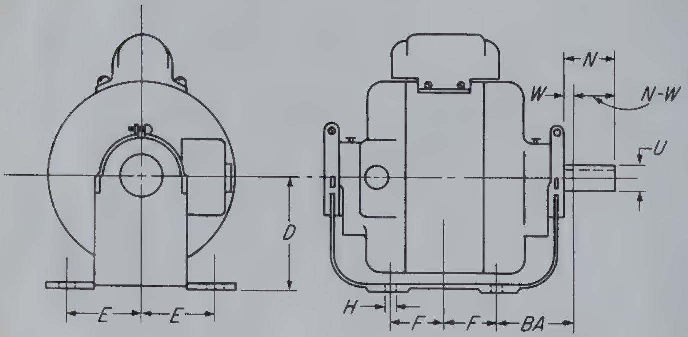
TABLE 19-1 Performance Characteristics of General-purpose 60-hz Motors (All torques are in oz-ft)

hp rating	Poles	Single and polyphase			Single-phase				Three-phase	
		Full-load			Torque		Locked-amp		Torque	
		Watts	rpm	Torque	Break-down	Lock	115 volts	230 volts	Break-down	Lock
1/20	2	37.3	3450	1.22	3.7		20	12	5.2	
	4	37.3	1725	2.44	7.1		20	12	9.9	
	6	37.3	1140	3.69	10.4		20	12	14.6	
	8	37.3	850	4.95	13.5		20	12	18.9	
1/12	2	62.2	3450	2.03	6.0		20	12	8.4	
	4	62.2	1725	4.06	11.5		20	12	16.1	
	6	62.2	1140	6.15	16.5		20	12	23.1	
	8	62.2	850	8.24	21.5		20	12	30.1	
1/8	2	93.3	3450	3.05	8.7		20	12	12.2	
	4	93.3	1725	6.09	16.5	24	20	12	23.1	
	6	93.3	1140	9.22	24.1	32	20	12	33.7	
	8	93.3	850	12.36	31.5		20	12	44.1	
1/6	2	124.4	3450	4.06	11.5	15	20	12	16.1	13
	4	124.4	1725	8.12	21.5	33	20	12	30.1	24
	6	124.4	1140	12.29	31.5	43	20	12	44.1	35
	8	124.4	850	16.48	40.5		20	12	56.7	46
1/4	2	186.5	3450	6.09	16.5	21	26	15	23.1	19
	4	186.5	1725	12.18	31.5	46	26	15	44.1	35
	6	186.5	1140	18.44	44.0	59	26	15	61.6	49
	8	186.5	850	24.7	58.0		26	15	81.2	65
1/3	2	248.7	3450	8.12	21.5	26	31	18	30.1	24
	4	248.7	1725	16.24	40.5	57	31	18	56.7	45
	6	248.7	1140	24.6	58.0	73	31	18	81.2	65
	8	248.7	850	33.0	77.0		31	18	107.8	86
1/2	2	373	3450	12.18	31.5	37	45	25	44.1	35
	4	373	1725	24.4	58.0	85	45	25	81.2	65
	6	373	1140	36.9	82.5	100	45	25	115.5	92
3/4	2	359.5	3450	18.28	44.0	50	61	35	61.6	50
	4	359.5	1725	36.6	82.5	110	61	35	115.5	92
1	1	746	3450	24.4	58.0	61				

* Compiled from NEMA and original sources.

(2) *Voltage Ratings.* Voltage ratings are as follows:

Universal motors—115 and 230 volts
Induction motors, single-phase and polyphase
  60 hz—115 and 230 volts
  50 hz—110 and 220 volts (also 380 for three-phase)
Dc motors—115 and 230 volts



Frame number	Key			D	E*	F*	BA	H†	N − W‡	U
	Width	Thickness	Length							
	Dimensions in inches									
42		$\frac{3}{64}$ flat		$2\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{27}{32}$	$2\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{9}{32}$ slot	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$
48		$\frac{3}{64}$ flat		3	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{11}{32}$ slot	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
48H		$\frac{3}{64}$ flat		3	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{3}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{11}{32}$ slot	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
56	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{7}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{11}{32}$ slot	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
56H	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{7}{16}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{11}{32}$ slot	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
	Dimensions in millimeters									
42		1.19 flat		66.7	24.4	21.4	52.4	7.1 slot	28.6	9.5
48		1.19 flat		76.2	54.0	34.9	63.5	8.7 slot	38.1	12.7
48H		1.19 flat		76.2	54.0	60.3	63.5	8.7 slot	38.1	12.7
56	4.8	4.8	34.9	88.9	61.9	38.1	69.9	8.7 slot	47.6	15.9
56H	4.8	4.8	34.9	88.9	61.9	63.5	69.9	8.7 slot	47.6	15.9

* Tolerance for the 2E and 2F dimensions is $\pm\frac{1}{32}$ in. (± 0.79 mm).

† Tolerance is $+\frac{3}{64}$, -0 in. ($+1.19$, -0 mm).

‡ $N - W$ is the length of the shaft extension from the shoulder (if any) to the end of the shaft, i.e., he usable shaft extension.

Fig. 19-1 Mounting dimensions of NEMA frame sizes of fractional-horsepower motors.

(3) *Frequencies.*

Ac motors—60 and 50 hz
Universal motors—60 hz to direct current

(4) *Torques.* Full-load, breakdown, and locked-rotor torques for general-purpose 60-hz fractional-horsepower motors are given in Table 19-1. Values given are minimum, and commmercial motors usually have somewhat more than shown.

(5) *Locked-rotor Currents.* Maximum values of locked-rotor currents for 60-hz general-purpose motors are given in Table 19-1.

(6) *Mounting Dimensions.* NEMA has established mounting dimensions for fractional-horsepower motor frames; these are shown in Fig. 19-1. Frame sizes into which the usual general-purpose motors are put are given in Table 19-2; this is not a NEMA table.

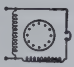
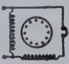
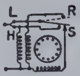
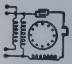
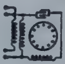
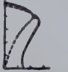
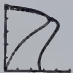
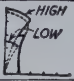
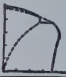
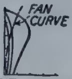
ELECTRICAL CONSIDERATIONS

19-5. Selection of the Type. A comparison of the principal characteristics of 13 major types of motors is given in Table 19-3. Each of the

TABLE 19-2 Frame Sizes for 60-hz General-purpose Fractional-horsepower Motors

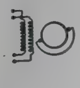
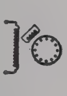
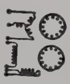
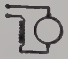
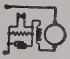
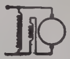
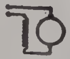
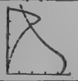
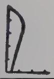
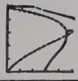
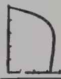
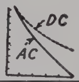
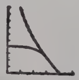
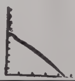
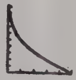
hp	rpm	Frame
⅛	3450	48
	1725	48
⅙	3450	48
	1725	48
	1140	48
¼	3450	48
	1725	48
	1140	56
⅓	3450	48
	1725	56
	1140	56
½	3450	48
	1725	56
	1140	56
¾	3450	56
	1725	56
	1140	56
1	3450	56

TABLE 19-3 Characteristics of Fractional- and Subfractional-horsepower Motors

	Alternating				
	Single-phase				
	Split-phase types			Capacitor-start	Perm. split capacitor
	Standard	Special-service	Two-speed pole-changing		
Schematic diagram of connections Arrangements shown are typical or representative; most of the types illustrated have numerous other arrangements which are also used.					
Characteristic speed-torque curves Ordinates are speed; 1 division = for all a-c motors, 20% of syn. rpm; for universal motors, 1000 rpm; for d-c motors, 20% of full-load rpm. Each abscissa division = 100% of full-load torque.					
Rotor construction	Squirrel-cage	Squirrel-cage	Squirrel-cage	Squirrel-cage	Squirrel-cage
Built-in automatic starting mechanism	Centrifugal switch	Centrifugal switch	Centrifugal switch	Centrifugal switch	None required
Horsepower ratings commonly available	1/20–1/3	1/6–1/3	1/8–3/4	1/8–3/4	1/20–3/4
Usual rated full-load speeds (for 60-cycle a-c motors; also d-c motors)	3450, 1725, 1140, 865	1725	1725/1140 1725/865	3450, 1725, 1140, 865	1620, 1080, 820
Speed classification	Constant	Constant	Two-speed	Constant	Constant, or adjustable varying
Means used for speed control	....	....	Two-speed switch	....	Multi-contact switch
Comparative torques: Locked-rotor	Moderate	High	Moderate	Very high	Low
Comparative torques: Breakdown	Moderate	High	Moderate	High	Moderate
Radio interference, running	None	None	None	None	None
During acceleration	One click	One click	Two clicks	One click	None
Approximate comparative costs between types, for same horsepower rating: Below 1/20 hp	....	....	....	....	
1/20–1/4 hp	100	90	135	140	
1/3–3/4 hp	65	54	100	100	
General remarks Standard motors are ordinarily designed to operate in ambient temperatures from 10 to 40°C (50 to 104°F). Variations in line voltage of plus or minus 10%, or variations in frequency of plus or minus 5% are allowable.	For constant-speed operation, even under varying load conditions, where moderate torques are desirable or mandatory, this type is often used in preference to the more costly capacitor-start motor. Meets NEMA starting currents. Typical applications: blowers; centrifugal pumps; duplicating machines; refrigerators; oil burners; unit heaters.	High locked-rotor currents (Design O) limit the use of this type on lighting circuits to applications where the motor starts only very infrequently, because of a tendency to cause flickering of the lights. Principal applications: washing and ironing machines: cellar-drainer pumps: tools for a home workshop.	Used where two definite-speeds independent of load are required. Ratings above 1/4 hp usually made capacitor-start. Motor shown always starts on high-speed connection; transfer to low speed made by starting switch. Common applications: belted blowers for warm-air furnaces or for other purposes; attic ventilators; air-conditioning apparatus.	A general-purpose motor suitable for most applications requiring constant speed under varying loads, high starting and running torques, high overload capacity. Also available as two-speed pole-changing motor above 1/4 hp. A few important applications are: refrigeration and air conditioning compressors; air compressors; stokers; gasoline pumps.	Primarily used for unit heaters, or for other shaft-mounted fans. Essentially a constant-speed motor, but by means of a two-speed switch, or by means of an autotransformer, other speeds can be obtained, *with fan loads*, if horsepower rating selected closely matches the fan load. Can also be made in intermittent ratings for plug-reversing service.

Fractional horsepower motors are built for across-the-line starting.

The standard direction of rotation is counterclockwise facing the end opposite the shaft extension.

current				D-c or a-c (00 hertz or less), universal types		Direct current	
motors		1, 2, or 3 phase	Polyphase				
Repulsion-start	Shaded-pole	Nonexcited synchronous (reluctance)	Squirrel-cage induction	Without governor	With governor	Shunt or compound	Series
		Stator winding may be: split-phase, capacitor-start, capacitor, polyphase					
							
Drum-wound; commutator	Squirrel-cage	Cage, with cutouts	Squirrel-cage	Drum-wound; commutator	Drum-wound; commutator	Drum-wound; commutator	Drum-wound; commutator
Short-circuiter	None	Depends on stator winding	None	None	None	None	None
½–1	1/2000–1/20	1/3000–1/3	1/6–3/4	1/150–1	1/50–1/20	1/20–3/4	1/125–1/30
1725, 1140	1450–3000	3600, 1800, 1200, 900	3450, 1725, 1140, 865	3000–11,000	2000–4000	3450, 1725, 1140, 865	900–2000
Constant	Constant, or adjustable varying	Absolutely constant	Constant	Varying, or adjustable varying	Adjustable	Constant, or adjustable varying	Varying, or adjustable varying
....	Impedance or tapped windings	....	....	Choke or resistor	Adjustable governor	Armature resistance	Resistor
Very high High	Low Low	Low Moderate	Very high Very high	Very high	Very high	Very high	Very high
None Continuous	None None	None	None None	Continuous Continuous	Continuous Continuous	Continuous Continuous	Continuous Continuous
.... 170	100	.... 200–400 200	.... 165–195 100	75 105–175	110 140–160	.... 240 240	185
A constant-speed motor suited to general-purpose applications requiring high starting torque and low starting current, such as floor polishers, laundry extractors, and farm equipment. An associated type, the repulsion induction (buried cage), is used for door openers and other plug-reversing applications. Has been displaced for many applications by the capacitor-start motor.	For ratings below 1/20 hp, this is a general-purpose motor. For fan applications, speed control is effected by use of a series choke or resistor, or by use of tapped windings. Applications: fans, unit heaters, humidifiers, hair driers, damper controllers.	Cutouts in rotor result in synchronous-speed characteristics. Curve shown is for split-phase stator. Pull-in ability is affected by inertia of connected load. Used for teleprinters, facsimile-picture transmitters, graphic instruments, etc. Clocks and timing devices usually use shaded-pole hysteresis motors rated at a few millionths of a horsepower.	Companion motor to capacitor-start motor with comparable torques and generally suited to same applications if polyphase power is available. Inherently plug-reversible and suitable for door openers, hoists, etc. High-frequency motors used for high-speed applications, as for woodworking machinery, rayon spinning, and portable tools.	Light weight for a given output, high speeds, varying-speed and universal characteristics make this type very popular for hand tools of all kinds, vacuum cleaners, etc. Ratings above ¼ hp usually compensated. Some speed control can be effected by a resistor or by use of a tapped field. Used with reduction gear for slower speed applications.	By means of a centrifugal governor, a constant-speed motor having the advantages of the universal motor is obtained. Governor may be single speed or adjustable even while running. Speed is independent of applied voltage. Used in typewriters, calculating machines, food mixers, motion-picture cameras and projectors, etc.	A constant-speed companion motor for the capacitor-start or split-phase motor for use where only d-c power is available. For unit-heater service, armature resistance is used to obtain speed control. Not usually designed for field control. Most are designed for and used on rectified a-c power.	Principally used as the d-c companion motor to the shaded-pole motor for fan applications. Used in these small ratings in place of shunt motors to avoid using extremely small wire.

characteristics listed may be a factor in selecting the type of motor. The kind of *power supply* available may narrow down the number of possible types to be considered. Single-phase motors can be used on polyphase circuits, but polyphase motors are not generally suitable for operation on single-phase circuits. (There are on the market a number of static devices intended to make polyphase motors operate on single-phase circuits. While such a device may solve an isolated problem, a polyphase motor, operated from a single-phase supply through such a device, does so at some sacrifice in locked-rotor and breakdown torques, as well as at reduced efficiency and increased temperature rise.) *Horsepower* and *speed* ratings required are important because most types are not available over the whole range of either; however, by using a belted or a geared drive, almost any speed can be obtained from any type. Horsepower needs can be determined by an application test. (Art. 18-29.)

What *speed classification* is required: constant-speed, two-speed, multispeed, varying, adjustable-varying, or absolutely constant? Not to be forgotten, however, is that variability of speed can also be achieved by a variable-speed drive system, such as discussed in Chap. 13, for example, or by use of a mechanical variable-speed transmission such as the Reeves Moto drive, manufactured by the Reeves Division of the Reliance Electric Company.

Torques required by the driven device, both starting and running, play an important role in the selection of the type. How to determine torque requirements is discussed in Art. 18-30.

Reversibility may play a role in the selection of the type. For a discussion of *reversing motors* see Art. 5-26.

Other factors influencing selection of the best type for a particular application are discussed in Table 19-3 under General Remarks.

19-6. What Full-load Speed? In usual fractional-horsepower sizes, motors with a rated full-load speed of 1725 rpm are usually less costly and easier to obtain than those with a rated speed of 3450, 1140, or 850 rpm; this statement applies to dc and to 60-hz motors, both single-phase and polyphase. Operating speeds of permanent-split capacitor and shaded-pole motors are somewhat lower, as listed in Table 1-5. Where low and very low speeds are needed, gearmotors are available. (Refer to Arts. 17-20 to 17-22.) Universal motors may be operated at any speed from 3500 up to 10,000 or 15,000 rpm.

19-7. Choosing the Horsepower Rating. First, the actual power requirements of the load under different conditions should be determined by means of an application test (see Art. 18-29). When taking this test, it is best to determine how much the load can be increased in service; for example, if a V belt is used, the load can be increased considerably by tightening the belt, which an electrician or serviceman is likely to do; tightening the packing gland of a pump can increase the load considerably; on an air compressor, the load can sometimes be increased by tampering with the setting of the pressure-limiting switch. After the true horsepower requirements of the load have been determined, it is generally best to select a motor of the nearest standard horsepower rating. Although fractional-horsepower motors are generally capable of carrying small overloads continuously, if long life is desired, it is best to select a motor large enough to handle the job under normal *and* adverse conditions.

Motors having a service factor stamped on the nameplate may be safely operated at service-factor load without injurious overheating provided rated voltage is applied at rated frequency. However, if a motor is operated continuously at service-factor load, the insulation life may be less than half of what it would have been had the motor been operated continuously at rated load.

Thermal protection offers additional assurance of trouble-free operation, but as thermal protectors are generally applied so as to permit continuous operation at service-factor load, they do not prevent reduced insulation life if the motor is continuously operated at overloads. Thermal protection should be used to protect against the unusual condition, not as a means for using underrated motors.

Sometimes, the horsepower rating is selected on the basis of torque requirements, which will be discussed next.

19-8. Torque Requirements of the Application. The actual torque requirements of the load should be determined by an application test such as described in Art. 18-30 or by other appropriate means. Then, if the horsepower rating has been tentatively chosen, the torque characteristics referenced in Art. 19-4 should be compared with the needs of the application. Sometimes it is desirable to select a motor of higher horsepower rating to obtain more torque, rather than attempt to buy a specially designed motor to get the higher torque. Sometimes, also, the device itself can be altered so as to reduce slightly the torque needed by it.

19-9. Duty. In many applications, the motor is not required to run continuously and a short-time rated motor can be used. It may be rated for 5, 15, 30, or 60 minutes. These ratings mean that the motor may operate at full load for a period not to exceed the time rating; the ratings assume that the rest period between each such operation is long enough for the windings and other parts of the machine to cool down to within 5°C of the ambient temperature. If the motor is subjected to a complicated duty cycle, the best procedure is to make a heat run while the motor is driving its load through a typically heavy duty cycle, running the motor long enough to find the peak winding temperature.

MECHANICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Mechanical considerations involved in the selection and application of fractional-horsepower motors are the following: enclosure and method of cooling, mounting arrangement, bearing construction, frame size and shaft extension, and reduction gearing.

19-10. Enclosure and Method of Cooling. Enclosures for fractional-horsepower motors fall into two broad categories, open and totally enclosed, with several variations of each.

(1) *Open Machines.* An open machine has ventilating openings through which external cooling air passes to take away the heat generated by the motor losses. An open machine may be *drip-proof* or *splashproof.* It may also be *guarded,* that is, have the ventilating openings so limited in size as to prevent accidental insertion of a finger into the motor where it might encounter live or rotating parts. Or, an open machine may be *semiguarded,* which means that part of the ventilating openings, usually those in the top half, are guarded.

(2) *Totally Enclosed Machines.* A totally enclosed machine is so enclosed as to prevent the free exchange of air between the inside and the outside of the frame, but it is not airtight. A totally enclosed motor may be *nonventilated, fan-cooled* (with a cooling fan external to the housing, covered by a fan cover or shroud), or *explosionproof.*

19-11. Mounting Arrangements. Rigid and resilient mountings are both standard and commonly available, but the latter is much to be preferred if quietness of operation is an important consideration (Art. 17-12). *Floor mounting* is the standard arrangement for foot-mounted motors. Other arrangements of foot-mounted motors are *wall mounting* and *ceiling mounting. Right-hand wall mounting* means that, as the observer looks squarely at the front end shield, the mounting wall is at his right. *Face-mounted motors* use a machined rabbet fit on the back end shield which is bolted to the driven device; ordinarily it has no foot since it is hung by its back end shield, but sometimes a foot is used to mount the motor and a pump or other driven device is mounted on the back end shield. Examples of face-mounted motors are Figs. 19-4 and 19-6. A face-mounting end shield is also often used as the front end shield and a brake attached to it. Another form of mounting is by means of extended end-shield clamp bolts [see Art. 19-19(4)].

19-12. Bearing Constructions. Both sleeve and ball bearings are standard. Both are now commonly designed so as to permit operation of the motor with the shaft in any position, though sleeve bearings were formerly designed for operation in but one position of the shaft, which was usually horizontal. These are discussed in greater detail in Chap. 17. If there is to be an abnormal thrust or overhung load on the shaft, the problem should be taken up with the motor manufacturer.

19-13. Shaft Extension. Standard construction for extension diameters ½ in. or less is to use a milled flat; for larger shafts, a keyway is standard. The number of other forms is almost limitless. Aircraft motors, for example, commonly use a spline on the shaft extension. Shaft-extension sizes are given in Fig. 19-1.

19-14. Mechanical Drives. A wide variety of mechanical drives is discussed in a single issue of the magazine *Machine Design*.[7,*] For the most part, the material concerns itself with mechanical drive arrangements for motors larger than fractional-horsepower, but a lot of discussion is devoted to basic principles which could apply to smaller versions; many of the drives discussed are used in fractional-horsepower sizes. The issue discusses chains of various types and sprockets; V belts, types and characteristics, sheaves for fixed or adjustable speeds; flat belts, conventional and grooved or Poly-V; gears of all types, including epicyclic and harmonic drives, gear-tooth forms, precision, quality and rating; packaged adjustable-speed drives including gear drives, belt and chain drives, friction and traction drives, variable-stroke drives, and torque converters; speed reducers including base-mounted and shaft-mounted arrangements; clutches of many kinds including mechanical clutches of the positive-drive type as well as friction clutches, overrunning clutches, and centrifugally actuated clutches; electric clutches of many types, including eddy-current couplings and magnetic-particle clutches; fluid couplings; brakes, both mechanical and electrical; mechanical couplings of many types; universal joints and flexible shafts.

By use of the proper gearing, almost any output speed may be obtained, higher or lower than motor speed. The gearing may be designed integral with the motor, or supplied as a separate device; both such arrangements are discussed further in Arts. 17-20 to 17-22.

DEFINITE-PURPOSE MOTORS

Definite-purpose motors, it was explained in Art. 19-2, are motors designed and built to suit the special requirements of a particular industry or type of application. We will now proceed to examine these

---

[*] For numbered references, see Bibliography at end of this chapter.

motors, and the material that follows is mostly extracted or adapted from NEMA standards. For more complete and more up-to-date information, the standards themselves should be consulted.[5]

19-15. Permanent-split Capacitor Industrial Instrument Motors and Gearmotors. These are subfractional-horsepower motors intended for application in such instruments as recorders and timing devices.

(1) *Types.* Synchronous capacitor; nonsynchronous capacitor, normal slip; nonsynchronous capacitor, high slip.

(2) *Voltage Ratings.* 115.

(3) *Frequencies.* 60 and 50 hz.

(4) *Speed and Torque Ratings.* For 60-hz motors, see Table 19-4. Comparable gear motors are built with gear ratios from 6:1 to 1,800:1.

(5) *Terminal Markings.* See Figs. 7-3, 7-4, and 16-3 (servo).

(6) *General Mechanical Features.* Totally enclosed, ball-bearing; mounting is face type by two No. 8-32 tapped holes 180° apart; shaft 0.1875 (4.76 mm) diameter, with flat.

19-16. Low-inertia Servo Industrial Instrument Motors and Gearmotors. These are subfractional-horsepower motors intended for applications in such instruments as self-balancing recorders and remote positioning devices. These motors are discussed in some detail in Chap. 16.

19-17. Universal Motor Parts. These are discussed in Chap 12.

TABLE 19-4 Characteristics of Permanent-split Capacitor Motors for Industrial Instruments

	Axial length of motor body, in.		
	1.75	2.00	2.50
Synchronous capacitor motors:			
Full-load rpm	1800	1800	1800
Full-load and pull-in torque, oz-in	0.25	0.33	0.60
Locked-rotor torque, oz-in	0.25	0:35	0.60
Non-synch. capacitor motors—normal slip:			
Approx. full-load rpm	1550	1550	1550
Full-load torque, oz-in	1.0	1.4	2.4
Breakdown torque, oz-in	1.7	2.4	4.2
Locked-rotor torque, oz-in	1.0	1.4	2.4
Non-synch. capacitor motors—high slip:			
Approx. full-load rpm	1200	1200	1200
Full-load torque, oz-in	0.75	1.10	1.85
Breakdown torque, oz-in	1.5	2.2	3.7
Locked-rotor torque, oz-in	1.5	2.2	3.7

19-18. Motors for Hermetic Refrigeration Compressors. A hermetic motor consists of a stator and rotor without shaft, end shields, or bearings for installation in refrigeration compressors of the hermetically sealed type.

(1) *Types.* Split-phase, capacitor-start, two-value capacitor, and permanent-split capacitor.

(2) *Output Ratings.* Unlike most motors, hermetic motors are rated in terms of breakdown torque instead of horsepower. They are made in two- and four-pole speeds. Breakdown torque ratings, together with their respective locked-rotor currents for 60-hz motors, are given in Table 19-5.

(3) *Terminal Markings.* Auxiliary winding, white; main winding, white with red tracer; common lead, white with black tracer.

(4) *Dimensional Standards.* Special dimensional standards have been developed and published by NEMA.[5]

19-19. Motors for Shaft-mounted Fans and Blowers. These motors are totally enclosed and are designed for propeller fans or centrifugal blowers mounted on the motor shaft, with or without air drawn over

TABLE 19-5 Breakdown Torques and Locked-rotor Currents of Single-phase Motors for Hermetic Refrigeration Compressors*

Four-pole motors			Two-pole motors	
Breakdown torque, oz-ft	Locked-rotor amperes at 115 volts		Breakdown torque, oz-ft	Locked-rotor amperes at 115 volts
10.5	20		5.25	20
12.5	20		6.25	20
15	20		7.5	20
18	20		9.0	20
21.5	20		10.75	21
26	21.5		13.0	23
31	23		15.5	26
37	28	23†	18.5	29
44.5	34	23†	22.0	33
53.5	40	. . .	27.0	38
64.5	48	46†	32.0	43
77	57	46†	38.5	49
92.5	68	46†	46.0	56

* From NEMA.

† Motors having these locked-rotor currents usually have lower locked-rotor torques than those with the higher locked-rotor amperes.

the motors; they are generally not suitable for belted loads because many of them do not develop enough locked-rotor torque for this purpose.

(1) *Types.* Single-phase, $\frac{1}{20}$-hp and larger, split-phase and permanent-split capacitor; polyphase, $\frac{1}{8}$-hp and larger, squirrel-cage induction; dc, up to approximately 6-in. frame diameter, shunt-wound; dc, frame diameters 6 in. and larger, compound-wound.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* For single-speed motors, all the ratings given in Table 1-4, $\frac{1}{20}$-hp and up, except that there are no two-pole (3600-rpm) ratings.

(3) *Two-speed and Adjustable Varying-speed Motors.* Refer to Chap. 7.

(4) *General Mechanical Features.* Totally enclosed; horizontal motors, sleeve bearings with provision for taking the axial thrust of the driven fan in the front bearing; vertical motors, ball bearings; rear-end oiler on sleeve-bearing motors may extend to motor diameter; end-shield clamp bolts have a threaded extension extending $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.5 mm) or more beyond the nut on the back end of the motor, for mounting the motor or for attaching a fan guard thereto; permanent-split capacitor motors, rated $\frac{1}{4}$-hp or less, may sometimes be provided with blade terminals (ref. Fig. 10-15).

19-20. Shaded-pole Motors for Shaft-mounted Fans and Blowers. For a discussion of these motors, see Chap. 10.

19-21. Motors for Belted Fans and Blowers. These motors are intended for operating belt-driven fans or blowers such as are commonly used in conjunction with hot-air heating installations and attic ventilators.

(1) *Types.* Single-speed: split-phase, capacitor-start, repulsion-start induction. Two-speed: split-phase, capacitor-start.

(2) *Speed Ratings.* Single-speed motors, 1725 rpm; two-speed motors, 1725/1140 rpm.

(3) *Horsepower Ratings for Single-speed Motors.* Split-phase, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, and $\frac{1}{3}$; capacitor-start and repulsion-start, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, and $\frac{3}{4}$.

(4) *Horsepower Ratings for Two-speed Motors.* Split-phase, $\frac{1}{6}$ and $\frac{1}{4}$ at higher speed; capacitor-start, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, and $\frac{3}{4}$ at higher speed.

(5) *Torque Characteristics.* Split-phase motors, same as standard split-phase motors, as covered in Art. 4-6; capacitor-start motors, same as general-purpose capacitor-start motors, as covered in Art. 5-6.

(6) *Locked-rotor Currents.* See Table 19-1.

(7) *General Mechanical Features.* Open, drip-proof, sleeve bearings for horizontal operation, resilient mounting, automatic-reset thermal overload protection; rear end oiler may extend to motor diameter.

19-22. Motors for Air-conditioning Condensers and Evaporator Fans.

(1) *Types.* Shaded-pole, permanent-split capacitor.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* Table 1-5.

(3) *Breakdown Torques.* Table 1-3.

(4) *Variations from Rated Speed.* Since these motors are high-slip motors, as can be seen from Table 1-5, they are subject to wider variations in operating speed than general-purpose fractional-horsepower motors. This point is discussed in Art. 10-9.

(5) *Terminal Markings, Multispeed Motors.* For shaded-pole types, see Fig. 10-14 or 10-15; for permanent-split capacitor motors, see Chap. 7.

(6) *General Mechanical Features.* Open or totally enclosed, sleeve bearings.

19-23. Motors for Cellar Drainers and Sump Pumps.

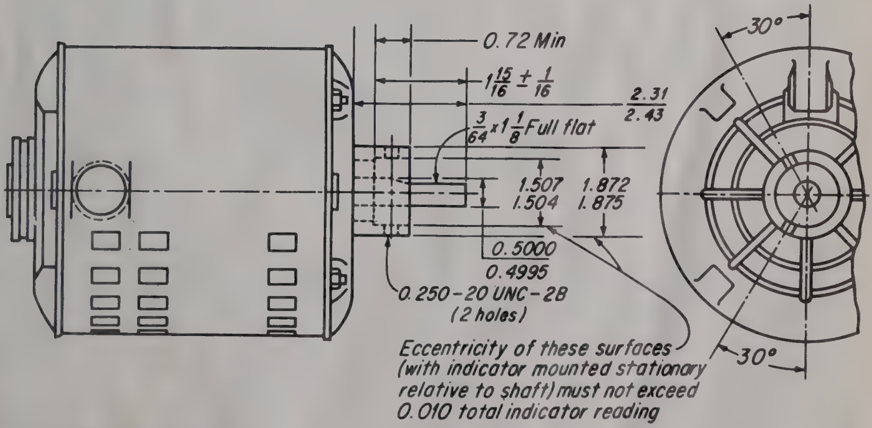
A cellar drainer motor furnishes power for operating a pump for draining cellars, pits, or sumps.

(1) *Type.* Split-phase.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Rating.* ⅓-hp at 1725 rpm.

(3) *Torque Characteristics.* Breakdown, 32 oz-ft; locked-rotor, 20 oz-ft.

(4) *General Mechanical Features.* Vertical operation; open construction, with top end shield totally enclosed, or protected by a canopy, louvres, or the equivalent; bottom end shield has a hub machined so that motor can be mounted directly on a support pipe; may or may not have an automatic-reset thermal protector; frame number bears the suffix K. Dimensions of such a motor are given in Fig. 19-2.



Eccentricity of these surfaces (with indicator mounted stationary relative to shaft) must not exceed 0.010 total indicator reading

All dimensions in inches

Fig. 19-2 Dimensions for cellar drainer and sump pump motors. (*From NEMA.*)

19-24. Motors for Gasoline-dispensing Pumps. A gasoline-dispensing pump motor is commonly used in automobile service stations; it is built to meet the rigid requirements of Class I Group D explosion-proof construction as established by the Underwriters' Laboratories, and is so certified on the nameplate.

(1) *Types.* Capacitor-start, repulsion-start induction, polyphase squirrel-cage, compound-wound direct-current.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* Horsepower, ½; 60-hz motor speed, 1725 rpm; 50-hz motor speed, 1425 rpm; direct-current motor speed, 1725 rpm.

(3) *Torque Characteristics.* For 60-hz single-phase motors, the breakdown torque is 46 oz-ft or more, and the locked-rotor torque is 48.8 oz-ft or more.

(4) *Locked-rotor Current.* As given in Table 19-1.

(5) *General Mechanical Features.* Motors are totally enclosed, explosion-proof Class I Group D; sleeve bearings; rigid base mounting; built-in line switch with external operating lever, and a built-in voltage-selector switch on same end as line switch (see Fig. 19-3); may or may not have a built-in thermal protector; line leads 36 in. long brought out through a swivel connector.

(6) *Dimensions and Frame Size.* Outline dimensions are given in Fig. 19-3. This frame size is designated as 61G.

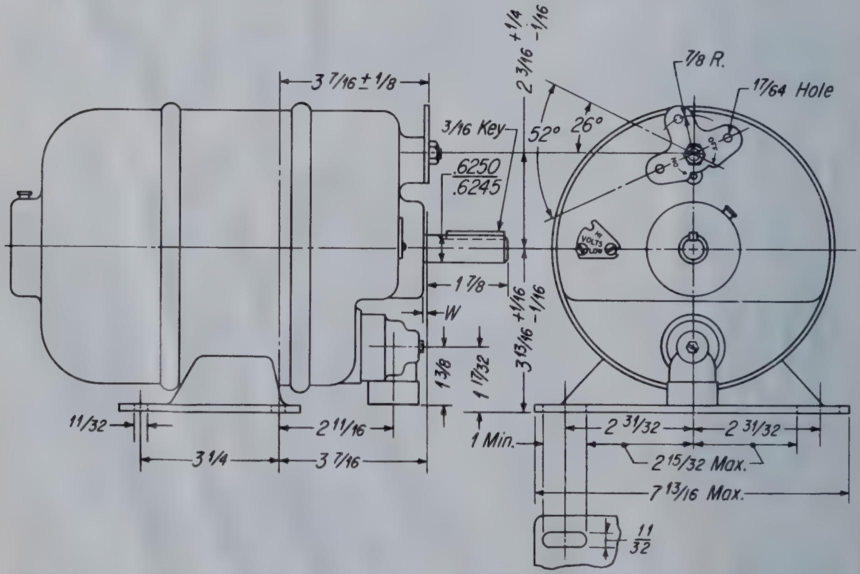


Fig. 19-3 Outline dimensions (in inches) for gasoline-dispensing pump motors, type G. (*From NEMA.*)

19-25. Motors for Domestic Oil Burners. The motors described below are intended for operating mechanical-draft oil burners for domestic applications.

(1) *Type.* Split-phase.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* Horsepower ratings are 1/12, 1/8, and 1/6, all four-pole. Speed rating, for 60-hz motors, is 1725 rpm.

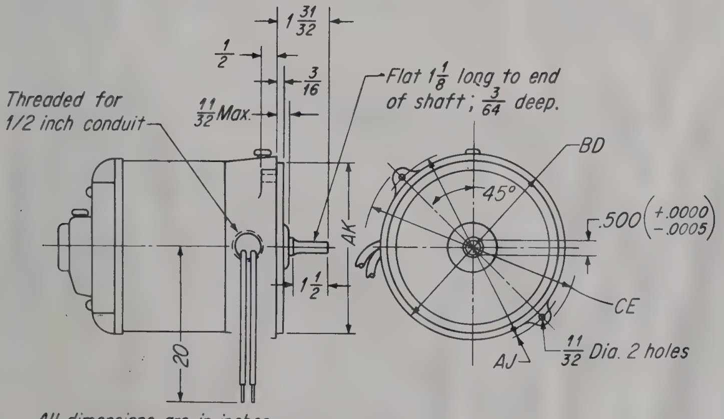
(3) *Direction of Rotation.* Clockwise, facing end opposite shaft extension.

(4) *Breakdown Torques.* Within the range of values given in Table 1-2. Approximate values are 1/12 hp, 10 oz-ft; 1/8 hp, 14 oz-ft; 1/6 hp, 18 oz-ft.

(5) *Locked-rotor Current.* Not over 20 amp for 115-volt motors, or over 12 amp for 230-volt motors.

(6) *General Mechanical Features.* Motors are guarded or totally enclosed; nameplate carries words "oil burner motor"; manual-reset thermal overload protector; two terminal leads, consisting of two 20-in. lengths of flexible single-conductor wire, brought out from the motor through a hole tapped for 1/2-in. conduit.

(7) *Dimensions and Frame Size.* Outline dimensions for oil-burner motors are given in Fig. 19-4. Note that these are designed for face-



All dimensions are in inches

Frame suffix	AK	AJ	CE	BD
M	5½	6¾	7¾ max	6¼ max
N	6⅜	7¼	8¼ max	7 max

Fig. 19-4 Outline dimensions for motors for domestic oil burners. (*From NEMA.*)

mounting, and there are two sizes, distinguished by the suffix letter following the frame number.

19-26. Motors for Home-laundry Equipment. For discussion of these motors, see Arts. 4-27 to 4-29.

19-27. Motors for Jet Pumps. A jet-pump motor is an open-type ball-bearing motor built for horizontal or vertical operation for direct connection to direct-driven centrifugal ejector pumps. A cutaway view of a jet-pump motor is illustrated in Fig. 19-5.

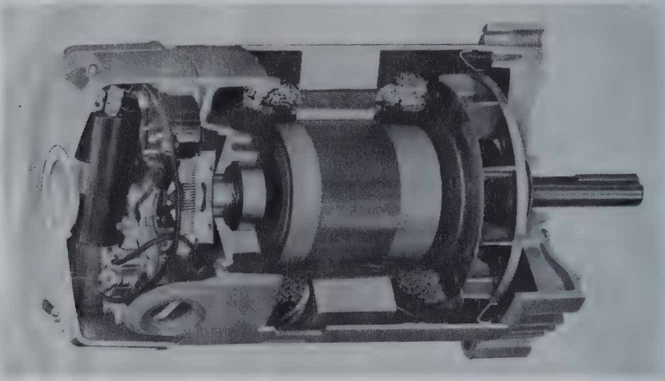


Fig. 19-5 Cutaway view of capacitor-start jet-pump motor. Note the large internal cooling fan to provide high service factors. Note also the internal capacitor. (*Emerson Electric Company.*)

(1) *Types.* Split-phase; capacitor-start; repulsion-start induction; polyphase squirrel-cage induction; dc, compound-wound.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* Horsepower ratings are 1, ¾, ½, ⅓, and ¼, all two-pole. Speed rating, for 60-hz and dc motors is 3450 rpm. Split-phase motors generally are not built for more than ⅓ hp.

(3) *Direction of Rotation.* Clockwise, facing the end opposite the shaft extension.

(4) *Breakdown Torques.* As given in Table 19-1.

(5) *Locked-rotor Current.* As given in Table 19-1.

(6) *Service Factors.* Jet-pump motors are customarily designed for higher service factors than standard NEMA values, given in Table 1-8. Common values for single-phase motors, for example, are ⅓-hp, 1.8; ½-hp, 1.6; ¾-hp, 1.5; 1-hp, 1.4. For exact values in any particular case, refer to the motor nameplate or to the manufacturer.

(7) *General Mechanical Features.* Open construction; grease-lubricated ball bearings suitable for horizontal or vertical operation and provision for taking axial end thrust; back end shield machined per Fig. 19-6; front end shield provided with a tapped hole in the center of the bearing hub to accommodate a drip cover when used vertically; standard shaft extension, straight; alternate shaft extension, threaded, per Fig. 19-6*b*; terminals or leads located in the front end shield, or near it; capacitor unit mounted externally, as shown in Fig. 19-6, or internally, as shown in Fig. 19-5; automatic-reset thermal overload protector on single-phase motors.

(8) *Mounting Dimensions and Frame Size.* Jet-pump motors are usually built in the same frame sizes as general-purpose motors, as given in Table 19-2. When the motor has a threaded shaft extension per Fig. 19-6*b*, the basic frame number is followed by the suffix letter J.

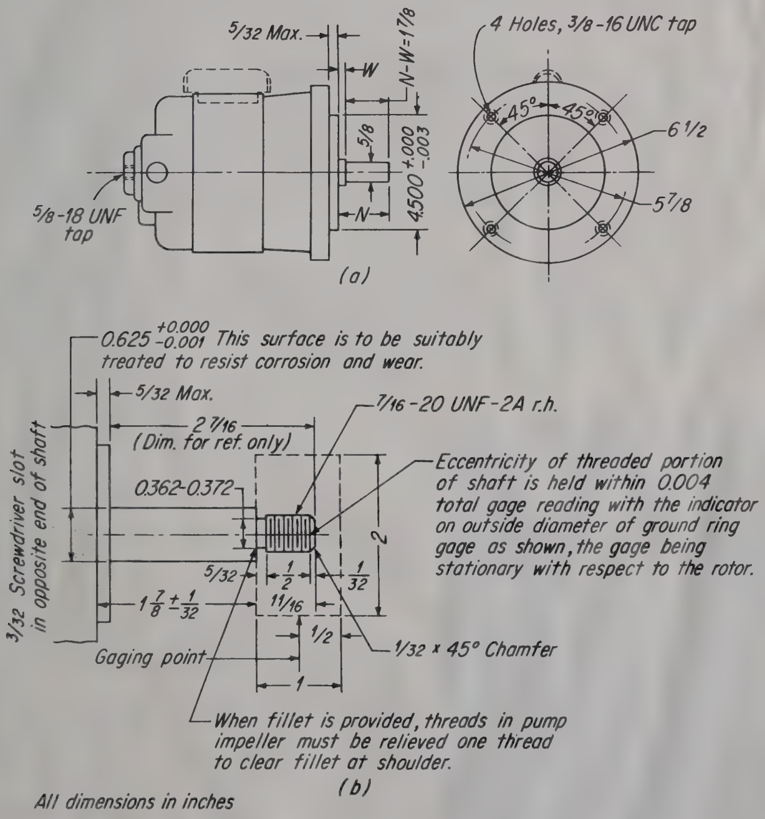

5/32 Max.
W
N-W=1 7/8
5/8
4.500 +.000 -.003
N
5/8-18 UNF tap
4 Holes, 3/8-16 UNC tap
45°
45°
6 1/2
5 7/8
(a)
0.625 +0.000 -0.001 This surface is to be suitably treated to resist corrosion and wear.
5/32 Max.
2 7/16 (Dim. for ref. only)
7/16-20 UNF-2A r.h.
0.362-0.372
Eccentricity of threaded portion of shaft is held within 0.004 total gage reading with the indicator on outside diameter of ground ring gage as shown, the gage being stationary with respect to the rotor.
2
3/32 Screwdriver slot in opposite end of shaft
5/32
1/2
1/32
11/16
1 7/8 ± 1/32
1/2
1/32 × 45° Chamfer
Gaging point
1
When fillet is provided, threads in pump impeller must be relieved one thread to clear fillet at shoulder.
(b)
All dimensions in inches

Fig. 19-6 Motor outline and shaft-extension dimensions for face-mounted motors for jet pumps. (*a*) Motors with a straight shaft extension. (*b*) Motors with a threaded shaft extension. (*From NEMA.*)

When the motor has a straight shaft extension, it will generally be of standard dimensions, as shown in Fig. 19-1.

19-28. Motors for Coolant Pumps. These are enclosed ball-bearing motors built for horizontal or vertical operation for direct connection to direct-driven centrifugal coolant pumps.

(1) *Types.* Split-phase; capacitor-start; polyphase squirrel-cage induction; dc, compound-wound.

(2) *Horsepower and Speed Ratings.* All the two-pole and four-pole ratings shown in Table 19-1.

(3) *Direction of Rotation.* Clockwise, facing the end opposite the shaft extension.

(4) *Breakdown Torques.* As given in Table 19-1.

(5) *Locked-rotor Current.* As given in Table 19-1.

(6) *General Mechanical Features.* Generally the same as for jet-pump motors, except of totally enclosed construction.

19-29. Submersible Motors for Deep Well Pumps. A submersible motor for deep-well pumps is designed for operation totally submerged in water having a temperature not exceeding 25°C. One such motor is illustrated in Fig. 19-7. Motors of similar construction are also used in a wide variety of applications, operating submerged in a fluid, for pumping oil, gasoline, chemicals and solvents.

19-30. DC Motors Intended for Use on Adjustable-voltage Electronic Power Supplies. These motors are discussed specifically in Art. 13-26, and more generally in Arts. 13-22 through 13-27.

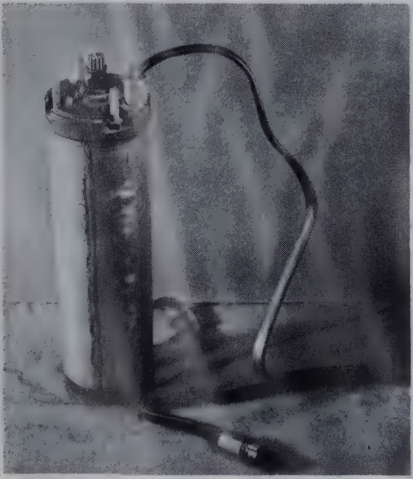


Fig. 19-7 A 4-in. submersible motor. It is capable of withstanding thrust loads up to 300 lb and fluid pressures up to 1,000 psi. It is built in ratings from ⅙ to 1½ hp in capacitor-start and polyphase types, and up to ¾ hp in split-phase and permanent-split capacitor types. (*Franklin Electric Company.*)

MISCELLANEOUS

19-31. Service Conditions. Service conditions are classified by NEMA as *usual* or *unusual;* both of these two categories are subdivided in *environmental conditions* and *operating conditions.*

(1) *Usual Service Conditions, Environmental.* These are: exposed to an ambient temperature from 0 to 40°C; an altitude not exceeding 3,300 feet (1,000 meters); installation on a rigid mounting surface and in areas or supplementary enclosures which do not seriously interfere with the ventilation of the machine.

(2) *Usual Service Conditions, Operational.* These are: voltage variation, not over plus or minus 10 percent for dc or induction motors, and not over plus or minus 6 percent for universal motors (except fan motors); frequency variation, not over plus or minus 5 percent; combined voltage and frequency variation of not over 10 percent; belt, chain, or gear drives in accord with NEMA practices.

(3) *Unusual Service Conditions, Environmental.* In general, these are all conditions, not specified as usual, above; some typical ones, requiring special consideration and consultation with the motor manufacturer, are the following: exposure to chemical fumes, lint, steam, flammable or explosive gases, oil vapor, salt air, radiant heat, nuclear radiation, excessive dampness or dryness; exposure to dust, particularly if it is combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting; exposure to ambient temperatures below 0°C or above 40°C; exposure to abnormal shock or vibration, or mechanical loads involving abnormal thrust or overhung loads; exposure to vermin infestation.

(4) *Unusual Service Conditions, Operational.* These may be succinctly defined as operating conditions other than usual. Specific illustrative examples include: operation at speeds above the highest rated; operation in poorly ventilated rooms or in pits or enclosures that restrict ventilation; operation where voltage and frequency are outside the usual range; operation where low noise levels are required; operation of a dc motor on rectified alternating current, unless the motor was specifically designed for it; operation when subjected to torsional impact loads; continuous operation of a short-time-rated machine; operation of a polyphase motor on an unbalanced-voltage supply.

19-32. Effects of Variation of Voltage and Frequency upon the Performance of Induction Motors. Induction motors are normally designed to operate upon a voltage range of plus or minus 10 percent of rated, a frequency variation of 5 percent, or a combined voltage and frequency variation of not over 10 percent. Performance characteristics are, however, affected somewhat by such variations.

Locked-rotor, pull-up, breakdown, and switching torques will be proportional to the square of the applied voltage when the frequency is held constant. At any speed, the torque developed by the motor will be proportional to the square of the applied voltage. The full-load slip will be nearly inversely proportional to the square of the applied voltage. A small variation in frequency, with voltage held constant, will make the torques, expressed in oz-ft, nearly inversely proportional to the square of the frequency. Efficiency will usually be poorer at one end of the permissible voltage variation range, but not enough to cause concern. Full-load power factor usually improves at reduced voltage, and becomes worse at higher voltages. If both voltage and frequency are varied together in the same direction over a small range, torques in oz-ft remain constant. See Art. 19-33.

19-33. Operation of 60-hz Motors on 50 hz. In general, 60-hz single-phase induction motors cannot be recommended for operation on 50-hz circuits. One reason is that the starting switch would not operate at the correct speed; neither would a starting relay. Another reason is the capacitor, if one is used; it would need to have about 40 percent more capacitance. If, however, the proper starting device and capacitor for 50-hz operation were obtained and installed, the effect on performance would be about the same as for a polyphase motor.

If a 60-hz polyphase induction motor is to be operated on a 50-hz circuit, the applied voltage should be reduced to $5/6$ of its 60-hz voltage rating: the torque loading on the motor should be kept the same, which means that the horsepower load is reduced by one-sixth. If these conditions are observed, the following results can be expected: locked-rotor, breakdown, and full-load torques remain unchanged; speed becomes $5/6$ of the 60-hz speed; locked-rotor amperes will be decreased approximately 5 percent; service factor will be 1.0; temperature rise will not be excessive.

19-34. Relationships between Power, Torque, and Speed. The basic relationship for calculating torque from power and speed is

$$\text{Torque} = \frac{K \times \text{power}}{\text{rpm}} \tag{19-1}$$

For calculating power from torque and speed, the equation may simply be arranged to the form

$$\text{Power} = \frac{\text{torque} \times \text{rpm}}{K} \tag{19-2}$$

The value of K in the above equations depends upon the units in which

TABLE 19-6 Values of *K* for Power-torque-speed Calculations*

Units in which torque is expressed	Units in which power is expressed			
	Watts	hp (746 watts)	cv (735.5 watts)	mhp (0.746 watt)
lb-ft	7.043	5,254	5,180	5.254
lb-in.	84.52	63,050	62,160	63.05
oz-ft	112.69	84,070	82,890	84.07
oz-in.	1,352	1,008,800	994,600	1,008.8
cm-g	97,376	72,643,000	71,620,000	72,643
cm-kg	97.376	72,643	71,620	72.643
m-kg	0.97376	726.43	716.2	0.72643
newton-m	9.549	7,124	7,024	7.124

* Torque $= \dfrac{K \times \text{power}}{\text{rpm}}$ Power $= \dfrac{\text{torque} \times \text{rpm}}{K}$

torque and power are expressed: proper values of *K* are given in Table 19-6.

19-35. Radio Interference and Suppression Devices. Commutator-type motors may give trouble due to radio interference. This is because the commutation, or repeated interruption, of the currents produces components in the radio-frequency ranges, which may interfere with reception. These interfering currents are conducted along the power wires from the motor, and the fields set up may affect the radio aerials in the vicinity. There may even be some radiation from the motor itself, though this is usually slight except within a few feet of the motor. The interference voltages exist across the power leads (symmetrical component), and from power leads jointly to the motor frame (asymmetrical component).

In order to suppress the interference it is necessary to use either or both of the following methods:

1. Connect a capacitor from each motor lead to frame. This tends to put a short circuit on the motor for the high frequencies. (On motors that are operated with their frame insulated from ground, the microfarads of capacitance used are limited to approximately 0.0001 mfd per volt of motor rating; this limitation is because of danger of shock.)

2. Connect a choke coil in series with the power leads. This tends to open-circuit the motor for the high frequencies.

Capacitor methods generally used with quite satisfactory results are shown in Figs. 19-8 and 19-9. It is very important that the leads connecting the capacitors be as short as possible. In most cases, it is practicable to wire a capacitor to a power lead with 2 to 3 in. of wire. Fuses are not commonly used in series with capacitors since they will reduce the effectiveness of a capacitor-type suppressor. One should use capacitors with sufficient insulation strength.

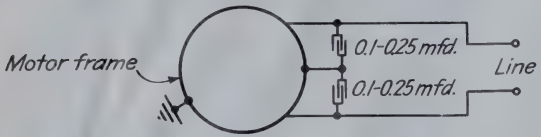


Fig. 19-8 Circuit for suppressing radio noise from a small motor with solidly grounded frame.

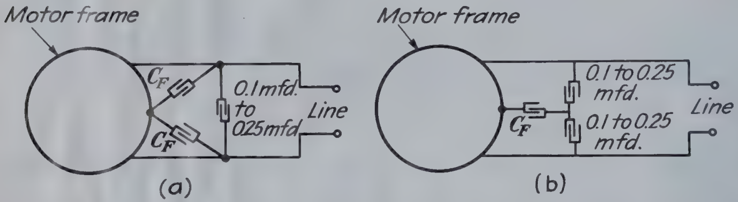


Fig. 19-9 Circuits for suppressing radio noise from a small motor with a frame insulated from ground. For 115-volt motors, $C_F = 0.10$ mfd. For 230-volt motors, $C_F = 0.005$ mfd.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Carville, T. E. M.: Selecting and Applying Fractional-horsepower Motors, *Machine Design,* July 24, 1958, pp. 127–133.
2. Editorial Staff: Electrical Motor Selector, *Machine Design,* July 24, 1958.
3. Morgan, N. L.: Which Fhp Motor for the Job?, *Product Engineering,* Jan. 19, 1959.
4. Editorial Staff: Selecting A-c Motors for Instrument Service, *Machine Design,* Aug. 20, 1959.
5. NEMA Standards Publication: "Motors and Generators," Pub. No. MG1-1967, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, 155 East 44th St., New York, 10017. (NOTE: A condensed version of these standards is printed in Sweet's catalog; reprints are often available from NEMA headquarters.)
6. Selected authors: Electric Motors Reference Issue, *Machine Design,* Dec. 16, 1965.
7. Selected authors: Mechanical Drives Reference Issue, *Machine Design,* Sept. 21, 1967.
8. Kordatzky, Robert W.: Subfractional-horsepower A-c Motors for Instrument Applications, *Machine Design,* Feb. 1, 1968, pp. 96–99.

Appendix

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
A. Failure to start	1. Blowing of fuses	1. Check capacity of fuses; they should be rated at not less than 125 percent of full-load current. Disconnect motor from line, replace fuses, and reconnect motor to line. If fuses blow, investigate and remedy cause.
	2. Overload device open-circuited. (Applies to manual-reset devices)	2. Reset overload device. If it trips out repeatedly, investigate further to find out why.
	3. Improper current supply, incorrect voltage or frequency	3. Make certain that voltage, frequency, and number of phases of supply circuit agree with the motor nameplate stamping. Correction involves getting the proper motor. Single-phase motors can be operated on polyphase circuits, but not vice versa. Alternating-current motors—except universal motors—will not operate on direct current, and vice versa.
	4. No voltage, or low voltage	4. Measure volts at motor terminals with line switch closed. It should be within 10 percent of rating on nameplate; if not, larger feeder circuits, or shorter connections to motor, may be required.
	5. Improper line connections	5. See that connections are exactly in accordance with the connection diagram or connection instructions furnished with the motor; if no wiring diagram is available, a suitable one may be found in this book. However, terminal markings of the motor at hand may be different from the markings on the wiring diagram given for a motor of the type concerned. If a wiring diagram that

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
A. Failure to start (*Continued*)		apparently fits is found, the first step should be a systematic check to see how the terminal markings differ, if at all, from those of the diagram selected.
	6. Mechanical failure in load	6. Check the driven appliance to see that it is not jammed and that it turns freely. Disconnect motor from the load, and determine if it will start idle. Watch out for excessive belt tension.
	7. Motor bearings tight, or seized	7. When bearings seize in a motor having high torques, such as a capacitor-start or repulsion-start motor, new bearings are usually required. In a motor having low torques, such as a shaded-pole motor, it is often sufficient to clean and relubricate the bearing. The bearing can be cleaned with a clean cloth soaked in gasoline or kerosene.
	8. Excessively worn or eccentric bearings	8. Motor shaft turns freely by hand when motor is not energized, but locks when power is applied so that it cannot be turned by hand. Remedy is to install new bearings.
	9. Dirt or foreign matter in air gap	9. Remove the obstruction.
	10. Excessive load	10. If motor starts idle and has no apparent defect, it may not have enough locked-rotor torque for the application, or may otherwise be misapplied. Refer to Chap. 19 for guidance in selecting the right motor.
	11. Open circuit in starting phase, main phase, or both	11. This condition is often indicated by a humming sound when the line switch is closed. It may be due to a broken lead, improper or poorly soldered connection, defective starting switch (see Arts. 17-5 to 17-9), burned-out starting winding, defective capacitor, loose connection on thermal overload device.
	12. Short-circuited stator	12. Likely to blow fuses; rewinding required. Similar condition can be caused by a grounded winding if motor is operated on a grounded circuit.
	13. Defective capacitor	13. If an electrolytic capacitor is used, disconnect it from the windings and test it as explained in Art. 5-10; if it is defective, it should be replaced (see Art. 5-9).

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
A. Failure to start (*Continued*)	14. Defective controller	14. If motor uses an external controller, the latter should be checked for defects. Controllers are discussed in Chap. 7.
	15. Faulty starting switch	15. See Arts. 17-5 to 17-9.
Items applying especially to repulsion-type motors		
	16. Worn or sticking brushes	16. Brushes may be worn so that they do not touch commutator, or only very lightly, in which case new brushes are required. If the brushes are sticking in the holders, clean brushes and brush holders so that brushes move freely. Brush springs may be weak and require replacing.
	17. Incorrect setting of brushes	17. Check to see that brushes are set the proper distance off neutral (see Art. 8-21).
	18. Defective short-circuiter, defective brush lifter	18. See if mechanism works freely, if commutator is clean opposite short-circuiter. Repair or replace the defective mechanism.
	19. Short-circuited armature	19. Remove brushes from commutator, impress full voltage on the stator winding, and turn armature by hand. If there are one or more points at which the rotor "hangs," the armature is short-circuited. By forcing the rotor to the position where it is most difficult to hold, the short circuit can be located, for the short-circuited coil will become hot. Sometimes the short circuit can be located, and repaired; frequently, rewinding the armature is required.
Items applying especially to universal motors		
	20. Worn or sticking brushes	20. See Item 16, above.
	21. Defective speed governor	21. Inspect governor contacts, which may require cleaning. If contacts are badly burned, test capacitor for opens or shorts. Also inspect governor mechanism. Replace defective parts.
	22. Too much external resistance	22. See Art. 12-20.

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
B. Excessive bearing wear	1. Belt tension too great; misalignment of belt, coupling or drive gears; unbalanced coupling; eccentric or too closely meshed gears; excessively heavy fan, flywheel, or other load hung on motor shaft	1. Correct the faulty mechanical condition. Belts, whether flat or V-shaped, should have only enough tension to prevent slipping.
	2. Dirty bearings, particularly if dirt is abrasive	2. If condition is bad, provide means for shielding motor from the dirt, or consult motor manufacturer and obtain a specially designed motor for the application.
	3. Insufficient or inadequate lubrication	3. Sleeve bearings should be lubricated with a good grade of light machine oil about once every year for normal applications, and more frequently if the motor runs continuously (see Art. 17-2). For care of ball bearings, refer to Art. 17-4. See also *A*7, above.
	4. Excessive thrust load	4. Reduce the thrust load or obtain a motor designed to handle the required thrust.
	5. Bent shaft (sleeve-bearing motors)	5. Remove rotor and check with a dial indicator; straighten as required.
C. Motor runs hot. *Do not judge motor temperature by hand.* Measure the temperature by thermometer, thermocouple, or rise of resistance [see Arts. 18-10 and 18-16(9)]	1. Improper line connections	1. See *A*5.
	2. Excessive load	2. Inspect the driven device and the belt, coupling, or other mechanical connection between the motor and its load. Run an application test, as explained in Art. 18-29, and determine if a motor of the right horsepower rating is used (see Art. 19-7); if not, it may be necessary to obtain a motor of larger rating. Continuous overloading shortens the life of a motor.
	3. Improper circuit voltage	3. Measure voltage at motor terminals with motor driving its load. If voltage differs more than 10 percent from nameplate voltage, take full-load saturation test as described in Art. 18-16(8). If watts input at operating voltage is materially greater than at rated voltage,

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
C. Motor runs hot (*Continued*)		this is the probable cause of the difficulty, but if there is little difference in inputs at these two voltages, a further search for the trouble should be made. See also Art. 19-32 for further discussion of this subject.
	4. Wrong frequency	4. Compare circuit frequency with nameplate frequency. See Art. 19-32 for a discussion of this subject.
	5. Too frequent starting	5. This condition may occur if motor is automatically controlled. Adjust the control to lengthen the cycle, if possible; reduce the WR^2 of the connected load; or, obtain manufacturer's recommendation for a new motor.
	6. Failure of ventilation	6. Clean motor, especially the ventilating passages. If motor has air-flow baffles to direct the air for effective cooling, make certain that these are correctly placed. Allow nothing to prevent free flow of necessary cooling air to and from motor.
	7. Ambient temperature too high	7. An ambient temperature above 40°C (104°F) is too high for standard motors. If motor is operated within an enclosure or restricted space, the temperature of this space may often rise several degrees above the room temperature. It is the temperature of the *immediate surroundings* of the motor that governs, not the room temperature. Sometimes this restricted space can be opened up or otherwise ventilated. If not, it may be necessary to obtain a special motor.
	8. Bearing trouble	8. See *A*7, *A*8, *B*1 to *B*5.
	9. Short-circuited coils	9. Condition may be indicated by abnormal magnetic noise, or excessive no-load watts. Rewind motor.
	10. Grounded winding or grounded switch	10. If the ground cannot be located and repaired, rewinding is required.
	11. Starting switch fails to open	11. Applies to split-phase and capacitor-start motors. Repair or replace faulty switch member (Art. 17-8). This condition is apt to burn out the windings, particularly the starting winding.

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
C. Motor runs hot (*Continued*)	12. Poor soldering to commutator necks	12. Applies to dc and universal motors. Resolder connections and check armature (see Arts. 12-16 to 12-18).
	13. Short-circuiter fails to function correctly	13. Applies to repulsion-start motors. Clean and repair or replace the mechanism (see Sec. *G*).
	14. Rotor rubbing stator	14. Best method of diagnosis is to dismantle motor and inspect stator bore and rotor surface for visual evidences of rubbing. If in doubt, apply Prussian blue to these surfaces, reassemble, run motor, dismantle, and reexamine. Remedy is to install new bearings (see *A*8).
D. Motor burns out	1. Frozen bearings, misapplication, or any of the causes listed in Sec. *C*	1. Any of the bad conditions listed in Sec. *C*, if prolonged, may lead to motor burnout. After the motor has actually burned out, the real source of the trouble is often very difficult to trace. Recondition the motor, run an application test as described in Arts. 18-29 and 18-30, and investigate possibilities discussed in Sec. *C*.
E. Motor is noisy	1. Unbalanced rotor	1. An unbalanced rotor will set up a vibration that can be easily felt; the cure is to rebalance the rotor, dynamically, if equipment is available. Also, the shaft may be sprung slightly and may need straightening.
	2. Worn bearings	2. In single-phase induction motors, worn or dry bearings give rise to a characteristic noise; the noise is modulated at slip frequency and, at no load, is not unlike the sound of a purring cat. Sometimes oil will quiet the motor; at other times the bearings may have to be replaced (see Art. 17-2). If trouble is unduly frequent, see Sec. *B*.
	3. Switch rattles or rubs	3. Check switch for correct location and operation. Replace if necessary (see Art. 17-8).
	4. Excessive end play	4. Dismantle motor and add thrust washers to take up end play (Art. 17-2); add these to the side opposite the switch

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
E. Motor is noisy (*Continued*)		so as not to disturb the location of the latter with respect to the stator. Some motors are provided with end-play take-up plug; take up end play on these motors by tapping in the end-play take-up device, being careful not to increase the input to the motor by more than 10 watts.
	5. Motor not properly aligned with driven machine	5. Correct mechanical condition.
	6. Motor not fastened firmly to mounting base	6. Correct mechanical condition.
	7. Loose accessories on motor	7. Such parts as oil-well covers, capacitor box or cover, oil pipe, conduit boxes or covers, and guards should be carefully checked and tightened so that they cannot rattle.
	8. Air gap not uniform	8. Bent shaft may cause this condition (see *E*1). For extreme quietness, it may be necessary, after the shaft is straightened, to grind the rotor true. Only the barest minimum of material should be removed, as this increases the power and current consumption of the motor.
	9. Dirt in air gap	9. Noise is irregular, intermittent, and scratchy; dismantle and clean motor.
	10. Amplified motor noises	10. If this condition is suspected, uncouple motor from load and allow it to run idle; if noise persists, loosen the mounting bolts and lift the motor—while it is still running—off the mounting bolts. If motor is quiet, the mounting was acting as an amplifier. Use of resilient mounting will usually eliminate noise from this source (Art. 17-12). In some cases, it may be necessary to provide torsional flexibility in the coupling that connects the motor to the load (see Art. 17-13).
	11. Burrs on shaft shoulders, nicks on journals	11. Determine by inspection. Correct mechanical condition.
	12. Rough commutator	12. True up. See Art. 12-17.

TABLE A-1 Trouble Diagnosis Chart for Fractional-horsepower Motors (Continued)

Problem	Probable causes	Test and remedy
F. Motor noisy when stopping	1. Regeneration (cap-start motors)	1. Motor becomes noisy while coasting to a stop. See Art. 5-31.
Repulsion-start motors		
G. Motor runs but governor does not operate in a few seconds (see Arts. 8-15 to 8-23)	1. Dirty commutator	1. Clean with fine sandpaper, never with emery.
	2. Governor mechanism sticking	2. Work governor mechanism by hand. Clean and install new parts or new governor as required.
	3. Worn or sticking brushes	3. See *A*16.
	4. Frequency of supply circuit low	4. Check frequency of supply circuit. Get motor of proper frequency rating.
	5. Low line voltage	5. See *A*4.
	6. Wrong connections	6. See A5.
	7. Incorrect brush setting	7. See Art. 8-21.
	8. Excessive load	8. See *A*10.
	9. Short-circuited stator	9. See *A*12.
	10. Incorrect spring tension	10. Springs may lose temper or get out of adjustment; governor may not be of the proper speed rating.
Commutator-type motors		
H. Excessive brush wear	1. Dirty or oily commutator	1. Clean with fine sandpaper, never with emery.
	2. Any of the troubles in Sec. *G*	2. See Sec. *G*.
	3. High mica, rough commutator	3. True up. See Art. 12-17.
	4. Excessive spring tension	4. Adjust to correct tension.
	5. Loose-fitting brushes	5. Get brushes or brush-holder boxes of the correct size.
I. Radio interference	1. Any of the causes in Sec. *H*	1. Correct mechanical condition. If necessary add suppression filter, as explained in Art. 19-35.

TABLE A-2 Conversion Table for Units of Power*

Multiply	By	To obtain
CV (*cheval vapeur,* metric hp)	985.9	Millihorsepower
	735.5	Watts
	0.9859	Horsepower
	542.5	Ft-lb/sec
Ft-lb/sec	1.8174	Millihorsepower
	1.3558	Watts
	0.0018174	Horsepower
	0.0018436	CV (*cheval vapeur,* metric hp)
Horsepower	1,000	Millihorsepower
	746	Watts
	1.0143	CV (*cheval vapeur,* metric hp)
	550.3	Ft-lb/sec
Millihorsepower	0.746	Watts
	0.001	Horsepower
	0.0010143	CV (*cheval vapeur,* metric hp)
	0.5503	Ft-lb/sec
Watts	1.3405	Millihorsepower
	0.0013405	Horsepower
	0.0013598	CV (*cheval vapeur,* metric hp)
	0.7376	Ft-lb/sec

* Conversions may be made in the inverse order by dividing by the conversion factor instead of multiplying by it. For example: divide watts by 746 to obtain horsepower.

TABLE A-3 Conversion Table for Units of Torque, Energy, or Work*

Multiply	By	To obtain
Kilogram-centimeters......	1.157	Ounce-feet
	0.868	Pound-inches
	0.09807	Newton-meters
Newton-meters...........	11.801	Ounce-feet
	0.7376	Pound-feet
	10.197	Kilogram-centimeters
Ounce-feet..............	0.75	Pound-inches
	12	Ounce-inches
	864.1	Gram-centimeters
	0.8641	Kilogram-centimeters
	0.08474	Newton-meters
Ounce-inches............	72.01	Gram-centimeters
	0.07201	Kilogram-centimeters
	0.007061	Newton-meters
Pound-feet..............	12	Pound-inches
	16	Ounce-feet
	192	Ounce-inches
	13,825	Gram-centimeters
	13.825	Kilogram-centimeters
	1.3558	Newton-meters

* Units of energy and work have the same dimensions as units of torque, and hence the conversion factors in the table apply equally well to units of work or energy. Also, conversions can be made in inverse order by dividing by the factor. For example: divide newton-meters by 1.3558 to obtain pound-feet.

TABLE A-4 Table for Converting Degrees Fahrenheit to Degrees Centigrade

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
−100	−73.3	−73.9	−74.4	−75	−75.6	−76.1	−76.7	−77.2	−77.8	−78.3
− 90	−67.8	−68.3	−68.9	−69.4	−70	−70.6	−71.1	−71.7	−72.2	−72.8
− 80	−62.2	−62.8	−63.3	−63.9	−64.4	−65	−65.6	−66.1	−66.7	−67.2
− 70	−56.7	−57.2	−57.8	−58.3	−58.9	−59.4	−60	−60.6	−61.1	−61.7
− 60	−51.1	−51.7	−52.2	−52.8	−53.3	−53.9	−54.4	−55	−55.6	−56.1
− 50	−45.6	−46.1	−46.7	−47.2	−47.8	−48.3	−48.9	−49.4	−50	−50.6
− 40	−40	−40.6	−41.1	−41.7	−42.2	−42.8	−43.3	−43.9	−44.4	−45
− 30	−34.4	−35	−35.6	−36.1	−36.7	−37.2	−37.8	−38.3	−38.9	−39.4
− 20	−28.9	−29.4	−30	−30.6	−31.1	−31.7	−32.2	−32.8	−33.3	−33.9
− 10	−23.3	−23.9	−24.4	−25	−25.6	−26.1	−26.7	−27.2	−27.8	−28.3
− 0	−17.8	−18.3	−18.9	−19.4	−20	−20.6	−21.1	−21.7	−22.2	−22.8
0	−17.8	−17.2	−16.7	−16.1	−15.6	−15	−14.4	−13.9	−13.3	−12.8
10	−12.2	−11.7	−11.1	−10.6	−10	− 9.4	− 8.9	− 8.3	− 7.8	− 7.2
20	− 6.7	− 6.1	− 5.6	− 5	− 4.4	− 3.9	− 3.3	− 2.8	− 2.2	− 1.7
30	− 1.1	− 0.6	0	0.6	1.1	1.7	2.2	2.8	3.3	3.9
40	4.4	5	5.6	6.1	6.7	7.2	7.8	8.3	8.9	9.4
50	10	10.6	11.1	11.7	12.2	12.8	13.3	13.9	14.4	15
60	15.6	16.1	16.7	17.2	17.8	18.3	18.9	19.4	20	20.6
70	21.1	21.7	22.2	22.8	23.3	23.9	24.4	25	25.6	26.1
80	26.7	27.2	27.8	28.3	28.9	29.4	30	30.6	31.1	31.7
90	32.2	32.8	33.3	33.9	34.4	35	35.6	36.1	36.7	37.2
100	37.8	38.3	38.9	39.4	40	40.6	41.1	41.7	42.2	42.8
110	43.3	43.9	44.4	45	45.6	46.1	46.7	47.2	47.8	48.3
120	48.9	49.4	50	50.6	51.1	51.7	52.2	52.8	53.3	53.9
130	54.4	55	55.6	56.1	56.7	57.2	57.8	58.3	58.9	59.4
140	60	60.6	61.1	61.7	62.2	62.8	63.3	63.9	64.4	65
150	65.6	66.1	66.7	67.2	67.8	68.3	68.9	69.4	70	70.6
160	71.1	71.7	72.2	72.8	73.3	73.9	74.4	75	75.6	76.1
170	76.7	77.2	77.8	78.3	78.9	79.4	80	80.6	81.1	81.7
180	82.2	82.8	83.3	83.9	84.4	85	85.6	86.1	86.7	87.2
190	87.8	88.3	88.9	89.4	90	90.6	91.1	91.7	92.2	92.8
200	93.3	93.9	94.4	95	95.6	96.1	96.7	97.2	97.8	98.3
210	98.9	99.4	100	100.6	101.1	101.7	102.2	102.8	103.3	103.9
220	104.4	105	105.6	106.1	106.7	107.2	107.8	108.3	108.9	109.4
230	110	110.6	111.1	111.7	112.2	112.8	113.3	113.9	114.4	115
240	115.6	116.1	116.7	117.2	117.8	118.3	118.9	119.4	120	120.6
250	121.1	121.7	122.2	122.8	123.3	123.9	124.4	125	125.6	126.1
260	126.7	127.2	127.8	128.3	128.9	129.4	130	130.6	131.1	131.7
270	132 2	132.8	133.3	133.9	134.4	135	135.6	136.1	136.7	137.2
280	137.8	138.3	138.9	139.4	140	140.6	141.1	141.7	142.2	142.8
290	143.3	143.9	144.4	145	145.6	146.1	146.7	147.2	147.8	148.3
300	148.9	149.4	150	150.6	151.1	151.7	152.2	152.8	153.3	153.9
310	154.4	155	155.6	156.1	156.7	157.2	157.8	158.3	158.9	159.4
320	160	160.6	161.1	161.7	162.2	162.8	163.3	163.9	164.4	165
330	165.6	166.1	166.7	167.2	167.8	168.3	168.9	169.4	170	170.6
340	171.1	171.7	172.2	172.8	173.3	173.9	174.4	175	175.6	176.1
350	176.7	177.2	177.8	178.3	178.9	179.4	180	180.6	181.1	181.7
360	182.2	182.8	183.3	183.9	184.4	185	185.6	186.1	186.7	187.2
370	187.8	188.3	188.9	189.4	190	190.6	191.1	191.7	192.2	192.8
380	193.3	193.9	194.4	195	195.6	196.1	196.7	197.2	197.8	198.3
390	198.9	199.4	200	200.6	201.1	201.7	202.2	202.8	203.3	203.9
400	204.4	205	205.6	206.1	206.7	207.2	207.8	208.3	208.9	209.4

TABLE A-5 Wire Table

Gauge no.	Diam, bare (nom)	Diameter over insulation*								lb per 1,000 ft		Area		Resist., ohms per 1,000 ft at 25°C	Gauge no.
		Film-covered†			Polyester-glass-covered			Glass-covered							
		Single	Heavy	Triple	Bare	Single film	Heavy film	Single film	Heavy film	Bare	Heavy film-covered	Circular, mils	sq mm		
14	0.0641	0.0666	0.0682	0.0700	0.0727	0.0746	0.0762	0.0756	0.0772	12.43	15.9	4109	2.08	2.575	14
15	0.0571	0.0594	0.0609	0.0627	0.0627	0.0674	0.0689	0.0684	0.0699	9.858	12.6	3260	1.652	3.247	15
16	0.0508	0.0531	0.0545	0.0562	0.0593	0.0611	0.0625	0.0621	0.0635	7.818	10.05	2581	1.308	4.094	16
17	0.0453	0.0475	0.0488	0.0504	0.0538	0.0555	0.0563	0.0565	0.0578	6.20	6.34	2052	1.040	5.163	17
18	0.0403	0.0424	0.0437	0.0452	0.0487	0.0504	0.0517	0.0514	0.0527	4.92	5.02	1624	0.823	6.51	18
19	0.0359	0.0379	0.0391	0.0406	0.0443	0.0459	0.0471	0.0469	0.0481	3.90	4.00	1289	0.653	8.21	19
20	0.0320	0.0339	0.0351	0.0364	0.0403	0.0419	0.0431	0.0429	0.0441	3.09	3.17	1024	0.519	10.35	20
21	0.0285	0.0303	0.0314	0.0326	0.0368	0.0383	0.0394	0.0393	0.0404	2.45	2.51	812	0.411	13.05	21
22	0.0253	0.0270	0.0281	0.0293	0.0336	0.0350	0.0361	0.0360	0.0371	1.945	1.99	640	0.324	16.46	22
23	0.0226	0.0243	0.0253	0.0264	0.0308	0.0323	0.0333	0.0333	0.0343	1.542	1.58	511	0.259	20.76	23
24	0.0201	0.0217	0.0227	0.0238	0.0268	0.0282	0.0292	0.0277	0.0287	1.223	1.26	404.0	0.2047	26.17	24
25	0.0179	0.0194	0.0203	0.0214	0.0246	0.0259	0.0268	0.0254	0.0263	0.970	0.998	320.4	0.1621	33.00	25
26	0.0159	0.0173	0.0182	0.0193	0.0226	0.0238	0.0247	0.0233	0.0242	0.769	0.793	252.8	0.1282	41.62	26
27	0.0142	0.0156	0.0164	0.0173	0.0208	0.0221	0.0229	0.0216	0.0224	0.610	0.630	201.6	0.1024	52.48	27
28	0.0126	0.0140	0.0147	0.0156	0.0192	0.0205	0.0212	0.0200	0.0207	0.484	0.501	158.8	0.0806	66.17	28
29	0.0113	0.0126	0.0133	0.0142	0.0179	0.0191	0.0198	0.0186	0.0193	0.384	0.396	127.7	0.0649	83.4	29
30	0.0100	0.0112	0.0119	0.0128	0.0166	0.0177	0.0184	0.0172	0.0179	0.304	0.316	100.0	0.0507	105.2	30
31	0.0089	0.0100	0.0108	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.241	0.251	79.2	0.0400	132.7	31
32	0.0080	0.0091	0.0098	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.1913	0.198	64.0	0.0324	167.3	32
33	0.0071	0.0081	0.0088	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.1517	0.158	50.4	0.0253	211.0	33
34	0.0063	0.0072	0.0078	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.1203	0.126	39.7	0.0203	266.0	34
35	0.0056	0.0064	0.0070	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.0954	0.0966	31.4	0.0157	335.5	35
36	0.0050	0.0058	0.0063	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.0757	0.0791	25.0	0.0127	423.0	36
37	0.0045	0.0052	0.0057	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.060	0.0628	20.3	0.0101	533.4	37
38	0.0040	0.0047	0.0051	......	......	......	......	......	......	0.0476	0.0498	16.0	0.0081	672.6	38

* These diameters are all taken from NEMA Standard MW-1000-1967.

† Films include: Formvar, Nyfrom, Nyleze, Polyester, Polythermaleze, ML. Daglas is one form of polyester-glass covering. Glass-covered wire shown above uses a double covering of the glass serving.

TABLE A-6 Natural Sines and Cosines*
(0 to 90° by Tenths, to Four Decimal Places)

Deg	°0.0	°0.1	°0.2	°0.3	°0.4	°0.5	°0.6	°0.7	°0.8	°0.9	
0°	0.0000	0.0017	0.0035	0.0052	0.0070	0.0087	0.0105	0.0122	0.0140	0.0157	89
1	0.0175	0.0192	0.0209	0.0227	0.0244	0.0262	0.0279	0.0297	0.0314	0.0332	88
2	0.0349	0.0366	0.0384	0.0401	0.0419	0.0436	0.0454	0.0471	0.0488	0.0506	87
3	0.0523	0.0541	0.0558	0.0576	0.0593	0.0610	0.0628	0.0645	0.0663	0.0680	86
4	0.0698	0.0715	0.0732	0.0750	0.0767	0.0785	0.0802	0.0819	0.0837	0.0854	85
5	0.0872	0.0889	0.0906	0.0924	0.0941	0.0958	0.0976	0.0993	0.1011	0.1028	84
6	0.1045	0.1063	0.1080	0.1097	0.1115	0.1132	0.1149	0.1167	0.1184	0.1201	83
7	0.1219	0.1236	0.1253	0.1271	0.1288	0.1305	0.1323	0.1340	0.1357	0.1374	82
8	0.1392	0.1409	0.1426	0.1444	0.1461	0.1478	0.1495	0.1513	0.1530	0.1547	81
9	0.1564	0.1582	0.1599	0.1616	0.1633	0.1650	0.1668	0.1685	0.1702	0.1719	80°
10°	0.1736	0.1754	0.1771	0.1788	0.1805	0.1822	0.1840	0.1857	0.1874	0.1891	79
11	0.1908	0.1925	0.1942	0.1959	0.1977	0.1994	0.2011	0.2028	0.2045	0.2062	78
12	0.2079	0.2096	0.2113	0.2130	0.2147	0.2164	0.2181	0.2198	0.2215	0.2232	77
13	0.2250	0.2267	0.2284	0.2300	0.2317	0.2334	0.2351	0.2368	0.2385	0.2402	76
14	0.2419	0.2436	0.2453	0.2470	0.2487	0.2504	0.2521	0.2538	0.2554	0.2571	75
15	0.2588	0.2605	0.2622	0.2639	0.2656	0.2672	0.2689	0.2706	0.2723	0.2740	74
16	0.2756	0.2773	0.2790	0.2807	0.2823	0.2840	0.2857	0.2874	0.2890	0.2907	73
17	0.2924	0.2940	0.2957	0.2974	0.2990	0.3007	0.3024	0.3040	0.3057	0.3074	72
18	0.3090	0.3107	0.3123	0.3140	0.3156	0.3173	0.3190	0.3206	0.3223	0.3239	71
19	0.3256	0.3272	0.3289	0.3305	0.3322	0.3338	0.3355	0.3371	0.3387	0.3404	70°
20°	0.3420	0.3437	0.3453	0.3469	0.3486	0.3502	0.3518	0.3535	0.3551	0.3567	69
21	0.3584	0.3600	0.3616	0.3633	0.3649	0.3665	0.3681	0.3697	0.3714	0.3730	68
22	0.3746	0.3762	0.3778	0.3795	0.3811	0.3827	0.3843	0.3859	0.3875	0.3891	67
23	0.3907	0.3923	0.3939	0.3955	0.3971	0.3987	0.4003	0.4019	0.4035	0.4051	66
24	0.4067	0.4083	0.4099	0.4115	0.4131	0.4147	0.4163	0.4179	0.4195	0.4210	65
25	0.4226	0.4242	0.4258	0.4274	0.4289	0.4305	0.4321	0.4337	0.4352	0.4368	64
26	0.4384	0.4399	0.4415	0.4431	0.4446	0.4462	0.4478	0.4493	0.4509	0.4524	63
27	0.4540	0.4555	0.4571	0.4586	0.4602	0.4617	0.4633	0.4648	0.4664	0.4679	62
28	0.4695	0.4710	0.4726	0.4741	0.4756	0.4772	0.4787	0.4802	0.4818	0.4833	61
29	0.4848	0.4863	0.4879	0.4894	0.4909	0.4924	0.4939	0.4955	0.4970	0.4985	60°
30°	0.5000	0.5015	0.5030	0.5045	0.5060	0.5075	0.5090	0.5105	0.5120	0.5135	59
31	0.5150	0.5165	0.5180	0.5195	0.5210	0.5225	0.5240	0.5255	0.5270	0.5284	58
32	0.5299	0.5314	0.5329	0.5344	0.5358	0.5373	0.5388	0.5402	0.5417	0.5432	57
33	0.5446	0.5461	0.5476	0.5490	0.5505	0.5519	0.5534	0.5548	0.5563	0.5577	56
34	0.5592	0.5606	0.5621	0.5635	0.5650	0.5664	0.5678	0.5693	0.5707	0.5721	55
35	0.5736	0.5750	0.5764	0.5779	0.5793	0.5807	0.5821	0.5835	0.5850	0.5864	54
36	0.5878	0.5892	0.5906	0.5920	0.5934	0.5948	0.5962	0.5976	0.5990	0.6004	53
37	0.6018	0.6032	0.6046	0.6060	0.6074	0.6088	0.6101	0.6115	0.6129	0.6143	52
38	0.6157	0.6170	0.6184	0.6198	0.6211	0.6225	0.6239	0.6252	0.6266	0.6280	51
39	0.6293	0.6307	0.6320	0.6334	0.6347	0.6361	0.6374	0.6388	0.6401	0.6414	50°
40°	0.6428	0.6441	0.6455	0.6468	0.6481	0.6494	0.6508	0.6521	0.6534	0.6547	49
41	0.6561	0.6574	0.6587	0.6600	0.6613	0.6626	0.6639	0.6652	0.6665	0.6678	48
42	0.6691	0.6704	0.6717	0.6730	0.6743	0.6756	0.6769	0.6782	0.6794	0.6807	47
43	0.6820	0.6833	0.6845	0.6858	0.6871	0.6884	0.6896	0.6909	0.6921	0.6934	46
44	0.6947	0.6959	0.6972	0.6984	0.6997	0.7009	0.7022	0.7034	0.7046	0.7059	45
	°1.0	°0.9	°0.8	°0.7	°0.6	°0.5	°0.4	°0.3	°0.2	°0.1	Deg.

* For cosines use right-hand column of degrees and lower line of tenths.

TABLE A-6 Natural Sines and Cosines* (Continued)

Deg	°0.0	°0.1	°0.2	°0.3	°0.4	°0.5	°0.6	°0.7	°0.8	°0.9	
45	0.7071	0.7083	0.7096	0.7108	0.7120	0.7133	0.7145	0.7157	0.7169	0.7181	44
46	0.7193	0.7206	0.7218	0.7230	0.7242	0.7254	0.7266	0.7278	0.7290	0.7302	43
47	0.7314	0.7325	0.7337	0.7349	0.7361	0.7373	0.7385	0.7396	0.7408	0.7420	42
48	0.7431	0.7443	0.7455	0.7466	0.7478	0.7490	0.7501	0.7513	0.7524	0.7536	41
49	0.7547	0.7559	0.7570	0.7581	0.7593	0.7604	0.7615	0.7627	0.7638	0.7649	40°
50°	0.7660	0.7672	0.7683	0.7694	0.7705	0.7716	0.7727	0.7738	0.7749	0.7760	39
51	0.7771	0.7782	0.7793	0.7804	0.7815	0.7826	0.7837	0.7848	0.7859	0.7869	38
52	0.7880	0.7891	0.7902	0.7912	0.7923	0.7934	0.7944	0.7955	0.7965	0.7976	37
53	0.7986	0.7997	0.8007	0.8018	0.8028	0.8039	0.8049	0.8059	0.8070	0.8080	36
54	0.8090	0.8100	0.8111	0.8121	0.8131	0.8141	0.8151	0.8161	0.8171	0.8181	35
55	0.8192	0.8202	0.8211	0.8221	0.8231	0.8241	0.8251	0.8261	0.8271	0.8281	34
56	0.8290	0.8300	0.8310	0.8320	0.8329	0.8339	0.8348	0.8358	0.8368	0.8377	33
57	0.8387	0.8396	0.8406	0.8415	0.8425	0.8434	0.8443	0.8453	0.8462	0.8471	32
58	0.8480	0.8490	0.8499	0.8508	0.8517	0.8526	0.8536	0.8545	0.8554	0.8563	31
59	0.8572	0.8581	0.8590	0.8599	0.8607	0.8616	0.8625	0.8634	0.8643	0.8652	30°
60°	0.8660	0.8669	0.8678	0.8686	0.8695	0.8704	0.8712	0.8721	0.8729	0.8738	29
61	0.8746	0.8755	0.8763	0.8771	0.8780	0.8788	0.8796	0.8805	0.8813	0.8821	28
62	0.8829	0.8838	0.8846	0.8854	0.8862	0.8870	0.8878	0.8886	0.8894	0.8902	27
63	0.8910	0.8918	0.8926	0.8934	0.8942	0.8949	0.8957	0.8965	0.8973	0.8980	26
64	0.8988	0.8996	0.9003	0.9011	0.9018	0.9026	0.9033	0.9041	0.9048	0.9056	25
65	0.9063	0.9070	0.9078	0.9085	0.9092	0.9100	0.9107	0.9114	0.9121	0.9128	24
66	0.9135	0.9143	0.9150	0.9157	0.9164	0.9171	0.9178	0.9184	0.9191	0.9198	23
67	0.9205	0.9212	0.9219	0.9225	0.9232	0.9239	0.9245	0.9252	0.9259	0.9265	22
68	0.9272	0.9278	0.9285	0.9291	0.9298	0.9304	0.9311	0.9317	0.9323	0.9330	21
69	0.9336	0.9342	0.9348	0.9354	0.9361	0.9367	0.9373	0.9379	0.9385	0.9391	20°
70°	0.9397	0.9403	0.9409	0.9415	0.9421	0.9426	0.9432	0.9438	0.9444	0.9449	19
71	0.9455	0.9461	0.9466	0.9472	0.9478	0.9483	0.9489	0.9494	0.9500	0.9505	18
72	0.9511	0.9516	0.9521	0.9527	0.9532	0.9537	0.9542	0.9548	0.9553	0.9558	17
73	0.9563	0.9568	0.9573	0.9578	0.9583	0.9588	0.9593	0.9598	0.9603	0.9608	16
74	0.9613	0.9617	0.9622	0.9627	0.9632	0.9636	0.9641	0.9646	0.9650	0.9655	15
75	0.9659	0.9664	0.9668	0.9673	0.9677	0.9681	0.9686	0.9690	0.9694	0.9699	14
76	0.9703	0.9707	0.9711	0.9715	0.9720	0.9724	0.9728	0.9732	0.9736	0.9740	13
77	0.9744	0.9748	0.9751	0.9755	0.9759	0.9763	0.9767	0.9770	0.9774	0.9778	12
78	0.9781	0.9785	0.9789	0.9792	0.9796	0.9799	0.9803	0.9806	0.9810	0.9813	11
79	0.9816	0.9820	0.9823	0.9826	0.9829	0.9833	0.9836	0.9839	0.9842	0.9845	10°
80°	0.9848	0.9851	0.9854	0.9857	0.9860	0.9863	0.9866	0.9869	0.9871	0.9874	9
81	0.9877	0.9880	0.9882	0.9885	0.9888	0.9890	0.9893	0.9895	0.9898	0.9900	8
82	0.9903	0.9905	0.9907	0.9910	0.9912	0.9914	0.9917	0.9919	0.9921	0.9923	7
83	0.9925	0.9928	0.9930	0.9932	0.9934	0.9936	0.9938	0.9940	0.9942	0.9943	6
84	0.9945	0.9947	0.9949	0.9951	0.9952	0.9954	0.9956	0.9957	0.9959	0.9960	5
85	0.9962	0.9963	0.9965	0.9966	0.9968	0.9969	0.9971	0.9972	0.9973	0.9974	4
86	0.9976	0.9977	0.9978	0.9979	0.9980	0.9981	0.9982	0.9983	0.9984	0.9985	3
87	0.9986	0.9987	0.9988	0.9989	0.9990	0.9990	0.9991	0.9992	0.9993	0.9993	2
88	0.9994	0.9995	0.9995	0.9996	0.9996	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9998	0.9998	1
89	0.9998	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	0°
	°1.0	°0.9	°0.8	°0.7	°0.6	°0.5	°0.4	°0.3	°0.2	°0.1	Deg.

---

* For cosines use right-hand column of degrees and lower line of tenths.

TABLE A-7 Fractional Inches to Millimeters and Decimal Inches

in.	mm	in.	in.	mm	in.
1/64	0.3969	0.015625	33/64	13.0969	0.515625
1/32	0.7938	0.031250	17/32	13.4937	0.531250
3/64	1.1906	0.046875	35/64	13.8906	0.546875
1/16	1.5875	0.062500	9/16	14.2875	0.562500
5/64	1.9844	0.078125	37/64	14.6844	0.578125
3/32	2.3812	0.093750	19/32	15.0812	0.593750
7/64	2.7781	0.109375	39/64	15.4781	0.609375
1/8	3.1750	0.125000	5/8	15.8750	0.625000
9/64	3.5719	0.140625	41/64	16.2719	0.640625
5/32	3.9688	0.156250	21/32	16.6687	0.656250
11/64	4.3656	0.171875	43/64	17.0656	0.671875
3/16	4.7625	0.187500	11/16	17.4625	0.687500
13/64	5.1594	0.203125	45/64	17.8594	0.703125
7/32	5.5563	0.218750	23/32	18.2563	0.718750
15/64	5.9531	0.234375	47/64	18.6531	0.734375
1/4	6.3500	0.250000	3/4	19.0500	0.750000
17/64	6.7469	0.265625	49/64	19.4469	0.765625
9/32	7.1438	0.281250	25/32	19.8438	0.781250
19/64	7.5406	0.296875	51/64	20.2406	0.796875
5/16	7.9375	0.312500	13/16	20.6375	0.812500
21/64	8.3344	0.328125	53/64	21.0344	0.828125
11/32	8.7312	0.343750	27/32	21.4312	0.843750
23/64	9.1281	0.359375	55/64	21.8281	0.859375
3/8	9.5250	0.375000	7/8	22.2250	0.875000
25/64	9.9219	0.390625	57/64	22.6219	0.890625
13/32	10.3187	0.406250	29/32	23.0187	0.906250
27/64	10.7156	0.421875	59/64	23.4156	0.921875
7/16	11.1125	0.437500	15/16	23.8125	0.937500
29/64	11.5094	0.453125	61/64	24.2094	0.953125
15/32	11.9063	0.468750	31/32	24.6062	0.968750
31/64	12.3031	0.484375	63/64	25.0031	0.984375
1/2	12.7000	0.500000	1	25.4000	1.00000

TABLE A-8 Whole Inches to Millimeters

in.	mm									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	000.0	25.4	50.8	76.2	101.6	127.0	152.4	177.8	203.2	228.6
1	254.0	279.4	304.8	330.2	355.6	381.0	406.4	431.8	457.2	482.6
2	508.0	533.4	558.8	584.2	609.6	635.0	660.4	685.8	711.2	736.6
3	762.0	787.4	812.8	838.2	863.6	889.0	914.4	939.8	965.2	990.6
4	1016.0	1041.4	1066.8	1092.2	1117.6	1143.0	1168.4	1193.8	1219.2	1244.6
5	1270.0	1295.4	1320.8	1346.2	1371.6	1397.0	1422.4	1447.8	1473.2	1498.6
6	1524.0	1549.4	1574.8	1600.2	1625.6	1651.0	1676.4	1701.8	1727.2	1752.6
7	1778.0	1803.4	1828.8	1854.2	1879.6	1905.0	1930.4	1955.8	1981.2	2006.6
8	2032.0	2057.4	2082.8	2108.2	2133.6	2159.0	2184.4	2209.8	2235.2	2260.6
9	2286.0	2311.4	2336.8	2362.2	2387.6	2413.0	2438.4	2463.8	2489.2	2514.6
10	2540.0	2565.4	2590.8	2616.2	2641.6	2667.0	2692.4	2717.8	2743.2	2768.6
11	2794.0	2819.4	2844.8	2870.2	2895.6	2921.0	2946.4	2971.8	2997.2	3022.6
12	3048.0	3073.4	3098.8	3124.2	3149.6	3175.0	3200.4	3225.8	3251.2	3276.6
13	3302.0	3327.4	3352.8	3378.2	3403.6	3429.0	3454.4	3479.8	3505.2	3530.6
14	3556.0	3581.4	3606.8	3632.2	3657.6	3683.0	3708.4	3733.8	3759.2	3784.6
15	3810.0	3835.4	3860.8	3886.2	3911.6	3937.0	3962.4	3987.8	4013.2	3038.6
16	4064.0	4089.4	4114.8	4140.2	4165.6	4191.0	4216.4	4241.8	4267.2	4292.6
17	4318.0	4343.4	4368.8	4394.2	4419.6	4445.0	4470.4	4495.8	4521.2	4546.6
18	4572.0	4597.4	4622.8	4648.2	4673.6	4699.0	4724.4	4749.8	4775.2	4800.6
19	4826.0	4851.4	4876.8	4902.2	4927.6	4953.0	4978.4	5003.8	5029.2	5054.6

Example: 124 in. = 3149.6 mm.

TABLE A-9 Millimeters to Inches

mm	in.									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0.000	0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
1	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
2	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
3	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.535
4	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
5	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
6	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
7	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.031	3.071	3.110
8	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
9	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898
10	3.937	3.976	4.016	4.055	4.094	4.134	4.173	4.213	4.252	4.291
11	4.331	4.370	4.409	4.449	4.488	4.528	4.567	4.606	4.646	4.685
12	4.724	4.764	4.803	4.843	4.882	4.921	4.961	5.000	5.039	5.079
13	5.118	5.157	5.197	5.236	5.276	5.315	5.354	5.394	5.433	5.472
14	5.512	5.551	5.591	5.630	5.669	5.709	5.748	5.787	5.827	5.866
15	5.906	5.945	5.984	6.024	6.063	6.102	6.142	6.181	6.220	6.260
16	6.299	6.339	6.378	6.417	6.457	6.496	6.535	6.575	6.614	6.654
17	6.693	6.732	6.772	6.811	6.850	6.890	6.929	6.969	7.008	7.047
18	7.087	7.126	7.165	7.205	7.244	7.283	7.323	7.362	7.402	7.441
19	7.480	7.520	7.559	7.598	7.638	7.677	7.717	7.756	7.795	7.835
20	7.874	7.913	7.953	7.992	8.031	8.071	8.110	8.150	8.189	8.228
21	8.268	8.307	8.346	8.386	8.425	8.465	8.504	8.543	8.583	8.622
22	8.661	8.701	8.740	8.780	8.819	8.858	8.898	8.937	9.876	9.016
23	9.055	9.094	9.134	9.173	9.213	9.252	9.291	9.331	9.370	9.409
24	9.449	9.488	9.528	9.567	9.606	9.646	9.685	9.724	9.764	9.803
25	9.843	9.882	9.921	9.961	10.000	10.039	10.079	10.118	10.157	10.197
26	10.236	10.276	10.315	10.354	10.394	10.433	10.472	10.512	10.551	10.591
27	10.630	10.669	10.709	10.748	10.787	10.827	10.866	10.906	10.945	10.984
28	11.024	11.063	11.102	11.142	11.181	11.220	11.260	11.299	11.339	11.378
29	11.417	11.457	11.496	11.535	11.575	11.614	11.654	11.693	11.732	11.772
30	11.811	11.850	11.890	11.929	11.969	12.008	12.047	12.087	12.126	12.165
31	12.205	12.244	12.283	12.323	12.362	12.402	12.441	12.480	12.520	12.559
32	12.598	12.638	12.677	12.717	12.756	12.795	12.835	12.874	12.913	12.953
33	12.992	13.031	13.071	13.110	13.150	13.189	13.228	13.268	13.307	13.346
34	13.386	13.425	13.465	13.504	13.543	13.583	13.622	13.661	13.701	13.740
35	13.781	13.819	13.858	13.898	13.937	13.976	14.016	14.055	14.094	14.134
36	14.173	14.213	14.252	14.291	14.331	14.370	14.409	14.449	14.488	14.528
37	14.567	14.606	14.646	14.685	14.724	14.764	14.803	14.843	14.882	14.921
38	14.961	15.000	15.039	15.079	15.118	15.157	15.197	15.236	15.276	15.315
39	15.354	15.394	15.433	15.472	15.512	15.551	15.591	15.630	15.669	15.709
40	15.748	15.787	15.827	15.866	15.906	15.945	15.984	16.024	16.063	16.102
41	16.142	16.181	16.220	16.260	16.299	16.339	16.378	16.417	16.457	16.496
42	16.535	16.575	16.614	16.654	16.693	16.732	16.772	16.811	16.850	16.890
43	16.929	16.969	17.008	17.047	17.087	17.126	17.165	17.205	17.244	17.283
44	17.323	17.362	17.402	17.441	17.480	17.520	17.559	17.598	17.638	17.677
45	17.717	17.756	17.795	17.835	17.874	17.913	17.953	17.992	18.031	18.071
46	18.110	18.150	18.189	18.228	18.268	18.307	18.346	18.386	18.425	18.465
47	18.504	18.543	18.583	18.622	18.661	18.701	18.740	18.780	18.819	18.858
48	18.898	18.937	18.976	19.016	19.055	19.094	19.134	19.173	19.213	19.252
49	19.291	19.331	19.370	19.409	19.449	19.488	19.528	19.567	19.606	19.646
50	19.685	19.724	19.764	19.803	19.843	19.882	19.921	19.961	20.000	20.039

Example: 237 mm = 9.331 in.

Glossary

As this book is being written and produced, definitions are in the process of being rewritten by three organizations: (1) the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE); (2) the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA); and (3) the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC). Numerals following the definitions below indicate that the definition was abstracted, with or without editing, from one of the interim wordings of the definition proposed by the organization referenced; hence, a definition given below may not have the exact wording of the definition that is finally published. For terms not given below, consult the Index, which gives references to a great many terms that are defined or explained in the text of the book but are not given in the Glossary.

Adjustable-speed motor A motor, the speed of which can be adjusted to any value in a specified range. (3)

Adjustable varying-speed motor A motor, the speed of which can be adjusted gradually, but when once adjusted for a given load will vary in considerable degree with change in load; an example is a dc compound-wound motor adjusted by field control. (2)

Armature That member of an electric machine in which an alternating voltage is generated by virtue of relative motion with respect to a magnetic flux field. In dc, universal, ac series, and repulsion-type machines, the term is commonly applied to the entire rotor. (1)

Asynchronous machine An alternating-current machine in which the rotor does not turn at synchronous speed. (1)

Back (of a motor or generator) The end which carries the coupling or driving pulley. (2)

Base speed (of an adjustable-speed motor) The lowest rated speed obtained at rated load and rated voltage at the temperature rise specified on the nameplate. (2)

Bracket (*See* **End shield.**)

Breakdown torque The maximum shaft output torque which an induction motor (or a synchronous motor operating as an induction motor) develops when the primary winding is connected for running operation, at normal operating temperature, with rated voltage applied at rated frequency. (*See also* Fig. 18-9.) A motor with a continually increasing torque as the speed decreases to standstill is not considered to have a breakdown torque. (1)

Brush A conducting part, generally fixed, which provides electrical connection through sliding contact with a part moving relatively to it. (3)

Brush holder A structure which supports a brush and which enables it to be maintained in contact under pressure with the sliding surface. (3)

Capacitor (condenser) A device, the primary purpose of which is to introduce capacitance into an ac circuit.

Capacitor motor A single-phase induction motor with a main winding and an auxiliary winding connected in series with a capacitor. The capacitor may be directly in the auxiliary circuit, or connected into it through a transformer. (1)

Capacitor-start motor A capacitor motor in which the auxiliary winding is energized only during the starting operation. The auxiliary-winding circuit is open-circuited during running operation. (1)

Code letter A letter which appears on the nameplate of ac motors to show their locked-rotor kva per horsepower. (*See also* Art. 1-16, Table 1-7.) (2)

Collector ring A conducting ring against which brushes bear, used to enable current to flow from one part of a circuit to another by sliding contact. (3) Also called **slipring.**

Commutator An assembly of conducting members insulated from one another, against which brushes bear, used to enable current to flow one part of a circuit to another by sliding contact. (3)

Compensated series motor A series motor with a compensating field winding. Note: The compensating field winding and the series field winding may be combined into one field winding. (2)

Compound-wound motor [*See* Art. 13-1(3).]

Constant-speed motor A motor in which the speed is constant or substantially constant over the normal range of loads, e.g., a synchronous motor, an induction motor with a small slip, or a dc shunt motor with constant excitation. (1)

Definite-purpose motor A motor designed for use on a particular type of application, having service conditions which may be other than usual, with operating characteristics and mechanical construction required by the application. (1)

Design "N" motor A fractional-horsepower single-phase motor, designed for full-voltage starting with locked-rotor current not exceeding specified values, which are lower than for design "O" motors. (For values, *see* Table 19-1.) (1)

Design "O" motor A fractional-horsepower single-phase induction motor, designed for full-voltage starting with locked-rotor current not exceeding specified values, which are higher than for design "N" motors. (1)

Drip-proof machine An open machine in which the ventilating openings are so constructed that successful operation is not interfered with when drops of liquid or solid particles strike or enter the enclosure at any angle from 0 to 15° downward from the vertical. (2)

Duty A statement of loads, including no-load and rest and deenergized periods, to which the machine is subjected, including their duration and sequence in time. (3)

NOTE: *Heavy duty* is often used popularly to denote an application requiring high locked-rotor torque and having high intermittent overloads.

Efficiency The ratio of useful power output to the power input, expressed in the same units.

Efficiency, apparent The ratio of the power output in watts to the total input in volt-amperes. It is also the product of the efficiency multiplied by the power factor. Used only in connection with ac machines.

Either-rotation motor A reversible motor (q.v.).

Electric Containing, producing, arising from, actuated by, or carrying electricity and capable of so doing. Examples: Electric eel, energy, motor, vehicle, wave. (1)

Electrical Related to, pertaining to, or associated with electricity, but not having its properties or characteristics. Examples: Electrical engineer, handbook, insulator, rating, school unit. (1)

Encapsulated windings, machine with An ac squirrel-cage machine having random windings filled with an insulating resin which also forms a protective coating. This type of machine is intended for exposure to more severe environmental conditions than usual varnish treatments can withstand. Other parts of the machine may require protection against such environmental conditions. (2)

End shield A shield secured to the frame and adapted to protect the windings and to support the bearing, but including no part thereof. Also called **end bell, bracket.**

Explosion-proof machine A totally enclosed machine whose enclosure is designed and constructed to withstand an explosion of a specified gas or vapor which may occur within it and to prevent the ignition of the specified gas or vapor surrounding the machine by sparks, flashes, or explosions of the specified gas or vapor which may occur within the machine casing. (2)

NOTE: *See also National Electrical Code* Article 500—For Hazardous Locations, Class I, Groups A, B, C, and D.

Fractional-horsepower motor A motor built in a frame smaller than that having an open continuous rating of 1 hp at 1700–1800 rpm. [*See also* Art. 1-1(1).] In general, this is in NEMA frame size 56 or smaller.

Front (of a motor or generator) The end opposite the coupling or drive end. (2)

General-purpose ac motor An ac motor built in standard ratings, with standard performance and mechanical construction, offered for general use. (*See also* Art. 19-1.)

Guarded machine An open machine in which all openings giving direct access to live metal or rotating parts (except smooth rotating surfaces) are limited in size by the structural parts or by screens, baffles, grilles, expanded metal, or other means to prevent accidental contact with hazardous parts. Openings giving direct access to such live or rotating parts shall not permit the passage of a cylindrical rod ¾ in. in diameter. (2)

Hysteresis motor (*See* Art. 11-10.)

Induction generator An induction machine when driven above synchronous speed by an external source of mechanical power. (3)

Induction motor An ac motor in which a primary winding (usually on the stator) is connected to the electric power source and a secondary member (usually the rotor) which carries induced current. (1)

Inductor machine A synchronous machine in which one member, usually stationary, carries main and exciting windings effectively disposed relative to each other, and in which the other member, usually rotating, is without windings but carries a number of regular projections. Permanent magnets may be used instead of the exciting winding. (3) (*See also* Arts. 11-15 to 11-18.)

Integral-horsepower motor A motor built in a frame having a continuous rating of 1 hp, open type, at 1700–1800 rpm, or in a larger frame. In general, this is in NEMA frame size 140 or larger.

Journal (of a shaft) That part of a shaft which is intended to rotate inside a bearing.

Locked-rotor current The maximum measured steady-state current taken from the line with the motor at rest, for all angular positions of its rotor, with rated voltage and frequency applied. (3)

Locked-rotor torque The minimum torque which a motor will provide with the rotor stationary, at any angular position of the rotor, at a winding temperature of 25°C ± 5°C, with rated voltage applied at rated frequency. (1)

Multispeed motor A motor which can be operated at any one of two or more definite speeds, each being practically independent of the load. For example, a dc motor with two armature windings or an induction motor with windings capable of various pole groupings. In the case of multispeed permanent-split capacitor and shaded pole motors, the speeds are dependent upon the load. (2)

Open machine A machine having ventilating openings which permit passage of external cooling air over and around the windings of the machine. (2)

Permanent-split capacitor motor A capacitor motor with the same value of effective capacitance for both starting and running operation. (1)

Pull-in torque (of a synchronous motor) The maximum constant torque against which the motor will pull its connected load into synchronism at rated voltage and frequency, when its normal field excitation is applied. (2)

NOTE: Pull-in torque is affected by the inertia of the connected load. *See also* Art. 11-4(4).

Pull-out torque (of a synchronous machine) The maximum sustained torque which the machine will develop at synchronous speed with rated voltage applied at rated frequency and with normal excitation. (1)

Pull-up torque (of an ac motor) The minimum torque developed by the motor during the period of acceleration from rest to the speed at which breakdown torque occurs with rated voltage applied at rated frequency. (1)

Rating The whole of the numerical values of the electrical and mechanical quantities with their duration and sequences, assigned to the machine by the manufacturer and stated on the rating plate, the machine complying with the specified conditions.

Reactor A device, the primary purpose of which is to introduce reactance into an ac circuit.

Reactor-start motor A form of split-phase motor, using an external reactor in series with the main winding for starting.

Regulation The amount of change in voltage or speed resulting from a load change. (3) Usually the change is taken from no load to rated load, and the result expressed in percent of the rated-load value.

Reluctance motor (*See* Art. 11-3.)

Repulsion induction motor (*See* Art. 9-2.)

Repulsion motor (*See* Art. 9-1.)

Repulsion-start induction motor (*See* Art. 8-1.)

Resistance-start split-phase motor A split-phase motor using an external resistor in the starting-winding circuit.

Reversible motor A motor which is capable of being started from rest and operated in either direction of rotation.

Reversing motor A motor capable of being reversed, even while running at normal speed, by changing electrical connections.

Rotor The rotating part of a machine. The shaft may or may not be included.

Semiguarded machine An open machine in which part of the ventilating openings in the machine, usually in the top half, are guarded as in the case of a "guarded machine" but the others are left open. (2)

Series-wound motor A commutator motor in which the field-circuit and armature circuit are connected in series. (1)

Service factor A multiplier which, when applied to rated power, indicates a permissible power loading which may be carried under the conditions specified for the service factor. (*See also* Table 1-8.) (1)

Servomotor, ac (*See* Art. 16-1.)

Shaded-pole motor (*See* Art. 10-1.)

Shunt-wound motor [*See* Art. 13-1 (1).]

Special-purpose motor A motor with special operating characteristics or special mechanical construction, or both, designed for a particular application and not falling within the definition of a general-purpose or definite-purpose motor.

Splashproof machine An open machine in which the ventilating openings are so constructed that successful operation is not interfered with when drops of liquid or solid particles strike or enter the enclosure at any angle not greater than 100° downward from the vertical. (2)

Split-phase motor (*See* Art. 4-1.)

Starting torque (*See* **Locked-rotor torque**)

Stator The portion of a machine which includes the stationary magnetic parts with their associated windings. (3)

Stepper motor (*See* Art. 15-1.)

Subfractional-horsepower motor Any motor rated at less than $\frac{1}{20}$ hp. It is usually rated in millihorsepower.

Switching torque The minimum external torque developed by a motor as it accelerates through switch operating speed. Applies only to motors with automatic connection-change means for starting. (*See also* Fig. 18-9.)

Synchronous induction motor A wound-rotor induction motor to which dc excitation is supplied when it approaches synchronous speed, enabling it to start as an induction motor and operate as a synchronous motor. (1)

Synchronous machine An ac machine in which is generated a voltage whose frequency is proportional to the speed of the machine. Its field is excited by direct current or by a permanent magnet. (1)

Synchronous motor A synchronous machine which transforms electric power into mechanical power. (1)

Thermal protector A protective device for assembly as an integral part of the machine and which, when properly applied, protects the machine against dangerous overheating due to overload and, in a motor, failure to start. (2)

Thermally protected These words, on the nameplate of a motor, indicate that the motor is provided with a thermal protector. (2)

Torque A force which produces, or tends to produce, rotation. Common units are pound-feet, ounce-feet, ounce-inches, kg-cm, and newton-meters. A force of 1 ounce at a radius of 1 foot produces a torque of 1 ounce-foot.

Torque motor A motor designed to exert torque through a limited movement or in a stalled position. (3)

Totally enclosed fan-cooled machine A totally enclosed machine equipped for exterior cooling by means of a fan or fans integral with the machine but external to the enclosing parts. (2)

Totally enclosed machine A machine so enclosed as to prevent the free exchange of air between the inside and the outside of the case but not sufficiently enclosed to be airtight. (2)

Totally enclosed nonventilated machine A totally enclosed machine which is not provided with an external cooling fan.

Two-value capacitor motor A capacitor motor using different values of effective capacitance, one for starting operation and the other for running operation. (1)

Universal motor (*See* Art. 12-1.)

Varying-speed motor A motor the speed of which varies appreciably with the load, ordinarily decreasing when the load increases. For example, a series or repulsion motor.

Waterproof machine A totally enclosed machine so constructed that it will exclude water applied in the form of a stream from a hose, except that leakage may occur around the shaft provided it is prevented from entering the oil reservoir and provision is made for automatically draining the machine. The means for automatic draining may be a check valve or a tapped hole at the lowest part of the frame which will serve for application of a drain pipe. (2)

NOTE: A common form of the test for a waterproof machine is to play on the machine a stream of water from a hose with a 1-inch nozzle delivering at least 65 gallons per minute, from a distance of about 10 feet, from any direction, for a period of not less than 5 minutes.

Wound-rotor induction motor An induction motor in which a primary winding on one member (usually the stator) is connected to an ac power source and a secondary polyphase coil winding on the other member (usually the rotor) carries alternating current produced by electromagnetic induction. The terminations of the rotor winding are usually connected to collector rings.

Index

Index

Adem, A. A., 260
Adjustable-speed motors, definition of, 452
Adjustable varying-speed motors, definition of, 452
Adkins, Bernard, 52
Agnoff, Charles, 381
Aherne, John M., 344
AIEE Transactions, 51, 52, 97, 98, 131, 132, 144, 165, 184, 214, 236, 237, 259 296, 344, 381, 410
Air-conditioning condenser motors, 425
Alternating current, nature of, 3
American Bosch Arma Corp., 6, 276, 278
American Process Co., 6
Ametek/Lamb Electric, 6, 18
Amperes, 30
  ac: definition of, 31
    maximum or peak value of, 31
    as rms or effective value, 31
  dc, definition of, 30
Amphenol Controls Div., Amphenol-Borg Electronics Corp., 6, 313, 328
Anderson, R. L., 344
Anderson, W. A., 237
Angst, G., 131
Appleman, W. R., 131, 184
Application tests, 408
Armature, definition of, 452
Armature windings:
  lap, 175
    coil connections of, to commutator, 176
  in repulsion-type motors, 175
  testing, 176
  in universal motors, 251
    back-lead windings, 253
      armature connections of, to commutator, 254
    front-lead windings, 251
      armature connections of, to commutator, 252
    refinishing the commutator, 254

Armature windings: in universal motors (*Cont.*):
    rewinding and reconnecting, 253
      checking, 255
  wave, 176
    coil connections of, to commutator, 177
Arrow-Hart and Hegeman switches, 156
Ashland Electric Products, Inc., 6, 18, 222, 227, 228
Asynchronous machine, definition of, 452
Automation, 326

Back of a motor or generator, defined, 453
Back rectifier, 289
Bailey, Benjamin F., 131, 144
Baldor Electric Co., 6
Barber-Colman Co., 6, 18, 197, 208, 210–213, 223, 313
Base speed of an adjustable-speed motor, definition of, 453
Basis of rating induction motors, tables of, 25, 26
Bassett, E. D., 131
Baty, Gordon, 326
Baum, John L., 198, 214
Bearings, 345
  ball: construction, 351
      illustration of, 351
    service and maintenance for, 353
  sleeve: construction, 345
      illustrations of, 346, 347, 349
    Permawick, 348
      illustrations of, 349
      table of recommendations for, 348
    self-aligning, 348
      illustration of, 203
    service and maintenance for, 350
Beau Motor Div., UMC Electronics Co., 16
Bekey, A., 237
Belted fans and blowers, motors for, 424
Bifilar windings, 233, 319
Blake, Bond M., 344
Bodine Electric Co., 6, 18, 222, 292, 293, 380, 381
Boothby, C. R., 98, 131
Bracket (*see* End shield)
Brailsford & Co., 6, 18, 280, 281, 313
Branson, W. J., 51
Braymer, Daniel H., 65, 184, 214, 311
Breakdown torque, defined, 394, 453
Bremer, E. B., 381
Brevel Products Corp., 6, 18, 207
Bristol Motors, Div. of Vocaline, 313
Brook Motor Corp., 6, 18
Brown-Brockmeyer Co. (*see* Dyna Corp.)
Brush, definition of, 453
Brush holder, definition of, 453
Buchanan, L. W., 98, 132
Button, C, T., 52

Canadian Standards Association (CSA), 34, 35
Capacitor (condenser), definition of, 453
Capacitor motors, definition of, 99, 453
Capacitor-start motors, 99
  capacitor-starting principle of, 102
    compared with split-phase starting, 102
  changing to a split-phase motor, 128
  cutaway view of, 101
  definite-purpose, 423, 424, 426, 428, 430
  definition of, 99, 453
  dual-voltage, 113, 115
    elementary principles of, 113
    reasons for, 113
    stator connection diagram for, 122
    thermal protection of, 115, 122
      vector diagram of locked-rotor currents for, 118
      wiring and line connection diagrams for, 119–121
    winding practices for, 114
    wiring and line connection diagrams for, 116
  electrolytic capacitors for (*see* Electrolytic capacitors)
  half-voltage starting winding for, 123
  with magnetically operated switch, 124
  regeneration in, causes and remedies for, 129
  replacement of capacitor in, 108
  reversing motors for, 125
  rewinding, 126
    for different frequency, 128
    for different torques, 127
    for different voltage, 126

Capacitor-start motors (*Cont.*):
  schematic representation of, 100
  single-voltage, 109, 110
    thermally protected, 111
      wiring and line connection diagrams for, 112
    wiring and line connection diagrams for, 111
  speed-torque curve for, 104
  starting switch for, purpose of, 103
  stator connection diagrams for, 112
  "swing" connection for, 123
  terminal board in capacitor of, 123
  torque characteristics of, 104
  two-speed pole-changing, 124
  type-letter designations of, 6
Capacitors, electrolytic (*see* Electrolytic capacitors)
Carrier Corp., 365
Carter Motor Co., 8
Carville, T. E. M., 434
Cellar drainer motors, 425
Century Electric Co., 8, 18, 152, 156, 351
Chang, S. S. L., 214, 237
Chi Yung Lin, 237
Chord factors, table of, 308
Clifton Div. of Litton Industries, 313
Cochran, E. V., 237
Code letters on nameplate, 33, 453
  locked-rotor-indicating, table of, 33
Collector rings, definition of, 453
Commutators:
  care of, 78, 183
  definition of, 453
  radial and axial types of, 178
  refinishing, 254
  sectional views of, 178, 180
  undercutting, 178
Compensated series motor, 453
  (*See also* Universal motors, compensated)
Compound-wound motors, 262, 453
Concentric windings, 53
  distribution factors for, 95
    table of, 96
  effective conductors in, 95
  machine-wound, for polyphase motors, 308
Connection diagrams, necessity for different types, 55
Consequent-pole windings, 62, 82
Constant-speed motors, definition of, 453
Constructional features, general, 345
Control Engineering, 344
Controls Co. of America, 8, 18, 198, 203
Conversion tables:
  for °F to °C, 445
  for units of power, 443
  for units of torque, energy work, 444
  (*See also* Metric Conversion tables)
Covo, A., 131
Craig Corp., 313
Crowell designs, Inc., 8, 18, 276
CYCLONOME motors (*see* Stepper motors, CYCLONOME)

Dailey, Jack R., 326
Davis, Sidney, 344
Dawes, Chester L., 38
Dayton Electric Mfg. Co., 8
Deeley, Paul McKnight, 131
Definite-purpose motors, 412, 421
  for air-conditioning condensers and evaporator fans, 425
  for belted fans and blowers, 424
  for cellar drainers and sump pumps, 425
  for coolant pumps, 430
  for deep-well pumps, 430
  definition of, 453
  for domestic oil burners, 427
  for gasoline-dispensing pumps, 426
  for hermetic refrigeration compressors, 423
  for home-laundry equipment, 86
  for jet pumps, 428
  low-inertia servo industrial instrument motors, 422
  permanent-split capacitor industrial-instrument motors, 422
    characteristics of, table of, 422
  for shaft-mounted fans and blowers, 423
Delco Products, Div. of General Motors, 8, 18, 29, 89, 151, 152, 356
Design "N" motors, definition of, 453
Design "O" motors, definition of, 453
Diamond, Al, 344
Dickin-Zannger, C. W., 260

Diehl Mfg. Co. (*see* Singer Co., The)
Diode, 286
Direct-current motors, 261
  application characteristics of, 268
  applications for, 261
  armature windings in (*see* Armature windings)
  brushes for, 295
  definite-purpose, 424, 426, 428, 430
  for electric trucks, 274
    wiring and line connections, 275
  essential parts of, 263
  for golf-bag carts, illustration of, 275
  how to reverse, 295
  illustrations of, 263, 272, 275, 276
  intended for use on adjustable-voltage electronic power supplies, 291
  marine service, 275
    illustration of, 276
  military service, 271
    illustration of, 272
  neutral position, finding, 295
  operation on rectified ac, 290
  principles of operation, 264
    armature reaction, 266
    basic performance equations, 265
    counter emf, 265
    interpoles, 266
    torque, how it is developed, 264
  ratings, 268
  reversing motors, 272
    schematic diagram of connections, 272
  schematic representations of, 262
  special purpose, 271
  speed, how to change without rewinding, 294
  speed changes due to heating, 269
  speed changes due to load, 268
    table of, 269
  terminal markings, 269
  transistor-commutated, 280
    Brailsford motor, 280
      schematic diagram for, 281
    Cramer motor, 283
    Hall effect motor, 282
      schematic diagram for, 282
  two-speed motor, 273
    performance curves for, 274
Direct-current motors, two speed motor (*Cont.*):
    wiring and connections for, 274
  type-letter designations for, 6
  types of, 261
  wiring and line connections for, 269, 270
Direct-current motors, compound, 267
  how they work, 267
Direct-current motors, permanent-magnet, 276
  (*See also* Permanant-magnet motors)
Direct-current motors, series, 267
  how it works, 267
Direct-current motors, shunt, 267
  how it works, 267
Direct-current motors, split-series, 262, 271
Direct-current motors, timing, 278
  (*See also* Timing motors, dc)
Distribution charts, 56, 62, 310, 311
Distribution factors:
  concentric windings, 95
    table of, 96
  polyphase windings, 308
    table of, 309
Doerr Electric Corp., 8, 18
Douglas, J. F. H., 237
Drip-proof machine, definition of, 453
Dudley, A. M., 311
Duty, definition of, 454
DUTY-MASTER motors, 3
Dyna Corp., 8
Dyna Technology, Inc., 8

Eastern Air Devices, 8
Efficiency, apparent, definition of, 454
Efficiency, definition of, 454
Either-rotation motor, definition of, 454
Electric, definition of, 454
Electric Apparatus Co., 8, 19
Electric Indicator Co., 8, 19, 229, 313
Electric Journal, 65, 97, 98, 236, 311
Electric Specialty Co. (*see* Electronic Specialty Co.)
Electrical, definition of, 454
Electrical degrees, 49
Electrical Engineering, 52, 194, 214, 311
Electrical Engineering in Japan, 260

Electrical Manufacturing, 131, 184, 214, 236, 237, 296
Electro-Craft Corp., 313, 343
Electrolytic capacitors, ac, 104
    construction, 104
    motor-starting, characteristics of, 106
    ratings and test limits for, table of, 107
    replacement of, 108
    sectional view of, 105
    testing, 108
Electronic Specialty Co., 10, 19, 275, 313, 329
Electro-Technology, 132, 237, 260, 296, 326, 344
Emerson Electric Mfg. Co., 10, 87, 347, 428
Encapsulated windings, definition of, 454
End shield, definition of, 454
Evaporator fan motors, 425
Exactly equivalent, definition of, 54
Explosion-proof machine, definition of, 454

Fasco Industries, Inc., 10
Firing angle of controlled rectifiers, 288
Flexible couplings, 365
Ford Instrument, Div. Sperry-Rand Corp., 313
Form factor, 289
Fractional-horsepower motor, defined, 2, 454
Frame numbers, 4
    explained, 4
Frame sizes, NEMA, 414
Franklin Electric Co., 10, 19, 126, 430
Fredriksen, T. R., 326
Frequency, 24
    measurement of, 385
Front of a motor or generator defined, 454

Gear reducers, 378, 379
Gearmotors, 376
    fractional-horsepower, 376
        photographs of, 377, 378
    subfractional-horsepower, 378
        photographs of, 207, 212, 272, 380, 381
General Electric Co., 10, 19, 86, 110, 126, 135, 141, 158, 163, 204, 230–232, 234, 275, 313, 341, 342, 347
General-purpose ac motor, definition of, 412, 454
General Radio Company, 382, 383, 407
General Time Corp., Industrial Controls, 313
Georgiev, Alexander M., 131
Gerlach, F. H., 296
Gleason-Avery, Inc., 10, 212
Globe Industries, Div. of TRW, Inc., 10, 19, 271, 272, 313
Goss, W. R., 296
Groot, R. W., 259
Guarded machine, definition of, 454
Gun windings, 58

Hall effect, definition of, 283*n*.
Hall-effect motor, 282
Hamilton, James L., 184
Hanssen, I. E., 97
Hartman, A. E., 132
Haydon, A. W., Co., The, 279, 280, 313–315, 320
Hellmund, R. E., 311
Helmick, C. G., 237
Henry-Baudot, J., 326, 344
Hermetic refrigeration compressor motors, 423
Hershberger, D. D., 296
Hertz, 24
Herzog, G. E., 214
Hibberd, Robert G., 296
Holtzer-Cabot Corp., 10, 19, 313
Home-laundry motors, 86
    with auxiliary terminals, 89
    epoxy-cemented dryer motor for, illustration of, 87
    single-speed, 86
    torque characteristics of, 87
    two-speed, 88
Honeywell, Inc., 313, 344
Hoover Electric Co., 10, 20
Horsepower:
    explained, 23
    and speed ratings, 27, 28
Howard Industries, Inc., 10, 20
Howell Electric Co. (*see* Electric Apparatus Co.)

Hurst Mfg. Co., 313
Hysteresis motors, 224
  (*See also* Synchronous motors, hysteresis)

IEE Proceedings (British publication), 131, 184
IEEE Transactions, 52, 132, 311, 381
IMC Magnetics Corp., 10
Induction generator, definition of, 454
Induction motors:
  basis of rating, tables of, 25, 26
  definition of, 454
  principles of, 36–47
  theory, references for study of, 50
Inductor machine, definition of, 455
Inductor motors, 229
  (*See also* Stepper motors, inductor type; Synchronous motors, inductor)
Industrial-instrument motors, 422
Ingraham Industries, Div. of McGraw Edison, 313
Inherent-overheating protective device, defined, 366
Inland Motor Corp., 313, 343
Insco Corp., 12, 20
Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, test codes and procedures available from, 409, 410
Instrument Maker, The, 237
Integral-horsepower motor, definition of, 455
Ireland, James R., 296
Ismail, M. K. E., 131

Jacobowitz, Henry, 296
Janette Div., Holtzer-Cabot, 12
Jones Motrola Corp., 12

Kavanaugh, Richard J., 326
Kawada, T., 260
Kearfott Products Div., General Precision Systems, Inc., 12, 313, 320, 322, 332, 339, 344
Kelling, Leroy U. C., 344
Kimball, A. L., 52, 381
Kimberley, E. E., 214
Kincaid, C. W., 98
Kingston-Conley Electric, Div. Howell International, 12
Kordatzky, Robert W., 434
Krause, P. C., 381
Kron, G., 214
Kubler, E. F., 296

Lamb Electric Co., (*See* Ametek/Lamb Electric)
Lamme, B. G., 51, 52
Langsdorf, Alexander S., 184
Lanoy, Henry, 65
Lawrence, R. R., 52
Lebow Associates, Inc., 392, 393, 397
Lee, C. H., 237
Left-hand rule, for motor action, 169*n.*
Leland Electric Co., Div. of Howell International, 12, 20
Lifschitz, Joshua, 344
Line connection diagram, general, 57
  (*See also* specific motor type of interest)
Lloyd, T. C., 98
Locked-rotor current, definition of, 455
Locked-rotor torque, definition of, 455
Logic stepper motors, 315, 320
London, Sol, 131
Lowitt, P. M., 344
Lyon, W. V., 144

McFarland, T. C., 144
MacGahan, Paul, 237
Machine Design, 34, 131, 236, 260, 326, 344, 381
Machine windings, 59
  for polyphase motors, 308
Magnetic polarity, 57
Magnetic starting relays, 360
  current-operated, 360
    photograph of, 360
    schematic connections for, 124
    sectional view of, 360
    setting adjustments for, 124
  voltage-operated, 124
    schematic connections for, 124
    setting adjustments for, 124

Mallory, P. R., and Company, 107
Mallory Timers Co., Div. of P. R. Mallory and Co., 313
Mamco Corp., 12, 20
Marathon Electric Mfg. Co., 12, 274
Mea, Anthony M., 344
Mechatrol Div., Teledyne, Inc., 12, 20, 313, 338
Merrill, F. W., 237, 296
Messerle, H. K., 52
Metric conversion tables:
  inches to millimeters, 449, 450
  millimeters to inches, 451
Miller, Norman A., 237
Millihorsepower, 23
Mold windings, 60
  for polyphase motors, 299
Molon Motor and Coil Co., 12, 20
Moon, Clifford G., 34
Morgan, N. L., 434
Morrill, W. J., 52, 131, 144
Morris, D., 184
Motor Appliance Corp., 12
Motor Specialty, Inc., 14, 20
Motoresearch Mfg. Co., 14
Motron Electric Div., Brevel Products Corp., 14
Mounting, types of, 361
Muirhead Instruments, Inc., 313
Multispeed Motor, definition, of, 455

Nameplates, 1–35
National Electrical Code, 29, 33, 35
NEMA (National Electrical Manufactures' Association), 25–28, 32–35, 65, 70–72, 80–82, 86–90, 98, 111, 112, 116, 119–121, 138, 148–150, 161, 174, 201, 205, 241–243, 260, 269, 270, 291, 296, 331, 333, 344, 413, 422–432, 434
  design letters, 34
  frame numbers, 5
Noise terms, defined 405
Noise tests, 406
Northwestern Electric Co., 14

Ohio Electric Mfg. Co., Div. of Howell International, 14, 356
Oil-burner motors, 427
Oldenkamp, John L., 132
Open machine, definition of, 455
Oster, John, Mfg. Co., 14
  (*See also* Sunbeam Electronics)

Packer, L. C., 259
Pearce, R. M., 236
Permanent-magnet motors, 276
  construction, 276
  cutaway view of, 276
  definition of, 276
  ratings of, performance and torque, 277
    performance curves, 278
  type-letter designations of, 6
Permanent-split capacitor motors, 145
  applications of, 145, 422, 424, 425
  defined, 99, 145, 455
  essential parts of, 146
  fan motors, special mechanical features for, 165
  industrial instrument motors, 422
  multispeed motors, 155
    external impedance control, 157, 158
    tapped-winding arrangements for, 157
      schematic representations of, 159, 160
      stator connection diagram, for 164
    for unit-heater service, 155
      wiring and line connection diagrams for, 161–164
  principles of operation, 146
  reversing, high-torque, intermittent-rated, 165
  rewinding or reconnecting, 165
  schematic representation of, 146
  single-speed motors, 147
    dual-voltage, 150
      wiring and line connection diagrams for, 151
    single-voltage, 147
      connections and diagrams for, 147, 149, 150
    performance characteristics of, 147
      table of, 148
  speed-control methods for, 152
    basic methods, 152

Permanent-split capacitor motors, speed-control methods for (*Cont.*):
  fundamental relationships: slip, voltage, torque, 153
  limitations of flux-control systems, 155
  voltage-control systems, 152, 154
    speed-torque curves for, 154
  speed-torque curves for, 147, 154
  stator connection diagram for (*see* Stator connection diagrams)
  type-letter designations of, 6
Permawick Company, 348
Pesek, S. J., 381
Pfaff, R. W., 296
Phases of an ac circuit, 5
Pitch factors, table of, 308
Pittman Corp., 14, 277
Poles, number of, explained, 49
Polyphase induction motors, 297
  applications of, 424, 426, 428, 430
  chain windings for, 309
  concentric windings for, 308, 310
  dual-voltage, 306
  essential parts of, 298
  lap windings for, 300
  machine-wound concentric windings for, 308
  mold-wound coils, illustration of, 299
  principles and characteristics of, 36–44, 298
  rewinding or reconnecting for, 311
  rotating field, production of, 40
  speed-torque curves for, 298
  type-letter designations of, 6
  windings and connections for, 299
    checking a diagram or winding, 303
    chord (pitch) factors, table of, 308
    distribution factors, table of, 309
    effective series conductors, 307
    number of coils per group, 300
    number of groups, 300
    "short-throw" and "long-throw" connections, 302
    stator connection diagrams of, 302, 303, 307
    "throw-up" and "throw-down" windings, 301
  windings with unequal coil grouping, 304
    balanced, 304
Polyphase induction motors, windings with unequal coil grouping, balanced (*Cont.*):
      tables of, 304, 305
    irregular windings, 306
Porter, H. K., Co., 14, 20
Potter, C. P., 381
Printed Motors, Inc., 313, 339, 340
Product Engineering, 259, 283, 296, 334, 344, 381
Puchstein, A. F., 52, 144, 259, 296
Pull-in torque, definition of, 455
Pull-out torque, definition of, 455
Pull-up torque, definition of, 455
Pulsating nature of single-phase power, 362
Pulse steppers, 314, 315
Pump motors:
  for cellar drainers, 425
  coolant, 430
  deep-well, 430
  gasoline-dispensing, 426
  jet, 428
  sump, 425

Radio interference and suppression, 433
Rae Motor Corp., 14
Rall, Carl A., 214
Rao, P. V., 131
Rating, definition of, 455
Reactor, definition of, 455
Reactor-start motors, 91
  definition of, 455
  schematic representation of, 91
Rectifiers:
  controlled, 288
    form factor, 289
      measurement of, 290
      table of, 290
    full-wave, 289
    half-wave, 288
      with back rectifier, 289
  simple, 286
    bridge type, 287
    full-wave, 287
    half-wave, 287
Redmond Co., Inc. *see* Controls Co., of America)
Regulation, defined, 455
Rekus, G. G., 132

Reliance Electric Company, 2, 5, 14, 30, 59, 101, 110, 113, 126, 168, 178, 218, 263, 294, 371, 377–379, 391, 418
Reluctance motors, 216
  (*See also* Synchronous motors, reluctance)
  subsynchronous, defined, 216
Repulsion-induction motors, 185
  definition of, 185
  dual-voltage, 186
  rotor punching for, 187
  speed-torque curve for, 188
  type-letter designations of, 6
Repulsion motors, 185
  definition of, 185
  dual-voltage, 186
  speed-torque curve for, 186
  type-letter designations of, 6
Repulsion and repulsion-induction motors, 185
  dual-voltage, 186
  neutral, checking or setting, 191
  reversing: for plugging service, 188
    with polyphase-type winding, 190
    schematic representation of, 190
    with single-phase windings, 189
    stator connection diagrams for, 190, 191
Repulsion-start induction motors, 166
  applications and torque characteristics of, 166, 424, 426, 428
  armature windings of, 175
    (*See also* Armature windings)
  brush-holder mechanisms for, 180
    number of arms and spacing required in, 181
  brush-lifting mechanism for, 180
  brush position, effect of, on torque and current, 171
  brushes, replacement of, 182
  care and maintenance of, general, 183
  commutators, care of, 178, 183
  cutaway views of, 168, 180
  definition of, 166
  dual-voltage, 4-lead, 172
    stator connection diagram of, 172
    wiring and line connection diagrams of, 173, 174
  essential parts of, 167
  neutrals, hard and soft, 170
    checking or setting for, 181
Repulsion-start induction motors (*Cont.*):
  principles of operation, 168–172
    similar to a series motor, 168
    simple repulsion motor, 170
  reversing of, 181
  rewinding, 173
    for different frequency, 173
    for different torques, 173
    for different voltage, 173
  short-circuiters for, 179
    function of, 172
    Master device for, 178
    Wagner device for, 180
    Westinghouse device for, 179
  speed-torque curve for, 167
  type-letter designations of, 6
Resilient (rubber) mounting rings, 364
  illustrations of, 347
Resistance-start split-phase motor, 91
  definition of, 456
Reversible motor, 125
  definition of, 456
Reversing motor, 126
  definition of, 456
Right-hand rule, 43*n.*
  Fleming's three-finger rule, 45*n.*
Riker, C. R., 311
Robbins and Myers, Inc., 14, 81
Rotating Components Div., Instrument Systems Corp., 14, 20, 313
Rotor, defined, 456
RPM (revolutions per minute), 24

Savant, C. J., Jr., 344
Seeley, R. E., 410
Selecting the right motor, 411
  characteristics of small motors, table of, 416–417
  choice of full-load speed, 418
  choice of horsepower rating, 418
  choice of type, 415
  definite-purpose motors, 412
    (*See also* Definite-purpose motors)
  duty considerations, 419
  enclosure and method of cooling, 420
  general-purpose motors, 412
    frame sizes of, table of, 415
    performance characteristics of, table of, 413

Selecting the right motor (*Cont.*):
  mechanical drives, 421
  mounting arrangements, 420
  mounting dimensions, 414
  power, torque, speed relationships, 432
  radio interference, 433
  service conditions, usual and unusual, 431
  special-purpose motors, 412
  standard ratings and performance, 413
  torque requirements, 419
  voltage and frequency variations, effect of, 431, 432
Semiguarded machine, definition of, 456
Series-wound motor, 262, 456
  (*See also* Universal motors)
Service factor, defined, 34, 456
  table of, 34
Servomotors, ac, 327
  damped, 334
    damping, need for, 334
    inertial, 338
      photograph of, 339
      sectional view of, 338
    internal damping, 336
      constant for, 337
    tachometer damping for, 339
    viscous, 337
      performance curves of, 338
  defined, 327
  drag-cup type of, 333
    characteristics of, table of, 335
  essential parts of, 328
  lead identification of, 333
  mechanical time constant for, 330
  performance characteristics of, 330
    explained, 330
    for standard servomotors, 331
      table of, from Kearfott, 332
      table of, from NEMA, 331
  principles of operation for, 329
  reversing time constant for, 330
  rotor inertia for, 330
    speed-torque curves for, 329, 336
  stall torque of, 330
  theoretical acceleration of, 330
  wiring and line connection diagram for, 333
Servomotors, dc, 339
  direct-drive frameless (Inland), 342
    illustration of, 343
Servomotors, dc (*Cont.*):
  moving-coil, 342
    Electro-Craft, 343
    Honeywell, 344
  printed-circuit, 339
    applications for, 341
    exploded view of, 340
    for standard motors, 340
      characteristics of, table of, 340
  with surface-wound armatures, 341
    General Electric Hyper Servo, 342
    Yaskawa Minertia, 341
Servo-Tek Products, Inc., 14, 20, 291
Shaded-pole induction motors, 192
  applications of, 192
  battery operated, 212–214
  blade terminals for, 205
  constructions, 194, 196–199, 203, 208
  cutaway view of, 203
  definition of, 193
  essential parts of, 193
  with four wound shading coils, 208
    laminations for, 208
    production of space-quadrature field, 208
    versatility of, 210
  furnace-fan four-speed, 203, 205, 206
    stator connection diagram for, 206
  magnetic wedges or bridges in, use of, 196
  principle of, 193
    action of a simple shading coil, 196
  ratings, performance and torques, 199
    input and efficiency curves, 200
  with reduction gearing, 207, 212
  reluctance effect in leading pole tip, use of, 198
  reversible, 207
    four wound shading coils, 208
    two motors in tandem, 207
    two wound shading coils, 207, 208
  schematic representations of, 193, 208, 209
  skeleton-type of, 197, 204
    bonded, 204
  speed-torque curves for, 200, 201, 211
  triple shading coils, 197
  type-letter designations of, 6
  unidirectional (fixed-rotation), 202
    multispeed, 202

- Shaded-pole induction motors, unidirectional (fixed-rotation), multispeed (*Cont.*):
      - line connections for, 205, 206
    - single-speed, 202
  - variations in operating speed, 201
  - vector diagram for, 195
- Shaded-pole stepper motors, 314
  - (*See also* Stepper motors, shaded-pole)
- Shaded-pole synchronous motors:
  - hysteresis timing, 235
  - reluctance type, 222
    - performance curves of, 223
- Siemens America, Inc., 282
- Sigma Instruments, Inc., 313, 314, 323–325
- Sines and cosines, table of, 447, 448
- Singer Company, The., Diehl Div., 14, 21, 313
- Single-phase induction motor:
  - basis of rating, 25, 26
  - compared with polyphase motor, 47
  - horsepower and speed ratings for, 27, 28, 413
  - necessity for starting arrangement for, 49
  - predetermining direction of rotation, 78
    - by inspection of connection diagram, 79
    - by testing connected windings, 78
  - rotating fields in, 44–47
  - windings and connections, 53
- Single-phase system, 5
  - voltage, current, and power relations in, 362
- Skein windings, 61
- Slemon, Gordon R., 52
- SLO-SYN motors (*see* Stepper motors, inductor type)
- Small Motors, Inc., 16, 313, 322
- Smith, A. G., 65
- Smith A. O. Corp., 16
- Smith, F. A., Mfg. Co. (*see* Fasco Industries)
- Specht, H. C., 131, 144
- Special-purpose motors, 412
  - definition of, 456
- Split-phase induction motors, 66
  - applications of, 66
  - capacitor used with, 94
- Split-phase induction motors (*Cont.*):
  - connection diagrams for, 71
    - for home-laundry motors, 88
  - cord, plug and line switch, with, 80
  - definition of, 66
  - essential parts of, 66
  - home-laundry motors (*see* Home-laundry motors)
  - purpose of the starting switch, 69
  - reactor-start, 91
  - resistance-start, 91
  - reversing of, 92
  - rewinding, 92–97
    - for different frequency, 93
    - for different torques, 93
    - for different voltages, 92
  - schematic representation of, 67
  - speed-torque curves for, 69
  - standard- and special-service motors, 70
  - starting, principle of, 67
  - stator connection diagrams for (*see* Stator connection diagrams, split-phase)
  - terminal markings, 71
    - with colored leads, 73
    - with tagged leads, 71
    - with terminal board, 72
  - thermally protected, 80–82
    - nonreversible, 81
    - protector heater in series with auxiliary winding, 81
    - reversible, 81
  - torque characteristics of, 71
  - two-speed, pole-changing, 82
    - with four windings, 83
    - for home-laundry service, 88
    - with three windings, 85
  - type-letter designations of, 6
  - vector diagram of locked-rotor currents, 68
  - winding connections, common, 74
  - windings of, how to distinguish between, 73
- Split-phase reluctance motors, 221
- Sprague Electric Co., 105
- Stark, J. H., 381
- Starting switches, 354
  - centrifugal, 354
    - Delco, 356
    - Ohio Electric, 356

Starting switches, centrifugal (*Cont.*):
    service and maintenance for, 357
    Torq, 355
    Westinghouse, 356
  thermally actuated, 356
  (*See also* Magnetic starting relays)
Starting torque (*see* Locked-rotor torque)
Stator, definition of, 456
Stator connection diagrams, 56
  capacitor-start motors: dual-voltage, 122
    single-voltage, 112
  permanent-split capacitor motors: single-voltage, 149–151
    tapped-winding, 164
  polyphase induction motors, 302, 303
    dual-voltage, 307
  repulsion or repulsion-induction, 190, 191
  repulsion-type, 172
  shaded-pole motor, 206
  split-phase motors, 74–76
    with both windings parallel, 76
    with both windings series, 74
    definite direction of rotation, 77
    with direction-connection plug, 77
    "long-throw," 76
    main parallel, auxiliary series, 75
    nonreversible, line lead on starting switch, 80
    "short throw," 76
    switch in center of auxiliary winding, 77
    two-speed, pole-changing, 84, 85
    two-value capacitor motors, 140, 143
Stator windings (*see* Windings, stator)
Stepper motors, 312
  CYCLONOME, 323
    basic drive circuits, 325
    performance characteristics and sizes, 325
    principles of operation, 323
  definition of, 312
  inductor type, 315
    Haydon logic, 320
    SLO-SYN, 315
      ac operation, 316
      bifilar motors, 319
      dc stepping, 316, 317
Stepper motors, inductor type, SLO-SYN (*Cont.*):
      effect of stepping rate on torque, 317
      four-lead motors, 318
      performance characteristics and sizes of, 319
      power supplies, 319
      transient-voltage suppression, 318
  Kearfott, permanent-magnet motors, 320
  schematic connections, 314, 316, 318, 319, 325
  shaded-pole, 314
    bidirectional, 315
    unidirectional, 314
      control circuit for, 314
  types of, 314
  variable-reluctance: Kearfott, 322
      damping circuit, 322
    principle of, 321
    Small Motors' stepper, 322
Subfractional-horsepower motor defined, 2, 456
Suhr, F. W., 144, 214, 410
Sunbeam Electronics Div., John Oster Mfg. Co., 16, 313
Superior Electric Co., 313, 315–319
Surge tests on windings, repetitive, 64
Switching torque, definition of, 456
Synchronous machine, definition of, 456
Synchronous motors, 215
  classified by rotor type and stator winding, 216
  definition of, 456
  general, 215
  hysteresis, 224
    capacitor type, 226
      performance specifications, tables of, 227, 228
      photograph of, 228
      timing motor, 236
    construction, 224
    definition of, 224
    multispeed, 227
      five-speed motor, illustration of, 229
      two-speed motor, performance, specifications of, 228
    polyphase, 225
    shaded-pole timing, 235
    speed-torque curve for, "ideal," 226

Synchronous motors, hysteresis (*Cont.*):
    type-letter designations for, 6
  inductor, 229
    small, 233
      characteristics and applications of, 234
      construction, 233
      illustration of, 234
      principles of operation of, 234
    SMY "50-frame" motors, 229
      characteristics and applications of, 233
        as servomotors, 233
        as stepper motors, 233
      construction, 229
      exploded view of, 230
      principles of operation of, 231
      schematic sectional views of, 231, 232
  reluctance, 216
    capacitor type, 221
      partial cutaway view of one, 222
      performance specifications for, table of, 22
    construction, 217
    definitions of, 216
    flux barrier slots, effect of, 218
    frequency, effect of, 220
    inertia, effects of, on pull-in torque, 220
    making in the repair shop, 223
    polyphase, 220
      speed-torque curve, 221
      wound-rotor type, 224
    principles of operation, 217
    rotor punching, illustration of, 217, 218
    rotor resistance, effects of, on pull-in torque, 220
    shaded-pole type, 222
      performance curves of, 223
    split-phase, 221
    step, how pulled into, 219
    type-letter designations of, 6
  types of, 216
Synchronous speed, 50

Talaat, M. E., 237
Tarboux, J. G., 144
Teare, B. R., Jr., 236
Temperature rating, 31
  methods of indicating, 31
  table of, 32
Testing small motors, 382
  adjustable varying-speed fan-duty motors, 398
  application tests, 408
    for determination of power requirements, 408
    for determination of torque requirements, 409
  direct-current motors, 398
  high-potential (dielectric) tests, 400
  meters and equipment for, 382
    for measuring current (amperes), 384
    for measuring frequency, 385
    for measuring mechanical output, 390
      by dynamometer, 391
      by prony brake, 390
      by rope and pulley, 392
      by use of Torque table, 392
    for measuring noise, 406
    for measuring power (watts), 385
    for measuring power factor, 385
    for measuring resistance, 387
    for measuring slip, 386
    for measuring speed, 386
    for measuring temperature, 387
    for measuring voltage, 384
    meter connections: polyphase, 389
        for determining sign of smaller reading, 389
      single-phase, 388
    meter loss corrections, 388
    power source, 382
  polyphase induction motors, 398
  segregation of losses, 400
    capacitor-run motors, 404
    polyphase motors, 401
    single-phase induction motors, 401
  single-phase induction motors, 393
    complete engineering test, 394
    routine test, 394
  synchronous motors, 399
  universal motors, 399
  vibration measurements, 404
Texas Instruments Incorporated, 360, 369, 373–375

- Thaler, G J., 344
- Thermal protectors, 366
  - definitions, 366, 456
    - of automatic-reset protector, 366
    - of inherent-overheating protector, 366
    - of manual-reset protector, 366
  - essential parts of, 368
  - principles of operation, 370
    - locked-rotor conditions, 370
    - running loads, 371
    - thermal protector, overcurrent device, compared, 372
  - sectional views of, 369, 374
  - for single-phase motors, 373
    - photographs of 373, 374
  - for three-phase motors, 376
    - connections, 375
    - photograph of, 375
  - Underwriters' Laboratories Standards for, 367
    - design and construction of, 367
    - locked-rotor endurance tests, 367
    - temperature limits, 367, 368
- "Thermally protected," 29, 366
  - Delco Products markings, 29
  - Reliance Electric Co., 30
  - Westinghouse, 30
- THERMOGUARD (*see* "Thermally protected")
- Three-phase systems, 22
- Time rating, 33
- Timing motors:
  - ac, 235
    - capacitor type, 236
    - inductor type, 236
    - shaded-pole type, 235
  - dc, 278
    - basic timing motor, 278
      - illustration of, 279
    - governed timing motor, 279
      - illustration of, 280
- Torq Engineered Products, Inc., 355, 358
- Torque, definition of, 456
- Torque motor, definition of, 457
- Torque pulsations in single-phase motors, 361, 363
  - how resilient mounting eliminates noise due to, 363
- Totally enclosed fan-cooled machine, definition of, 457
- Totally enclosed machine, definition of, 457
- Trickey, P. H., 131, 144, 165, 184, 214, 236
- Triem, Inc., 16, 204
- Trouble diagnosis chart, 435–442
- Two-phase induction motors, 40, 41
- Two-phase systems, 5
- Two-value capacitor motors, 133
  - applications of, 133
  - changing one to a capacitor-start motor, 142
  - defined, 100, 133, 457
  - dual-voltage, 140
  - effect of the running capacitor, 135
  - essential parts of, 133
  - rewinding, 141
    - for different torques, speed or frequency, 141
    - for different voltage, 141
  - schematic representations of, 134
  - single-voltage motors, 137
    - dual-section auxiliary winding, 137
    - wiring and line connection diagrams for, 137–140
  - speed-torque curve for, 137
  - starting switch, purpose of, 136
  - torques of, 137
  - with two capacitors, illustration of, 135
  - type-letter designations of, 6
- Type-letter designations, 4, 6–21

- UMC Electronics Co., Beau Motor Div., 16
- Underwriter's Laboratories, 29, 35, 367, 368, 381
- Universal Electric Co., 16, 199
- Universal motors, 238
  - application and torque characteristics of, 239
  - armature windings (*see* Armature windings, universal motors)
  - compensated, 245
    - purpose of compensating winding, 245
    - single-field, 246
      - equivalence to two-field, illustration of, 247
    - two-field, 246
  - compensated and noncompensated, 239

Universal motors (*Cont.*):
  cutaway view of, 243
  defined, 239
  dimensions, table of, 241
  essential parts of, 242
    concentrated-pole, noncompensated, 242
    distributed-field, compensated, 243
  neutral checking or setting, 258
  off-neutral connections, 248
  outline illustration of, 242
  principles of operation on alternating current, 244
    commutation, brush life, 245
    laminated construction, 245
    reactance voltage, 244
    saturation effect, 244
  principles of operation on direct current, 244
  rewinding, 259
  speed control of, 255
    by external impedance, 256
    by mechanical governor, 255
    by solid-state electronic controller, 256
  speed-torque curves for, 239, 240
  split-series, reversing, 249, 250
  stator windings, 248
  with tapped field windings, 249
  wiring and brush-holder connections, 248
    for noncompensated motor, 248
    for single-field compensated motor, 250, 251
    for two-field compensated motor, 250
Uppco, Inc., 16

Variable-speed drive systems, 283
  Bodine motor control system, 292
    illustration of, 292
    performance curves of, 293
  Dodge Speedsetter drive, 293
    illustration of, 294
  mechanical drives, 418, 421
  Reliance Compak V-S drive, 292
    illustration of, 294
Variable-speed drive systems (*Cont.*):
  Ward Leonard system, 284
    armature-voltage-control range, 284
    basic principles involved in, 284
    constant-torque drives, 286
    electronic power-conversion units, 286
    feedback control, 286
    field-control range, 285
    IR-drop compensation, 285
    regulation, 285
    reverse power flow, 286
Varnish impregnation, 64
Varying-speed motor, definition of, 457
Veinott, C. G., 51, 52, 65, 97, 98, 131, 165, 184, 214, 260, 311, 381, 410
Vernitron Corp., 313, 338
Vibration measurements, 404
Volts (ac), 28
  effective, 29
  measurement of, 384
  peak, 29

Wagner Electric Corp., 16, 21, 123, 180, 346
Waterproof machine, definition of, 457
Weber, C. A. M., 65
Welco Industries, Inc., 16
Wesche, B. A., Electric Co. (*see* Welco Industries)
West, H. R., 52
Westinghouse Electric Corp., 5, 16, 29, 30, 51, 90, 110, 139, 140, 142, 143, 163, 164, 205, 206, 235, 299, 356
Wier, W. E., 259
Windings, stator, 53
    some practical hints on, 63
  (*See also* Armature windings; Bifilar windings; etc.)
Winston, Joseph, 237
Wire table, 446
Wiring diagram, 57
Wound-rotor induction motor, definition of, 457

Yaskawa Electric America, Inc., 313, 341

continued from front flap

tor motors . . . permanent-split capacitor motors . . . repulsion - start motors . . . shaded-pole motors . . . reluctance, hysteresis, and inductor-type synchronous motors . . . universal motors . . . and all the rest.

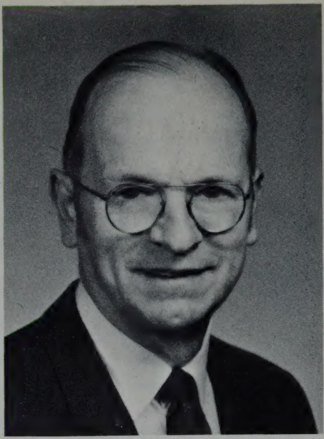
Note, too, there are separate sections devoted to d-c motors, the importance of which has suddenly revived in the industry . . . that old workhorse, the polyphase induction motor (treated here, of course, in fractional-horsepower size)... servomotors, including d-c servomotors of unconventional construction . . . and much, much more.

In addition, the book spells out what you should know about construction features common to popularly used motors (sleeve and ball bearings, mounting arrangements, starting switches, etc.) . . . testing the various types of motors, including instrumentation, what tests to take, vibration and noise measurements, etc. . . . and a very important section on how to select the right motor for just about any specialized job you can name.

Best of all, the author's treatment of this vital material is patterned along the lines that made his previous classic, Fractional Horsepower Electric Motors, far and away the biggest seller in its field (over 70,000 copies sold).

It's important to note his latest work concentrates on important recent developments in the industry—the changes in standards and commercial practices relating to small electric motors, advances in technology, and the vastly increased applications of the motors.

design—David Lyons/d j graphics



ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Dr. Cyril G. Veinott is Machinery Consultant and Chief Engineering Analyst of the Reliance Electric Company. For sixteen years he has served on the Corporate Engineering Staff of the company, in which post he was chiefly concerned with development of design methods and implementing them on the computer as well as representing Reliance on the EMA and IEEE Committees. Dr. Veinott is the author of four widely used books in the field, has written numerous papers and technical articles, and has taught courses at the University of Pittsburgh, Case Institute of Technology, Westinghouse Technical Night School, and other schools. He is the inventor or co-inventor of 14 U.S. Patents, all in the electric-motor field.

McGraw-Hill Book Company
Serving Man's Need for Knowledge
1221 Avenue of the Americas
New York, N.Y. 10020

67390